UAD Plug-Ins Manual

Software Version 9.11.0

Manual Version 191031

UNIVERSAL AUDIO

www.uaudio.com

Table Of Contents

Tip: *Click any section or page number to jump directly to that page.*

UAD Plug-Ins Overview 5
AKG BX 20 Spring Reverb 8
Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Recorder 18
API 500 Series EQ Collection 44
API 2500 Bus Compressor 51
API Vision Channel Strip 63
Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip 79
Bermuda Triangle 93
Brigade Chorus Pedal 97
Cambridge EQ 102
Capitol Chambers 111
Century Tube Channel Strip 126
Cooper Time Cube 134
CS-1 Channel Strip 140
dbx 160 Compressor/Limiter 153
DreamVerb 156
Empirical Labs EL7 Fatso 174
Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor 188
EMT 140 Plate Reverb 202
EMT 250 Electronic Reverberator 208
EP-34 Classic Tape Echo 220
Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection 226
Fender ‘55 Tweed Deluxe 242
Galaxy Tape Echo 266
Harrison 32C EQ 273
Helios Type 69 EQ and Preamp Collection 278
Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 291

Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay 296
LA-3A Compressor 313
Lexicon 224 Digital Reverb 315
Lexicon 480L Digital Reverb and Effects 333
Little Labs IBP 371
Little Labs VOG 374
Manley Massive Passive EQ Collection 378
Manley Stereo Variable Mu Limiter Compressor 390
Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip 402
Moog Multimode Filter Collection 416
MXR Flanger/Doubler 448
Neve 88RS Channel Strip Collection 455
Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ Collection 481
Neve 1081 Equalizer 494
Neve 31102 Console EQ 502
Neve 33609 Compressor 507
Neve Preamp 516
Ocean Way Studios 523
Oxide Tape Recorder 552
Precision Buss Compressor 559
Precision Channel Strip 564
Precision De-Esser 573
Precision Delay Modulation 577
Precision Enhancer Hz 586
Precision Enhancer kHz 590
Precision Equalizer 593
Precision K-Stereo Ambience Recovery 598
Precision Limiter 610
Precision Maximizer 616
Precision Multiband 621

Precision Reflection Engine 633
Pultec Passive EQ Collection 638
Pure Plate Reverb 650
Raw Distortion 656
RealVerb Pro 660
Roland CE-1 Chorus Ensemble 673
Roland Dimension D 677
Roland RE-201 Space Echo 679
SPL Transient Designer 686
SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection 695
SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor Collection 720
Studer A800 Multichannel Tape Recorder 730
Studio D Chorus 742
Teletronix® LA-2A Leveler Collection 745
Thermionic Culture Vulture 753
Trident A-Range EQ 760
TS Overdrive 765
UA 1176 Classic Limiter Collection 769
UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection 780
UA 610 Tube Preamp & EQ Collection 791
V76 Preamplifier 801
Appendix 811
Unison Plug-Ins List 812
Additional Latency 813
UAD Plug-Ins and High Definition Audio 816
Notices 823
Technical Support 824

UAD Plug-Ins Overview

The Authentic Sound of Analog

From project studios to multi-platinum mix engineers, UAD Powered Plug-Ins have been winning over audio professionals for more than 15 years with their stunning analog sound. The UAD library now features more than 100 plug-ins, co-created with the biggest brands in audio. Developed by UA's world-renowned team of DSP engineers, UAD plug-ins set the standard by which all other audio plug-ins are judged.

From project studios to multi-platinum mix engineers, UAD Powered Plug-Ins have been the choice of audio professionals for over 15 years with their stunning analog sound. The UAD library features more than 100 plug-ins, co-created with the most iconic brands in audio. Developed by UA's world-renowned team of DSP engineers, UAD plug-ins set the standard by which all other audio plug-ins are judged.

What Makes UAD Plug-Ins Different

The UAD platform is powered by specialized audio DSP — found in Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces and UAD-2 Accelerators — bringing you the world's most authentic analog emulations.

All trademarks are recognized as property of their respective owners. Individual UAD Powered Plug-Ins sold separately.

Documentation Overview

This section describes the various instructional and technical resources that are available for installing, using, and troubleshooting UAD Powered Plug-Ins, UAD-2 DSP Accelerators, and Apollo/Arrow audio interfaces. Documentation for all products are available in written, video, and online formats.

> ***Note:*** *All manuals are in PDF format. PDF files require a free PDF reader application such as Adobe Acrobat Reader (Windows) or Preview (Mac).*

Operation Manuals

Documentation for UAD-2 and UA audio interface system components is extensive, so instructions are separated by areas of functionality. Each functional area has a separate manual file. An overview of each file, and how they are accessed, is provided in this section.

UAD Plug-Ins Manual

The features and functionality of all individual UAD plug-ins is detailed in the UAD Plug-Ins Manual. Refer to this document to learn about the operation, controls, and user interface of each UAD plug-in that is developed by Universal Audio.

Direct Developer Plug-Ins

UAD Powered Plug-Ins includes plug-ins created by our Direct Developer partners. Documentation for these 3rd-party plug-ins are separate files written and provided by the plug-in developers. The file names for these plug-in manuals are the same as the plug-in titles.

UAD System Manual

The UAD System Manual is the complete operation manual for the entire UAD-2 product family. It contains detailed information about installing and configuring UAD devices, the UAD Meter & Control Panel application, buying optional plug-ins at the UA online store, using multiple UAD devices, and more. It includes everything about UAD except Apollo-specific information and individual UAD plug-in descriptions.

UA Audio Interface Manuals

Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces have separate manuals that document all the features and functionality of these UA audio interface products. These manuals are installed with the UAD software.

Host DAW Documentation

Each host DAW software application has its own particular methods for configuring and using plug-ins. Refer to the host DAW's documentation for specific instructions about using plug-in features within the DAW.

Hyperlinks

Links to other manual sections and web pages are highlighted in blue text. Click a hyperlink to jump directly to the linked item.

> ***Tip:*** *Use the "back" button in the PDF reader application to return to the previous page after clicking a hyperlink.*

Accessing Installed Documentation

All operation manuals are copied to the system drive during software installation. Any of the following methods can be used to access installed documentation:

- Click the Product Manuals button in the Help panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application
- On Mac systems, navigate to:
  /Applications/Universal Audio/Documentation
- On Windows systems navigate to:
  Start Menu>All Programs>UAD Powered Plug-Ins>Documentation
- The UAD Plug-Ins Manual, **and Direct Developer plug-in manuals**, can be accessed from the UAD Toolbar (at the bottom of each plug-in interface) by choosing Manual from the drop menu after clicking the "?" button in the UAD Toolbar

- If UA audio interface software is installed, choose Documentation from the Help menu within the Console application
- All manuals can also be downloaded from help.uaudio.com

Additional Resources

For additional resources, or if you need to contact Universal Audio for assistance, see the Technical Support page.

AKG BX 20 Spring Reverb

The only AKG-licensed emulation of this one-of-a-kind spring reverb.

Introduced in the late 1960s, the AKG BX 20 reverb was a high-water mark for AKG's esteemed engineers. An ingenious assembly of mechanical and electronic componentry, the BX 20 offered the glorious depth and color of spring reverb without any of the limitations.

The AKG BX 20 Spring Reverb plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces is exclusively endorsed by AKG Acoustics, Austria and envelops your sources in gorgeously dark, dense ambience that only spring reverb can provide.

Now You Can:

- Mix with the only licensed and endorsed AKG Acoustics BX 20 reverb plug-in
- Envelop instruments in dark, dense, clear ambience with original dual spring tank configuration
- Harness new "plug-in only" features like stereoized A/B Tank Select, Direct signal defeat, and BX 10 Tone controls
- Mix with artist presets from Patrick Carney (The Black Keys), Vance Powell (Jack White), and Jacquire King (Kings of Leon)

Unparalleled Density

The AKG BX 20's utterly unique character makes it a versatile tool for ambience as well as tone shaping. Its sonic personality features the quick onset of a classic plate reverb, and also the natural-sounding density and diffusion of a chamber — with little of the flutter or "boing" artifacts common with other spring reverbs.

Unlike other spring reverb emulations, Universal Audio's hybrid delay network/ convolution design provides the only plug-in representation of this mechanically controllable, acoustic ambience system. To that end, UA obsessively emulated a "golden unit" BX 20 from legendary producer, Jon Brion.

Spring Time

The BX 20 plug-in expertly captures the hardware's unique two-stage decay. This yields warm, organic sounds whether it's applied on percussion, vocals, or guitars, adding a unique timbre that can make individual tracks stand out — or melt away — in your mix. Short textures are chock full of colorful depth and dimension, while longer decays are rife with lush three-dimensionality, while never washing out.

New Features, More Control

The BX 20 plug-in provides the complete sound and features of the original AKG hardware, plus many “Mk II” features for an expanded sound palette and modern DAW workflows. Tank Select provides the exact sound of the original A/B dual tank system, but now includes the option for a “stereoized” tank A or tank B, giving you more balanced stereo imaging.

The Direct function allows you to mute the tank’s direct signal, giving you more control and minimizing conflict with the original source audio — perfect for buses. The Baxandall-type tone controls — borrowed from the smaller AKG BX 10 unit — afford you the last bit of seasoning to tailor your reverb on any source.

AKG BX 20 interface

Operational Overview

The AKG BX 20 plug-in for UAD-2 is a faithful recreation of AKG's coveted spring reverb that captures the subtle nuances of the original BX 20's dual tank Torsion Transmission Line (TTL) reverb unit along with the R20 Decay Remote Control. Unique among its competitors, the AKG BX 20 creates dark, dense spring reverb ambience for buses or individual sources without the flutter or overly metallic sound of other spring reverb emulations.

Re-imagined for today's DAW workflows, the AKG BX 20 also includes features like stereoized A and B tanks for balanced stereo imaging, pre-delay, low-cut filter, dry/wet blend control, and independent left/right pan and volume controls.

The AKG BX 20's all-important TTL (Torsional Transmission Line) reverb system is fully represented, including all of the mechanical behaviors and idiosyncrasies that are part of the AKG BX 20's unique variable decay time. Within the interactive electromagnetic and mechanical nature of the design, the hardware exhibits a unique two-stage decay which is faithfully captured by the plug-in.

Hybrid Technology

The AKG BX 20 Spring Reverb is not a general impulse response ("IR") convolution reverb nor a typical algorithmic reverb. Instead, AKG BX 20 utilizes breakthrough hybrid technologies, combining advanced delay network and convolution technologies, layering impulse responses into a hybrid algorithmic plug-in design. Impulse responses are combined and synthesized in real time to match the onset of the reverb, regardless of the continuously adjustable decay time. The delay network component provides an uncanny model of the AKG BX 20's two stage decay, with DSP mechanisms keeping the two systems in sync.

Artist Presets

The AKG BX 20 includes artist presets from prominent UAD users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the DAW application's preset menu. The artist presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

> ***Note:*** *Switching through presets is not instantaneous and sonic artifacts can occur while the presets are loading. See Load Time below for related information.*

Load Time

When the Tank Select and Decay controls are modified, the impulse response engine is updated by the plug-in. These IR updates and recalculations are not instantaneous; there is a time lag before the new control values are heard. Additionally, sonic artifacts and/or host CPU increases can occur while these recalculations are performed if audio is currently being processed by the plug-in.

> ***Tip:*** *The Power Lamp is a status indicator that flashes while the impulse response engine is updated.*

Automation Limitations

The impulse response engine load time can be an impediment if the Tank Select, and to a lesser degree, Decay controls are modified with automation during a mix. We recommend against automating these specific controls to avoid sonic artifacts and/or host CPU increases. If automation must be used on these controls, only snapshot automation should be used (instead of continuous automation), and optimally only when the signal being processed is not audible (for example, between musical phrases).

AKG BX 20 Latency

The AKG BX 20 plug-in uses upsampling and other proprietary techniques to achieve sonic design goals. These techniques result in a larger latency than most other UAD plug-ins (between 974 and 4120 samples, depending on the sample rate). Precautions should be observed to prevent the extra latency from becoming an issue during live performance (such as when recording) or monitoring with Apollo's Console.

> ***Note:*** *See Additional Latency for related information.*

Apollo Console

AKG BX 20 latency can exceed the maximum value of Apollo Console's Input Delay Compensation engine. When the plug-in is used on input inserts (but not auxiliary buses) within Apollo's Console application, the "Input Delay Compensation Exceeded" dialog may appear. In this case, Console's Input Delay Compensation feature can be disabled (in the Console Settings window), or simply ignore the dialog.

Live Performance

Extra latency can be problematic during live performance if the plug-in is inserted into the signal chain of the source signal and the performer is monitoring the source signal chain. For this reason, the AKG BX 20 is recommended for use in auxiliary send/return configurations (as is typical with time-based effects) during live performance.

AKG BX 20 Controls

Input Select

Input Select can be changed when the plug-in is used in a stereo channel configuration. When used in a mono channel configuration, this control is locked in the mono position.

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/stereo-out configuration, there is no sonic difference when Input Select is switched between mono and stereo.*

Mono

When set to Mono, a stereo input signal is summed to mono before reverb processing. If the plug-in is inserted on a stereo signal, the reverb output is stereoized even if the stereo inputs are summed to mono.

Stereo

When set to Stereo, the stereo input signal is passed into the reverb processor.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the mono or stereo label text selects that configuration.*

Tank Select

The AKG BX 20 has two mono reverb tanks (the spring containers) and each has a unique sonic signature. This control determines which reverb tank is used for reverb processing.

The original hardware design incorporates the two spring tanks “a” and “b” which are associated with channels 1 and 2, respectively. As with the hardware, the plug-in allows for stereo input use with either a summed mono or discrete stereo input (single channel/mono use is also common). The AKG BX 20 plug-in faithfully captures this original stereo use case when “a/b” is selected with this control.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking any tank label text selects that tank.*

With the AKG BX 20, the two reverb tanks can behave and sound noticeably different from each other when used together as a stereo effect, which may not be suitable for all use cases. Therefore the AKG BX 20 plug-in goes beyond the hardware with useful stereoized versions of the original mono tanks when either the “a” or “b” tank is selected. These options provide two perfectly balanced stereo reverbs, each with unique sonic responses and decay behaviors.

> ***Note:*** *When Tank Select is adjusted, a time lag occurs before the new tank configuration is heard. The Power Lamp flashes while the impulse response engine is updated.*

Tank A

The stereoized Tank A features a dark and rich sound derived from a more intense reverberation of low frequencies. This darker reverb subdues reverberations of higher frequencies,allowing for a dissipation effect that warms the source it is applied to.

Tank B

The stereoized Tank B provides a bright and present response that sits forward in the mix allowing both the content and the reverberation to be more prominently heard. It alleviates the low to mid frequency reverberation build up associated with muddiness.

Tank A/B

When set to "a/b" the left signal is sent to Tank A and the right signal is sent to Tank B. Note that the A and B tanks are notstereoized in this mode. Instead, the original mono tank outputs are sent to the left and right channels respectively, resulting in a stereo reverb output.

> ***Note:*** *When used on mono signals, tank configurations A and B work in mono just like the hardware, while A/B sums both tanks.*

Direct

When Direct is engaged (when switch is depressed), the direct signal component within the reverberated signal is audible. When disengaged, the direct signal component is removed from the reverberated signal.

The naturally dominant direct signal component in spring-based systems can sometimes overwhelm the reverb's late field response with certain sources. The Direct control allows an alteration of the original reverberant sound by muting the spring tank's direct signal component, minimizing possible conflict with the original source audio.

Removing the direct signal component from the reverb is different than simply not mixing in the dry signal (as could be achieved with the Dry/Wet mix control). This is a UAD-only feature that is made possible by advanced modeling techniques.

Disabling the direct path signal enables greater BX 20 flexibility in ambience-shaping possibilities, especially with transient-rich sources such as drums and percussion.

Tone Controls

The tone controls affect both reverb tanks (a, b) and both channels (1, 2).

Bass

Bass controls the amount of low frequency reverberation processing. This continuous knob controls a Baxendall type filter centered at 150 Hz and spans a range of ±8 dB with a default setting of 0.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the "0" or "bass" label text returns the control to the default value of 0.*

Low Cut

The Low Cut button engages a high pass filter that reduces processing of frequencies below 80 Hz. This filter is useful for removing the buildup of low frequency reverberations that cause bass-heavy signals to sound muddy. The slope of the Low Cut filter is 12 dB per octave.

Treble

Treble controls the amount of high frequency reverberation processing. This continuous knob controls a Baxendall type filter centered at 5 kHz and spans a range of ±4 dB with a default setting of 0.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the "0" or "treble" label text returns the control to the default value.*

Dry/Wet

The Dry/Wet controls determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry, unprocessed) to 100% (wet, processed signal only). The default value is 15%.

> ***Note:*** *If Wet Solo is active, adjusting Dry/Wet will have no effect.*

Dry/Wet control behavior is based on a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is set to the 12 o'clock position, the blend value is 15%.

> ***Important:*** *When the Direct switch is engaged, Dry/Wet should be set to 100% (or engage Wet Solo) because the direct signal component is already mixed with the reverb signal. Otherwise, doubled and/or out-of-phase signals may be heard.*

Wet Solo

Wet Solo puts the plug-in into 100% Wet mode. When enabled, the dry unprocessed signal is muted and the dry/wet mix control has no effect.

Wet Solo is typically used when the plug-in is inserted on an auxiliary effect return bus that is configured for use with channel aux sends, for 100% wet send/return processing. When the plug-in is inserted on a track, Wet Solo is typically disabled so the dry/wet mix control can be heard.

Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control. The switch state is saved within host DAW project/session files, but it doesn't change when a preset is loaded; the current state always overrides the preset state.

This feature allows presets to be properly auditioned without changing the Wet Solo setting. If Wet Solo is disabled when a preset is loaded, the dry/wet mix value in the preset is loaded (and heard) and Wet Solo remains disabled. If Wet Solo is enabled when a preset is loaded, the dry/wet mix value in the preset is loaded (but not heard) and Wet Solo remains active.

The global feature means preset settings are always loaded appropriately, whether the plug-in is loaded in a track insert (where Wet Solo is typically disabled and the mix control used instead), or in an aux return (where wet solo is typically enabled, defeating the mix control for 100% wet send/return processing).

> ***Note (Pro Tools only):*** *The Wet Solo setting is saved and loaded in presets when using the Pro Tools preset manager. To audition presets without changing Wet Solo state, the Load Preset function within the UAD Toolbar must be used.*

Predelay

The time between the dry signal and the onset of reverb is controlled with this knob. The range is 0.0 to 250 milliseconds with a default setting of 0.

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is in the 12 o'clock position, the value is 50 milliseconds.

Higher Predelay values can be useful for tracks where the clarity of the source should stand out before the reverb starts.

Decay

Channel 1 and 2 Decay controls the duration of the unique two-stage decay/frequency control which is faithfully captured by the plug-in. The available range is from 2 seconds to 4.5 seconds. The default value is 3 seconds. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the Decay time.

> ***Note:*** *When Decay is adjusted, the impulse response engine is updated by the plug-in and there is a time lag before the new Decay value is heard. The Power Lamp flashes while the impulse response engine is updated.*

Link

When activated, Link enables the three controls that are identical for the Channels 1 and 2 (Decay, Volume, and Pan) to be ganged for ease of operation when both channels require the same values, or unlinked when independent left/right control is desired. When linked, modifying any left or right channel control causes its adjacent stereo counterpart control to snap to the same position.

> ***Important:*** *When Link is inactive then Link is enabled, the left channel control values are copied to the right channel. Control offsets between channels are lost in this case.*

Volume

Channel 1 and 2 Volume controls the relative volume of the AKG BX 20's spring reverb effect. It does not affect the dry signal.

Rotate the control clockwise for more reverb. Reducing the control to its minimum value will disable the reverb.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the "0" or "vol" label text returns the value to 0 dB.*

Pan

Channel 1 and 2 Pan controls determine the placement of the reverb signals in the stereo panorama when the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations. When the AKG BX 20 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the Pan controls are disabled.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the "0" or "pan" label text sets the value to center.*

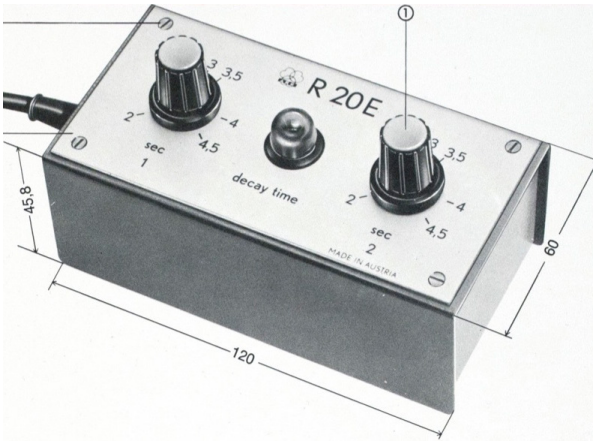
Power

The power button determines whether the plug-in is active. When engaged, the Power Lamp is illuminated. When set to off, the Power Lamp is de-illuminated indicating that all plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Tip: *The Power Lamp also functions as a Power button.*

Power Lamp

When the Power Lamp is illuminated, the reverberator is active. The Power Lamp flashes whenever the Tank Select or Decay controls are adjusted, indicating that a new impulse response is being loaded. After adjusting these controls, the Power Lamp remains solid again, indicating the new settings are active.



The AKG BX 20 original hardware spring reverb tank and remote control

All visual and aural references to the AKG® BX 20 Spring Reverb and all use of AKG's trademarks are being made with written permission from AKG by HARMAN.

Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Recorder

It's Not a Record Until it's Mastered on an Ampex® Tape Machine.

For more than three decades, the two-channel Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Recorder has turned music recordings into records. With its cohesive sound, punch, and ability to provide subtle-to-deep tape saturation and color, the Ampex ATR-102 is a fixture in major recording and mastering studios — and is considered by many engineers to be the best-sounding tape machine for final mixdown. The perfect complement to the workhorse Studer 800 Multichannel Tape Recorder, the Ampex ATR-102 plug-in can provide the final "analog polish" on your music, turning songs into albums.

Impeccably modeled in the renowned UAD engineering tradition — and incorporating presets from noted Ampex ATR-102 users Chuck Ainlay, Richard Dodd, Buddy Miller, Mike Poole, and more -- the Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Recorder plug-in emulation for UAD-2 faithfully replicates the unique dynamics, frequency response, and saturation characteristics of the original hardware. Scrutinized and fully authenticated by the Ampex Corporation, the sound of the Ampex ATR-102 plug-in for UAD-2 is virtually indistinguishable from its analog cousin.

Ampex ATR-102 interface

All visual and aural references to the Ampex Product and all use of Ampex's trademarks are being made with written permission from Ampex Corporation. Any references to third party tape formulations are used solely for identification and do not imply any endorsement by, or affiliation with, any tape manufacturer.

History

Introduced in 1976, the Ampex ATR-102 2-Track Tape Recorder was a near-instant hit, thanks to its revolutionary servo-controlled reel motors and capstan, which provided smooth, continuous tape tension and handling. The large capstan, and absence of pinch rollers, provided nearly non-existent speed drift and ultra-low flutter. The clever ATR-102 design allowed users to change out heads and guides in mere minutes, with a 1" head being a very popular "hot-rod" modification in more recent years — especially when running at 15 IPS (inches per second). The ATR's role in modern recording history is so prevalent, that it would be easier to list classic albums that weren't mixed down on this machine, rather than to try to list all those that were.

Plug-In Parameters

Like the ATR-102 hardware, the plug-in allows you to choose between various Signal Paths (Input, Sync, Repro), different Tape Speeds / Emphasis EQs (NAB, CCIR, AES) and Tape Formula combinations, even including home/consumer tape. The Input (Record) Gain knob and the Cal button are the primary controls for regulating levels, and even saturating the tape, and can be used to deliver a heavily colored sound if desired. Other ATR-102 features include: 1/4," 1/2," or 1" Head Select, Biasing/Calibration controls (auto and manual), crosstalk, adjustable wow and flutter, and adjustable tape delay, which can be used for Automatic Double Tracking effects on vocals, guitars, and more.

In Use

The primary use for Ampex ATR-102, and the recommended method for evaluating this plug-in, is as the last stereo insert on your master fader (or possibly the second-to-last insert before a brick-wall processor such as the UAD Precision Limiter). Set up the plug-in by first adjusting Tape Speed, Tape Formula, Cal Level, and Emphasis EQ, or simply select a preset. Note that as you lower the tape speed (i.e. 15 IPS, 7.5 IPS), the tape "sound" becomes more audible. Once this basic setup is made, adjust the L/R Record (input gain) levels for more or less tape/circuit coloration and saturation.

Other common uses for the Ampex ATR-102 are as individual mono or stereo insert effects, or as an auxiliary group effect where the user wishes to apply it only to specified sources or groups (e.g., drums, guitars, etc). Check out the ATR-102 Tips and Tricks blog article below to learn more.

- www.uaudio.com/blog/ampex-atr-102-tips-tricks

Operational Overview

Famous Tape Sound

The UAD Ampex ATR-102 provides all of the original unit's desirable analog sweetness. Like magnetic tape, users can dial in a clean sound, or just the right amount of harmonic saturation.

Mixdown Tape Deck

The primary purpose of the UAD Ampex ATR-102 is to obtain tape mixdown sonics within the DAW environment. To obtain the classic tape mixdown sound, instantiate the plug-in as the last insert on the output bus, after other processing is applied (or possibly as the second-to-last insert, before a brick-wall processor such as the (UAD Precision Limiter). Of course, creative "non-standard" results can be obtained by placing the Ampex ATR-102 in any channel insert or on buses in a send/return configuration.

Multiple Tape Types

The UAD Ampex ATR-102 models seven popular magnetic tape formulas. Each type has its own subtle sonic variation, distortion onset, and tape compression characteristics. The tape types that can be selected depend on the active tape speed and head type; all tape types are not available for all tape speeds and head types. Lower fidelity types are included to facilitate more signal coloration options.

Multiple Tape Heads

The original hardware machine was manufactured with an interchangeable head block system which enabled the system to be quickly converted to use either 1/4" or 1/2" tape stock by simply swapping out the heads and recalibrating the electronics. As track width increases, subtle improvements to stability, fidelity, and noise become apparent. A popular custom aftermarket tape head is available which enables the use of 1" tape stock, enabling even higher fidelity with its greater track widths. All three tape head widths are accurately modeled and selectable in the UAD Ampex ATR-102.

Multiple Tape Speeds

All four tape speeds in the original hardware are modeled in the UAD Ampex ATR-102. Speeds of 3.75, 7.5, 15, and 30 inches per second (IPS) are available. Each speed provides distinct frequency shift, head bump, and distortion characteristics. Higher speeds have higher fidelity; 3.75 IPS has a distinctively "lo fi" character.

Multiple Calibration Levels

Tape machines can be setup with different calibration levels, which entails setting unity gain from input through output based on the magnetic flux (amount of magnetic field) of a given tape formulation. Different calibration levels provide different tape response characteristics for a given level into the recorder. Four selectable calibration levels are available in the UAD Ampex ATR-102.

Ancillary Noises

Tape recorders have inherent signal noises that are a by-product of the electro-mechanical nature of the machine. While "undesirable" tape system noise is historically considered a negative and was an attribute that pushed the technical envelope for better machine design and tape formulas (and ultimately, "noiseless" digital recorders), noise is still an ever-present characteristic of the sound of using tape and tape machines.

The UAD Ampex ATR-102 models the hum, hiss, wow, flutter, and crosstalk characteristics of the original hardware. These noise components can be individually disabled, adjusted, and/or exaggerated for creative purposes (even though the servo-controlled, direct-drive capstan tape transport of the original hardware provides excellent wow and flutter specifications).

Modeled Transformer

The original hardware was manufactured with isolation transformers, which can color the signal. A common modification to the hardware tape machine eliminates the transformers from the signal path to produce a (subjectively) "cleaner" sound. UAD Ampex ATR-102 simulates the behavior of the transformers in the hardware circuit, and can be optionally disabled in the plug-in, providing both sonic options.

Tape Delay

A popular application of multi-head tape recorders is to employ them for slapback tape echo effects. If the machine is running in record mode but the recorded signal is monitored from the repro head (as opposed to the sync head), the physical space between these two heads results in a short delay between the signal sent to the recorder and the monitored signal. When these signals are combined with mixer routings, the classic
slapback echo is manifest. The UAD Ampex ATR-102 implements the ability to reproduce this classic effect with a simple set of controls, and expands the capabilities by extending the available delay times beyond what is possible in the physical realm.

Automatic Calibration

The ability of a magnetic tape recorder, which has inherently non-linear response characteristics, to accurately reproduce an audio signal with a minimum of noise and distortion requires precise adjustments to the system electronics. The calibration settings are based on the current tape speed, formulation, emphasis EQ, and tape width. The hardware must be meticulously re-adjusted each time a different tape, speed, emphasis EQ, or head width is used (and for system wear and drift, even if these variables are not changed). UAD Ampex ATR-102 has an automatic calibration feature that tunes all calibration electronics with a single button.

Low Level Tuning

Even though automatic calibration is available, the individual controls that adjust calibration are exposed for sonic manipulation. Playback EQ, record (tape) EQ, and record bias can easily be altered for manual calibration and/or creative purposes.

Manual Calibration Tools

UAD Ampex ATR-102 includes the full suite of tools required to manually calibrate the recorder. Manual calibration tools are provided so expert users can calibrate the system to their preferred methods for obtaining desired results. The manual calibration tools consist of a tone generator (with multiple test tones and levels), a distortion meter with digital readouts, and a full suite of Magnetic Reference Laboratory (MRL) alignment tapes, which are used to calibrate playback electronics.

Mono/Stereo Operation

While the UAD Ampex ATR-102 is a true stereo processor designed primarily for use in stereo-in/stereo-out configurations, it will also operate in mono-in/stereo-out and mono-in/mono-out modes.

When used in a mono-in/stereo-out configuration, the mono input signal is sent to both channels of the processor, which can then be adjusted independently. When used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, adjusting any left or right control will change both the left and right controls (the left/right controls are always linked in mono mode).

Quick Setup

Set up the plug-in by first adjusting Tape Speed, Tape Type (tape formulation), and Tape Speed, or simply select a factory preset. Note that as you lower the tape speed, the tape "sound" becomes more audible. Once this basic setup is made, adjust the L/R Record (gain) levels, for more or less tape/circuit coloration/saturation.

Artist Presets

UAD Ampex ATR-102 includes artist presets from prominent ATR-102 users. Some of the artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. Additional artist presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer. The additional presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Primary & Secondary Controls

The graphical interface panel has two modes; Open and Closed. In Closed mode, the primary controls (those that are typically most used) are available on the main panel interface and the tape reels are visible. Additional (typically less used) controls are available on the secondary panel in Open mode. The secondary controls panel is accessed by clicking the OPEN button beneath the AMPEX label.

Ampex ATR-102 interface in Open mode showing secondary controls

Primary Controls

Meters

The two Meters display signal levels of the plug-in for the left and right channels. Meter ballistics of the original hardware are modeled. The Meters can be switched to display input or output levels in peak or VU modes.

The Ampex ATR-102 "penthouse" showing meters and I/O controls

The plug-in operates at an internal level of -12 dBFS. Therefore a digital signal with a level of -12 dB below full scale digital (0 dBFS) at the plug-in input will equate to 0 dB on the Meters when Reproduce is in its calibrated position, which is marked with the "red arrow sticker."

When Path Select is set to Thru, the Meters indicate signal levels at the input of the plug-in prior to processing.

> ***Note:*** *Although there are separate left/right Meter controls for VU/Peak and Input/Output, these controls are permanently linked and cannot be switched individually for the left and right channels.*

Input/Output

These switches change the Meter to display levels at the input or output of the plug-in. Input metering is a UAD-only feature which is unavailable in the original hardware.

Input

When in Input mode, the Meter reflects the signal level after the Record (input) gain when Path Select is set to Sync or Repro. In Input mode when Path Select is set to Thru, the Meter reflects the pre-processed (raw input) signal level.

Output

When in Output mode, the meter reflects the signal level at the output of the plug-in, which is just after the Reproduce (output) gain.

Peak/VU

This switch is used to change Meter behavior between Peak or VU modes.

Clip LED

The left and right channels each have a Clip LED, just above the Meter. The Clip LED is not in the original hardware; it is a UAD-only feature.

The Clip LED illuminates only when the machine's audio electronics clip. The Clip LED is not affected by the recorded tape signal, even if the tape is overloaded and distorting.

Reproduce

Reproduce adjusts the signal level coming off the virtual tape before the signal is sent to the Meters. There are two Reproduce controls, one each for the left and right channels. The left/right Reproduce controls can be adjusted individually, or simultaneously adjusted when Link mode is active.

The available range is -∞ dB (off) to +9.48 dB. The default value of 0 dB is the "calibrated position" which is marked with a "red arrow sticker." Reproduce is not affected by Auto Cal.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "REPRODUCE" label text to return Reproduce to 0 dB.*

The Meters accurately reflect the output level (when set to Output mode) even if Reproduce is not in its calibrated position. However, if Reproduce is moved from the "cal" position, the Meters will no longer correspond to a particular level being recorded onto the virtual tape. In this case, the Meters will not reflect the actual "operating level" of the tape because Reproduce changes the signal level coming off the tape before it is sent to the Meters.

> ***Note:*** *The graphical interface panel values for Reproduce, which range from 0 - 10, are arbitrary and do not reflect a particular dB value.*

Record

Record adjusts the signal level into the plug-in and the tape circuitry. There are two Record controls, one for the left channel and one for the right. These left/right Record controls can be adjusted individually, or simultaneously when Link mode is active.

The available range is -∞ dB (off) to +9.3 dB. The default value is 0 dB. The graphical interface panel values, which range from 0 - 10, are arbitrary and do not reflect a particular dB value.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "RECORD" label text to return the Record value to 0 dB.*

Record is a primary "color" control for the plug-in. Just like genuine magnetic tape, lower Record levels will have a cleaner sound, while higher levels result in more harmonic saturation and coloration. Higher Record levels will also increase the output level from the plug-in. The Reproduce control can be lowered to compensate if unity gain operation is desired.

Reproduce/Record Controls Arrangement

Note that the Reproduce control is to the left of the Record control, which is atypical of most signal flow designs, where inputs usually precede outputs (flowing from left to right). This quirky arrangement of the Ampex ATR-102 I/O controls, where the input control "follows" the output control, is true to the original hardware design. In Controls View, the Record (input) control precedes the Reproduce (output) control.

Open/Close

The Secondary Controls are accessed by clicking the OPEN button beneath the AMPEX label. Conversely, the panel is closed by clicking the CLOSE button.

Link/Unlink

Link mode is a software-only addition that enables controls that are identical for the left and right channels to be linked for ease of operation when both channels require the same values, or unlinked when indepen dent left/right control is desired. In other words, left/right channel controls are ganged together in link mode.

The Link parameter is stored within presets and can be accessed via automation.

> ***Note:*** *Although there are separate left/right Meter controls for VU/Peak and Input/Output, these controls are permanently linked and cannot be switched individually for the left and right channels, even if Unlink mode is active.*

Link

In Link mode, modifying any left or right channel control causes its adjacent stereo counterpart control to snap to the same position.

> ***Important:*** *When Unlink mode is active and Link is enabled, the left channel control values are copied to the right channel. Control offsets between channels are lost in this case.*

When Link is active, automation data is written and read for the left channel only. In this case, the automation data for the left will control both channels. Additionally, changing the right channel parameters from a control surface or when in "controls only" (non-GUI) mode will have no effect.

Unlink

When Unlink is active, the controls for the left and right channels are independent. When unlinked, automation data is written and read by each channel separately.

Emphasis EQ

The Emphasis EQ buttons determine the active Emphasis EQ values and the frequency of the Hum noise. NAB or CCIR curves can be selected when the Tape Speed is 7.5 or 15 IPS. When the Tape Speed is 30 IPS, neither value is available (the LEDs are dimmed) because the EQ is fixed with the AES emphasis curve, per the original hardware. At 3.75 IPS, only NAB is available (as it is with the hardware).

NAB

When the value is set to NAB (traditionally the United States standard), the Hum Noise frequency is 60 Hz. When set to CCIR (traditionally the standard in Europe and other regions), the Hum Noise frequency is 50 Hz.

Tape Speed and Emphasis EQ were originally practical controls for recording duration versus noise and local standards. Historically, the origin of the tape machine (US or European) dictated the built-in EQ emphasis, but later machines like the Ampex ATR-102 had both circuits available.

CCIR

CCIR (also known as IEC1) is the EQ pre-emphasis made famous on British records and is considered the technically superior EQ; many say this EQ was part of the "British sound" during tape's heyday. NAB (also known as IEC2) was the American standard with its own sound. AES is truly standardized at 30 IPS and is the sole EQ found on the Ampex ATR-102 at 30 IPS.

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, the Meters and control LEDs are dimmed, the Bypass LED illuminates, and DSP usage is reduced. Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

OFF is similar to the Thru position in the Path Select control except that the Meters are still active when the Thru control is used. However, in this state, the Meters indicate signal levels at the input of the plug-in prior to processing.

> ***Note:*** *DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP Load-Lock is enabled (the default setting), activating OFF will not reduce DSP usage.*

Tape Speed

The Tape Speed control determines the speed of the tape transport, in inches per second (IPS). Tape Speed affects the recorder's fidelity and associated "head bump" sonics. Head bump is bass frequency build-up that occurs with magnetic tape; the dominant frequencies shift according to transport speed.

To change the Tape Speed value, click the IPS text values, or drag the knob, or click the knob then use the mouse scroll wheel.

15 IPS is considered the favorite for rock and acoustic music due to its low frequency "head bump" (low frequency rise) and warmer sound, while 30 IPS is the norm for classical and jazz due to its lower noise floor, greater fidelity and flatter response. 7.5 and 3.75 IPS are also available for an even more colored experience, with even greater frequency shift and other artifacts.

> ***Note:*** *The available parameter ranges of Tape Type, Head Width, and Emphasis EQ are affected by Tape Speed.*

Tape Type

Tape Type selects the active tape stock formulation. Seven Tape Types are modeled in the UAD Ampex ATR-102. To select the Tape Type, click the TAPE button to cycle through the available types, or click directly on the Tape Type value label. The active Tape Type is highlighted in yellow.

> ***Note:*** *The available Tape Types and defaults are dependent on the current Tape Speed and Head values.*

Each type has its own subtle sonic variation, distortion onset, and tape compression characteristics. Generally speaking, the lower the Cal Level for each formula, the higher the signal level required to reach saturation and distortion.

Cal Level

Cal Level automatically sets tape calibration/fluxivity. The Cal Level setting takes care of the setup one would need to make under equivalent hardware operation, and sets the reference tape/flux level without disturbing the (unity) gain of the plug-in.

To select the Cal Level, click the CAL button to cycle through the available levels, or click directly on the calibration value label. The active Cal Level is highlighted in yellow. The default value is +6 dB.

Because Cal Level affects the operating levels in the plug-in, it can be used to compensate for overly high (or low) levels at the input of the plug-in. For example, if the input is too hot, lowering the Cal Level will reduce the signal level without changing Record, which can affect the tape saturation characteristics.

> ***Note:*** *The noise floor is affected by the Cal Level when Noise Enable is active.*

As tape formulas advanced, their output level increased, thus lowering relative noise floor. Under normal use, the machine would be calibrated to the tape's output level. However, sometimes the machine is under-calibrated to leave more headroom for a broader sweet spot or to prevent electronics from clipping. Therefore, one can "go traditional" and calibrate to the recommended levels, or select a non-corresponding calibration setting.

As an example, if 456 is the selected Tape Type and when Cal is set at +6 (6 dB higher than the NAB tape standard), the reference flux level is 355 nWb/m (nanoweber per meter) and is 10 dB below the point where THD reaches 3% (referred to as the maximum operating level). Therefore, with a 1 kHz test tone at -12 dBFS sent to the plug-in, with Tape Type set to 456, Cal set to +6, and Auto Cal enabled, output levels of the plug-in will match the input level and fluxivity on the tape will be 355 nWb/m.

The tape manufacturer's recommended calibration settings for each Tape Type are shown in the table below.

Tape Manufacturer's Recommended Calibration Levels

Tape Type	Calibration	Flux Level
111	+0 dB	177 nWb/m
35-90	+3 dB	251 nWb/m
250	+3 dB	251 nWb/m
456	+6 dB	355 nWb/m
468	+6 dB	355 nWb/m
900	+9 dB	502 nWb/m
GP9	+9 dB	502 nWb/m

Tip: *The UAD Ampex ATR-102 default presets bank offers a variety of preset Tape Type, Tape Speed, CAL level, and EQ configurations that are commonly used for the recording of specific genres.*

Head Width

This control specifies the active tape head model. Head Widths of 1/4," 1/2," or 1" can be selected.

To select the Head Width, click the HEAD button to cycle through the available values, or click directly on the value label. The active Head Width is highlighted in yellow.

Note: *At tape speeds of 3.75" and 7.5" only the 1/4" head can be used. At these speeds, the 1/2" and 1" heads cannot be selected.*

Path Select

The Path Select buttons specify which of the four possible signal paths is active in the Ampex ATR-102. The active mode is indicated by an illuminated LED above its associated button. The default value is Repro.

Sync

Sync mode models the sound of direct tape recording and playback via the sync/record head, plus all corresponding machine electronics.

Sync mode is generally not used for playback due to its poorer frequency response, but it is included for authenticity and creative purposes.

Repro

Repro mode models the sound of tape recording through the record head and playback through the reproduction head, plus all corresponding machine electronics.

Input

Input mode emulates the sound of the Ampex ATR-102 through the machine electronics only, without tape sonics. This is the scenario when the machine is in live monitoring mode but the tape transport is not running.

Thru

Thru is a processor bypass control. When Thru is enabled, all controls are inactive, emulation processing is disabled, and DSP usage is reduced.

Thru behavior is similar to that of the OFF position in the POWER control, except that the Meters are still active in Thru mode. In this state, the Meters indicate signal levels at the input of the plug-in prior to processing.

> ***Note:*** *DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), activating Thru will not reduce DSP usage.*

Tape Reels Animation

When the secondary controls panel is closed, by default the graphical tape reels "spin" if the DAW transport is running. The tape reels animation can be disabled by clicking the capstan graphic. Re-clicking the capstan will re-start the animation.

The "spin state" is saved until it is changed again.

> ***Note:*** *Spinning reels automation is not supported in all hosts. In Sonar, the plug-in must be configured as a "tempo-based effect" for reels animation.*

Secondary Controls

The secondary controls adjust the various calibration, ancillary noise, tone generator, and tape delay parameters. The secondary controls panel is accessed by clicking the OPEN button beneath the AMPEX label.

AAmpex ATR-102 secondary controls

Auto Cal

The Ampex ATR-102 has individual calibration controls for adjusting sync (record) EQ, reproduction (playback) EQ, and record bias, which are used to compensate for the inherent non-linearities of tape systems. On the hardware, these controls are typically adjusted to calibrate the system for optimum response compensation due to tape non-linearities whenever the tape type, tape speed, emphasis EQ, or head width are changed.

When the Auto Cal (Automatic Calibration) ON button is clicked, the calibration EQ and bias controls are automatically adjusted to their "flat" calibrated position for the currently active Tape Type, Tape Speed, Emphasis EQ, and Head Type. The Auto Cal ON LED illuminates green when the calibration parameters (Shelf EQ, HF EQ, Repro HF, Repro LF, and Bias) are in their calibrated position.

Auto Cal is enabled by default. When Auto Cal is ON, the calibration parameters (Shelf EQ, HF EQ, Repro HF, Repro LF, and Bias) change values whenever Tape Type, Tape Speed, Emphasis EQ, or Head Type is modified. When Auto Cal is OFF, the calibration parameters do not change values when Tape Type, Tape Speed, Emphasis EQ, or Head Type is modified.

> ***Important:*** *Any calibration settings made manually are lost when Auto Cal is activated. Consider saving manual settings as a preset before activating Auto Cal.*

After Auto Calibration occurs, the automatically adjusted parameters can be modified to any other value if desired. If a calibration parameter is adjusted while Auto Cal is ON, the ON LED illuminates in red instead of green, indicating that the system is no longer in the calibrated state. If the moved controls are subsequently returned to their original position, the LED will return to its green state, indicating the unit is back in calibration.

> ***Tip:*** *To return any of the individual calibration controls to their "flat" (calibrated) position, click the label text adjacent to the control (or, simply re-click Auto Cal to return all calibration controls to their "flat" position).*

The Manual Calibration Procedure has instructions for performing system calibration manually.

Record EQ

The Record EQ controls (HF EQ and Shelf EQ) are applied in the tape recording circuit and affect tape saturation characteristics. They compensate for common residual HF loss due to bias optimization and system filtering, and affect HF content in the signal prior to the tape non-linearity.

HF EQ

HF EQ provides high frequency emphasis in the signal recorded to tape.

Shelf EQ

Shelf EQ is another control (in addition to HF EQ) provided to compensate for tape non-linearity. Although adjustment of this control is not part of the Ampex factory calibration procedure, it can be used for customized manual calibrations or creative purposes.

Repro EQ

The Repro EQ controls (Repro HF and Repro LF) are post-head controls for tape playback calibration. They affect the signal coming out of the tape circuitry in both Repro and Sync modes.

The Repro EQs are used as filters to shape the frequency response of the system in maintaining a flat response and enable compensation for any tape frequency loss or head wear.

Repro HF

Adjusts the tape playback high frequency content when Path Select is set to Sync or Repro.

Repro LF

Adjusts the tape playback low frequency content when Path Select is set to Sync or Repro.

Bias

This control adjusts the amount of bias in the record signal. Bias is defined as an oscillator beyond the audible range applied to the audio at the record head, allowing for adjustment of the record behavior. Ideal bias voltage settings provide maximum record sensitivity and low distortion. Intentionally overbiasing is a common technique especially for "tape compression" which produces a warmer, gently saturated sound. Underbiasing can also be used to add distortion and other nonlinear responses, similar to gate chatter or cold solder joints; extremely low voltages may even cause audio to drop out entirely.

Bias voltage, HF/Shelf EQ, and Emphasis EQ (CCIR, NAB, AES) all work together to provide a linear response to the recorded signal. The "flat" (calibrated position) is determined by tape speed, tape type, emphasis EQ, and head width.

Noise Enable

This is a global enable control for the Hum and Hiss effect. When Noise is ON, the level of Hum and Hiss can be independently adjusted using the Hum and Hiss Level controls.

The default values of 0 dB for Hum and Hiss are the actual modeled level in the original hardware. Noise is not affected by automatic calibration.

Hum

Determines the amount of Hum in the signal. Hum is added after the tape circuitry. This control affects both the left and right channels. Noise Enable must be ON for the Hum control to function.

The default value of 0 dB for Hum is the actual modeled level in the original hardware. This default value can be offset by ±25 dB.

The Hum frequency is dependent on the Emphasis EQ control. The frequency is 60 Hz when set to NAB (US) and 50 Hz when set to CCIR (European).

When Tape Speed is set to 30 IPS, the green Emphasis EQ LEDs are not illuminated (and cannot be switched), indicating that the Emphasis EQ is set to AES. However, the Hum frequency can still be set for 30 IPS mode by setting Emphasis EQ to NAB (for 60 Hz) or CCIR (for 50 Hz) prior to setting Tape Speed to 30 IPS.

Note: *When Tape Speed is 3.75 IPS, only 60 Hz is available.*

Hiss

Hiss determines the amount of tape hiss in the tape playback signal. The default value is 0 dB and can be offset by -25 dB to +50 dB for creative purposes. Noise Enable must be ON for this control to function.

Like the hardware, the amount of hiss is dependent on settings of the various controls and may subtly change based on the values of Path Select, Tape Type, Emphasis EQ, Cal Level, Bias, Playback EQs, and Output Level.

Hiss Level is not affected by automatic calibration, so its level does not change with Tape Speed. When Hiss Level is at its default position (0 dB), the amount of hiss present in the signal is as if the Tape Speed is 15 IPS. To emulate the amount of hiss at the other tape speeds, enter the offsets from the table below.

Tape Speed	Hiss Level Setting
30 IPS	-8 dB
15 IPS	0 dB
7.5 IPS	12.5 dB
3.75 IPS	17 dB

Hiss Level Offsets

> ***Note:*** *Because hiss noise is an element of tape playback, Hiss is disabled when Path Select is set to Input.*

Wow & Flutter Enable

These buttons are global enable/disable controls for the Wow and Flutter effects. When Wow & Flutter is ON, the level of Wow and Flutter can be independently adjusted using the Wow and Flutter Level controls.

Wow and Flutter are “undesirable” pitch modulations induced by the mechanical components of the tape transport. Wow is a by-product of capstan irregularities, while flutter is a by-product of tape stretching and sticking. Both can be effectively used for creative purposes.

Wow usually refers to very low frequency fluctuations, while Flutter refers to faster fluctuations. Wow and flutter is measured as the percentage of deflection from the original pitch. Both are more pronounced at lower tape speeds.

> ***Note:*** *Wow and Flutter levels change with Tape Speed, but they are not affected by automatic calibration.*

Wow

Determines the amount of Wow in the signal. Wow & Flutter Enable must be ON for this control to function.

Flutter

Determines the amount of Flutter in the signal. Wow & Flutter Enable must be ON for this control to function.

Crosstalk Enable

These buttons are global enable/disable controls for the Crosstalk Level (XTALK) parameter. When Crosstalk is ON, the amount of Crosstalk can be adjusted using the Crosstalk Level control.

Crosstalk is the amount of signal bleed between the left and right channels. Crosstalk sonics can vary based upon the Tape Speed and Head Width parameters, however the amount of crosstalk does not vary with these settings.

Crosstalk Level

This control determines the amount of signal crosstalk. Crosstalk Enable must be ON for the Crosstalk Level control to function. The default value of -45 dB is the actual modeled level in the original hardware. The available range is -50 dB to -10 dB. Crosstalk Level is not affected by automatic calibration.

Transformer Enable

These ON/OFF buttons enable and disable the transformer circuit of the Ampex ATR-102. For an overview of this feature, see Modeled Transformer.

Tape Delay

These parameters control the built-in Tape Delay, which creates tape echo effects. For an overview of this feature, see Tape Delay. The Tape Delay controls are not available in the original hardware.

> ***Note:*** *Tape Delay is not available when Path Select is set to Input or Thru, nor when the Manual Calibration Tools are active.*

Tape Delay Enable

These buttons are global enable/disable controls for the Tape Delay effect. When Tape Delay is ON, its red numerical display is active, and other Tape Delay parameters can be adjusted.

Dry/Wet Mix

The Dry/Wet push buttons control the mix of the Tape Delay effect. The amount of dry and wet signals are displayed as percentages.

Click the Dry button to increase the dry signal level by 1%, or the Wet button to increase the delayed signal level by 1%.

> ***Tip:*** *Hold the Dry/Wet buttons down to rapidly change the mix values. For fine control in increments/decrements of 0.1%, hold down Shift while changing values.*

Delay Time

The left and right channel delay times can be independently adjusted with these controls. Click the "+" or "-" buttons to change the delay times in increments of 10 milliseconds. The available range is 0 - 1000 milliseconds.

> ***Tip:*** *Hold the +/- buttons down to rapidly change the delay times. For fine control in increments/decrements of 1ms, hold down Shift while changing values.*

The default Delay Time values depend on the current Tape Speed, and represent the actual delay time that would occur in the physical realm, reflecting the elapsed time between the signal put on tape at the record/sync head and its reproduction at the playback/repro head. These "physical" default times are shown in the table below.

Tape Speed	Delay Time
30 IPS	62 ms
15 IPS	124 ms
7.5 IPS	248 ms
3.75 IPS	496 ms

Delay Time default values

> ***Important:*** *When the tape speed is changed, the current delay time is changed to reflect the new "physical time" between the sync and repro heads for the new tape speed, and previously set values are lost if the tip below is not used.*

> ***Tip:*** *To retain custom delay times when changing Tape Speed, hold Shift when changing Tape Speed.*

Manual Calibration Tools

These controls are the suite of tools included to perform manual calibration of the recorder. These UAD-only tools are not in the original hardware. Manual calibration is entirely optional, as the Auto Cal feature can quickly and automatically calibrate the system.

The manual calibration tools consist of an "external" tone generator with multiple test tones and levels, a distortion meter with digital readouts, and a full suite of modeled Magnetic Reference Laboratory (MRL) alignment tapes.

> ***Note:*** *The Manual Calibration Tools are operational only when Path Select is set to Sync or Repro. Additionally, the tools may not operate in some hosts unless audio is present on the track containing the plug-in and the transport is running. Placing the plug-in on an aux, bus, or master output may eliminate this host limitation.*

This section describes the functions of the manual calibration tools. For instructions on how to use the tools to perform a manual system calibration, see the Manual Calibration Procedure.

About MRL Alignment Tapes

Alignment tapes are carefully recorded with accurate and consistent flux levels and test tone frequencies. They are constant companions to all well-maintained professional tape machines. Different alignment tapes are required for each tape speed, head width, equalization standard (CCIR/IEC or NAB), and fluxivity level.

Alignment tapes are required for system calibration and adjustment so that playback of previously-recorded session tapes will have correct and consistent equalization and levels, regardless of when, or where, the session tape was originally recorded.

After tape playback system EQ and levels are calibrated to match the known-to-be-correct values of the alignment tape(s), the record-side alignment is performed. The entire record/playback system will then have proper EQ and gain structuring.

Magnetic Reference Laboratory ("MRL") is a company that produces alignment tapes. The MRL tapes used in the UAD Ampex ATR-102 are fringing compensated. In-depth discussions about fringing compensation and system alignment are beyond the scope of this manual; thorough resources are available from the MRL website:

- www.mrltapes.com

Manual Cal Knob

The Manual Cal knob performs two functions: it sets the signal level of the "external" test tone generator for record calibration, and specifies when alignment tapes are to be used for playback calibration.

When set to -16 dB, -6 dB, or +4 dB, a generated sine wave test tone at the frequency specified by the Tones buttons is sent to the input of the record circuitry. This mode emulates sending external test tones into the system. The level of the test tone is set by the knob position and remains static regardless of other parameter values.

When set to MRL, a test tone from the "alignment tape" is sent into the playback circuitry. The MRL frequency is also specified by the Tones buttons, but the levels used are from the calibrated alignment tape. Therefore the MRL tone levels are dependent on other tape parameter values.

Tones

The Tones buttons set the frequency of the "external" test tone generator and the MRL tape test tones. Tone frequencies of 50 Hz, 100 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 5 kHz, 10 kHz, 15 kHz, and 20 kHz are available.

Click a button to specify that frequency; the active frequency's button is shadowed gray as if in the "down" position.

Distortion Meter

The red numerical display, between the Manual Cal knob and the Tones buttons, represents the amount (displayed as a percentage) of third harmonic distortion present in each of the left and right channels. This feature can be useful for custom calibration techniques.

When the Manual Cal knob is set to -16 dB, -6 dB, or +4 dB, the value represents third harmonic distortion in the tape playback circuit. Generally speaking, increasing Record (input) will increase distortion while in this mode, as tape saturation increases.
If Bias is set very low, distortion may increase at lower Cal Levels.

> ***Note:*** *When the Manual Cal knob is set to MRL, the Distortion Meter is inactive (there is no distortion display in this mode).*

Manual Calibration Procedure

Manual calibration tools are provided so expert users can calibrate the system to their preferred methods for obtaining desired results. For example, some technicians may prefer adjustments for lowest distortion at a certain frequency; setting bias for maximum sensitivity (instead of overbiasing); or other non-standard techniques.

The calibration procedure described here is the most commonly used technique, and is the (albeit simplified) method recommended by the Ampex Operation and Service Manual.

Important: *Manual calibration is not required to use UAD Ampex ATR-102. Following this procedure will result in the same (or nearly the same) values obtained by simply using the Auto Cal feature.*

Tip: *When making manual calibration settings, consider disabling Auto Cal so the manually calibrated values are not accidentally lost if any of the controls that force automatic calibration (Tape Type, Tape Speed, Emphasis EQ, and Head Width) are inadvertently modified.*

Preparation

- Reduce monitoring system volume to avoid loud sine wave Tones.
- Insert UAD Ampex ATR-102 on the DAW output bus (see note below).
- Set Path Select to Repro mode (Sync mode is not supported for manual cal).
- Set left and right Meter Input/Output switches to the “OUTPUT” position.
- Set left and right Meter Peak/VU switches to the “VU” position.
- Set Tape Speed, Tape Type, Cal Level, and Head Width to desired values.
- If Tape Speed is set to 3.75 IPS, set Cal Level to +3 dB.
- Disable Noise Enable (excessive Hiss may contribute to incorrect results).
- Do not change the above settings throughout the procedure.
- For related information, see the Manual Calibration Notes at the end of this chapter.

Note: *The Manual Calibration Tools are operational only when Path Select is set to Sync or Repro. Additionally, the tools may not operate in some hosts unless audio is present on the track containing the plug-in and the transport is running. Placing the plug-in on an aux, bus, or master output may eliminate this host limitation.*

Repro Level Calibration

1. Set the Manual Cal Knob to the MRL position. The built-in alignment tape tone will sound and its level can be viewed on the Meters.

2. Set the Tones frequency to 1 kHz.

3. Adjust Reproduce (output) so the Meters display 0 dB.

Repro EQ Calibration

4. Set the Tones frequency to 10 kHz.

5. Adjust Repro HF (not to be confused with HF EQ) so the Meters display 0 dB.

6. Set the Tones frequency to 100 Hz.

7. Adjust Repro LF so the Meters display 0 dB (or as close as possible).*

*Because the MRL alignment tapes we used have fringing compensation, it may not be possible to increase Repro LF enough to make the meter reach 0 dB at low frequencies. If a flat response is desired, you can switch the Manual Cal knob from MRL mode to the "external" tones then readjust Repro LF for flat response (0 dB) using the external tones instead of the MRL tones.

> ***Note:*** *If Repro HF and/or Repro LF EQs are adjusted by a large amount, it may be necessary to recalibrate the output level (steps 1-3).*

Record Bias Calibration

8. Set the Manual Cal Knob to the tone level positions below (the tone level depends on tape speed).

9. Set the Tones to the values below (the frequency depends on tape speed).

Tape Speed	Tone Frequency	Tone Level
3.75 IPS	2.5 kHz	-16 dB
7.5 IPS	5 kHz	-6 dB
15 IPS	10 kHz	+4 dB
30IPS	20 kHz	+4 dB

Record Bias Calibration Frequencies and Levels

10. Adjust Bias throughout its range until the Meters reach the maximum level achievable with the Bias control.*

*If the meters reach their maximum "pinned" value, you may temporarily reduce the Reproduce level to lower the meters, so the maximum achievable level can be accurately viewed (the maximum achievable level may be higher than the pinned value of 3 dB).

11. Increase Bias (clockwise) until the meter level is reduced by -3.5 dB from its maximum (for 3.5 dB of overbias; see Manual Calibration Notes).*

*When calibrating at 3.75 or 7.5 IPS, the tone generator is at a lower level, therefore meter resolution is decreased. To increase meter precision when adjusting bias at the lower tape speeds, consider temporarily increasing the reproduce level.

Record Level Calibration

12. Set the Tones frequency to 1 kHz.

13. Adjust Record (input) so the Meters display the levels for Record and HF EQ Adjustments below (the level depends on tape speed).

Tape Speed	Meter Level
3.75 IPS	-20 dB
7.5 IPS	-10 dB
15 IPS	0 dB
30IPS	0 dB

Meter Levels for Record and HF EQ Adjustments

Record EQ Calibration

14. Set the Tones frequency to the values below (the frequency depends on tape speed).

Tape Speed	Tone Frequency	Tone Level
3.75 IPS	5 kHz*	-16 dB
7.5 IPS	10 kHz	-6 dB
15 IPS	15 kHz	+4 dB
30IPS	20 kHz	+4 dB
*Note: 7.5 kHz is specified in Ampex manual.		

Record HF EQ Calibration Frequencies and Levels

15. Adjust Record HF EQ (not to be confused with Repro HF) so the Meters display the level above (the level depends on tape speed).

> ***Note:*** *If HF EQ is adjusted by a large amount, it may be necessary to recalibrate the record level (steps 12, 13).*

The manual calibration procedure is complete.

For related information, see the Manual Calibration Notes in the next section.

Manual Calibration Notes

- 0 dB on the output meter represents +4 dBm (and -12 dBFS digital) when Reproduce is in its calibrated position, which is marked with the “red arrow sticker.”
- For proper calibration, follow the entire calibration procedure in order.
- This example uses 3.5 dB overbias. The amount of gain reduction in step 12 determines the amount of overbias. In some cases we used more than 3.5 dB of overbias to achieve a flatter response.
- Generally speaking, higher Cal Level values will have higher Distortion Meter values for a given reading on the Meters. If Bias is set very low, distortion may increase at lower Cal Levels.
- We recommend leaving the record SHELF EQ control in its default position.
- The Ampex ATR-102 hardware has an additional gain control via a setscrew (like Repro HF/LF, Bias, etc) which is usually used for manual gain calibrations. This control is not available in the plug-in because it would be redundant - the Reproduce control performs the same function.
- We chose to calibrate our reference machine using MRL fringing-compensated calibration tapes, without later adjusting the Repro LF EQ for unity gain using external test tones. Therefore the calibrated values in the plug-in reflect this alignment method. In-depth discussions about fringing compensation and system alignment are beyond the scope of this manual; thorough resources are available from the MRL website: www.mrltapes.com
- Tape Type 111 uses a calibration level of 0 dB. This value is not available in the plug-in, but it can be emulated by setting the CAL level to +3 dB, then reducing the input level (Record knob) by -3 dB and increasing the output level (Reproduce knob) by +3 dB.
- The plug-in operates at an internal level of -12 dBFS. Therefore a digital signal with a level of -12 dB below full scale digital (0 dBFS) at the plug-in input will represent 0 dB on the plug-in meters (if the plug-in is calibrated).
- The included Artist Presets demonstrate how manual calibration can be used to obtain sonic variations.

Tip: *For easy recall in future sessions, save unique calibrations as a preset.*

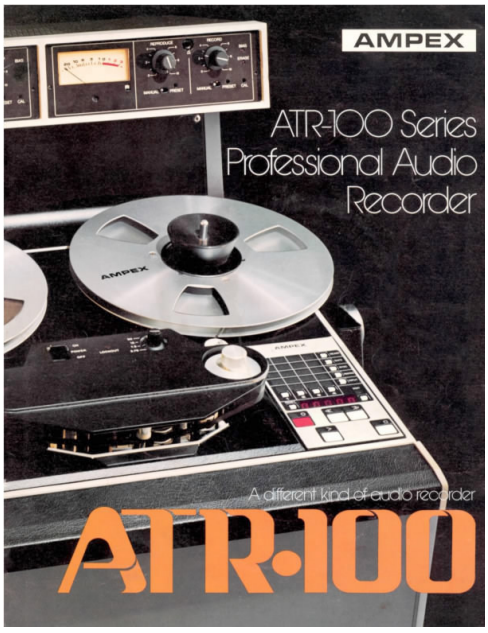
Parameter Dependencies

Available Settings

Some ATR-102 parameter value ranges depend on the value of other parameters. These dependencies are listed in the table below.

Ampex ATR-102 parameter dependencies

Tape Speed	Head Width	Tape 1	Tape 2	Tape 3	Tape 4	Emphasis EQ
30 IPS	1"	250	456	468	GP9	AES
30 IPS	1/2"	250	456	900	GP9	AES
30 IPS	1/4"	250	456	900	GP9	AES
15 IPS	1"	250	456	468	GP9	NAB
15 IPS	1"	250	456	468	GP9	CCIR
15 IPS	1/2"	250	456	900	GP9	NAB
15 IPS	1/2"	250	456	900	GP9	CCIR
15 IPS	1/4"	250	456	900	GP9	NAB
15 IPS	1/4"	250	456	900	GP9	CCIR
7.5 IPS	1/4"	250	456	35-90	111	NAB
7.5 IPS	1/4"	250	456	35-90	111	CCIR
3.75 IPS	1/4"	250	456	35-90	111	NAB
3.75 IPS	1/4"	250	456	35-90	111	CCIR
*Note: 7.5 kHz is specified in Ampex manual.						



Original Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Recorder brochure

API 500 Series EQ Collection

The world's most accurate emulations of API's legendary EQs.

The API 500 Series EQ Plug-In Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces faithfully captures the punch, low-frequency transparency, and ultra-tight imaging of API's iconic 550A and 560 Series EQs. With unique filter shapes, complex band interactions, and musical filter amp distortions, the 550A and 560

Series EQs left an indelible stamp on legendary recordings of the '60s and '70s. Painstakingly modeled on pristine early-'70s units provided by Ross Hogarth and Capitol Studios, the API 500 Series EQ Collection gives you stunningly accurate, end-to-end modeling of these revered EQs.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with full-circuit emulations of API's iconic 550A and 560 EQs
- Harness API's musical filter amp distortions and musical clipping behaviors
- Use API's proprietary "Proportional Q" for more precise control over your sources
- Mix with artist presets from Ross Hogarth (Van Halen, Mötley Crüe), Darrell Thorp (Beck, Radiohead), and Vance Powell (Jack White, Kings of Leon)

550A Parametric EQ

Introduced in 1971, the 550A was the standard channel EQ module on API's first consoles. Its three overlapping bands of parametric EQ, independent 50 Hz to 15 kHz band-pass filter, and individually selectable peaking or shelving modes make it the perfect tool for getting drums and guitars to stand out in the mix.

560 Graphic EQ

With ten bands of graphic EQ, the 560 EQ is ideal for shaping your mix with surgical precision. API's proprietary "Proportional Q" intuitively widens bandwidth at lower boost/cut levels and narrows it at higher levels, giving you more musical control over precise bands of your mix.

API 550A EQ (left) and API 560 EQ (right) interfaces

Operational Overview

API 500 Series Collection

The API 500 Series EQ Collection includes the API 550A and API 560 plug-ins, which are officially licensed from and endorsed by Automated Processes Inc. Both plug-ins meticulously model the entire electronic path, including custom API 2520 op-amps, transformers, band interactions, and internal clipped filter nonlinearities.

API 550A

The API 550A provides reciprocal equalization at 15 points in five steps of boost or cut to a maximum of ±12 dB of gain at each point. The fifteen fixed equalization points are divided into three overlapping band ranges. The high and low frequency bands are individually selectable to function as either peaking or shelving filters. A bandpass filter may be inserted independently of all other selected equalization settings.

API 560

The 10 precision EQ bands make the 560 ideal for signal sweetening and mix tuning. The boost and cut characteristics are identical, allowing previous actions to be undone if desired.

Proportional Q

The 550A and 560 filters feature API's "Proportional Q" which continuously narrows the bandwidth of the filter as band gain is increased, providing (as stated by API) "an uncomplicated way to generate acoustically superior equalization."

Artist Presets

The API 500 Series EQ Collection includes artist presets from prominent API users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

API 550A Controls

Band Controls

The three EQ bands (HF/MF/LF) are controlled by dual-concentric switches. The inner knob controls the band frequency and the outer knob controls the band gain. Available values for these controls are listed in the table below.

Band	Frequency Values	Gain Values (±dB)
High Frequency (HF)	5, 7, **10**, 12.5, 15 (kHz)	**0** 2 4 6 9 12
Mid Frequency (MF)	0.4, 0.8, **1.5**, 3, 5 (kHz)	
Low Frequency (LF)	50, 100, **200**, 300, 400 (Hz)	
Default values are in **bold**		

API 550A Frequency and Gain Values

Frequency

Frequency determines the center frequency of the band when the filter is in peak mode and the cutoff frequency when the filter is in shelf mode. The frequency for the band can be set using any of these four methods:

1. Drag the inner concentric knob to the desired value, or
2. Hover over the inner concentric knob then use the mouse scroll wheel, or
3. Click directly on the frequency value label to switch to that value, or
4. Click on the band label (HF/MF/LF) or units label (kHz/Hz) to cycle through available values.

Gain

The gain for the band can be set using any of these four methods:

- Drag the outer concentric knob handle to the desired value
- Click the “+” or “-” text labels to increment/decrement values
- Hover over the outer concentric knob then use the mouse scroll wheel
- Click directly on the gain value label to switch to that value (this method works only when Controls Mode is set to “Circular” in the UAD Meter & Control Panel application’s Configuration panel)

Bandpass Filter (FLTR)

The FLTR switch applies a 50 Hz - 15 kHz bandpass filter to the entire signal. The bandpass filter is completely independent from the from the three main band filters.

Bell/Shelf Switches

The HF and LF bands are normally in bell mode. When the Bell/Shelf button is engaged for the band (in the darker “down” position), the band is switched to shelving mode.

LF Shelf

When the LF Shelf button is engaged, the low frequency band is switched to shelving mode.

HF Shelf

When the HF Shelf button is engaged, the high frequency band is switched to shelving mode.

Output

This control provides -24 dB to +12 dB of clean uncolored gain at the output of the plug-in.

Tip: *Click the “0” text label to return Output to the 0 dB position.*

EQ In

The EQ In switch enables the three band filters and the bandpass filter. All filters are active when the switch is engaged and the “IN” LED is illuminated.

When disengaged, the filters are bypassed but other hardware circuitry is still modeled.

Power

The plug-in is active when the POWER switch is engaged and its associated LED is illuminated. When this switch is off, all plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 LoadLock is enabled).

API 560 Controls

Note: *Like the original 560 hardware, the signal is boosted by approximately 1 - 1.5 dB even when all gain sliders are set to 0 dB.*

Gain Sliders

Each of the 10 sliders controls the gain for one frequency band. Each band can be adjusted to boost or cut the frequency by up to ±12 dB. The available band frequencies are listed below.

API 560 Frequencies

31 Hz	63 Hz	125 Hz	250 Hz	500 Hz	1 kHz	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	16 kHz

Tip: *To return a slider to the 0 dB position, click the slider's frequency text label. To reset all sliders to 0 dB, click the "0" text label above the sliders.*

Output

This control provides -24 dB to +12 dB of clean uncolored gain at the output of the plug-in.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return Output to the 0 dB position.*

EQ In

The EQ In switch enables the filter sliders. The EQ bands are active when the switch is engaged and the associated "IN" LED is illuminated.

When disengaged, the EQ bands are bypassed but other hardware circuitry is still modeled.

Power

The plug-in is active when the POWER switch is engaged and its associated LED is illuminated. When this switch is off, all plug-in processing is disabled.

Historical Background

API (Automated Processes Inc.) was formed in 1968 with Saul Walker and Lou Lindauer. API is perhaps most noted for their modular approach to equipment manufacturing and for their now legendary 2520 amplifier. To this day, the extraordinary headroom made possible with the 2520 offers consistent analog performance even when using radical EQ curves. API quickly became the leading audio broadcast console manufacturer for radio and television networks and high profile stations. Soon after, recording studios both large and small began using API. The API brand and the company's commitment to excellent audio design endures to this day.

The 550A became API's standard channel module EQ when the company began manufacturing consoles in 1971. As the industry rapidly embraced the sonic quality of the 550A, it quickly found it's way into many custom console designs by Frank DeMedio and other leading engineers. Many of these consoles are still in use today. Forty years later, the 550A remains the standard against which other EQs are measured, and it has played a major role in the recording industry for decades. With virtually all existing units spoken for, popular demand for this EQ resulted in API finally resuming production in 2004.

The API 500 Series EQ Collection Original Hardware

API 2500 Bus Compressor

An obsessively accurate emulation of API's flagship compressor.

Considered the best of API's Paul Wolff-era designs, the API 2500 Bus Compressor is a permanent fixture on the 2-bus of many the world's top engineers and producers. Its dual-channel design adds energy, movement, and tone to stereo mixes unlike any other compressor.

The API 2500 Bus Compressor plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces is a spot-on emulation of the ultimate 2-bus workhorse, capturing its all-discrete circuit path, including fanatically detailed renderings of API's custom transformers and 2510 and 2520 op amps.

Now You Can:

- Dramatically improve your mixes with an all-encompassing circuit emulation of API's iconic 2-bus compressor
- Select between "Old" and "New" compression, selecting between feedback and feed forward sounds
- Enhance and quicken your workflow with plug-in-only Mix and Headroom controls
- Punch up low frequency dynamic range with API's patented Thrust® technology
- Contour your mix's left/right dynamic interaction with API's unique Link controls
- Mix with artist presets from Jeff Balding (Faith Hill, Trace Adkins), Vance Powell (Chris Stapleton, Jack White), Ryan Hewitt (The Avett Brothers, Red Hot Chili Peppers) and more

The Only End-to-End API 2500 Emulation

Poring over proprietary "for-your eyes-only" schematics made available by API, UA's team of DSP experts analyzed two AP2500s — rackmount and in-console — ensuring one of UA's tightest behavioral circuit models to date. Then, together with API's engineers, we scrutinized every facet of the plug-in against its analog counterpart, bringing forth the definitive representation of this iconic compressor.

Built for the 2-Bus

API designed the 2500 compressor with program material firmly in mind. Its Attack and Release settings include fixed or variable options while the Threshold and Ratio controls offer musical tweaking throughout their range, making the API 2500 a tone-filled dynamics overlord for your stereo bus.

Shaping Tone and Dynamics

Along with three custom-voiced compression Knees, “Old” selects characterful feedback, peak-detection operation harkening API’s earliest 525 module, as well as Fairchild and 1176 compressors, while “New” employs API’s modern feed forward design.

Thrust Control for Unmatched Punch

Taken from their Paragon series of consoles, the API 2500’s Thrust feature puts a filter before the RMS detector, evening high and low frequency energy, so neither triggers the compressor more than the other. This feature gives you a tight punch beyond any other compressor available.

Enhance Energy and Motion

Most compressors only allow you to turn left/right linking on or off. The API 2500 Bus Compressor Link parameters allow for precision control of your mix’s L/R dynamic interaction. Set exactly how much dependence — or independence — you want your L/R spatial dynamics field to have, and hone your dynamic contours even further with the Shape control.

Artist Presets

The plug-in includes artist presets from Jeff Balding (Faith Hill, Trace Adkins), Vance Powell (Chris Stapleton, Jack White), Ryan Hewitt (The Avett Brothers, Red Hot Chili Peppers) and more.

The artist presets are in the internal factory bank. They can be accessed via the host application’s preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or via Apollo’s Console 2 preset manager.

API 2500 Bus Compressor interface

API 2500 Controls

Note: *Some knob settings, when compared to the graphical user interface silkscreen numbers, may not match the actual parameter values. This behavior is identical to the original hardware, which is modeled exactly. When the plug-in is viewed in parameter list mode (Controls View within DAW), the actual parameter values are displayed.*

Compressor Section

THRESHOLD

This continuously variable knob determines the amount of compression to be applied to the input signal. Rotate THRESHOLD clockwise to lower the threshold and increase compression. Signals below the threshold are not compressed. The available range is +10 to -20 dB.

THRESHOLD LED

The red LED above the THRESH knob indicates when gain reduction is occurring in the compression circuit. The LED glows brighter as compression increases.

ATTACK

The ATTACK knob sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal reaches the THRESHOLD level before compression is applied.

Seven fixed rates are available. The faster the attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold. Slower attacks allow a signal's attack transients (for example, the pluck of a string) to pass without compression, which can produce a punchier sound.

Available Attack Times

30 µs	100 µs	300 µs	1 ms	3 ms	10 ms	30 ms

RATIO

The RATIO knob defines the amount of gain reduction to be processed by the compressor. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being attenuated to 10 dB.

> ***Note:*** *Signals must exceed the THRESHOLD value before they are attenuated by the RATIO amount.*

Seven ratios are available. Higher ratios produce a more compressed sound. When the control is at maximum (∞), the ratio is effectively infinity to one, producing a limiting effect.

Available Ratio Values

1.5:1	2:1	3:1	4:1	6:1	10:1	∞:1

RELEASE (fixed)

The first RELEASE knob (to the left of variable knob) sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal drops below the THRESHOLD before compression processing is ceased.

Six rates are available. When this control is set to the fully clockwise position, continuously variable release times can be adjusted with the RELEASE (variable) knob.

Available Fixed Release Times

50 ms	100 ms	200 ms	500 ms	1 sec	2 sec	Variable

RELEASE (variable)

The second RELEASE knob (rightmost knob in compressor section) continuously adjusts the compressor's release time if the RELEASE (fixed) knob to the left of this control is at the fully clockwise position. The available range is 50 milliseconds to 3 seconds.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect unless RELEASE (fixed) is set to the fully clockwise position.*

> ***Tip:*** *Click a value text label to select the value.*

Tone Section

KNEE

The threshold knee (the compression onset characteristic) of the API 2500 can be set to SOFT, MEDIUM, or HARD. To change the KNEE setting, click the desired value or click the KNEE button to cycle through the available values.

Available KNEE Values

SOFT – Provides a subtle transition into compression, resulting in a less obvious effect.

MEDIUM – Provides a slight "fade-in" transition into compression.

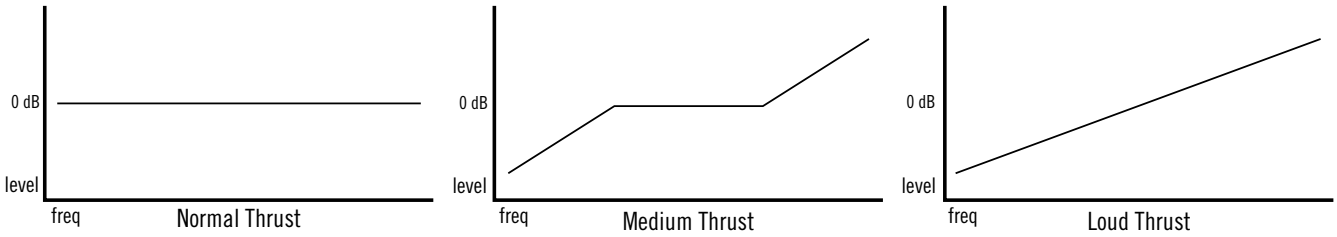
HARD – Provides a more typical, sharp transition into compression.

THRUST

THRUST can be set to NORMAL, MEDIUM, or LOUD. To change the THRUST setting, click the desired value or click the KNEE button to cycle through the available values.

THRUST is an API-patented circuit that inserts a high-pass filter in the control sidechain at the input of the RMS detector, limiting its response to lower frequencies.

The THRUST filter has a slope of 10 dB per decade, which is the inverse of the pink noise energy curve. THRUST adjusts the sidechain frequency response so each octave has the same amount of energy, creating a unique compression effect that reduces pumping and maintains punch.



Available THRUST Values

NORMAL – The sidechain is unfiltered and compression response is uniform across the frequency spectrum. Behaves as most compressors do.

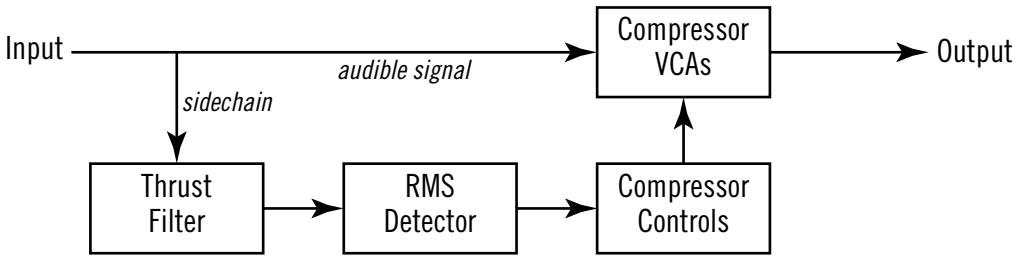
MEDIUM – The sidechain is slightly attenuated at low frequencies and slightly boosted at high frequencies. Midrange frequencies are unfiltered and remain flat. Reduces low frequency pumping and increases compression on upper frequency peaks.

LOUD – A gradual, linear filter is applied to the sidechain. Frequencies are attenuated 15 dB at 20 Hz and boosted 15 dB at 20 kHz, equalizing the energy entering the RMS detector. Noticeably increases low frequency punch.

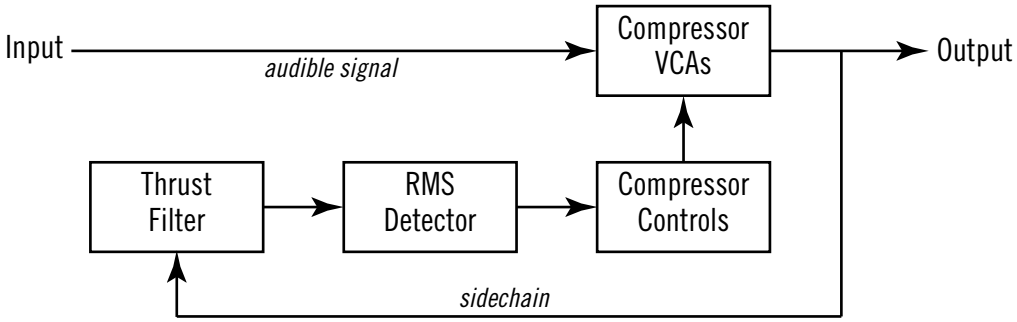
TYPE

TYPE changes the routing of the control sidechain signal within the compressor circuit. To change the TYPE setting, click a value or click the TYPE switch to cycle through the available values.

Tone Type: NEW (feed-foward)



Tone Type: OLD (feed-back)



Available TYPE Values

NEW – Feed-forward sidechain routing typical of modern VCA-based compressors. The control sidechain input signal is tapped from the *uncompressed* audio signal. Harder compression with more transparency.

OLD – Feed-back sidechain routing typical of vintage compressors such as the API 525. The control sidechain input signal is tapped from the *compressed* audio signal. Smoother compression with more character.

> ***Note:*** *Unlike typical compressors, when tone TYPE is set to OLD (feed-back), the gain circuit is within the control sidechain. In this state, gain adjustments (whether automatic or manual), can change the compression amount.*

Link Section

L/R LINK

When the plug-in is used in a stereo-in configuration, the stepped LINK knob allows the dynamics processors of both channels (left & right) to always be compressed in equal amounts (100%, fully linked), completely independently (0%, unlinked), or blended with a mix percentage (e.g., 50%, partially linked).

By de-linking the sidechains, dynamic interaction between the channels can be reduced or eliminated, enabling greater control of movement within the stereo field.

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in used in a mono-in configuration, this switch is locked in the IND (independent) position.*

Available L/R LINK Values

100% **–** The sidechains are stereo linked and the amount of compression is always the same for both channels. Stereo imaging at the input is maintained by preventing left-right shifting at the output when one channel has higher signal peaks compared to the other channel.

IND (0%) **–** The sidechains are not linked and the amount of compression occurring is completely independent in both channels. If one channel has higher signal peaks than the other channel, the left-right imaging may shift.

50% **–** 90% – The sidechains are partially linked and the amount of compression occurring is a mixed blend of the left and right channels. The amount of blend can be set to 50, 60, 70, 80, or 90%.

LINK SHAPE

The SHAPE switch adjusts filtering of the control signal used by the L/R LINK parameter. Two SHAPE filters are available: HP (high pass/low cut) and LP (low pass/high cut). By enabling both filters, a bandpass filter shape is created.

By excluding frequencies from the L/R LINK control signal, sounds in only one channel that contain those frequencies will not cause the other channel to compress, while still linking the preferred frequency range.

To change the SHAPE setting, click a value or click the green SHAPE switch to cycle through the available values. The filter(s) is active when its LED indicator is lit.

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in configuration, this switch has no effect.*

Output Section

IN

The IN switch enables the compression circuit. The compressor is active when the green LED above the IN switch is lit. To toggle the IN/OUT state, click the IN switch, label, or LED.

When IN is disengaged, the compression circuit is bypassed while still routing the signal through the rest of the circuitry. With this "soft" bypass control, the signal is no longer compressed but the sound of the amplifiers, transformers, and other components are heard.

Note: *If the BYP switch is engaged, the IN switch has no effect.*

BYP (BYPASS)

The BYP button bypasses all hardware circuitry. In the original hardware unit, this switch controls a relay that hard-wires the inputs directly to the outputs.

The compressor is bypassed when the yellow LED above the BYP button is lit. To toggle the BYPASS state, click the BYP button, label, or LED.

Tip: *To unload the plug-in and conserve UAD resources, use the POWER switch.*

GAIN

The API 2500 has automatic or manual make-up gain to compensate for the lowered output levels that result from signal compression. To toggle between automatic and manual make-up gain, click the red make-up GAIN switch, label, or LED.

Note: *Unlike typical compressors, when tone TYPE is set to OLD (feed-back), the gain circuit is within the control sidechain. In this state, gain adjustments (whether automatic or manual), can change the compression amount.*

AUTO GAIN

Automatic make-up gain is active when the red MAKE-UP GAIN switch is in the "out" position and the red LED above the switch is unlit.

When automatic make-up gain is active, the compressor's output level is increased reciprocally as the compression amount increases, and decreases reciprocally as the compression amount decreases.

Automatic make-up gain facilitates easier adjusting and auditioning of the processor's sound by keeping the output volume consistent as the compressor's THRESHOLD and RATIO controls are adjusted. This function is especially useful in situations where adjustments need to be made without disturbing the output level to a recording or broadcast system.

MANUAL GAIN

When manual make-up gain is active, the red dB GAIN knob continuously adjusts the compressor's output level. The available range is 0 to +24 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the value to 0 dB.*

Manual make-up gain is active when the red MAKE-UP GAIN switch is in the "in" position and the red LED above the switch (below the "man" text label) is lit.

Note: *This control only operates when the make-up GAIN switch is engaged.*

Other Controls

POWER

The POWER switch determines whether the plug-in is active or not. To change the power state, click the yellow POWER switch or the POWER text label.

When set to off (switch unlit), the VU meters go dark to indicate signal processing has ceased. In this state, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

MIX

A blended output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the MIX control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

Note: *The MIX control does not exist in the original hardware.*

When MIX is set to 0%, only the unprocessed (dry) source signal is output. When set to 100% (the default value), only the processed (wet) signal is output. When set to 50%, an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable, and phase accurate, throughout the control range.

Tip: *Click the MIX text label to set the control to the 50% position. Click the 0 text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the 100% text label to set the control to the maximum position.*

VU METERS

The calibrated VU Meters can display either input levels, output levels, or gain reduction levels. The levels being displayed are determined by the VU METER SOURCE switch.

Each channel (left and right) has its own VU Meter. When the plug-in is used in a mono-in configuration, both meters display the same levels.

Note: *The VU Meters displays average loudness and do not display signal peaks.*

Meter Scales

The VU Meters have two different text scales printed on the meter background. The active scale is set with the VU METER SOURCE switch.

IN/OUT Scale – The upper scale (ranging from -20 dB to +3 dB) is used to display input and output levels. With this scale, 0 VU represents +4 dBu.

GR Scale – The lower scale (ranging from 20 dB to 0 dB) is used to display gain reduction levels.

VU METER SOURCE

This switch determines what is displayed by the VU Meters. To change the VU Meters source setting, click a value, or click the METER switch to cycle through the available values.

Available METER SOURCE Values

GR – The VU Meters display the amount of gain reduction occurring in each channel.

OUT – The VU Meters display signal levels at the output of the plug-in.

IN – The VU Meters display signal levels at the input of the plug-in.

HEADROOM (HR)

The Headroom control is a UAD-only feature that is not available in the original hardware. Headroom enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the plug-in so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor.

By fine-tuning Headroom, the nonlinear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels. Increasing Headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise) allows signals at the input to be pushed higher before they compress.

Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw "dot" is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is increased as the dB value decreases.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "HR" text label to return the control to the default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals will push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion color) more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less gain reduction and less color is desired.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

HR replaces the L/R TILT control that is available on the original hardware. Because L/R TILT is used to compensate for analog component tolerances and drift, it is not needed with the plug-in.

API 2500 Bus Compressor hardware

All visual and aural references to the API 2500 Bus Compressor and all use of API's trademarks are being made with written permission from Automated Processes, Inc. Special thanks to Paul Wolff, Larry Droppa, Todd Humora, and Jeffrey Richards.

API Vision Channel Strip

The Classic Color of API's Flagship Analog Console.

A longtime leader in analog console design, API desks have shaped hits from the Foo Fighters to Fleetwood Mac's classic, Rumours. Introduced in 2003, API's flagship Vision Console was crafted to uphold the company's soulful sonic tradition while providing flexibility and features for modern workflows. For the first time, you can have a complete channel strip of classic API punch, presence, and color with the API Vision Channel Strip plug-in — exclusively for UAD-2 DSP hardware and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix through a stunning emulation of API's flagship analog console
- Warm up signals through the API 212L preamp with famed 2520 API op-amp
- Reshape envelopes and create dramatic dynamic effects with the 235L Gate/Expander
- Tame transients and craft wild new textures with API's legendary 225L compression circuit
- Control Apollo interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the Vision plug-in with Unison™ technology

UA's Most Colorful Channel Strip Plug-In

Comprised of five classic API modules, the API Vision Channel Strip plug-in transforms your DAW into a high-end analog mixing desk, injecting your tracks with the sonic color and personality that has made API legendary. Take a quick tour of the five modules below.

Unison Technology for Apollo Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the API Vision Channel Strip plug-in gives you all of the API Vision's important impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors that have made the Vision Channel Strip's 212L preamp one of the most detailed and punchy preamps ever devised. The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the API Vision Channel Strip plug-in to the physical mic preamps in Apollo.

Run Signals through the 212L Preamp

Widely praised for its detail and warmth, the 212L Preamp finds its roots in the legendary API 2488 console — best known for the famed "LA sound" of the '70s and '80s. UA's API Vision plug-in expertly models this preamp, right down to its custom 2520 API op-amp and transformers, giving you the unmistakable tone of its esteemed hardware counterpart.

Sculpt Your Sounds with the 550L EQ

An evolution of the iconic API 550A, the 550L EQ offers vintage flavor and modern tone shaping via an additional filter band and several new frequencies. API's "Proportional Q" circuitry widens the filter bandwidth at minimal settings, and narrows it at higher settings, resulting in a simple EQ that sounds musical — even when cranked.

Tame Dynamics with the 225L Compressor/Limiter

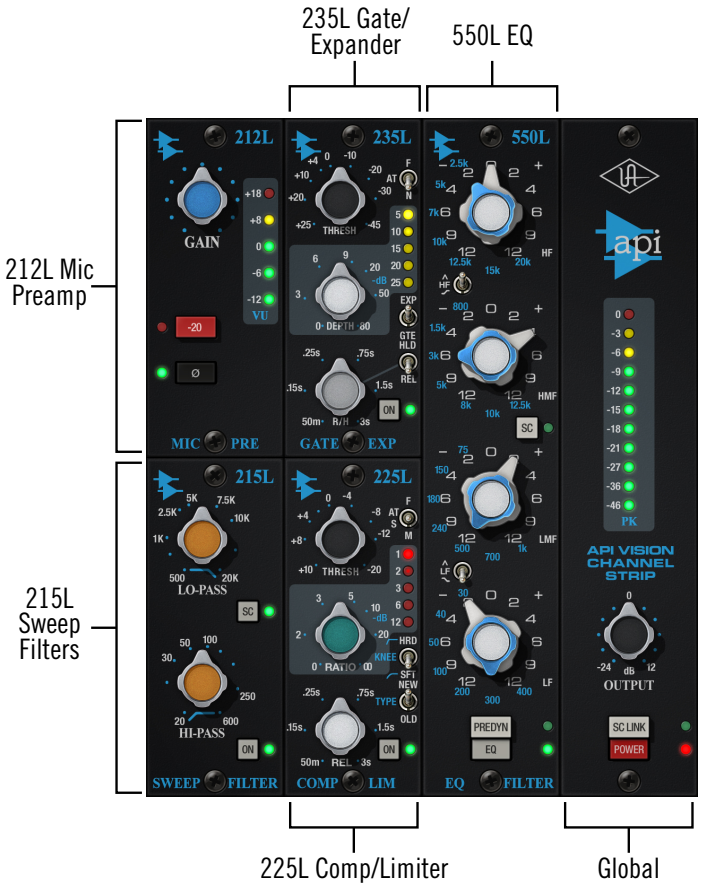
A versatile compressor brimming with character, the 225L thrives on any instrument, in any genre — from a single track to an entire mix. With selectable "New" and "Old" functions, you're afforded two delicious brands of compression, from mild to severe.

Explore the Creative Possibilities of the 235L Gate/Expander

One of the most expressive gates ever devised, the 235L Noise Gate/Expander is possibly the fastest noise gate available — anywhere. The 235L serves a creative function as well, letting you shape a kick drum's attack and contour in a host of ways, ranging from subtle and sublime to sick and stuttered.

Make Broad-Stroke Cuts with the 215L Filters

A passive, sweepable filter, ideal for broad stroke EQ sculpting, the 215L Cut Filters are powerful tools designed to expertly craft your source material, while preserving its original tone.



API Vision Channel Strip interface

Operational Overview

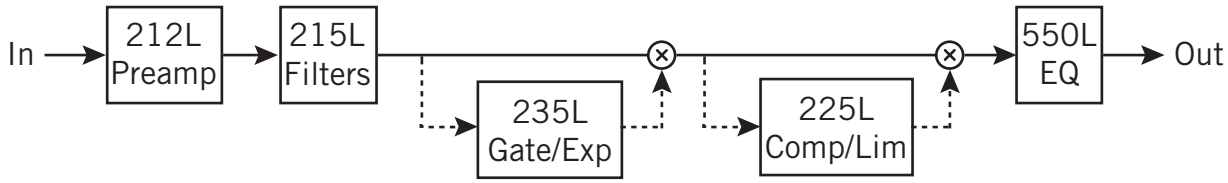
Modular Design

Like the original hardware, the API Vision Console Channel Strip plug-in has a modular design. Each module controls a different signal processing function, and associated controls are grouped within each module. The following modules are contained in the API Vision Console Channel Strip plug-in:

- 212L Microphone Preamplifier
- 215L High/Low Sweep Filters
- 235L Gate/Expander
- 225L Compressor/Limiter
- 550L Four-Band Equalizer

Signal Flow

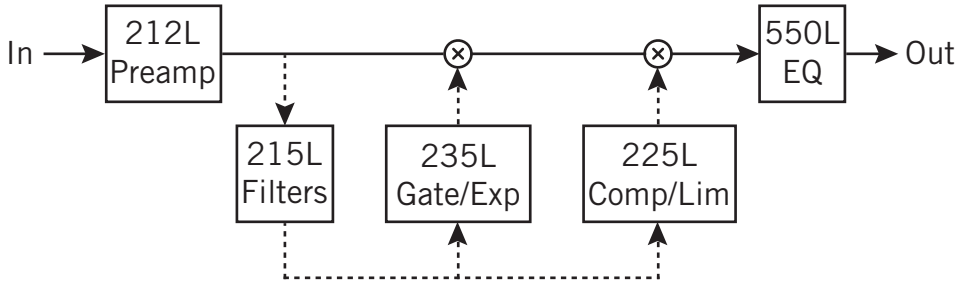
A simplified view of the default signal flow routing within the plug-in is illustrated in the diagram below. The audio path is shown with solid lines, and the side chain control keys for the dynamics modules are shown with dotted lines.



Simplified default API Vision signal flow

The signal flow can be re-routed via options in the plug-in. The 550L EQ can be placed before the dynamics modules via the PREDYN (pre-dynamics) button, and the 215L and/or 550L modules can be moved out of the audio path and into the dynamics side chain path via the SC (side chain) buttons in those modules.

Note that the side chains for the dynamics modules are in series by default (as in the diagram above). However, when the 215L and/or 550L are moved into the side chain (via the SC buttons), the side chain inputs for the dynamics modules are in parallel, as shown in the diagram below.



Simplified signal flow illustrating parallel side chain inputs with 215L SC enabled

Displayed Values

Knob settings, when compared to the interface silkscreen numbers, may not match the actual parameter values. For example, in the 215L Sweep Filters module, the highest value shown in the interface is 20 kHz. However, the actual value when the knob is at maximum is 40 kHz.

This behavior is identical to the original hardware, which is modeled exactly. When the plug-in is viewed in parameter list mode (controls and/or automation views), the actual parameter values are displayed.

Artist Presets

The API Vision Console Channel Strip includes artist presets from prominent API users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also placed by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

This plug-in includes additional artist presets that are not available in the internal factory bank. These additional presets can also be accessed using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Unison™ Integration

The API Vision Channel Strip features Unison mic preamp technology integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the API Vision 212L hardware preamp module.

Note: *Unison is active only when the plug-ins are inserted in the unique IN- PUT insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of API Vision Channel Strip plug-in settings using Apollo's digitally-controlled panel hardware and/or the plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity) are mirrored and bi-directional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the API Vision Channel Strip hard- ware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Apollo mic preamps feature input impedance switching in analog hard- ware that can be physically switched by Unison plug-ins for physical, micro- phone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Apollo's preamps to physically match the emulated unit's input impedance, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the elec- trical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original target hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

212L Microphone Preamplifier

212L Gain

This knob adjusts the amount of gain applied to the input signal. The available range is 30 dB to 65 dB. The default value is 40.5 dB.

212L Pad

When enabled, the input signal level is attenuated (lowered) by 20 dB. The pad is engaged when the red indicator is lit.

Pad can be used to reduce signal levels when undesirable overload distortion is present at low preamp gain levels.

212L Meter

The Meter indicates the signal level at the output of the 212L preamp module.

212L Phase

The Phase (ø) button inverts the polarity of the signal. The polarity is inverted when the green indicator is lit. Leave the button off (unlit) for normal polarity.

Unison Phase

When the plug-in is used in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of Phase is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface or by using Apollo's polarity button.

Unison Impedance

When API Vision Channel Strip is used in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, the hardware input impedance of the Apollo mic preamp is switched to 1.5k Ω (the value of the 212L hardware module) for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction.

215L High/Low Sweep Filter

The 215L offers two sweepable cut filters, one each for low and high frequencies. The original hardware is transformer coupled and uses a passive filter circuit design for smooth tone.

215L Lo-Pass

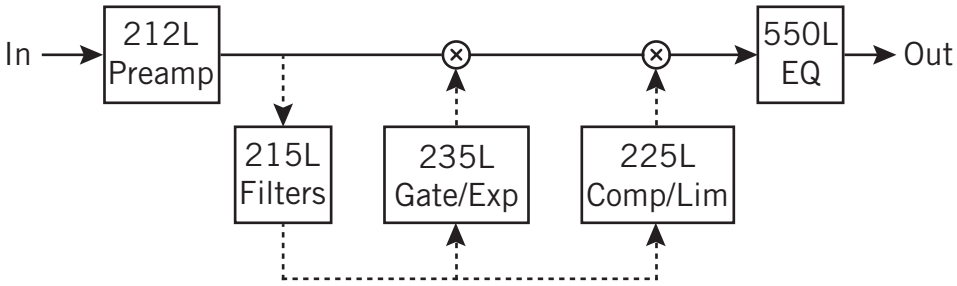
The Lo-Pass (high cut) filter has a continuous range of 643 Hz to 40.8 kHz. The slope of this filter is 6 dB per octave. The default value is 40 kHz.

215L Hi-Pass

The Hi-Pass (low cut) filter has a continuous range of 12 Hz to 596 Hz. The slope of this filter is 12 dB per octave. The default value is 12 Hz.

215L SC (Dynamics Side Chain)

This button enables the side chain function for the 215L Sweep Filters. When the 215L side chain is active, signal output from the 215L module is removed from the audio path, and is instead routed to control the 235L and 225L dynamics modules in parallel as shown in the diagram below.



Signal flow with 215L Sweep Filters SC enabled

To listen to the side chain key, simply disengage SC to hear the equalized signal.

> ***Note:*** *The 215L module must be enabled for the 215L side chain to function.*

215L On

This button enables the 215L module. The module is active when the button's green indicator is lit.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless DSP Load-Lock is enabled).*

235L Gate/Expander

The 235L Gate/Expander module operates in either gate or expansion mode. Two attack speeds and a continuously variable release time are available in both modes.

235L Threshold

Threshold defines the input level at which expansion or gating occurs. The available range is from +25 dB to -45 dB. The default value is 0 dB.

Signals below the threshold level are processed by the module. Signals above the threshold are unaffected. Rotate this control clockwise to increase the gate/expand effect.

235L Depth

Depth controls the difference in gain between the gated/expanded and non-gated/expanded signal. Higher values increase the attenuation of signals below the threshold. When set to zero, no gating or expansion occurs. The available range is 0 dB to -80 dB. The default value is -80dB.

Scaled Control

Although the Depth control has a full range of -80 dB, the scale is expanded in the first half of rotation so 0 to -9 dB is available for fine tuning of subtle, undetectable gating. The second half of rotation is from -10 to -80 dB for more drastic noise reduction.

235L Attack

This two-position switch determines how quickly the onset of gating/expansion occurs when the signal exceeds the threshold. Normal (25 milliseconds) and Fast (100 microseconds) settings are available. The default setting is Normal.

235L Release/Hold Knob

The function of Release/Hold knob (R/H) depends on the setting of the Release/Hold switch (Rel/Hld). With both switch settings, the available range of the knob is 50 milliseconds to 3 seconds. The default value is 0.5 seconds.

> ***Note:*** *Hold mode is only available when the 235L module is set to Gate mode with the Gate/Expander switch.*

Release

When the input signal drops below the threshold level and the Release/Hold switch is set to Release, this knob sets the amount of time it takes for signals to decay to the Depth level.

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks.

Fast release times are typically only suitable for certain types of percussion and other instruments with very fast decays. Using fast settings on other sources may produce undesirable results.

Hold

When the input signal drops below the threshold level and the Release/Hold switch is set to Hold, this knob sets the amount of time that signals are held at normal levels before signals return to the Depth level.

> ***Note:*** *When set to Hold, the release time is fixed at 100 milliseconds.*

235L Release/Hold Switch

This two-position switch (REL/HLD) determines the behavior of the Release/Hold knob when the 235L module is set to Gate mode with the Gate/Expander switch. The default value is Release.

> ***Note:*** *This switch is locked in the Release position when the module is in Gate mode (Hold mode is unavailable in Expander mode).*

235L Gate/Expander Switch

This switch (GTE/EXP) toggles the module between Gate and Expander modes. The default value is Expander.

GTE

When set to Gate mode, signals below the threshold are attenuated by the Depth amount.

EXP

When set to Expander mode, the gate applies downwards expansion at a fixed 1:2 ratio, with the amount of gain reduction determined by the Depth control.

Expansion allows the signal to “sneak up” to the full signal level without any loss of “under threshold” nuances.

235L Meter

This meter displays, in dB, the amount of gain attenuation (downward expansion) occurring in the 235L module.

235L On

This button enables the 235L module. The module is active when the button’s green indicator is lit.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless DSP Load-Lock is enabled).*

225L Compressor/Limiter

The 225L Compressor/Limiter offers a continuously variable ratio between 1:1 (no compression) and infinity:1 (limiting). Three attack speeds and continuously variable release times are available. A hard/soft knee setting and a unique new/old setting are also available in the module.

225L Threshold

Threshold defines the input level at which compression begins. The available range is +10 dB to -20 dB. The default value is 0 dB.

Signals that exceed the threshold are processed by the Ratio value. Signals below the threshold are unaffected. Rotate this control clockwise to increase the compression effect.

> ***Note:*** *The 225L compressor automatically increases makeup gain to compensate for levels that are reduced during compression. However, just like the original hardware, the plug-in's compensated makeup gain levels are not perfectly linear.*

225L Ratio

Ratio defines the amount of gain reduction applied to signals above the threshold. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal level above the threshold by half, with an input signal level of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB.

A value of 1 yields no gain reduction. When the control is at maximum (∞), the ratio is effectively infinity to one, yielding the limiting effect. The available range is 1:1 to infinity. The default value is 4:1.

225L Attack

This three-position switch defines the attack time of the compressor. Available values are Fast (2 milliseconds), Medium (18 milliseconds), and Slow (75 milliseconds). The default value is Medium.

225L Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for processing to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. The available control range is 50 milliseconds to 3 seconds.

Note: *Actual release times are program dependent.*

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if the release is too long, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to sections of audio with lower signals.

Fast release times are typically only suitable for certain types of percussion and other instruments with very fast decays. Using fast settings on other sources may produce undesirable results.

225L Knee

The knee (onset) characteristic of the compressor/limiter can be set to Soft (SFT) or Hard (HRD) with this two-position switch. The default value is Hard.

Soft provides a more subtle compression resulting in a very natural, less compressed sound. Hard results in a more typical, sharp knee type compression that has a more severe limiting effect.

225L Type

The Type control switches the 225L compressor's control side chain signal to use either a feed-back (OLD) or feed-forward (NEW) design, providing two types of gain reduction. The default value is Old.

Compressors typically have a side chain control signal based on either feed-back or feed-forward designs. NEW feed-forward gain reduction is typical of newer VCA type compressors that rely on RMS detectors for the side chain circuit. The OLD feed-back method is what most classic compressors use for the side chain circuit.

Note: *Unlike the original hardware, side chain processing via the 215L and 550L modules can be performed with this switch in the OLD position (the hardware cannot use side chain filtering with feedback compression).*

225L Meter

This meter displays, in dB, the amount of gain attenuation occurring in the 225L module.

225L On

This button enables the 225L module. The module is active when the button's green indicator is lit.

Note: *UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless DSP Load-Lock is enabled).*

550L Four-Band Equalizer

The 550L EQ is divided into four frequency bands: High Frequency (HF), High Midrange Frequency (HMF), Low Midrange Frequency (LMF), and Low Frequency (LF).

The 550L features API's "Proportional Q" which continuously narrows the bandwidth of the filter as band gain is increased, providing (as stated by API) "an uncomplicated way to generate acoustically superior equalization." The boost and cut characteristics are identical, allowing previous actions to be undone if desired.

Band Controls

The four EQ bands (HF/HMF/LMF/LF) are controlled by dual-concentric rotary switches. The inner knob controls the band frequency (values in blue text) and the outer knob controls the band gain (values in white text). Available values for these controls are listed in the table below.

550L Frequency and Gain Values

Band	Frequency Values	Gain (±dB)
High Frequency (HF)	20, **15**, 12.5, 10, 7, 5, 2.5 (kHz)	**0** 2 4 6 9 12
Low Mid Frequency (LMF)	12.5, **10**, 8, 5, 3, 1.5 (kHz), 800 (Hz)	
High Mid Frequency (HMF)	1000, **700**, 500, 240, 180, 150, 75 (Hz)	
Low Frequency (LF)	400, **300**, 200, 100, 50, 40, 30 (Hz)	
*Default Values are indicated in **bold***		

Frequency

Frequency determines the center frequency of the band when the band is in peak mode (all bands) and the cutoff frequency when the band is in shelf mode (available with HF/LF bands only). The frequency for the band can be set using any of these methods:

- Drag the inner concentric knob to the desired value
- Hover over the inner concentric knob then use the mouse scroll wheel
- Click directly on the frequency value label to switch to that value
- Click on the band label (HF/HMF/LMF/LF) to cycle through available values (shift+click to cycle in reverse)

Gain

The gain for the band can be set using any of these methods:

- Drag the outer concentric knob handle to the desired value
- Click the "+" or "-" text labels to increment/decrement values
- Hover over the outer concentric knob then use the mouse scroll wheel
- Click directly on the gain value label to switch to that value (this method works only when Controls Mode is set to "Circular" in the Configuration panel of the UAD Meter & Control Panel application)

Peak/Shelf Switches

The HF and LF bands are in shelf mode by default (switches in "down" position). When the Peak/Shelf switch is engaged for the band (in "up" position), the band is changed to peak mode. The default value is Shelf.

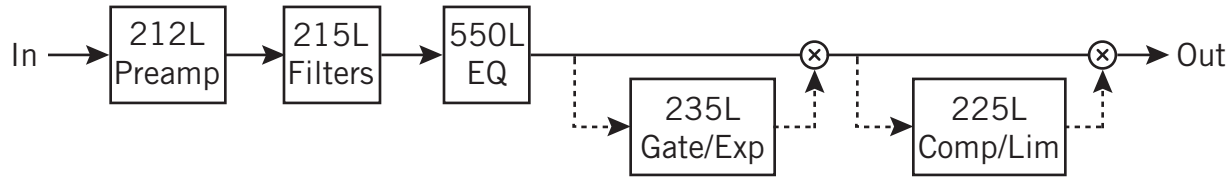
550L Pre-Dynamics

The Pre-Dynamics button (PREDYN) re-routes the 550L signal. By default, the audio signal is routed into the 550L module after dynamics processing. When PREDYN is enabled (when the green indicator is lit), this routing is swapped, and the EQ module precedes the dynamics processors instead.

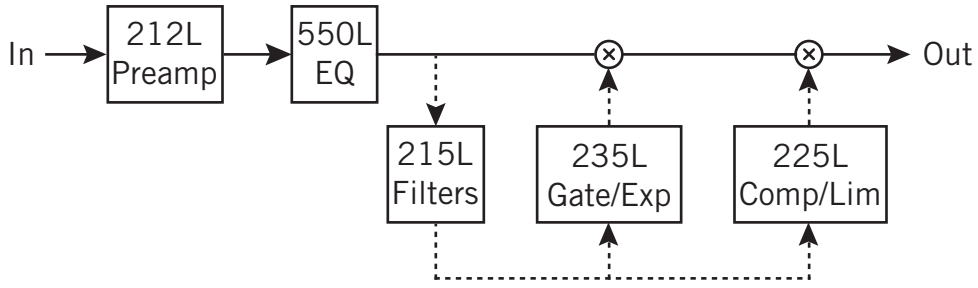
When550L PREDYN is active, the dynamics side chain is always tapped after the 550L module, regardless of the state of the 215L module's SC function.

Note: *PREDYN has no effect when the 550L's SC button is active.*

The effect of the PREDYN button is shown in the diagrams below.



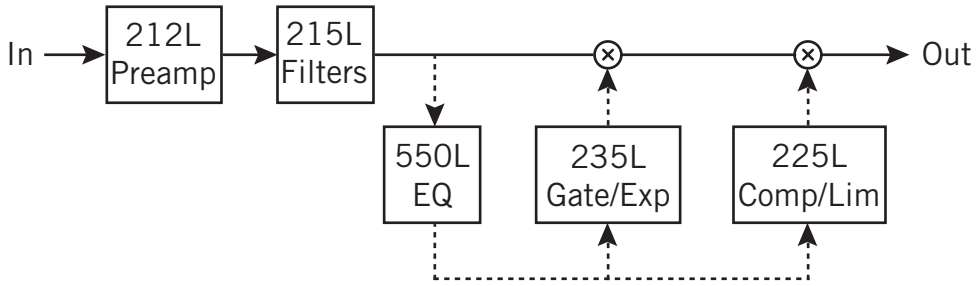
PREDYN routes the 550L before the dynamics modules



The 550L always precedes the side chain tap when PREDYN is active

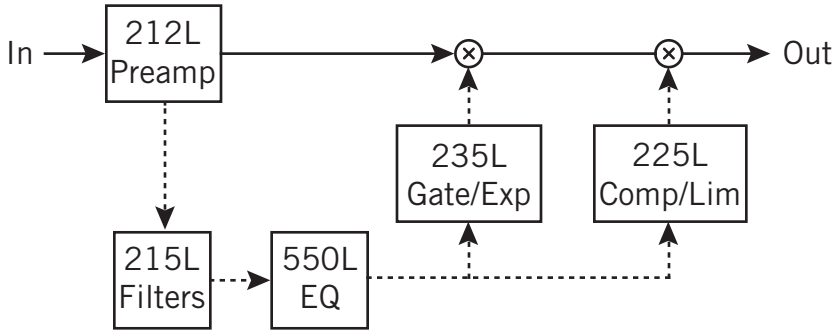
550L SC (Dynamics Side Chain)

This control enables the side chain function for the 550L EQ. When the 550L side chain is active, signal output from the 550L module is removed from the audio path, and is instead routed to control the 235L and 225L dynamics modules. The default value is Off.



Signal flow with 550L SC enabled

Note that both the 550L and 215L modules can both be routed simultaneously to the dynamics side chain. In this case, the 215L precedes the 550L in the side chain path, as shown below.



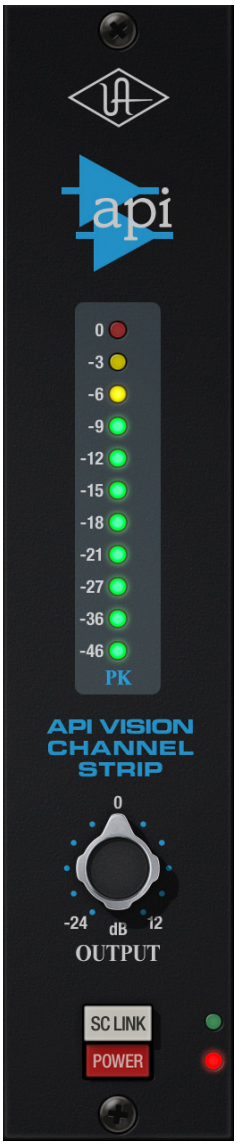
Signal flow with SC enabled in both 215L and 550L modules

550L EQ

This button enables the 550L module. The module is active when the button's green indicator is lit.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless DSP Load-Lock is enabled).*

Global



Output Meter

The vertical LED-style metering provides a visual indication of relative signal peak levels at the output of the plug-in.

SC Link (Side Chain Link)

When the plug-in is used on a stereo signal, this button links the side chains of the left and right channels of the 225L and 235L dynamics modules so both channels are compressed by the same amounts. SC Link is active when the button's green indicator is lit. The default value is enabled.

Linking the side chains prevents signals which appear on only one channel from shifting the stereo image of the output. For example, any large transient on either channel will cause both channels to compress, and the amount of compression will be similar to the amount of compression for a transient which appears on both channels at the same time.

> ***Note:*** *The SC Link button cannot be engaged when the plug-in is used in a monophonic configuration.*

Output

This control provides -24 dB to +12 dB of clean uncolored gain at the output of the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB.

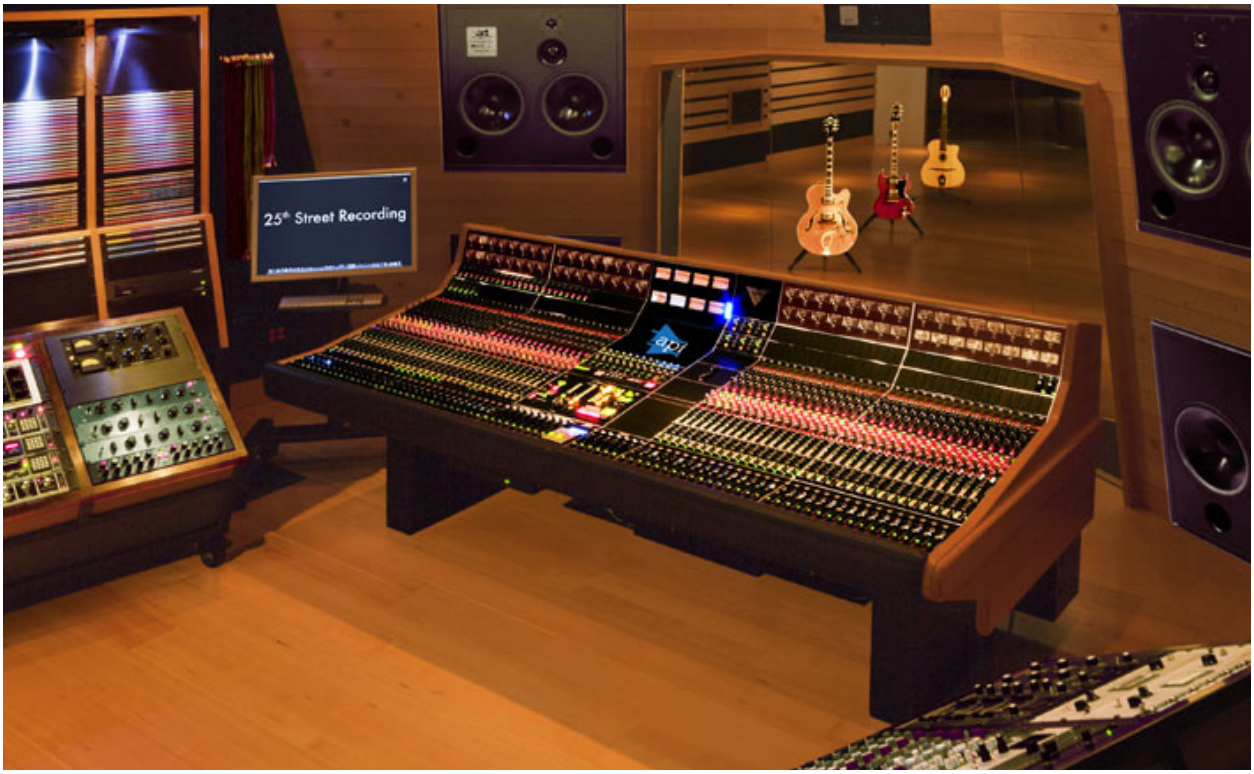
> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return Output to the 0 dB position.*

Power

The plug-in is active when the POWER switch is engaged and its associated LED is lit. When this button is off, all plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Historical Background

API (Automated Processes Inc.) was formed in 1968 with Saul Walker and Lou Lindauer. API is perhaps most noted for their modular approach to equipment manufacturing and for their now legendary 2520 amplifier. To this day, the extraordinary headroom made possible with the 2520 offers consistent analog performance even when using radical EQ curves. API quickly became the leading audio broadcast console manufacturer for radio and television networks and high profile stations. Soon after, recording studios both large and small began using API. The API brand and the company's commitment to excellent audio design endures to this day.



The API Vision Console

Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip

The larger-than-life sound of pop, hip-hop and R&B, now on UAD.

The dominant player in chart-topping pop, hip-hop and R&B productions, Avalon's flagship VT-737sp channel strip is the best-selling standalone channel strip ever made. From Jay-Z and Dr. Dre, to Babyface and Beyonce, to Eric Clapton and the Rolling Stones, the VT-737sp delivers consistently polished results, with radio-ready gloss and detail.

Exclusively for UAD hardware and UA Audio Interfaces, and fully endorsed by Avalon Design, the Avalon VT-737 Tube Channel Strip plug-in captures the entire hit-making essence of the channel strip that defined the sound of modern music.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix through an exacting emulation of the Avalon VT-737 analog channel strip
- Get the full character of the original hardware's tube mic preamp with Unison™ technology
- Add legendary Avalon gloss and presence to bass, vocals, voice-over, and more
- Sculpt your sources with a vocal-flattering optical compressor
- Tweak sounds with four-band EQ and add high-end detail with 32k "air" band
- Mix with artist presets from prominent Universal Audio artists

Capturing the Sound of Modern Music

After carefully auditioning multiple Avalon 737 hardware units, the UA team selected a "golden unit" with the ideal optical compression response. UA's DSP team then artfully captured the target hardware's class-A tube amplifier section with custom-wound transformer, LED-style optical compression, and discrete four-band EQ — the signature Avalon sound heard on thousands of chart-topping hits.

Unison Technology for UA Audio Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Avalon VT-737 plug-in captures the hardware's mic preamp impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and exact circuit behaviors, giving you all the detailed sonics of the original Avalon hardware — including its gentle high-pass filter for removing mud and low-end gunk. And because the VT-737's front-panel Hi-Z input is a legendary bass DI, the VT-737 plug-in's Unison-enabled Hi-Z input endured rigorous evaluation, ensuring it was virtually indistinguishable from the original hardware.

Versatile Optical Compression

Excelling on vocals, bass, acoustic guitar, and voice-over work, the VT-737 plug-in's dynamics section emulates the hardware's gentle touch, rather than adding squash or crunch. Its relatively transparent compression also make it perfect for "stacking" the compressor again at mixdown, expertly controlling the dynamics of a vocal in a dense mix. An exclusive plug-in only, super-fast mode gives you "X4" faster attack, pushing the VT-737 beyond its physical limits, affording you tons of new dynamic versatility.

EQ with Details

The Avalon VT-737 Tube Channel Strip plug-in expertly emulates the hardware's discrete four-band EQ, allowing you to sculpt lead vocals with a visceral, larger-than-life presence and sophistication, placing them front-and-center in any mix. Like the hardware, the EQ can easily be placed before or after the compressor, and the mid bands can be engaged as sidechain filters for laser-focused compression. And with the 32k high frequency "air band," you can add delicate shimmer to everything from strings to background vocals to acoustic guitars.

Add Chart-Topping Sheen with Any UAD Hardware

Of course, the Avalon VT-737 Tube Channel Strip isn't just for UA Audio Interface owners. UAD hardware owners can use the VT-737 Tube Channel Strip plug-in on any mix, giving your sources legendary fat bottom, "glassy" top-end textures, and a bevy of clear-eyed color — without ever going outside the box.

Key Features

- VT-737sp exclusively licensed by Avalon Designs, modeled by Universal Audio
- Made famous as the ultimate pop, R&B and hip-hop performance and production tool specializing in tight, focused vocals and bass guitar
- Best of Avalon's designs: high headroom tube mic preamp, optical compressor, and discrete four-band EQ
- Feedback-style 58 dB tube mic preamp with Mic, Line, or Hi-Z input with Unison technology
- Models entire VT-737sp "Special Performance" circuit path, including transformers, tube amplifiers, active and passive EQ filters, and optical gain reduction
- Compressor Sidechain Unlink/Link and EQ Pre-Dynamics, EQ Sidechain filtering, Hi Q and Frequency multiplier
- Physical input impedance and front panel control of gain staging and other preamp parameters via Unison

Avalon VT-737sp interface showing the silver and black panel views

Operational Overview

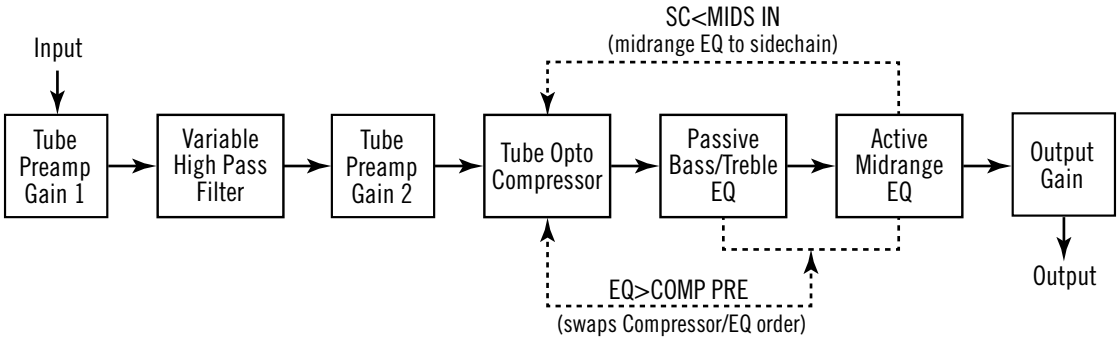
This section provides a general overview of Avalon VT-737sp Channel Strip operational concepts. For specific details about individual controls, see Avalon VT-737sp Channel Strip Controls later in this chapter.

Tip: *For VT-737sp application notes from Avalon, see the end of this chapter.*

Signal Flow

The Avalon VT-737sp combines a transformer-coupled, dual vacuum tube preamplifier with a tube opto-compressor and a high-voltage, discrete Class A four-band parametric equalizer.

A simplified version of the signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below. By default, signal enters at the first tube gain stage which outputs to the high pass filter, then to the second tube gain stage, compressor, EQ, and output circuitry. The EQ module can be routed before the dynamics module as needed, by engaging the EQ>COMP option. Engaging the SC<MIDS option causes that the EQ mid bands to act solely on the dynamics sidechain signal, and removes the midrange EQ from the audio signal path.



Simplified signal flow within Avalon VT-737sp

Unison™ Integration

The UAD Avalon VT-737sp Channel Strip plug-in features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces. With Unison interfaces, the ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of emulated preamps.

Note: Unison is active only when the plug-in is placed in the dedicated UNISON insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.

With Unison, the hardware preamp adapts to the modeled preamp's physical input impedance. Combined with UA's transparent analog amplification, this provides the plug-in's full gain and tone range from clean to clipped — with broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

Realistic Tandem Control

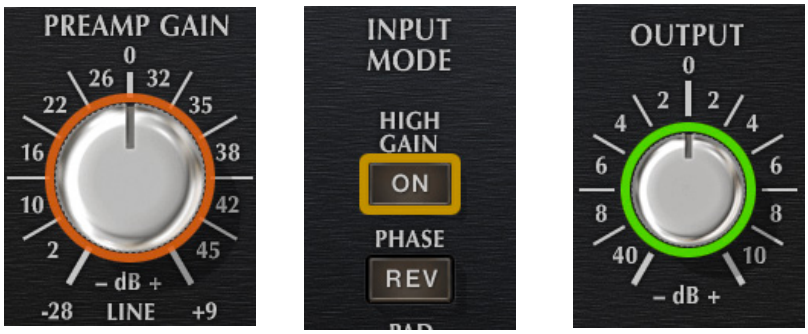
Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of plug-in settings using both the digitally-controlled panel hardware on the UA audio interface and the graphical UAD plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, cut filter, polarity, pad) are mirrored and bidirectional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the modeled preamp, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Unison mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Unison preamps to match the input impedance of the emulated hardware, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the emulated hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

The hardware preamp knob on the UA audio interface can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via the interface hardware, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.



The three outlined gain controls as they appear when in Unison Gain Stage Mode

Accessing Artist Presets

The Avalon VT-737sp Channel Strip includes presets voiced by prominent Universal Audio artists. Some of the artist presets are in the DAW's internal factory bank and are accessed via the plug-in host application's preset menu. Additional artist presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer.

The additional artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Console's preset manager with UA audio interfaces.

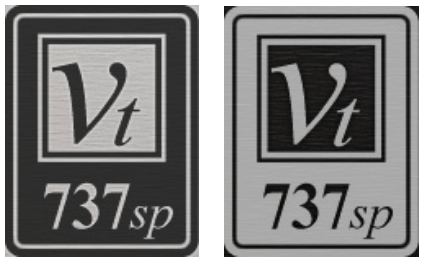
> ***Tip:*** *Avalon's VT-737sp settings from the original hardware manual, which have been recreated as plug-in presets, are also included.*

Eric J Dubowsky	Ian Boxill	Michael Brauer	Mike Larson
Hector Delgado	Ivan Barias	Mike Dean	Richard Robson

Artists that have provided presets for the Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip

Alternate Panel View

The UAD Avalon VT-737sp plug-in can be displayed in either Silver or Black panel views. To toggle between the two display modes, click the VT-737sp logo on the left side of the interface.



Click the logo to display the alternate panel view

Application Notes from Avalon

Detailed VT-737sp application notes are provided in Avalon's original hardware operation manual, which is available at Avalon's website:

- www.avalondesign.com

Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip Controls

About Unison Interactions

Some control descriptions begin with the Unison Interaction heading and include the Unison icon at left. Descriptions in these sections apply only when the plug-in is placed in the dedicated UNISON insert on an Apollo/Arrow preamp channel within the Console application. When the plug-in is used in standard (non-Unison) inserts in Console, or within a DAW, these descriptions do not apply.

Note: *For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Preamp Controls

Preamp Gain

This continuously variable rotary control adjusts the amount of gain applied to the input signal. Increasing the gain will drive the circuit harder to get more tube tone into the preamp. You can use this control at minimum and maximum levels for different sounds and colors.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

The available preamp gain range depends on INPUT SELECT setting, as follows.

- When set to MIC, the gain range is 0 dB to +45 dB.
- When set to LINE, the gain range is -28 dB to +9 dB.
- When Hi-Z input is connected (Unison mode only), the gain range is -30 dB to +10 dB.

Note: *The knob silkscreen labels are for general gain guidelines only. The knob values are not calibrated.*

Unison Interactions

Input Impedance

Hardware input impedances of the preamp are automatically switched to match the original hardware for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction.

Hardware Control Mirroring

Software and hardware adjustment of this control is mirrored. The setting can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's preamp gain knob, or with the main hardware level knob on the UA audio interface.

Gain Stage Mode 1

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within the Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the hardware PREAMP knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust Preamp Gain. In this state, an orange outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Input Select

Input Select switches the plug-in between Line and Mic input. To toggle the setting, click the LINE or MIC text labels, or rotate the control.

Important: Use caution when switching to Line from Mic, as signal output levels can increase significantly (as they would with a hardware preamp).

This control interacts with the Preamp Gain control. The gain range and amount of available gain changes when the Input Select setting is changed.

Unison Interactions

Hardware Control Mirroring

Software and hardware adjustment of this control is mirrored. The setting can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's preamp input controls, or with the hardware INPUT button on the UA audio interface.

Automatic Hi-Z Selection

When a ¼" unbalanced (TS tip-sleeve) instrument cable is connected to the Apollo/Arrow channel's Hi-Z input, Input Select is locked to the Mic position and the available gain range changes to -30 dB to +10 dB.

High Gain

This switch boosts the overall gain of the preamp. High Gain mode is active when the button is illuminated red. Click the button or its text label to toggle the state.

When Input Select is set to LINE, preamp gain is increased by +8 dB. When Input Select is set to MIC, preamp gain is increased by +18 dB. This extra signal boost can be used in conjunction with the OUTPUT control to overdrive the vacuum tube stages. Various effects, from soft tube overdrive to all out distortion, can be achieved with the High Gain boost.

Unison Interaction

Gain Stage Mode 2

When the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the hardware PREAMP knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust High Gain. In this state, an amber outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Pad

When Pad is enabled, the input signal level is attenuated (lowered) by 20 dB. The pad is engaged when the switch is illuminated red. Click the button or its text label to toggle the state.

Pad is available with the plug-in only; the feature is not available on the original hardware. Pad can be used to reduce signal levels when undesirable overload distortion is present at low preamp gain levels.

> ***Note:*** *Pad is unavailable when Input Select is set to LINE.*

Unison Interactions

Hardware Control Mirroring

Software and hardware adjustment of this control is mirrored. The setting can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's preamp pad control, or with the hardware PAD button on the UA audio interface.

Hi-Z Connection

When a ¼" unbalanced (TS tip-sleeve) instrument cable is connected to the Apollo/Arrow channel's Hi-Z input, the pad is automatically disengaged. Pad is unavailable with Hi-Z input.

Filter

This switch enables the 6 dB per octave high-pass input filter. The input filter is enabled when the switch is illuminated red. Click the button or its text label to toggle the state.

> ***Note:*** *The cutoff frequency of the input filter is adjusted with the High Pass Frequency control.*

Unison Interaction

Hardware Control Mirroring

Software and hardware adjustment of this control is mirrored. The setting can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's preamp filter control, or with the hardware filter button on the UA audio interface.

High Pass Frequency

This knob controls the continuously variable frequency of the high-pass input filter. The available range is 30 Hz to 140 Hz.

Note: *This control has no effect unless the Filter switch is enabled.*

Phase

This button inverts the polarity of the incoming signal. Phase is inverted by 180º when the switch is illuminated red. Leave the button off (unlit) for normal polarity. Click the button or its text label to toggle the state.

When more than one microphone is used to record a single source, inverting the polarity can help reduce phase cancellations. Phase can also be used for creative effects.

Unison Interaction

Hardware Control Mirroring

Software and hardware adjustment of this control is mirrored. The setting can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's preamp polarity control, or with the hardware polarity button (Ø) on the UA audio interface.

Compressor Knobs

Note: *The four Compressor knobs are continuously variable.*

Threshold

Threshold determines the signal level at which compression is applied to the input signal. Signals above the threshold are compressed, while signals below the threshold are not compressed.

Rotate THRESHOLD counter-clockwise to lower the threshold and increase compression. The available threshold range is -30 dB to +20 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return to the zero position.*

Compression (Ratio)

This control determines the compression ratio to be applied in the gain reduction circuit. The available compression ratio range is 1:1 (no compression) to 20:1.

For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being attenuated to 10 dB.

Note: *Signals must exceed the Threshold value before they are attenuated by the Compression amount.*

Attack

ATTACK sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal reaches the THRESHOLD level before compression is applied. The available range is approximately 2 milliseconds to 200 milliseconds.

> ***Tip:*** *When the Comp X4 switch is engaged, the available attack range is four times faster.*

The faster the attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold. Slower attacks allow a signal's attack transients (for example, the pluck of a string) to pass without compression, which can produce a punchier sound.

Release

RELEASE sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal drops below the THRESHOLD before compression processing is ceased. The available range is approximately 100 milliseconds to 5 seconds.

Compressor Switches

Note: Compressor switch functions are active when the switch is lit. Click the switch or its text label to toggle the latched on/off state.

EQ>Comp

When the PRE switch is lit, the EQ circuit is routed before the compressor circuit, increasing tonal option flexibility.

Meter

When the GR switch is lit, the VU meter displays the amount of gain reduction occurring in the compression circuit. When unlit, the VU meter displays the output level.

Comp In

When the IN switch is lit, the compressor is active. When unlit, dynamics processing is disabled.

> ***Tip:*** *If DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel, UAD DSP load is reduced when the compressor is disabled.*

SC (Sidechain) Link

When the plug-in is used in a stereo-input configuration and the IN switch is lit, the compressor sidechain for both channels (left & right) are linked, and both channels are always compressed in equal amounts.

Linking the sidechains maintains the stereo imaging at the input by preventing left-right shifting at the output when one channel has higher signal peaks compared to the other channel.

When this switch is unlit in a stereo-in configuration, the amount of compression occurring is completely independent in both channels. In this case, If one channel has higher signal peaks than the other channel, the left-right imaging may shift at the output.

Note: *When used in a mono-in configuration, this switch cannot be enabled.*

Comp X4

The Comp X4 switch changes the response of the compressor's Attack control. This switch, which is not available on the original hardware, increases the available attack time speed by a factor of four. This feature improves dynamic control across a broader range of sources, including transient-rich material such as drums.

When lit, the available attack time range is faster. When unlit, the Attack knob response matches the original hardware.

EQ Knobs

Bass Gain

This continuous knob adjusts the amplitude of the passive low shelving band. Up to ±24 dB of boost or attenuation is available.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to its center position.*

Bass Frequency

This stepped knob sets the edge frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the Bass Gain knob. Available bass frequency values are (in Hz): 15, 30, 60, and 150.

Tip: *Click the knob's text labels to select a frequency value.*

Low Mid Gain

This continuous knob adjusts the amplitude of the low midrange band. Up to ±16 dB of continuous boost or attenuation is available.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to its center position.*

Low Mid Frequency

This continuous knob sets the center frequency for the low midrange band. The available range is normally 35 Hz to 450 Hz. When the band's X10 switch is engaged, the available range is 350 Hz to 4.5 kHz.

Tip: *Click the knob's text labels to select a frequency value.*

High Mid Gain

This continuous knob adjusts the amplitude of the high midrange band. Up to ±16 dB of continuous boost or attenuation is available.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to its center position.*

High Mid Frequency

This continuous knob sets the center frequency for the high midrange band. The available range is normally 220 Hz to 2.8 kHz. When the band's X10 switch is engaged, the available range is 2.2 kHz to 28 kHz.

Tip: *Click the knob's text labels to select a frequency value.*

Treble Gain

This continuous knob adjusts the amplitude of the passive high shelving band. Up to ±20 dB of boost or attenuation is available.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to its center position.*

Treble Frequency

This stepped knob sets the edge frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the Treble Gain knob. Available treble frequency values are (in kHz): 10, 15, 20, and 32.

Tip: *Click the knob's text labels to select a frequency value.*

EQ Switches

Note: EQ switch functions are active when the switch is lit. Click the switch or its text label to toggle the latched on/off state.

Hi Q

The Hi Q switch sets the bandwidth of frequencies surrounding the midrange band's center frequency. When unlit, the Q value is 0.2 and bandwidth is broader, affecting a wider frequency range.

When lit, the Q value is 0.85 and bandwidth is narrower, for more precise control.

Note: *Each midrange band (Low and High) has its own Q switch.*

Frequency X10

The X10 switch multiplies the center frequency of the midrange band by a factor of ten, extending the available range of frequencies for the band.

When lit, the frequency set by the band's knob is multiplied by ten. When unlit, the frequency indicated by the knob pointer's text label is used.

Note: *Each midrange band (Low and High) has its own X10 switch.*

Sidechain EQ (SC<MIDS)

This switch enables the sidechain EQ function. When lit, the low and high midrange EQ bands are removed from the audio path, and are instead routed to control ("key") the compressor sidechain signal.

Sidechain EQ is typically used for vocal de-essing and similar frequency-selective compression techniques.

Tip: *Sidechain EQ can be active even if the main EQ In switch is disabled.*

Equalizer In

When this IN switch is lit, the EQ circuit is active. When unlit, the audio signal bypasses the EQ circuit. Note that the sidechain EQ (SC<MIDS switch) can be used even if the EQUALIZER switch is disengaged.

Tip: *If DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel, UAD DSP load is reduced when the EQ is disabled.*

Output

This continuous knob adjusts the final output level. The available gain range is -40 dB to +10 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to its center position.*

VU Meter

The VU Meter displays the main output level when the compressor's METER switch is unlit. When the compressor's METER switch is engaged, the VU Meter displays the amount of gain reduction occurring in the compressor circuit.

> ***Tip:*** *The VU Meter's needle is speed sensitive when measuring gain reduction, which can help when setting the compressor's ATTACK and RELEASE controls.*

Power

Use the I/O rocker switch to bypass plug-in processing and conserve UAD DSP. Bypass is useful for comparing the processed signal to the original, unprocessed signal.

> ***Tip:*** *The red power lamp below the VU Meter also functions as a power switch.*

Avalon VT-737sp original hardware

All references to the Avalon VT-737sp and all use of Avalon Design's trademarks are being made with written permission from Avalon Industries, Inc. Special thanks to Devin Powers, Tom Fritze, and Anthony Morro.

Bermuda Triangle

The King of Fuzz Distortion

When it comes to unmistakable, classic fuzz/distortion, the Electro-Harmonix Big Muff reins supreme. A stompbox that defies classification and has never gone out of fashion, vintage Big Muffs are prized for powerfully fat sustain, aggressive attack, and an over-the-top sonic personality.

Inspired by the hallowed early '70s "triangle" version of the Big Muff, the Bermuda Triangle plug-in delivers the same bad-ass attitude and fiendish fuzz that has graced classic records and many-a-legend's pedalboard for over four decades.

Now You Can:

- Track through a faithful emulation of the legendary Electro-Harmonix Big Muff with Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD
- Conjure violin-like sustain and powerful slabs of fuzz with the same pedal used by David Gilmour, Jack White, and Dan Auerbach
- Add colorful distortion/fuzz textures to guitars, synths, drums, and vocals at mix-down with any UAD-2 hardware
- Get the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of a vintage Big Muff thanks to Unison technology for Apollo Twin, DUO, and QUAD

The Rise of the Muff

Throughout the '70s, the Big Muff found its way onto classic tracks such as the Isley Brothers' "Who's That Lady (Part 1)," and the Carpenters' "Goodbye to Love" — featuring a raging Big Muff plugged directly into the board!

Pink Floyd's David Gilmour began using a Big Muff with 1976's *Animals*, eventually using the pedal to conjure the beautifully lyrical sustain on *The Wall's* "Comfortably Numb." Sonic mavericks like Adrian Belew relied on the Muff to elicit beastly howls from a Stratocaster, and in the '90s, Smashing Pumpkins' Billy Corgan and Dinosaur Jr.'s J. Mascis used the Big Muff to deliver bludgeoning, influential riffs. In more recent years, Jack White and the Black Keys' Dan Auerbach have also used the Big Muff as their go-to distortion.

A Faithful Fuzz Emulation

The Bermuda Triangle plug-in expertly captures the original Big Muff's huge sounding bass response and rich-yet-raspy character. Its simple Volume, Tone, Sustain control set allows you to easily and intuitively dial-in single-coil or humbucker-equipped guitars.

Triangle Tones

Whether it's violin-like sustain for lead lines, or bursts of punishing low-string riffs, the Bermuda Triangle plug-in is voiced to deliver the fuzzy goods just like the original vintage unit. From heavily saturated to colorfully clipped, the Bermuda Triangle reacts like the hardware to your touch and picking attack for a bountiful range of distorted delights.

Unison Technology - Key to Tone, Touch, and Feel

The interaction of your instrument and the first pedal in your signal chain is an essential ingredient to capturing a stompbox's unique character and tone. Thanks to Universal Audio's Unison technology, your guitar gets the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of a vintage Big Muff when you plug in to an Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD. This gives you the true tone, feel, and response of the original hardware.

Not Just for Guitar

The Bermuda Triangle's signature voice can also be unleashed on bass, drums, vocals - or anything else. Blowout a drum bus with ridiculous amounts of distortion or add grit and edge to a vocal or synth. And by nailing the original hardware's beefy low-end response, the Bermuda Triangle is an ideal fuzz/distortion tool for bass guitar.

Bermuda Triangle interface

Using Bermuda Triangle

Standard DAW Inserts

In much the same way as some premier recording and mix engineers use stomp boxes in a mix, Bermuda Triangle can be used for creative purposes on any source signal by placing it in any plug-in insert within a DAW. For typical guitar tones, follow the pedal with a guitar amp emulation (as one would with a hardware guitar pedal and amp).

Because the plug-in accurately models the original hardware's high-impedance operating levels, precautions may need to be taken to avoid undesirable input clipping.

> ***Note:*** *Since Hi-Z devices typically operate at much lower signal levels than line-level devices, signal levels being routed into the pedal may need to be reduced to avoid undesirable input distortion.*

Unison™ Technology with Apollo

Bermuda Triangle features Unison technology for integration with the high-impedance input hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's Hi-Z inputs inherit all of the unique circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of the original guitar pedal.

Hi-Z Signal Routing

For the most authentic stompbox tones, plug any high-impedance instrument (guitar, bass, etc.) into Apollo's Hi-Z instrument input and place the pedal plug-in into the unique Unison INPUT insert on the same channel within Apollo's Console application. If desired, follow the Unison pedal plug-in with another pedal or guitar amp emulation in Console's standard insert slots.

This Hi-Z workflow enables near-zero latency monitoring or recording with the same input characteristics and dynamic response as the original pedal.

> ***Note:*** *This plug-in can be Unison-enabled with Apollo's Mic or Line inputs. However, because the original hardware has a high-impedance instrument input only, Apollo's Hi-Z input and Unison insert will provide the most accurate sound and experience of the hardware pedal that is modeled.*

> ***Important:*** *Unison is active only when the pedal plug-in is placed in the unique INPUT insert available on Hi-Z inputs within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Tactile Control

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the Volume, Sustain, and Output controls available within the Unison pedal plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The control being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the control levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Bermuda Triangle Controls

Sustain

Sustain varies the amount of signal overdrive. Rotate the control clockwise to increase distortion and sustain.

Volume

Volume adjusts the pedal's modeled output level. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the volume.

Tone

Tone adjusts the high-frequency content of the signal. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the filter amount, which reduces treble content.

Power

The stomp switch toggles between plug-in enable and disable. Click the switch to toggle the Power state.

Like the original hardware, this is a true-bypass control. When disabled, the signal is not colored by the circuitry.

Tip: *Power can also be toggled by clicking the UA diamond logo.*

Output

Output controls the clean (unmodeled) gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to return the control to zero dB.*

Brigade Chorus Pedal

Thick ‘70s analog shimmer and deep, huge vibrato

Revered for its warm, organic modulation and chewy pitch-shifting vibrato, the BOSS CE-1 Chorus Ensemble* was the first ever production stompbox chorus. Introduced in 1976, this heavy-duty pewter box quickly dazzled players and producers with its luxuriant, dreamy textures.

The Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces emulates every inch of this legendary pedal, expertly capturing its legendary bucket-brigade circuit to deliver captivating chorus shimmer and wobbly vibrato that works on nearly any source.

Now You Can:

- Give parts and instruments 3-D movement with legendary bucket-brigade chorus
- Add thickness, width, and shimmer to guitars, vocals, drums, pianos, and more
- Create subtle detuned textures or all out warble with unmatched vibrato circuit
- Get legendary, milkshake-thick chorus on electric guitar and bass tracks

Bucket-Brigade Circuit

Key to the original hardware’s magic is its bucket-brigade circuit; a series of capacitors that pass the effected analog signal along subsequent transistor stages — the “bucket brigade.” As the signal moves down the line, the delayed signal degrades in a uniquely warm and musical fashion, gently caressing treble frequencies and introducing organic, wholly analog modulation. UA’s team of DSP experts have captured this classic circuit in all its glory for the Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in.

A Chorus for Any Source

Sporting simple, straightforward features, the Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in can be used on a channel strip or an effects bus to subtly enhance or transform anything you run through it. Easily widen vocals or add haze and shimmer to drum overheads. On electric guitar and bass, the Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in yields the fat, unmistakable guitar sound of late ’70s Rush and the electric bass textures of the Cure and New Order. Or you can put the Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in on a Fender Rhodes patch a‘la Herbie Hancock. Whereas some chorus units sound unnatural and “tacked on,” the Brigade Chorus Pedal plug-in gets inside your sources with high-caloric chorus thick enough to spoon out of your speakers.

*Note: The Brigade Chorus Pedal product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland or BOSS. The Roland and BOSS names, as well as the CE-1 and Chorus Ensemble model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio’s product.

Brigade Chorus Pedal interface

Brigade Chorus Pedal Controls

Normal/Effect

The footswitch at the lower left of the pedal is an effect bypass switch. Click the switch to enable/disable the chorus or vibrato effect. When Normal is active (when effect is bypassed), the Rate LED stays fully lit.

Note: *The active effect is determined by the Vibrato/Chorus switch.*

This is not a plug-in bypass switch. The original hardware colors the sound slightly even when the effect is bypassed via normal mode, and this sonic behavior is modeled in the plug-in.

Tip: *To disable audio processing and conserve UAD DSP, use the Power switch.*

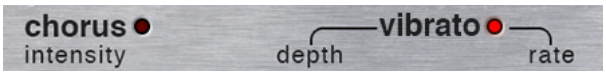
Vibrato/Chorus

The footswitch at the lower right of the pedal determines the operating mode of the pedal. Click the switch to toggle between Chorus and Vibrato modes.

> ***Note:*** *The Brigade Chorus Pedal can operate in either chorus or vibrato mode. Both modes cannot be active at the same time.*

Mode LEDs

The small LEDs at the top of the interface indicate the current operating mode. In addition to the footswitch, clicking these LEDs and/or text will also change the mode.



> ***Tip:*** *Click the Mode LED or mode text to change the operating mode.*

Signal LED

The red Signal LED (located above the Normal/Effect switch) illuminates when signal peaks in the plug-in are detected.

Signal levels can be adjusted with the Level control. If the Signal LED glows solid red, the signal may distort. If distortion is not desired, lower the Level control to compensate.

Rate LED

When the effect is active, the red Rate LED (located above the Vibrato/Chorus switch) blinks according to the current low frequency oscillator (LFO) rate.

In Vibrato mode, the LFO rate is set with the Vibrato Rate knob. In Chorus mode, the rate is set with the Chorus Intensity knob.

> ***TIp:*** *When the effect is inactive (via the Normal/Effect footswitch), the Rate LED glows solid red.*

> ***Note:*** *In Chorus mode, the fastest LFO rate is slower than the slowest LFO rate in Vibrato mode.*

Stereo Mode

This switch determines the output mode when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/stereo-out or stereo-in/stereo-out configuration. The switch has no effect when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

The original hardware has only a monophonic input. Its output can be mono (wet and dry signal mixed at one output jack) or stereo (dry signal in one output jack, wet signal in other output jack).

The plug-in model is adapted for true stereo input. The Stereo Mode switch changes the output as follows:

Dual

In Dual mode the pedal behaves as a dual-mono device, functioning as two independent pedals, each running in mono mode on one side of the stereo signal.

The left output contains a mix of the dry left input signal and the processed left channel signal, while the right output contains a mix of the dry right input signal and the processed right channel signal. Additionally, the LFOs of the dual pedal channels are 90° out of phase (quadrature) for maximum effect.

Classic

In Classic mode, the pedal behavior is similar to that of a mono-in/stereo-out configuration, as with the original hardware. The left and right channel inputs are mixed to mono, and only the dry signal (mixed left and right channels) appear at the left output, while only the wet effect signal appears at the right output.

Level

This knob determines the signal level in the pedal. If the signal distorts, this control can be lowered to compensate.

Tip: *Levels are indicated by the Signal LED.*

Chorus Intensity

When the pedal is in Chorus mode, the effect depth and rate are set with this knob.

Note: *When the pedal is in Vibrato mode, Intensity has no effect.*

Vibrato Controls

These two knobs are functional when the pedal is in Vibrato mode.

Note: *In Chorus mode, the vibrato controls have no effect.*

Depth

Controls the vibrato amount.

Rate

Controls the vibrato rate. The rate is indicated by the Rate LED.

Power

The is the plug-in's overall bypass control for comparing the processed and unprocessed signal. In the DOWN (white dot) position, signal processing is active. In the UP position, the unprocessed signal is heard.

Tip: *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the POWER is off if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.*

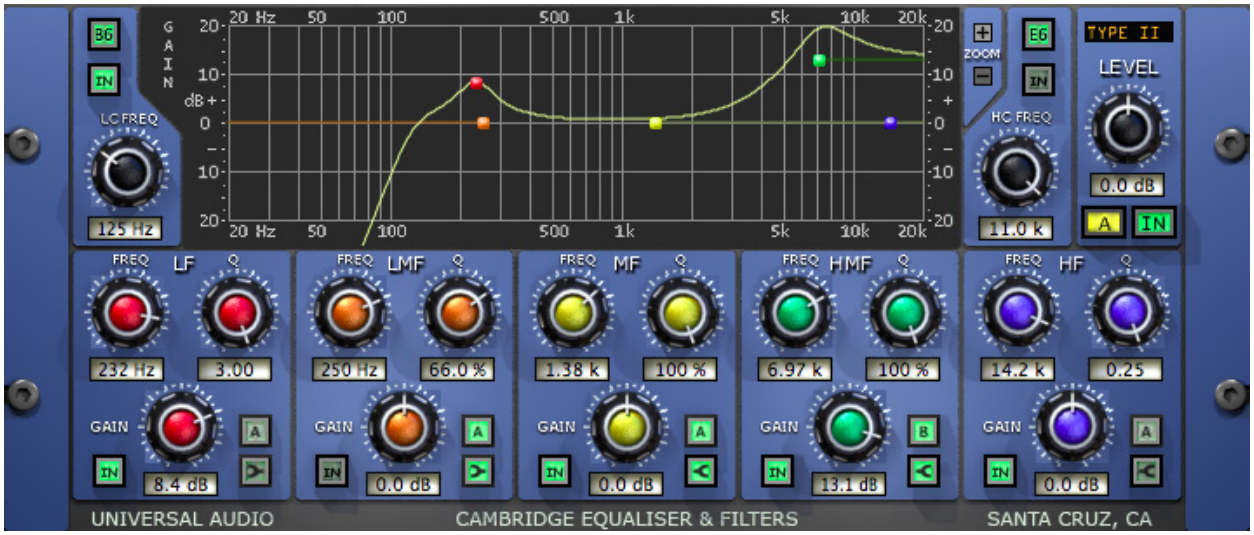
Note: The Brigade Chorus Pedal product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland or BOSS. The Roland and BOSS names, as well as the CE-1 and Chorus Ensemble model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Cambridge EQ

Overview

Cambridge EQ is a mastering-quality, no-compromise equalizer that enables powerful tonal shaping of any audio source. Its algorithm was modeled from various high-end analog filters, providing a sonically rich foundation for timbral manipulation. Special attention was given to the handling of higher frequencies, resulting in a much smoother and more satisfying high-end response than is found in most digital filters.

Cambridge EQ is highly flexible, offering a broad spectrum of options facilitating surgical precision and delivering superior aural results in every application. This may be the most satisfying, full-featured equalizer in your arsenal of creative tools.



Cambridge EQ interface

Cambridge EQ Controls

Each feature of the Cambridge EQ interface is detailed below.

EQ Response Curve Display

The EQ Response Curve Display plots the frequency response of the current Cambridge EQ settings. It provides instant visual feedback of how audio is being processed by the equalizer.

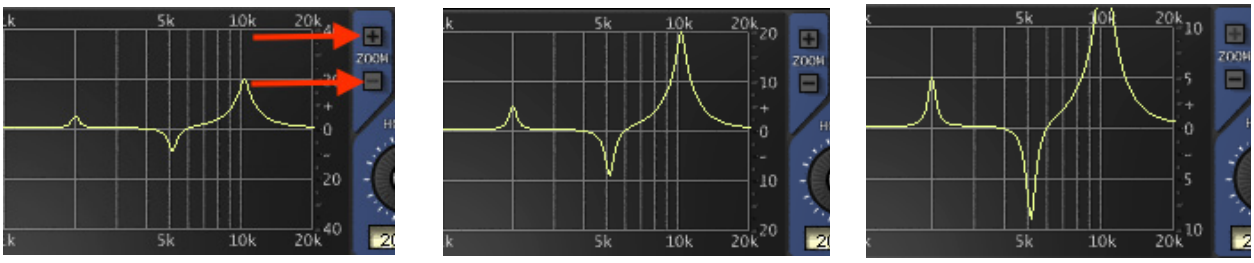
The entire audio spectrum from 20 Hz to 20 kHz is displayed along the horizontal axis. Gain and attenuation of frequencies (up to ±40 dB) are displayed along the vertical axis. The vertical resolution of this display can be modified with the Zoom buttons.

Response Curve Color

The color of the response curve depends on the value of the A/B Selector Button. When A is active, the curve is yellow. When B is active, the curve is green. When Cambridge EQ is disabled, the response curve is grey.

Zoom Buttons

The vertical scale of the Curve Display can be increased or reduced with the Zoom buttons. This function allows the resolution of the Curve Display to be changed for enhanced visual feedback when very small or very large amounts of boost or cut are applied. Four vertical ranges can be selected with the Zoom buttons: ±5, ±10, ±20, and ±40 dB.



Vertical resolution of the Response Curve can be changed with the Zoom buttons

Curve Control Bats

There are five control "bats" on the curve display. Each bat is color coded and corresponds to each of the five EQ bands. The position of the bat on the curve display reflects the frequency and gain of its corresponding band, even if the band is disabled.

The gain and frequency of an EQ band can be modified simultaneously by dragging its bat with the mouse. If a band is disabled when its bat is touched for the first time, the band is enabled.

> ***Note:*** *To modify the Q of a band with its bat, hold down the Control key while dragging vertically.*

When a band is enabled, the EQ curve usually touches the bat. However, because the EQ curve always displays the actual frequency response of Cambridge EQ, if two bands are close together in frequency and/or at extreme gain values, the bat may not touch the curve itself.

Master Level Knob

This control adjusts the signal output level of Cambridge EQ. This may be necessary if the signal is dramatically boosted or reduced by the EQ settings. The available range is ±20 dB.

A/B Selector Button

The A/B Selector switches between two separate sets of Cambridge EQ plug-in values. This feature enables easy switching between two completely independent EQ curves which can be useful for comparison purposes or for automating radical timbre changes. Both the A and B curves reside within a single Cambridge EQ preset.

Click the A/B Selector button to switch between the two curves. When A is displayed, the button and the EQ response curve is yellow. When B is displayed, the button and the curve is green.

> ***Note:*** *To reset the A or B curve to a null (flat) response, control-click the A/B Selector button. The active curve will be nulled.*

> ***Note:*** *To copy one curve to another, shift-click the button. The active curve will be copied to the inactive curve.*

EQ Enable Button

This button enables or disables the Cambridge EQ altogether. You can use this switch to compare the processed settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Low Cut / High Cut Filters

The Low Cut and High Cut filters are offered in addition to the five parametric/shelf bands. A wide range of filter types is provided to facilitate tonal creativity. Many filters that are available are represented.

Three controls are offered: Cut Type, Enable, and Frequency. Each control is detailed below.

Cut Type Menu

The Cut Type menu determines the sound of the low and high cut filters. To view the Cut Type menu, click and hold the green cut type button.

Four types of responses are provided: Coincident Pole, Bessel, Butterworth, and Elliptic. The numbers represent the filter order, i.e. Bessel 4 is a fourth-order filter. Each offers a different sound. To select a new cut response, drag to the desired response and release.

The responses are more gentle on filters with lower numbers, and get steeper and more aggressive as the numbers increase. The coincident-pole filters are first-order filters cascaded in series and offer gentle slopes. Bessel filters are popular because of their smooth phase characteristic with decent rejection. Butterworth filters offer even stronger rejection. The Elliptic setting is about as "brick wall" as you can get. Generally speaking, more phase shifting occurs as the response gets steeper.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP usage does increase some as the filters get stronger (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).*

Cut Enable Button

This button activates the cut filters. The filters are enabled when the "In" button is green. UAD DSP usage is slightly reduced when the cut filters are disabled (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Cut Frequency Knob

This knob determines the cutoff frequency for the Cut filters. The available range is from 20 Hz - 5 kHz for the low cut filter, and 20 Hz - 20 kHz for the high cut filter.

EQ Bands

All five of the EQ bands can be used in parametric or shelf mode. Each band has identical controls, the only difference is the frequency range values.

The function of the controls is similar in both parametric and shelf modes. The two modes are described separately (see Parametric EQ and Shelf EQ).

The EQ band controls

Enable Button

Each band can be individually engaged with the Enable (IN) button. The button is green when the band is enabled. All bands default to disabled. To enable any band, click the Enable button.

You can use these buttons to compare the band settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the individual band. UAD DSP usage is slightly decreased when a band is disabled (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Frequency Knob

This parameter determines the center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the Gain setting. The available range for each of the five bands is the same for both parametric and shelf modes. The ranges are shown in the table below.

Available Band Frequency Ranges

Low Frequencies (LF)	20 – 400 Hz
Low-Mid Frequencies (LMF)	30 – 600 Hz
Mid Frequencies (MF)	100 Hz – 6 kHz
High-Mid Frequencies (HMF)	900 Hz – 18 kHz
High Frequencies (HF)	2 kHz – 20 kHz

Gain Knob

This parameter determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±20 dB.

Q (Bandwidth) Knob

The behavior of the Q parameter varies depending on the band mode and the gain. For this reason Q is detailed separately in the Parametric Q and Shelf Q sections.

Parametric EQ

A band is in parametric mode when the Shelf Enable Button is disabled. Three types of parametric EQ are available, as determined by the Parametric Type selector.

Parametric Type Selector

The Parametric Type selector changes the response of the band controls to reflect the behavior of various analog equalizers. It is a global control for all 5 bands, and has no effect on the low and high cut filters. Click the Parametric Type display to rotate between Types I, II, and III.

The filter algorithm is the same in all three parametric types. The difference is in the dependency between the gain and Q parameters. Each parametric type has its own response characteristics.

In Type I mode, the Q remains constant regardless of the gain setting. In Type II mode, the Q increases as gain is boosted, but remains constant as gain is attenuated. In Type III mode, the Q increases as gain is boosted and attenuated.

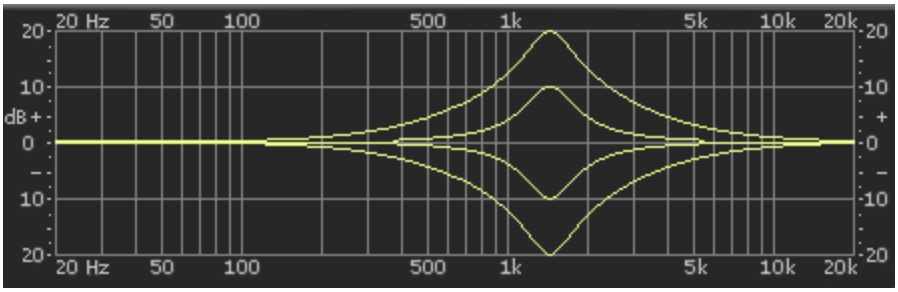
Parametric Q

The Q (bandwidth) knob sets the proportion of frequencies surrounding the center frequency to be affected by the gain control. The Q range is 0.25-16; higher values yield sharper slopes.

Note that the Q numeric value in relation to its knob position is warped (i.e. not linear) and varies according to the parametric type.

Type I

When set to Type I, the bandwidth remains at a fixed Q regardless of the gain setting for the band; there is no Q/Gain interdependency. In addition, there is a finer resolution of the Q knob in the middle of its range. This makes it easier to achieve subtle bandwidth changes. Note that the Q value and knob positions do not change as the gain is modified.



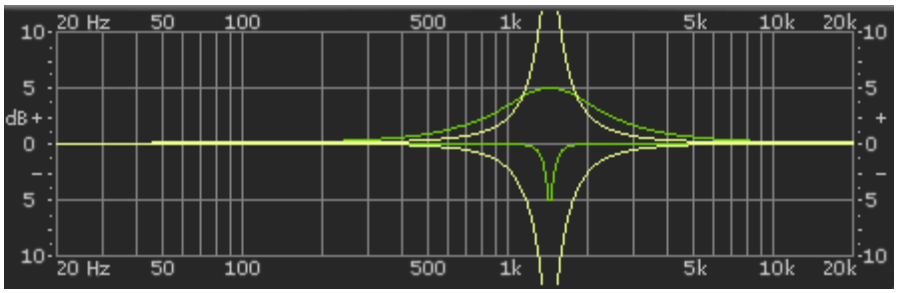
Parametric Type I response

Type II

When set to Type II, there is a Q/Gain dependency on boost. The bandwidth increases continuously as the gain is boosted, but not when attenuated. The Q knob position determines the maximum Q at full gain.

Filter bandwidth is broader at lower boost settings and narrower at higher boost settings. This can produce a smoother, more natural response when boosting filter gain.

Note that the Q value increases as gain is boosted but the knob position does not change The Q value is approached as gain increases, and reaches the knob position at maximum gain.



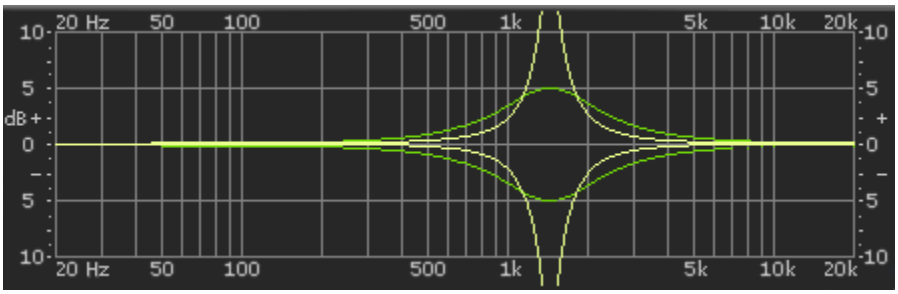
Parametric Type II response

Type III

When set to Type III, there is a Q/Gain dependency on boost and attenuation. The bandwidth increases continuously as the gain is boosted and attenuated. The Q knob position determines the maximum Q at full gain.

Filter bandwidth is broader at lower gain settings and narrower at higher gain settings. This can produce a smoother, more natural response when adjusting filter gain.

Note that the Q value increases as gain is increased but the knob position does not change The Q value is approached as gain increases, and reaches the knob position at maximum gain.



Parametric Type III response

Shelf EQ

Shelf Enable Button

Each band can be switched from parametric mode to shelf mode by clicking the shelf enable button. The button is off by default. To enable shelving on any band, click the shelf button.

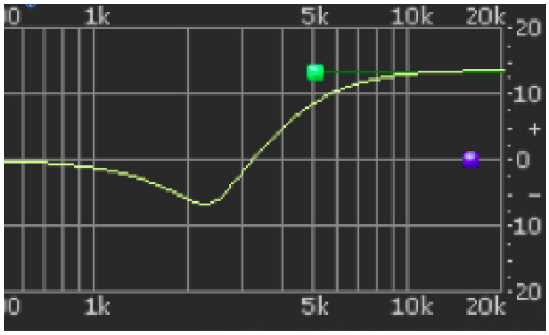
The button is green when shelving is enabled. Additionally, the control bat associated with the band has a horizontal shelf indicator line in the response curve display when shelf mode is active.

Shelf Type Button

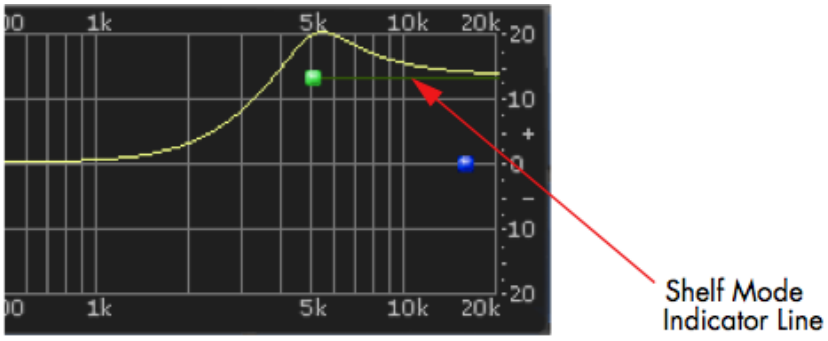
When a band is in shelf mode and its Q is above the minimum value, a resonant peak occurs in the filter response. The Shelf Type button affects where this resonant peak occurs in relation to the shelf frequency.

Its purpose is to emulate the response curves of classic high-end analog mixing consoles. It's yet another tool to help you find the exact sound you are looking for.

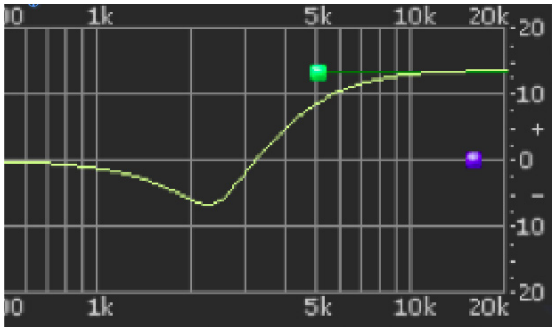
The Shelf Type button places the resonant peak at the edge of the stopband (Shelf Type A), the edge of the passband (Shelf Type B), or at the edge of the stopband and the passband (Shelf Type C). These response curves are shown below.



Shelf Type A



Shelf Type B



Shelf Type C

Shelf Q

When a band is in shelf mode, the Q knob sets the resonance of the band. The range of the Q knob is 0-100% when in shelf mode.

Note: *When a band is in shelf mode, the Gain setting will affect the Q of the band.*

When the Q is at its minimum value, there is no resonant peak. The resonance increases and becomes more prominent as the Q is increased. Therefore, for the shelf type to have any effect the Q must be above its minimum value.

Note: *In order for this button to have any affect, the band must be in shelving mode, some gain must be applied, and the Q must be above its minimum value.*

Capitol Chambers

A startling recreation of the world's finest echo chambers.

Located below the iconic Capitol Tower in Los Angeles, Capitol Studios is arguably the most recognized studio in the world — and much of its legend can be traced to its hallowed, subterranean echo chambers. From The Beach Boys to Ray Charles, Bob Dylan to Sinatra, these underground spaces continue to provide gorgeous hi-fi ambience that is simply unmatched.

Now, after years of R&D and close collaboration with Capitol Studios — including unprecedented access to four legendary echo chambers 30-feet beneath the studio — Universal Audio proudly presents the Capitol Chambers plug-in, a startling end-to-end recreation of the most popular echo chambers ever created, exclusively for UAD hardware and UA Audio Interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Record and mix with the world's only authentic plug-in emulation of Capitol Studios' prized underground echo chambers
- Add the unmistakably dense, natural reverberation to vocals or drums — far beyond plate, digital, or simple convolution reverb
- Create new sounds by repositioning Capitol Chambers' microphones using UA's Dynamic Room Modeling
- Audition current and historical chamber configurations, plus new setups curated by Capitol's Steve Genewick
- Harness the chamber's entire signal chain including amplifiers, speakers, custom preamps, and mics
- Quickly pull up presets from legendary Grammy-winning engineers Al Schmitt *(Ray Charles, Steely Dan)*, Darrell Thorp *(Beck, Radiohead)*, Frank Filipetti *(Madonna, Paul McCartney)* and more

Classic Echo Chambers, Designed by Les Paul

Prized for their natural sound and dense ambience, acoustic echo chambers became a creative tool for pioneering, forward-thinking engineers by the mid 1940s — most notably UA founder Bill Putnam Sr. and the great Les Paul, the genius behind the Capitol chambers designs. Built from reinforced concrete and tuned using sloped ceilings and a trapezoidal shape, Paul's designs deliver a smooth, balanced decay and a completely natural room tone that can't be achieved in any other way.

Capturing Iconic Echo

In creating this amazing plug-in, UA sourced historic technical diagrams from the early ‘60s to precisely recreate microphone/speaker setups inside of Capitol’s most coveted chambers, including the vintage omnidirectional Altec 21D mics and custom speaker/horn configurations, in their original hit-making positions. Current “modern” configurations dating from the late ‘80s were also captured, using the omnidirectional Shure SM80s, while new and creative mic/speaker combos were devised by UA and Capitol’s resident chamber expert, Steve Genewick.

Unprecedented Ambience Control

Capitol Chambers’ Position slider gives you next-level control over spatial and time response, allowing you to reposition the chamber mics — no assistant engineer required. From the maximum distance stock positions, to direct speaker-to-microphone effects and proximity characteristics, the Capitol Chambers plug-in can subtly thicken vocals or drums, or soak strings with the most natural, complex sounding reverb ever recorded.

Powered by UA’s Dynamic Room Modeling

Harnessing the same technology as UA’s award-winning Ocean Way Studios plug-in, Capitol Chambers uses UA’s proprietary Dynamic Room Modeling technology, an exclusive combination of physical modeling and advanced measurement techniques. Whereas standard convolution reverbs only provide a sonic snapshot, Dynamic Room Modeling gives the Capitol Chambers plug-in nearly infinite ambient possibilities.

Deeper Still

Beyond a vintage recreation, the Capitol Chambers plug-in offers creative features for modern DAW workflows like Pre Delay and Dry/Wet mix controls. A sweepable 80 to 750 Hz filter lets you minimize muddy bass going into the chamber, while Bass, Treble, and proportional Q Mid band lets you perfectly season the chamber’s lush ambience. In addition, the Width control allows you to narrow the chamber’s stereo field, for easily pinpointing a vocal or instrument in the mix. Finally, Decay lets you quickly shorten Capitol Chambers’ natural reverb time, allowing for a tighter sound in dense mixes.

An All-Star Collection of Artist Presets

The Capitol Chamber’s plug-in features carefully crafted presets from a stunning roster of Grammy-winning engineers and producers. From recording industry icon Al Schmitt *(Ray Charles, Steely Dan)* to Mark Linett *(The Beach Boys, Los Lobos)* and Frank Filipetti *(Madonna, Paul McCartney)*, Chris Dugan *(Green Day, Iggy Pop)*, Darrell Thorp *(Beck, Radiohead)*, and more, you can experiment using the same settings that professionals who know every nook and cranny of Capitol’s famous chambers use every day.

Capitol Chambers interface

Operational Overview

Important underlying concepts for Capitol Chambers are presented in this section. For details about how to operate the specific controls, see Capitol Chambers Controls later in this chapter.

Hybrid Technology

Capitol Chambers is neither a general impulse response (IR) convolution reverb nor a typical algorithmic reverb. Instead, Capitol Chambers utilizes breakthrough hybrid technologies, combining expertly sampled impulse responses with advanced algorithmic DSP techniques. Capitol Chambers is sonically superior in terms of overall model accuracy and dynamic customization. The Capitol Chambers plug-in is used to add ambience to existing sources just as you would with other reverb processors and methodologies.

Echo Chambers

An echo chamber is the first technique used for adding controlled ambience to a recording. The chamber is simply an ambient space, such as a reflective room, that contains loudspeakers and microphones. To add ambience to an audio signal, the audio engineer sends audio signals to the loudspeaker(s) in the room. The ambience of the room is captured with the microphone(s), then the mic's wet signal is mixed with the original dry signal to create the final blended dry+wet sound.

The four most popular echo chambers at Capitol Studios (chamber numbers 2, 4, 6, and 7) are included in the plug-in. Each chamber has small variations in overall shape and total volume, a distinct speaker type and placement within the chamber, and a selection of microphones along with their placements. These attributes all contribute to the unique sonic response of each chamber.

The four chambers naturally provide a maximum reverberation time of approximately 5 to 9.5 seconds for full decay. Although not possible with the real physical chambers, UA's digital "beyond physics" Decay control allows these naturally occurring decay times to be reduced as desired, down to a minimum of one second.

The four available echo chambers

Microphones

In addition to each chamber's acoustic design and speakers, the microphones and placements used to capture the ambient signals are a significant contributor to the frequency and spatial attributes of the chamber. The full signal path contains Capitol's custom-built electronics, including their in-house designed microphone preamps.

Capitol Chambers contains four different microphone pairs for stereo ambience capture. The microphone selections and default positions represent current, historical, or specially curated setups with help from Capitol staff and UA. Each pair can be used in any of the four chambers. The available microphones are described in the table below.

Microphones	Description	Notes
Altec 21D	Small diaphragm omnidirectional tube condenser microphone	Original installation; chambers 4 and 6 provide historically accurate configurations with a band limited frequency response
RCA 44	Figure-8 ribbon velocity microphone	Found in other popular chambers, provides a complex and colored yet controlled response, with strong proximity characteristics
Shure SM80	Small diaphragm omnidirectional condenser microphone	Current installation, in use since the early '80s, imparts a broad "reach" and a uniform frequency range
Sony C37A	Medium diaphragm tube condenser microphone in cardioid mode	Useful for an elevated, refined sound with moderate proximity characteristics

Microphones Position

The position of the microphone pair relative to the source speaker can be dynamically adjusted with the Position control. As when recording with microphones in the physical realm, the mic position can have a significant impact on the sound that is captured.

The best way to explore the sonic possibilities of the Microphones Position control is by listening to the plug-in when it is applied on an individual source and MIX is set to 100% wet (or when WET SOLO is active).

As the mics are moved closer to the speaker, the room will sound tighter and the source will sound more present. Conversely, the room gets more diffused when the mics are farther away from the speaker. The Capitol Chambers modeling includes the proximity gain and bass buildup that occurs in the physical realm; the signal may be louder as microphones are positioned closer to the speaker.

The separation between a stereo microphone pair can subtly vary depending on the microphone pair selected and its Position setting.

Speakers

In addition to each chamber's acoustic design and microphones, the speakers that send signals into the chamber are a significant contributor to the frequency and spatial attributes of the chamber. The physical size of the speakers and the space they take within the chamber is also a significant contributor to the chamber's sound and decay time.

Each chamber has a dedicated speaker pair. The speaker positions are fixed, and represent current, historical, or specially curated setups from UA and Capitol staff. As with Capitol Studio's original patch routing configuration, each chamber's dedicated speaker pair receives a mono summed input.

The speakers used in each chamber are described in the table below.

Chamber	Speaker	Notes
2	Altec 604 Duplex with JBL LE-175 horn and JBL crossover	Provides a rich, low-mid soundfield using an era-spanning, custom Capitol Studios component pairing
4	Altec A7 Voice of the Theatre with Altec 802 horn	"Al's chamber" is Capitol's most in-demand option, featuring the original installation movie theatre playback system, providing an incredibly balanced sound and Capitol Chambers' shortest natural decay
6	Altec 604 Duplex	Another original 1950s installation, with a coveted vintage hi-fi audio playback speaker system giving a warm, long decay
7	Tannoy System 8	In-demand chamber with a full range sound and the longest and most linear decay available, uses passive coaxial 8" mid-field speakers of English 1980s origin

Algorithmic Recalculations

When the Chamber Select, Microphones Select, Microphones Position, or Decay controls are adjusted, algorithmic recalculations are executed by the plug-in. These recalculations cause a time lag before the new control values are heard. Additionally, sonic artifacts can occur while these recalculations are performed if audio is currently being processed by the plug-in.

Because there are extensive interdependencies within the plug-in, the specific time to complete the algorithmic recalculations depend on the control(s) being modified, the current sample rate, and the DAW buffer size.

Recalculation Indicators

During algorithmic recalculations, visual indicators are active. These indicators signify that audio is not stable until the model recalculations are complete. The visual recalculation indicators that are active depend on which controls are being adjusted, as described below.

> ***Note:*** *When the Chamber Select, Microphones Select, Microphones Position, or Decay controls are adjusted, the new values are not completely heard until the Recalculation Indicators are inactive.*

Chamber Select, Microphones Select, Microphones Position, Decay – When any of these controls are adjusted, the Capitol Chambers logo antenna flashes in yellow.

Flashing antenna during all algorithmic recalculations

Microphones Select, Microphones Position – When these controls are adjusted, the Capitol Chambers logo antenna flashes. Additionally, the door within the chamber view is open, alluding to an engineer entering the chamber to change or reposition the mics.

Open chamber door during microphone recalculations

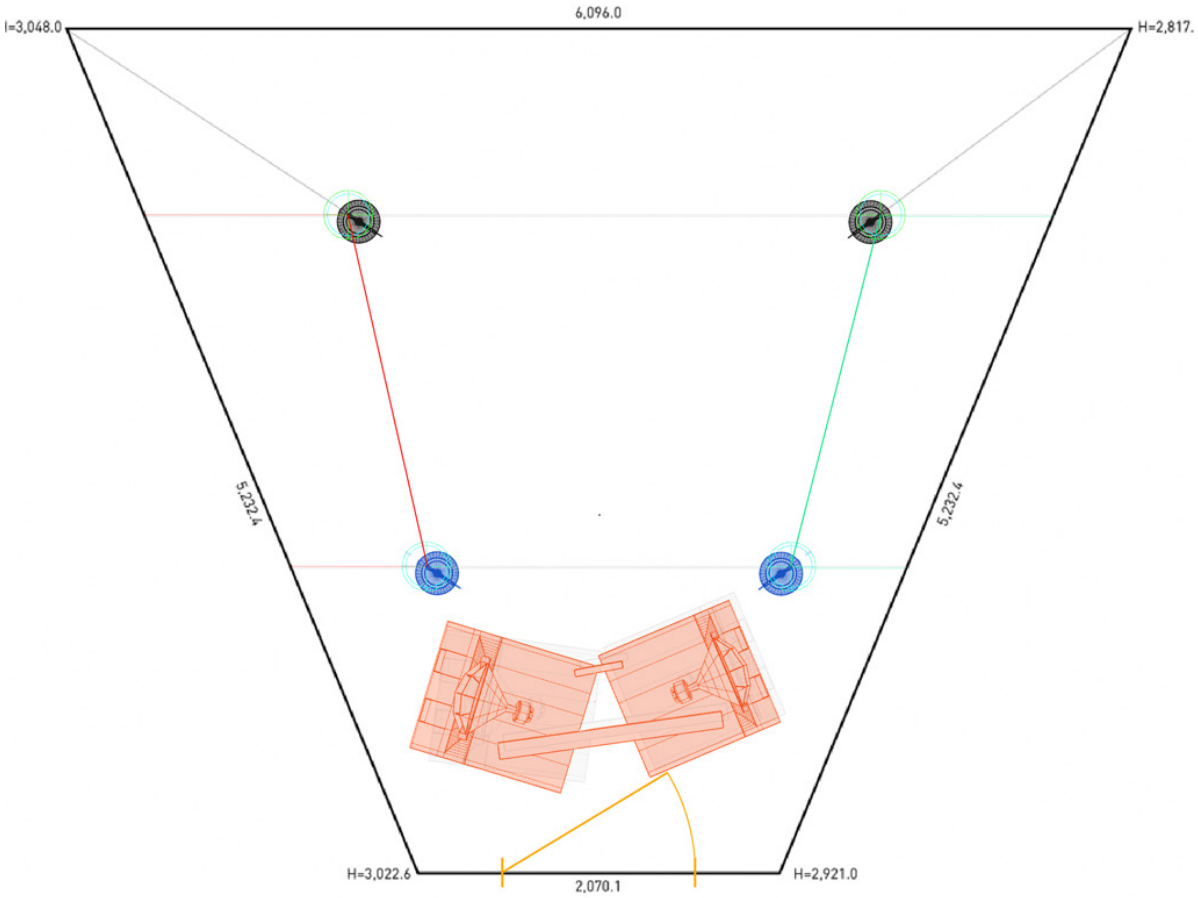
DAW Automation Limitations

Load time and/or sonic artifacts during algorithmic recalculations can be an impediment if the specific controls listed in the table below are modified with DAW automation during mixdown. To avoid these impediments, adjusting specific Capitol Chambers controls with DAW automation during mixdown is not recommended.

If DAW automation must be used on these controls, it is recommended that only static snapshot automation (instead of continuous automation) be used. Additionally, static snapshot automation should be used only when the signal being processed is not audible. For example, automate only between musical phrases.

Parameter automation recommendations are described in the table below.

Capitol Chambers Parameter	Automation Recommendation
Chamber Select Microphones Select Decay Time	Not recommended (time lag may cause sonic artifacts)
Microphones Position	Static snapshot automation between audio passages only (may cause sonic artifacts)
(all other parameters)	Continuous and static snapshot automation OK



Example bird's eye map of Position parameter – Chamber 4 with SM80

Accessing Artist Presets

Capitol Chambers includes presets voiced by prominent artists. The artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Console's preset manager with UA audio interfaces.

Al Schmitt (Capitol Studios)	Jamie Lidell	Niko Bolas
Bassy Bob Brockmann	Joe Chiccarelli	Richard Chycki
Chris Dugan	Joey Waronker	Ross Hogarth
Damian Taylor	John Paterno	Steve Genewick (Capitol Studios)
Darrell Thorp	Mark Linett	Tom Elmhirst
Frank Filipetti	Mark Needham	

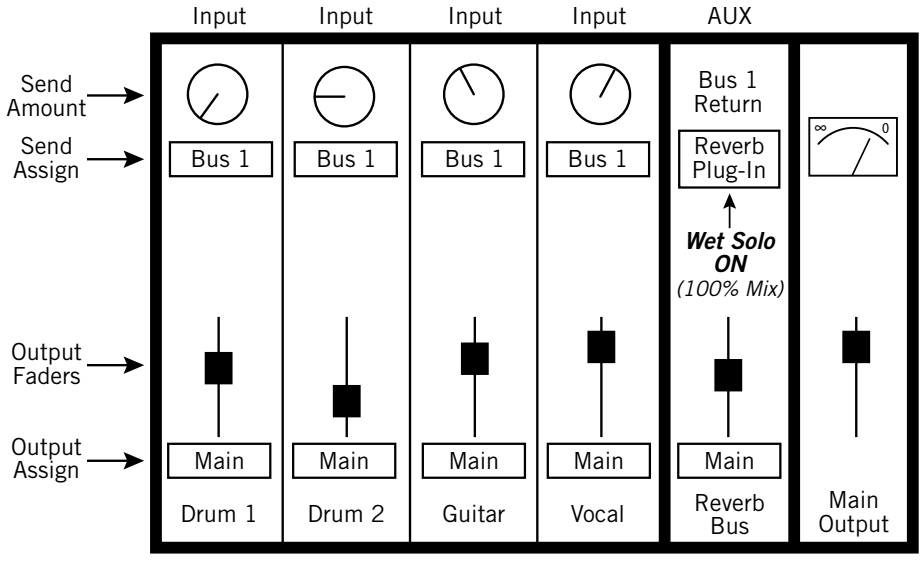
Artists that have provided presets for Capitol Chambers

Latency

Due to its unique design requirements, Capitol Chambers is subject to increased latency versus other UAD plug-ins. The increased latency may be objectionable when tracking through the plug-in when it is on individual channel inserts. This impediment also applies with Apollo/Arrow when using the Console application for Realtime UAD Processing.

This latency is not an issue when used in a typical effect send/ return configuration, nor during mixdown when latency is not a concern. When tracking live performances and the performer is monitoring through Capitol Chambers, using the plug-in a traditional effect send/return configuration where latency with time-based effects does not affect the monitored performance is recommended.

> ***Tip:*** *The reverb configuration illustrated below conserves UAD DSP when compared to inserting the same reverb plug-in on individual channels.*



DAW signal routing with reverb plug-in using a traditional effect send/return configuration

Capitol Chambers Controls

Chamber Select

The active echo chamber is selected with this row of four yellow buttons above the Chamber View. Click any button to choose the chamber. The active chamber's button glows, and its interior is displayed in the Chamber View.

> ***Note:*** *When Chamber Select is changed, the new value is not completely heard until the Recalculation Indicators are inactive.*

Chamber Select buttons with Chamber 4 selected

Chamber View

The image beneath the Chamber Select buttons displays the currently active chamber with its speakers and the current microphones position.

> ***Tip:*** *Drag in the Chamber View to change the microphones position.*

Microphones Select

The stereo microphone pair used in the echo chamber are selected with these buttons. Click a button to choose a mic pair; the active mic's button is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *When Microphones Select is adjusted, the new value is not completely heard until the Recalculation Indicators are inactive.*

Microphones Select buttons

Microphones Position

Position varies the distance between the microphone pair and the speaker, as well as the distance between the two mics. To change the mic position, drag the control slider or drag within the chamber view area.

> ***Note:*** *When Microphones Position is adjusted, the new value is not completely heard until the Recalculation Indicators are inactive.*

When set to MAXIMUM, the microphones are in the original position as captured within the chambers at Capitol Studios. Values below MAXIMUM are adjusted algorithmically.

The aural effect of a mic position change most is obvious while listening to the chamber when MIX is set to 100% (or when WET SOLO is active).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the MINIMUM or MAXIMUM text labels to return the control to those values.*

Microphones Position slider

Predelay

The time between the dry signal and the onset of reverb is controlled with this continuous knob. The range is 0 to 250 milliseconds.

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values.

> ***Tip:*** *Higher Predelay values can be useful for tracks where the clarity of the source should stand out before the reverb starts.*

Power

The power button enables/disables the plug-in. When enabled, the Power Lamp is illuminated. When disabled, the Power Lamp is de-illuminated and plug-in processing is disabled.

Tip: *The UA logo also functions as a Power button.*

Decay

Decay adjusts the reverberation time. Rotate the knob counter-clockwise to decrease the chamber's reverb time.

Note: *When Decay is adjusted, the new value is not completely heard until the Recalculation Indicators are inactive.*

When set to MAX, the decay time is the natural room decay as captured within the chambers at Capitol Studios. Values below MAX are adjusted algorithmically.

Tip: *Click the MIN or MAX text labels to set the control to those values.*

Filter

This knob controls a 6 dB per octave low cut (high pass) filter. The range is continuously variable from 80 Hz to 750 Hz. When set to OFF, the filter is disabled.

The Filter circuitry is on the microphone path for shaping the reverb return signal. Rotate the knob clockwise to reduce low frequency content.

Tip: *Click the OFF text label to quickly disable the filter. Click the OFF label again to return to the previous value.*

EQ

In addition to the low cut filter, three bands of boost/cut equalization are available. The EQ circuitry is on the microphone path for shaping the reverb return signal.

Each band has up to ±10 dB of continuously variable gain. Rotate a band knob clockwise from the center position to increase frequencies in the band. Rotate a band knob counter-clockwise from the center position to reduce frequencies in the band.

The Bass and Treble bands are Baxandall-style; the Mid band has proportional Q.

Tip: *Click a band's frequency text label to reset its gain to 0 dB. Click the frequency label again to return to the previous value.*

EQ Band	Band Center Frequency
Bass	125 Hz
Mid	500 Hz
Treble	5 kHz

EQ band center frequencies

Mix

Mix continuously sets the blend between the original dry signal and the wet reverberated signal. The available range is from 0% (no wet signal) to 100% (no dry signal).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" or "100" text labels to quickly set these values.*

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When Mix is in the 12 o'clock position, the value is 15%.

When set to any value except 100% (or when Wet Solo is enabled), the dry portion of the signal is unprocessed.

> ***Important:*** *If Wet Solo is active, adjusting Mix will have no effect.*

Wet Solo

Wet Solo puts the plug-in into 100% Wet mode. When enabled, the dry unprocessed signal is muted and the Mix control has no effect.

Wet Solo is typically used when the plug-in is inserted on an auxiliary effect return bus that is configured for use with channel aux sends, for 100% wet send/return processing. When the plug-in is inserted on a track, Wet Solo is typically disabled so the dry/wet mix control can be heard.

Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control. The switch state is saved within host DAW project/session files, but it doesn't change when a preset is loaded; the current state always overrides the preset state.

This feature allows presets to be properly auditioned without changing the Wet Solo setting. If Wet Solo is disabled when a preset is loaded, the dry/wet mix value in the preset is loaded (and heard) and Wet Solo remains disabled. If Wet Solo is enabled when a preset is loaded, the dry/wet mix value in the preset is loaded (but not heard) and Wet Solo remains active.

The global feature means preset settings are always loaded appropriately, whether the plug-in is loaded in a track insert (where Wet Solo is typically disabled and the mix control used instead), or in an aux return (where wet solo is typically enabled, defeating the mix control for 100% wet send/return processing).

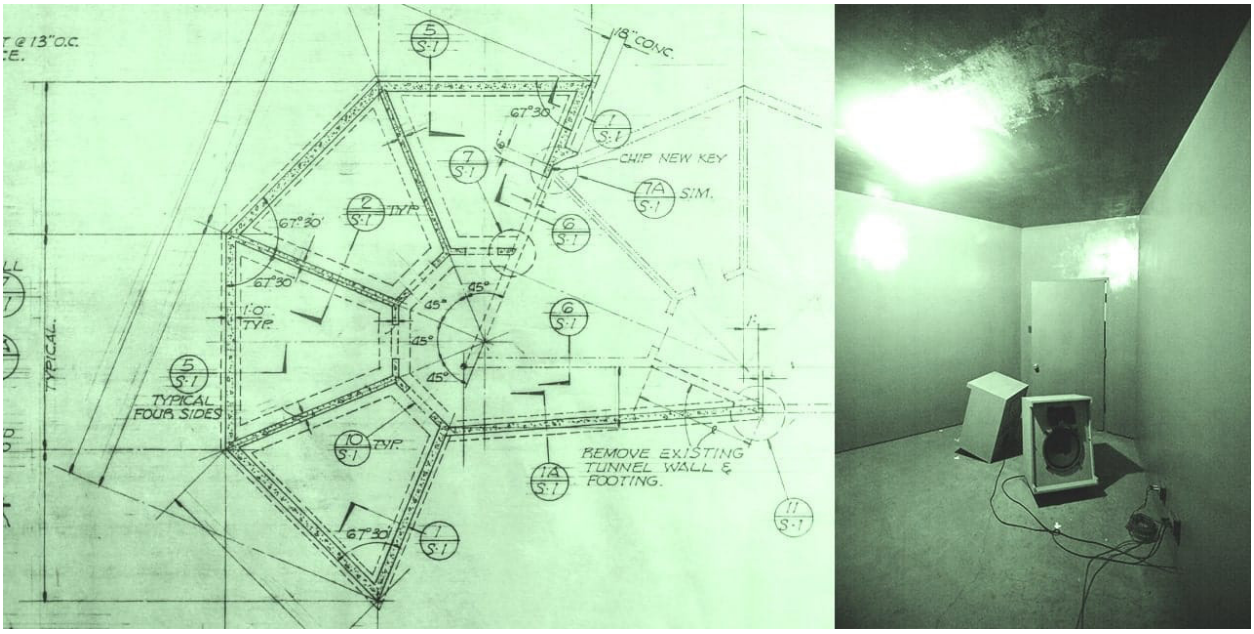
> ***Note (Pro Tools only):*** *The Wet Solo setting is saved and loaded in presets when using the preset manager within Pro Tools. To audition presets without changing the Wet Solo state, the Load Preset function within the UAD Toolbar or the Apollo/ Arrow Console must be used.*

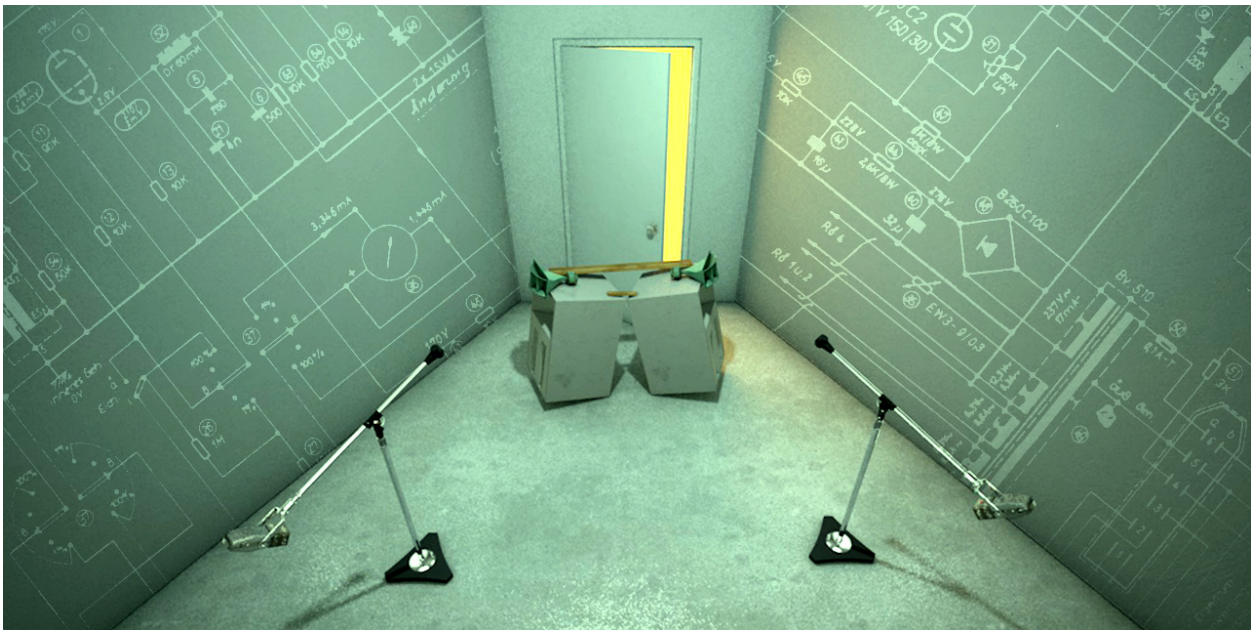
Width

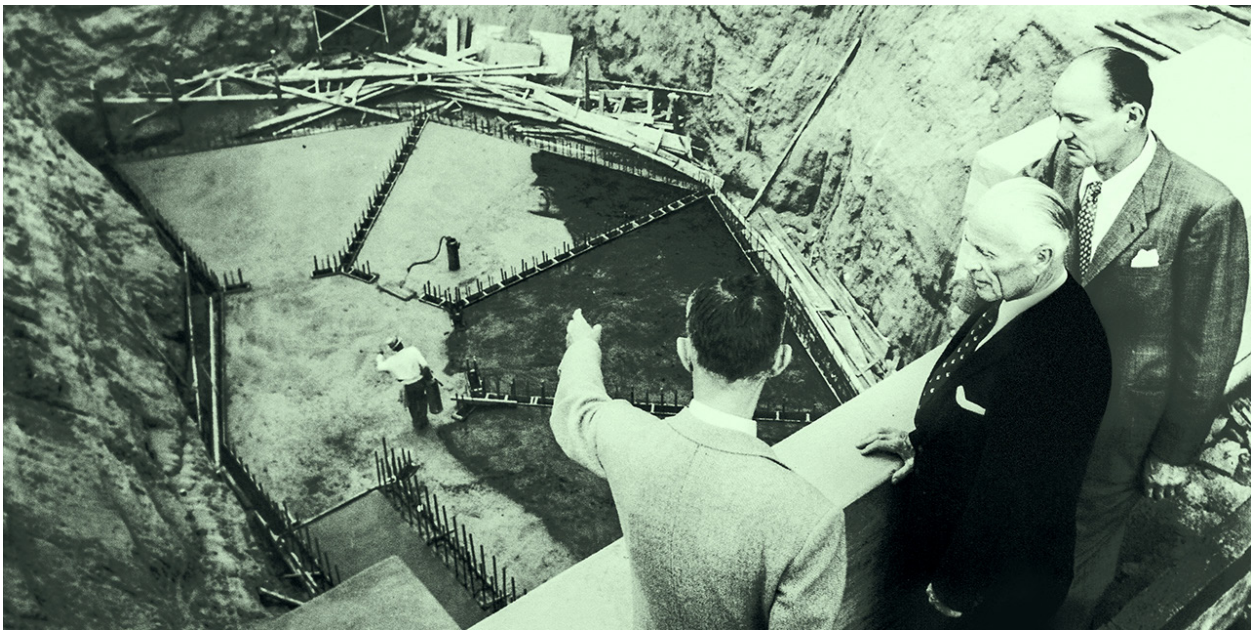
Width narrows the stereo ambience imaging. The range is continuously variable from 0% to 100%. At a value of zero, Capitol Chambers returns monophonic reverb. At 100%, the stereo signal has the natural fields as captured at Capitol Studios.

Tip: *Click the "0" or "100" text labels to quickly set these values.*

Note: *When used in a mono-out configuration, this control cannot be adjusted.*







Chambers construction at Capitol Studios

CAPITOL and the CAPITOL logos are trademarks of Capitol Records, LLC, registered in the United States, European Union, and other jurisdictions, and are used under license. Special thanks to Steve Genewick, Al Schmitt, and Niko Bolas.

Microphone and Speaker names are all trademarks of their respective owners, which are in no way associated or affiliated with Universal Audio or Capitol Records, LLC. These speaker names, descriptions and images are provided for the sole purpose of identifying the specific speakers studied during Universal Audio's sound model development and to describe certain speaker sound qualities and performance characteristics. Capitol Studios is a trademark used under license by Capitol Records, LLC.

Century Tube Channel Strip

Real time recording inspiration for your most important sources.

Capturing "the moment" is crucial — and capturing that inspiration with the right sound is just as important. The new Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in hearkens back to the days before infinite undo and decision-deferral, to a time where making records was an immediate, visceral act of bold creativity.

With an organic tube mic preamp, transparent dynamics control, and intuitively voiced EQ, the Century Tube Preamp plug-in is perfect for UA Interface users, allowing you to stay in the creative zone while you record, helping you capture first-take magic, with stunning results.

Now You Can:

- Enhance and simplify your recording workflow with a first-pass tool designed for tracking vocals, guitars, synths and more
- Stay in the creative zone and confidently print performances with a broad stroke, "do-no-harm," vintage-style tube channel strip
- Easily flatter your performances with a vintage-style tube mic preamp, simple three-band EQ, and optical compression on vocals, guitars, bass, drums, and more
- Control UA Audio Interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in via Unison™ technology

The Perfect Tube Mic Pre

The Century Tube Channel Strip's mic preamp will give all of your sources — especially vocals — a burnished tube color with the unmistakable warmth and detail that only a tube mic pre can provide. The stunning range of tones, from subtle to saturated, will coax inspiring performances no matter the genre. Tweak further with the Low/High gain switch to match the Century's Tube Preamp to your microphone, with the Low setting complementing more modern condensers, while the High position excels with dynamic and ribbon microphones.

Unison Technology for UA Audio Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Century Tube Channel Strip blurs the lines between analog and digital, giving you all of the important impedance, gain staging "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors of a vintage tube preamp.

The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in to the digitally controlled mic preamps in UA Audio Interfaces.

Easy EQ Seasoning

With its intuitive, musically voiced, three-band EQ, the Century Tube Channel Strip is perfect for quickly bringing out the details in a breathy vocal, adding some punch to an overdriven electric guitar, or giving an acoustic rhythm guitar propulsive sizzle and shine.

Optimal Opto Compression

Featuring a classic autoformer-driven optical compressor, the Century Tube Channel Strip's dynamics section takes the guesswork out of compression settings with a single knob. You can quickly tame a dynamic vocal or bass performance and lock it into place, and add energy and harmonics to acoustic guitars or piano — all with a twist of a knob. The Century's compressor can also compress as effect, adding grit and texture to keys and soft synths with character and vibe to spare.

Add Boutique Character and Color to Any Source

Of course, the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in isn't just for UA Audio Interface owners. UAD-2 hardware owners can employ the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in for mixing and tone shaping — without ever leaving the box.

Century Tube Channel Strip interface

Operational Overview

The Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in is an easy to use vintage-inspired channel strip. Use it to give your tracks that warm analog sound with a Tube Preamp, intuitively voiced EQ, and transparent dynamics control.

Modular Design

The Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in features a modular design with serial signal flow from left to right. The Tube Preamp is the first module, then the Equalizer module, then the Opto Leveler module, and finally the Master module. The Equalizer and Opto Leveler modules can be individually bypassed.

Artist Presets

The Century Tube Channel Strip includes presets provided by the prominent artists below. The artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or the Apollo/Arrow Console's preset manager.

JJ Blair	Michael Romanowski
John Paterno	Ian Boxill
Gary Noble	Richard Chycki

Artists that have provided presets for Century Tube Channel Strip

Unison Integration

The Century Tube Channel Strip features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces. With Unison interfaces, the ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of modeled preamps.

> ***Note:*** *Unison is active only when the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

With Unison, the hardware preamp adapts to the modeled preamp's physical input impedance. Combined with UA's transparent analog amplification, this provides the plug-in's full gain and tone range from clean to clipped — with broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of plug-in settings using both the digitally-controlled panel hardware on the UA audio interface and the UAD plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, cut filter, polarity, pad) are mirrored and bidirectional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the modeled preamp, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Unison mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Unison preamps to match the input impedance of the emulated hardware, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

The hardware preamp knob on the UA audio interface can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via the interface hardware, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

The three outlined gain controls as they appear when in Unison Gain Stage Mode

Century Tube Channel Strip Controls

TUBE PREAMP

GAIN

The Gain control switches between Low and High input gain and the overall character of tube saturation distortion. Generally speaking, toggle the Gain switch to match the type of microphone you are using: use Low for more modern condenser microphones with higher output, and High for dynamic and ribbon microphones with lower output.

To toggle the setting, drag the control or click its text labels.

Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel, the preamp sets its mic input impedance to 600 Ohms. Unison mic input impedance is 600 ohms at both Gain settings.

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the Preamp knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, an orange outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

OL LED (Input)

The OL (overload) LED to the right of the Gain control illuminates when the audio signal is clipping on the input to the tube preamp. This LED can be used to avoid clipping or as a guide to how much intentional clipping or color is being applied.

> ***Tip:*** *If you have a fairly hot microphone source and you encounter undesired distortion (clipping) at the input stage of the Tube Preamp, set Gain to Low and/or engage the Pad.*

Input Select

Input Select switches the plug-in between Line and Mic input. To toggle the setting, click the control or its text labels.

> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching to Line from Mic, as signal output levels can increase significantly (as they would with a hardware preamp).*

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's Mic/Line switches, or with the hardware buttons on the UA audio interface. When an Apollo/Arrow Hi-Z input is connected, Mic mode is automatically selected and the Line/Mic switch is disabled.

High Pass

The High Pass Filter switch controls an 18 dB per octave high-pass filter with a cutoff frequency of 80 Hz.

To toggle the setting, click the control or its text labels.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of the High Pass Filter is mirrored. The filter can be enabled or disabled within the plug-in interface, with Console's HPF button, or with the hardware HPF button on the UA audio interface.

Polarity (Ø)

Polarity inverts the phase of the incoming signal by 180º. When more than one microphone is used to record a single source, inverting Polarity can help reduce phase cancellations.

To toggle the setting, click the control or its text labels.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Phase is mirrored. Phase can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with the hardware polarity button on the UA audio interface.

PAD

Enable the Input Pad to attenuate the Mic input signal by –20 dB. Pad is not available with Line or Hi-Z input.

To toggle the setting, click the control or its text labels.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of the pad is mirrored. Pad can be switched with the –20 button in the plug-in interface, with Console's Pad button, or with Apollo's hardware Pad button.

LEVEL

Adjust the Level control to change the gain of the output stage of the Tube Preamp. Higher levels add more coloration (tube distortion) while lower levels provide a cleaner sound.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel within the Apollo/ Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the Level knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, an amber outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

OL LED (Output)

The OL (overload) LED to the right of the Level control illuminates when the audio signal is clipping on output. This LED can be used to avoid clipping or as a guide to how much intentional clipping or color is being applied.

EQUALIZER

HIGH

The High EQ is a fixed 10 kHz high-shelf filter. Adjust the High control to attenuate or boost the gain of the filter from –12.0 to +12.0 dB. Rotate the control clockwise to add more high-end or counter-clockwise to reduce the treble response.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

FREQ

The Mid EQ provides semi-parametric midrange equalization. Adjust the Freq control to set the center frequency from 300 Hz to 7.2 kHz.

The response for this band is dependent on the Gain setting. The bandwidth (Q) narrows for a more focused peak.

MID

Adjust the Mid control to attenuate or boost the gain of the filter from –12.0 to +12.0 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

LOW

The Low EQ is a fixed 110 Hz low-shelf filter. Adjust the Low control to attenuate or boost the gain of the filter from –12.0 to +12.0 dB. Rotate the control clockwise to add more low-end or counter-clockwise to reduce the bass response.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

OUT / IN

This switch bypasses the EQ. When set to Out, the EQ is bypassed. When set to Out and UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive, UAD DSP usage is reduced. To toggle the setting, click the control or its text labels.

OPTO LEVELER

The Opto Leveler module is a classic autoformer-driven optical compressor. It features a simple auto-gain function that compensates for gain loss when dynamic gain reduction is applied, minimizing the need for additional make-up gain.

Gain Reduction Meter

The Gain Reduction Meter indicates the amount of gain reduction in dB. Rotate the Compression knob clockwise for more gain reduction.

COMPRESSION

The Compression control reduces the dynamic range of the incoming signal. Rotate the knob clockwise for more compression.

OUT / IN

When set to Out, the Opto Leveler is bypassed. When set to Out and UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive, UAD DSP usage is reduced.

MASTER

The Master module provides output gain control and metering for the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in.

VU Meter

The Master VU Meter indicates the output level in dB.

OUTPUT

Adjust the Output control to attenuate or boost the output signal from the Century Tube Channel Strip plug-in from –INF (off) to +12.0 dB. It provides clean, uncolored digital gain.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel within the Apollo/ Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the Output knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, a green outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

Tip: For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.

OFF/ON Switch

The Off/On switch lets you bypass the entire plug-in. This can be useful for comparing the processed signal to the original, unprocessed signal. When set to Off, the plug-in uses no DSP. When set to Off and UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive, UAD DSP usage is reduced.

Cooper Time Cube

Dual Mechanical Delay Line

The original Cooper Time Cube was a Duane H. Cooper and Bill Putnam collaborative design that brought a garden hose-based mechanical delay to the world in 1971 and has achieved cult status as the most unique delay ever made. The Cooper Time Cube is famous for its spectacular short delay and doubling effects and its uncanny ability to always sit perfectly in the mix. However, the CTC had limited practicality as a full-featured delay; only 14, 16 or 30 ms settings were available. Over the years this quirky device has grown a strong following and finds a home in the most prestigious studios in the world, such as Blackbird and Sunset Sound. Top producers and engineers such as Richard Dodd, Vance Powell and Joe Chicarelli still swear by the Cooper Time Cube for its unique character.

The Cooper Time Cube MkII has all the sound of the original delay system design and offers all the necessary features expected from a modern delay device. The distinct sound of the single or double hose Coil is preserved regardless of delay setting, and either sound is available at the flick of a switch. The Cooper time Cube MkII also incorporates other enhanced tone shifting features such as the Color switch that presents the user with the original (A) or “leveled” (B) frequency response, plus tone controls and a 2-Pole High Pass Filter. Lastly, a switch is presented for soloing the Wet signal, and the Send switch disables the signal being sent into the delay processor.

Cooper Time Cube interface

Design Overview

The original UREI/Universal Audio Model 920-16 Cooper Time Cube hardware has two audio channels, A and B. Each channel is transduced to/from a coiled length of plastic tubing which provides the acoustic "sound columns" that define its distinctive sonic character.

The coils for each channel are at fixed but different lengths, which define the available single delay times of 16 ms for channel A and 14 ms for channel B. The two channels can be cascaded in series via external routing, for a total available delay time of 30 ms at reasonable fidelity for its era, which (according to the original product brochure) "brings complete respectability to the heretofore marginally feasible acoustical delay line."

The UAD Cooper Time Cube plug-in has all the vibe of the original, with modern feature enhancements. It is a true stereo plug-in with two independent delay processors. Each channel has its own set of controls, and there are global controls that affect the plug-in overall.

Cooper Time Cube Controls

Global Controls

The global controls affect both channels of the processor simultaneously.

Gain

Gain controls the signal input level to the plug-in for both A (left) and B (right) channels. Gain affects the combined wet and dry signals.

The available range is ±15 dB and the 12 o'clock position is unity gain.

HP Filter

The 12 dB per octave high pass filter is used to reduce low frequencies at the input to the delays when desired. The high pass filter affects the delayed (wet) signals only. The available frequency range is from 20 Hz to 12 kHz.

Turn the knob clockwise to reduce low frequencies into the delay processors. Full processor bandwidth is obtained with the knob in the fully counter-clockwise position.

Echo A/B

These two readouts display the current delay times of channels A and B. Displayed values are defined by the Delay A/B parameter. Delay values can be entered here directly using the text entry method.

When Sync mode is off, delay times are expressed in milliseconds. When Sync is on, delay times are expressed as a fractional bar value.

When the beat value is out of range, the value is displayed in parentheses. This occurs in Sync mode when the time of the note value exceeds 2500 ms (as defined by the current tempo of the host application).

Sync

This switch engages Sync mode for both channels of the plug-in. In Sync mode, delay times are synchronized to (and therefore dependent upon) the master tempo of the host application. When Sync is toggled, parameter units are converted between milliseconds and beats to the closest matching value.

See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.

Send

Send determines whether or not signals are sent into the delay processors. When Send is ON, the input signals are delayed. When OFF, the delay inputs are muted.

Coils

When both coiled tubes of the original hardware are cascaded to increase the available delay time (when both channels are serially connected), the sonics are slightly different than when only one coil is used. The Coils switch toggles between these two sounds available on the hardware, regardless of the Delay value.

> ***Tip:*** *Longer decays are available when Coils value is set to 1.*

Color

The Color switch toggles between the original filter emphasis of the hardware in position A and the "leveled" filter in position B which allows for greater Decay ranges.

Unlike the other parameters, the A and B labels for Color are for reference only. They do not represent the left and right channels.

> ***Note:*** *Color can be subtle, and its affect can vary depending on the value of Coils and/or Decay.*

Treble

Treble controls the high frequency response in the delayed portion of the signals. It does not affect the dry signal. Treble is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock position.

Bass

Bass controls the low frequency response in the delayed portion of the signals. It does not affect the dry signal. Bass is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock position.

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo switch puts the Cooper Time Cube into 100% Wet mode. When Wet Solo is on (in the "up" position), it mutes the dry unprocessed signal.

Wet Solo is optimal when the plug-in is used on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends. When the plug-in is used on a channel insert, this control should be deactivated.

> ***Note:*** *Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control. Its value is saved within the host project/session file, but not within individual preset files.*

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. It's useful for comparing the processed sound to the original signal.

Meter

The VU Meter provides a visual indication of the output level of the plug-in (the meter is not calibrated). The meter needle drops to minimum when the plug-in is disabled with the Power switch.

Channel Controls

The channel controls affect each channel of the processor independently. The control functionality is identical for each channel. “A” indicates the left channel and “B” is the right channel.

Delay A/B

Delay controls the delay time for each channel of the processor. The selected value is shown in the Echo A/B display.

The available delay range for each channel is 5 milliseconds to 2.5 seconds (2500ms). When Sync is active, beat values from 1/64 to 3/1 can be selected.

When the beat value is out of range, the value is displayed in parenthesis. This occurs in Sync mode when the time of the note value exceeds 2500ms (as defined by the current tempo of the host application). See the “Tempo Sync” chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the knob then use the computer keyboard arrow keys to increment/decrement beat values in Sync mode.*

Decay A/B

Decay sets the amount of processed signal fed back into its input (feedback). At the minimum value, one delayed repeat is heard. Higher values (clockwise) increase the number of repeats and intensity of the processed signal, with “near infinite” repeats available at the maximum setting.

Pan A/B

Pan sets the position of the delayed (wet) signal in the stereo field; it does not affect the unprocessed (dry) signal.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the “PAN” label text to return the control to center.*

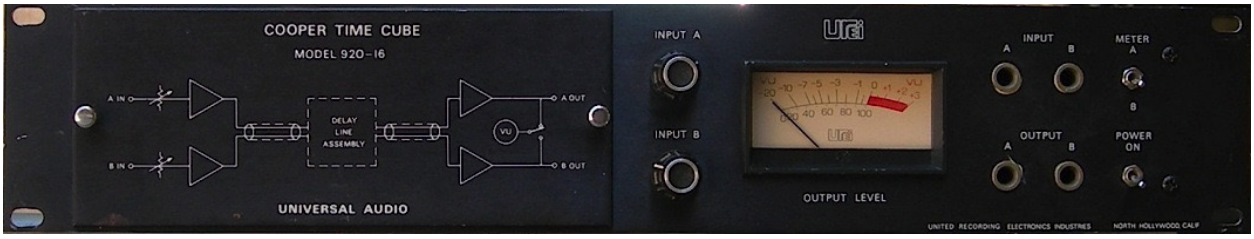
> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out (“MIMO”) configuration, the Pan knobs do not function and cannot be adjusted.*

Echo Volume A/B

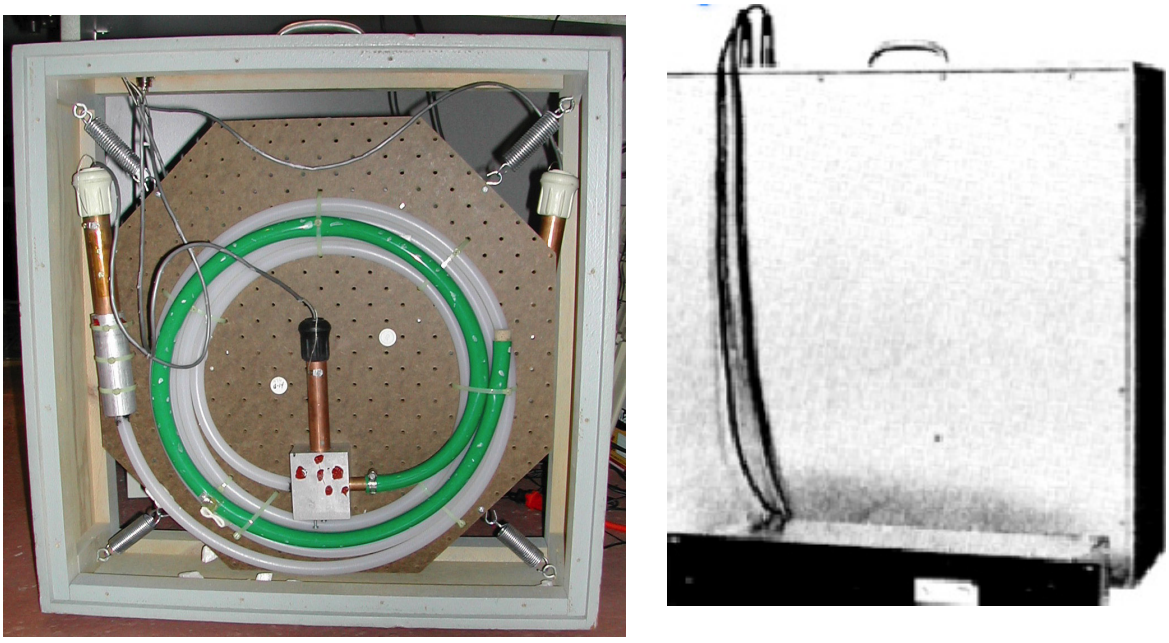
This control determines the volume of the delayed signal. Rotate the control clockwise for louder echo. Up to +10 dB of gain is available at the maximum setting. Reducing the control to its minimum value will mute the delay.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the “ECHO VOL” label text to mute/unmute the delayed output.*

Cooper Time Cube Hardware



The original Cooper Time Cube hardware front panel



The opened acoustic module and the complete system

CS-1 Channel Strip

Overview

The CS-1 Channel Strip provides the EX-1 Equalizer and Compressor, DM-1 Delay Modulator, and RS-1 Reflection Engine combined into one plug-in. Individual effects in the CS-1 Channel Strip can be bypassed when not in use to conserve UAD DSP loads.

The CS-1 is provided for compatibility with sessions created with UAD versions prior to v8.2. In UAD v8.2 and later, the EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, and RS-1 plug-ins are replaced by the newer Precision Channel Strip, Precision Delay Modulation/Delay Modulation Long, and Precision Reflection Engine plug- ins, respectively. See CS-1 Compatibility with Prior Sessions for related information.

CS-1 Channel Strip interface

EX-1 Equalizer and Compressor

The EX-1 plug-in consists of a five-band parametric EQ and compressor.

EX-1 EQ/Compressor interface

EX-1 Equalizer Controls

The Equalizer portion of the EX-1 is a five-band fully parametric EQ. Each band has its own set of controls. The first two bands can also be enabled to function as low-shelf or high-pass filter. Similarly, the last two bands can be enabled to function as either a high-shelf or low-pass filter.

Band Disable Button

Each band can be individually deactivated with the Band Disable button. All bands default to enabled (brighter blue). To disable any band, click the Disable button. The button is darker blue when the band is disabled.

You can use these buttons to compare the band settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the individual band.

Gain (G) Knob

The Gain control determines the amount by which the frequency setting is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±18 dB.

Frequency (fc) Knob

Determines the center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the Gain setting. The available range is 20 Hertz to 20 kiloHertz. When operating at sample rates less than 44.1kHz, the maximum frequency will be limited.

Bandwidth (Q) Knob

Sets the proportion of frequencies surrounding the center frequency to be affected. The Bandwidth range is 0.03-32; higher values yield sharper bands.

In either of the first two bands, when the Bandwidth value is at minimum the band becomes a low-shelf filter, and at maximum the band becomes a high-pass filter.

Similarly, in either of the last two bands, when the Bandwidth value is at minimum the band becomes a high-shelf filter, and at maximum the band becomes a low-pass filter.

Enable/Bypass Switch

Globally enables or disables all bands of the Equalizer. You can use this switch to compare the EQ settings to the original signal or bypass the entire EQ section to reduce UAD DSP load (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Output Knob

Adjusts the signal output level of the plug-in. This may be necessary if the signal is dramatically boosted or reduced by the EQ and/or compressor settings.

EX-1 Compressor Controls

Attack Knob

Sets the amount of time that must elapse, once the input signal reaches the Threshold level, before compression will occur. The faster the Attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the Threshold. The range is 0.05 milliseconds to 100 ms.

Release Knob

Sets the amount of time it takes for compression to cease once the input signal drops below the Threshold level. Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if you set too large of a Release time, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to lengthy sections of audio with lower signals. The range is 25 milliseconds to 2500 milliseconds (2.5 seconds).

Ratio Knob

Determines the amount of gain reduction used by the compression. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB. A value of 1 yields no compression. Values beyond 10 yield a limiting effect. The range is 1 to Infinity.

Threshold Knob

Sets the threshold level for the compression. Any signals that exceed this level are compressed. Signals below the level are unaffected. A Threshold of 0 dB yields no compression. The range is 0 dB to -60 dB.

As the Threshold control is increased and more compression occurs, output level is typically reduced. However, the EX-1 provides an auto-makeup gain function to automatically compensate for reduced levels. Adjust the Output level control if more gain is desired.

Meter Pop-up Menu

Determines whether the VU Meter monitors the Input Level, Output Level, Gain Reduction, or Meter Off. Click the menu above the meter display to select a different metering function.

Enable/Bypass Switch

Enables or disables the Compressor.You can use this switch to compare the compressor settings to that of the original signal or bypass the entire compressor section to reduce UAD DSP load (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Compressor Output Knob

Adjusts the signal output level of the plug-in.

DM-1 Delay Modulator

The DM-1 Delay Modulator provides stereo effects for delay, chorus, and flange.

DM-1L

The DM-1L is identical to the DM-1, except that the maximum available delay time per channel is 2400 milliseconds, and a link button is available for the delay time knobs.

Note: *DM-1L requires more UAD memory resources than the DM-1.*

DM-1 Delay Modulator interface

DM-1 Controls

Sync Button

This button puts the plug-in into Tempo Sync mode. See the “Tempo Sync” chapter in the UAD System Manual for more information.

L-R Delay Knobs

These knobs set the delay time between the original signal and the delayed signal for the left and right channels, respectively. When the Mode is set to one of the delay settings, the maximum delay is 300 msec (2400 ms with DM-1L). When the Mode is set to one of the chorus or flange settings, the maximum delay is 125 msec.

In the flanger modes, the L and R delay controls have slightly different functions than when in the chorus modes. The high peak of the flanger is controlled by the settings of the L and R delay controls. The low Peak of the flanger is determined by the setting of the Depth control.

Link (DM-1L only)

The DM-1L Link button (located between the L/R delay time knobs) links the left and right delay knobs so that when you move one delay knob, the other follows. The ratio between the two knobs is maintained.

Mode Drop Menu

Determines the DM-1 effect mode. The available modes are: Chorus, Chorus180, QuadChorus, Flanger1, Flanger2, Dual Delay, and Ping Pong Delay. In addition to reconfiguring the DM-1's settings, the Mode also determines the available parameter ranges for L/R Delay and Depth.

In Chorus mode, both oscillators (or modulating signals) are in phase.

In Chorus 180 mode, both oscillators (the modulating signals) are 180 degrees out of phase (inverted).

In QuadChorus mode, both oscillators (the modulating signals) are 90 degrees out of phase.

In Ping Pong delay mode, you will only get a ping-pong effect if you have a mono source feeding the DM-1 on a stereo group track or send effect. On a mono disk track, it works exactly like Dual Delay.

Rate Knob

Sets the modulation rate for the delayed signal, expressed in Hertz.

Depth Knob

Sets the modulation depth for the delayed signal, expressed as a percentage.

In Dual Delay and Ping Pong Delay modes, adjusting the Depth and Rate controls can offer some very otherworldly sounds.

LFO Type Drop Menu

Determines the LFO (low frequency oscillator) waveshape and phase used to modulate the delayed signal. The waveshape can be set to triangle or sine, each with a phase value of 0, 90, or 180 degrees.

Recirculation (RECIR) Knob

Sets the amount of processed signal fed back into its input. Higher values increase the number of delays and intensity of the processed signal.

Recirculation allows both positive and negative values. The polarity refers to the phase of the delays as compared to the original signal. If Recirculation displays a positive value, all the delays will be in phase with the source. If it displays a negative value, then the phase of the delays flips back and forth between in phase and out of phase.

In the flanger mode, Recir has the potential to make some very interesting sounds. Try turning RECIR fully clockwise or counter-clockwise, and set the delay to very short but different values.

The RECIR units are expressed as a percentage in all Modes except Dual Delay and Ping Pong. In these modes, RECIR values are expressed as T60 time, or the time before the signal drops 60 decibels.

Damping Knob

This low pass filter reduces the amount of high frequencies in the signal. Turn down this control to reduce the brightness. Higher values yield a brighter signal. Damping also mimics air absorption, or high frequency roll-off inherent in tape-based delay systems.

Wet/Dry Mix Knob

This control determines the balance between the delayed and original signal. Values greater than 50% emphasize the wet signal, and values less than 50% emphasize the dry signal. A value of 50% delivers equal signals. A value of 0% is just the dry signal.

Wet/Dry Mix allows both positive and negative values. The polarity refers to the phase of the delays as compared to the original signal. If a positive value is displayed, then all the delays will be in phase with the source. With a negative value, the delayed signal is flipped 180 degrees out of phase with the source.

L-Pan Knob

Sets the stereo position for the left channel, allowing you to adjust the width or balance of the stereo signal. For a mono signal, L-Pan behaves as the level control for the left delay tap.

R-Pan Knob

Sets the stereo position for the right channel, allowing you to adjust the width or balance of the stereo signal. For a mono signal, R-Pan behaves as the level control for the right delay tap.

Enable/Bypass Switch

Enables or disables the Delay Modulator. You can use this switch to compare the DM-1 settings to the original signal or bypass the entire DM-1 section to reduce UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Output Knob

Adjusts the signal output level of the plug-in.

RS-1 Reflection Engine

The RS-1 Reflection Engine simulates a wide range of room shapes, and sizes, to drastically alter the pattern of reflections. While similar to that of the RealVerb Pro plug-in, the RS-1 does not offer the same breadth of features (such as room hybrids, room materials, morphing, and equalization). However, if you do not need the advanced capabilities that RealVerb Pro offers, you can use the RS-1 to achieve excellent room simulations, while also preserving DSP resources on the UAD device.

The Delay control sets the time between the direct signal and the first reflection. The Size parameter controls the spacing between the reflections. The Recir control affects the amount of reflections that are fed back to the input and controls how many repeats you hear.

RS-1 Reflection Engine interface

RS-1 Controls

Sync Button

This button puts the plug-in into Tempo Sync mode. See the “Tempo Sync” chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.

Shape Pop-up Menu

Determines the shape of the reverberant space, and the resulting reflective patterns.

Cube	Square Plate
Box	Rectangular Plate
Corr	Triangular Plate
Cylinder	Circular Plate
Dome	Echo
Horseshoe	Ping Pong
Fan	Echo 2
Reverse Fan	Fractal
A-Frame	Gate 1
Spring	Gate 2
Dual Spring	Reverse Gate

Available RS-1 Shapes

Delay Knob

Sets the delay time between the original signal and the onset of the reflections.

Size Knob

Sets the size of the reverberant space (from 1-99 meters) and defines the spacing of the reflections.

Delay/Size Settings Interaction

You may notice that when Delay is set to its maximum value and the Size control is moved to its maximum value, the Delay value is decreased, and vice versa. This occurs because the maximum delay time available to the plug-in has been reached — the available delay time is limited and is divided among the Delay and Size values. Therefore, if the value of the Delay or Size setting is increased towards maximum when the other control is already high, its complementary setting may be reduced.

Recirculation (RECIR) Knob

Sets the amount of processed signal fed back into its input. Higher values increase the number of reverberations/delays and intensity of the processed signal.

Recirculation allows both positive and negative values. The polarity refers to the phase of the delays as compared to the original signal. If Recirculation displays a positive value, all the delays will be in phase with the source. If it displays a negative value, then the phase of the delays flips back and forth between in phase and out of phase.

Damping Knob

This low pass filter reduces the amount of high frequencies in the signal. Turn down this control to reduce the brightness. Higher values yield a brighter signal. Damping also mimics air absorption, or high frequency rolloff inherent in tape-based delay systems.

Wet/Dry Mix Knob

This control determines the balance between the delayed and original signal. Values greater than 50% emphasize the wet signal, and values less than 50% emphasize the dry signal.

Wet/Dry Mix allows both positive and negative values. The polarity refers to the phase of the delays as compared to the original signal. If a positive value is displayed, then all the delays will be in phase with the source. With a negative value, the delayed signal is flipped 180 degrees out of phase with the source.

L-Pan Knob

Sets the stereo position for the left channel, allowing you to adjust the width or balance of the stereo signal. For a mono signal, set both the L-Pan and R-Pan to the left.

R-Pan Knob

Sets the stereo position for the right channel, allowing you to adjust the width or balance of the stereo signal. For a mono signal, set both the L-Pan and R-Pan to the left.

Enable/Bypass Switch

Enables or disables the Reflection Engine. You can use this switch to compare the RS-1 settings to the original signal or bypass the entire RS-1 section to reduce UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Output Knob

Adjusts the relative output of the plug-in.

CS-1 Compatibility with Prior Sessions

As of UAD version 8.2, the Precision Mix Rack Collection plug-ins (Precision Channel Strip, Precision Delay Mod, Precision Delay Mod L, Precision Reflection Engine) replace the discontinued EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, and RS-1 plug-ins, respectively.

When sessions containing the discontinued EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, and RS-1 plug-ins are loaded in UAD v8.2 (and higher), the discontinued plug-ins in the session, along with their settings, are automatically migrated to their newer Precision Mix Rack Collection replacements.

The Precision Mix Rack Collection provides a modern interface, better controls, added features, and improved sonics versus the prior CS-1 sub-module plug-ins that they replace.

> ***Note:*** *Each individual plug-in title in the Precision Mix Rack Collection is documented separately.*

Migrating Prior Sessions

If a session created with UAD v8.1 or lower contains the CS-1 plug-in, and that session is subsequently loaded with UAD v8.2 or higher, the original/identical CS-1 is loaded and the original settings and sonics are maintained.

If a session created with UAD v8.1 or lower contains the EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, or RS-1 plug-ins, and that session is then loaded under UAD v8.2 or higher, those prior plug-in instances are automatically replaced by their newer counterparts, and the original settings in the session are maintained.

UAD plug-in replacements when loading old sessions into UAD v8.2 and higher

- EX-1 instances are replaced with Precision Channel Strip
- DM-1 instances are replaced with Precision Delay Mod
- DM-1L instances are replaced with Precision Delay Mod L
- RS-1 instances are replaced with Precision Reflection Engine
- CS-1 instances are not replaced (original CS-1 is loaded)

> ***Note:*** *Precision Mix Rack Collection plug-in settings cannot be loaded into CS-1, EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, or RS-1.*

Sonic Differences

In most cases (as detailed below), a migrated session with replaced EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-ins will sound the same as, or subtly better than, the original session.

In some cases, the migrated session may be audibly different. The specific sonic differences when migrating from EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-ins to their replacements are detailed below.

> ***Note:*** *In all migration cases, it is possible to revert to the exact same prior sonics (if desired) under UAD v8.2 and higher using the "Converting To Prior Sonics" procedure detailed later in this document.*

EX-1 to Precision Channel Strip

Improved EQ filter design – This change subtly improves the lowest and highest EQ frequencies in the EX-1/CS-1 and improves the Q (bandwidth) symmetry at the highest frequencies.

Dynamics behavioral corrections at low ratio values – A knee calculation error at small ratios in the original EX-1/CS-1 compressor is resolved with Precision Channel Strip, resulting in higher plug-in output levels if the Dynamics module was engaged when migrated.

The approximate level increases in Precision Channel Strip compared to EX-1 at given ratios are: 2 dB at 1.5:1, 1.3 dB at 2:1, 0.5 dB at 3:1, 0.25 dB at 4:1, and 0.1 dB at 6:1.

RS-1 to Precision Reflection Engine

Echo-based shapes are removed – The three echo-based shapes are un- available within Precision Reflection Engine due to underlying technical constraints. When migrating from RS-1, Echo, Echo 2, and Ping Pong shapes are replaced with the Cube shape in the Precision Reflection Engine, with an au- dibly different sonic result.

DM-1/DM-1L to Precision Delay Mod/Delay Mod L

There are no sonic differences between the discontinued DM-1/DM-1L and Precision Delay Mod/Delay Mod L plug-ins. The Precision Delay Mod/Delay Mod L has new features only.

Converting To Exact Prior Sonics

If a session containing the EX-1 or RS-1 plug-ins is migrated to UAD v8.2 (and higher), and the migrated session sounds different due to the sonic differences detailed above (and those differences are undesirable), the session can be converted to the exact same prior sonics, even when using UAD v8.2 (and higher).

UAD v8.2 and higher includes the original CS-1 plug-in, and CS-1 can load preset files from EX-1/RS-1, resulting in identical sonics.

Therefore, converting to exact prior sonics is accomplished by loading EX-1/RS-1 preset file settings created in UAD v8.1 (or lower) into CS-1 in UAD v8.2 (and higher).

Detailed steps for this process are provided on the following page.

> ***Important:*** *Migration sessions from UAD v8.1 and lower to UAD v8.2 and higher is automatic. In most cases, migrated sessions will simply sound the same or subtly better. The process on the next page is only necessary if:*
> *a) the migrated session contains EX-1/RS-1, AND*
> *b) the automatically-migrated session is sonically unsatisfactory or must sound identical to the pre-migrated session.*

To convert a migrated session to exact prior sonics:

1. Install UAD v8.1 (or lower) software.
2. Load the session(s) containing the EX-1, DM-1, DM-1L, or RS-1 plug-in(s).
3. Open the EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-in that contains the settings you want to migrate.
4. Save the plug-in's settings to disk as a preset file via the UAD Toolbar (click the folder icon at the lower left of the interface). Save the preset(s) to a convenient disk location; you'll load these files in step 9.
5. Repeat steps 2 – 4 for each plug-in instance whose settings you want to migrate.
6. Install UAD v8.2 (or higher). Restart the computer after installation.
7. Load the session containing the EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-ins you are migrating. The EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-ins are automatically migrated to their Precision Mix Rack equivalents.
8. Replace the EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 plug-in(s) with the CS-1 plug-in.
9. Load the previously-saved EX-1/DM-1/DM-1L/RS-1 preset file into CS-1 via the UAD Toolbar. The original settings for the sub-module are imported into CS-1.
10. Disable the unused sub-modules on CS-1 to ensure they are not processing audio. For example, if loading an EX-1 preset into CS-1, disable the DM-1 and RS-1 modules in CS-1.
11. Repeat steps 7 – 10 for each plug-in whose settings you want to migrate.
12. Save the session. Sonically identical migration is complete.

dbx 160 Compressor/Limiter

Overview

The dbx® 160 Compressor/Limiter is an officially licensed and faithful emulation of the legendary dbx 160 hardware compressor/limiter — still widely considered the best VCA compressor ever made. Originally designed and sold by David Blackmer in 1971, this solid-state design set the standard for performance and affordability.

The dbx 160 (commonly referred to as the "VU") is a highly regarded studio staple, famous for its simple control set and firm, distinct compression characteristics. Unlike later monolithic IC units, the "VU" uses a series of discrete components for gain reduction resulting in unique nonlinearities not found in other VCA compressors — a sonic distinction from later models.

The UAD version of the dbx 160 captures all of the sonic nuances from our "golden" modeling unit, plus the simple control set of the original hardware, including Threshold, Compression (Ratio) and Output Gain. Just like with the hardware, LED threshold indicators are provided in the plug-in, as well the Input/Output/Gain Change VU meter for which the unit is famous.

dbx 160 interface

dbx 160 Controls

The minimal controls on the dbx 160 make it very simple to operate.

Threshold

Knob

The Threshold knob defines the level at which the onset of compression occurs. Incoming signals that exceed the Threshold level are compressed. Signals below the Threshold are unaffected.

The available range is from -55 dB to 0 dB. The numbers on the graphical interface indicate volts, as on the original hardware.

As the Threshold control is decreased and more compression occurs, output level is typically reduced. Adjust the Output Gain control to increase the output to compensate if desired.

Below

When the input signal is below the compression threshold value, the Below LED illuminates. No compression is occurring when Below is lit.

Above

The Above LED illuminates when the input signal has exceeded the Threshold value, indicating that compression is occurring. The higher the signal is above the Threshold, the brighter the LED glows.

Compression

The Compression parameter determines the ratio for the compressor. Less compression occurs at lower values. The available range is continuous, from 1.00:1 to Infinity:1. At values above approximately 10:1, the compressor behaves more like a peak-limiter.

Note: *For compression to occur, signals must exceed the Threshold value.*

Output Gain

Output Gain controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The available range is ±20 dB.

Generally speaking, adjust the Output control after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Threshold and Compression controls. Output does not affect the amount of compression.

Meter Buttons

The Meter buttons define the mode of the VU Meter. The buttons do not change the sound of the signal processor. The active button has a darker appearance when compared to the inactive buttons.

VU Meter

When set to Input, the VU Meter indicates the plug-in input level in dB. When set to Output, the VU Meter indicates the plug-in output level in dB. When set to Gain Change, the VU Meter indicates the amount of Gain Reduction in dB.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. Click the button to toggle the state. When the Power switch is in the Off (lighter) position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

DreamVerb

Overview

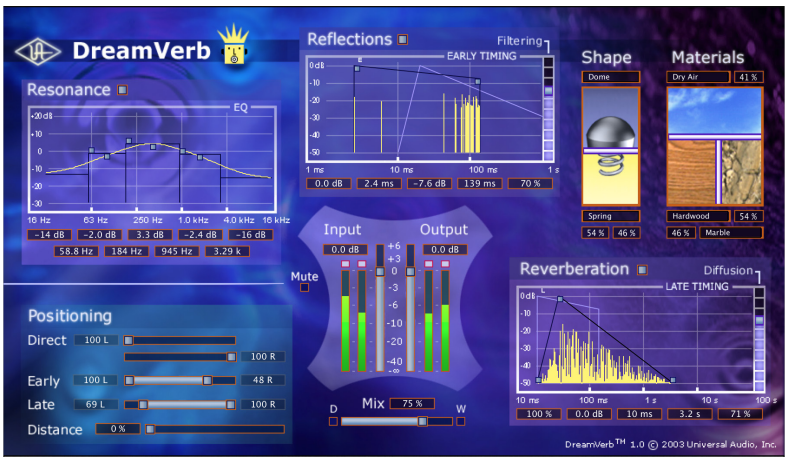
DreamVerb™, Universal Audio's unique stereo reverb plug-in, draws on the unparalleled flexibility of RealVerb Pro. Its intuitive and powerful interface lets you create a room from a huge list of different materials and room shapes. These acoustic spaces can be customized further by blending the different room shapes and surfaces with one another, while the density of the air can be changed to simulate different ambient situations.

DreamVerb also features a flexible 5-band active EQ and unique level ramping for the early and late reflections for ultra-realistic dynamic room simulation. And with Universal Audio's proprietary smoothing algorithm, all parameters can be adjusted with automation or in real-time without distortion, pops, clicks, or zipper noise.

DreamVerb provides two graphic menus for selecting preset room shapes. The shapes can be blended according to the demands of your mix. Room materials are selected with two graphic menus containing preset Materials. A third menu specifies the air density for further spectral control. As with the room shapes, the materials and air can be blended as desired.

DreamVerb also includes intuitive graphic control over equalization, timing and diffusion patterns. To maximize the impact of your recording, we put independent control over the direct path, early reflections, and late-field reverberation in your hands.

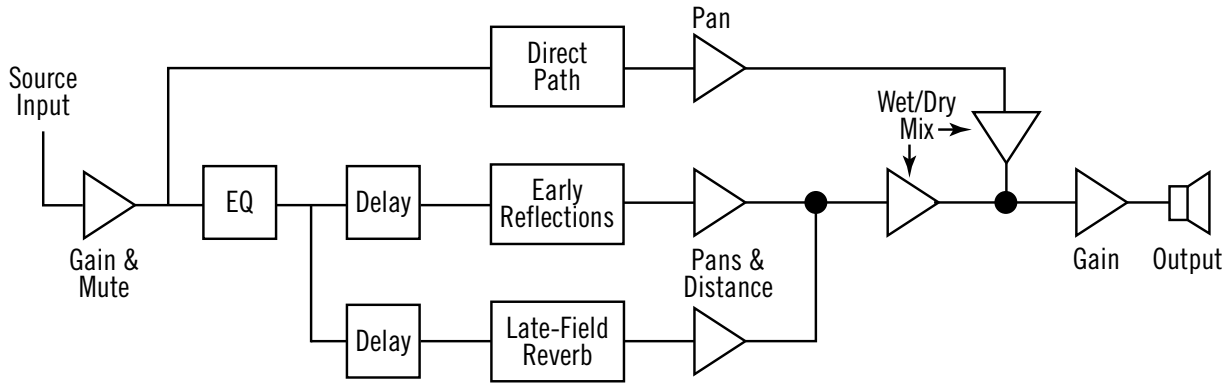
Capitalizing on the psychoacoustic technology that went into the design of RealVerb Pro, we have incorporated some of these principles into DreamVerb. Our proprietary Stereo Soundfield Panning allows you to spread and control the signal between stereo speakers creating an impression of center and width. The ability to envelop your listener in a stereo recording is an entirely new approach to reverb design.



DreamVerb interface

Signal Flow

The signal flow for DreamVerb is illustrated below. The input signal is equalized then delay lines are applied to the early reflection and late field generators. The resulting direct path, early reflection, and late-field reverberation are then independently positioned in the soundfield.



DreamVerb signal flow

The DreamVerb interface is similarly organized. Reflected energy equalization is controlled with the Resonance panel. The pattern of early reflections (their relative timing and amplitudes) is determined by the room shapes in the Shape panel. Early reflection pre-delay, slope, timing, and amplitude are specified in the Reflections panel. The Materials panel is used to select relative late-field decay rates as a function of frequency. The late-field predelay, decay rate, room diffusion, slope, and level is specified in the Reverberation panel. Finally, the Positioning panel contains controls for the placement of the source, early reflections, and late-field reverberation.

Resonance (Equalization) Panel

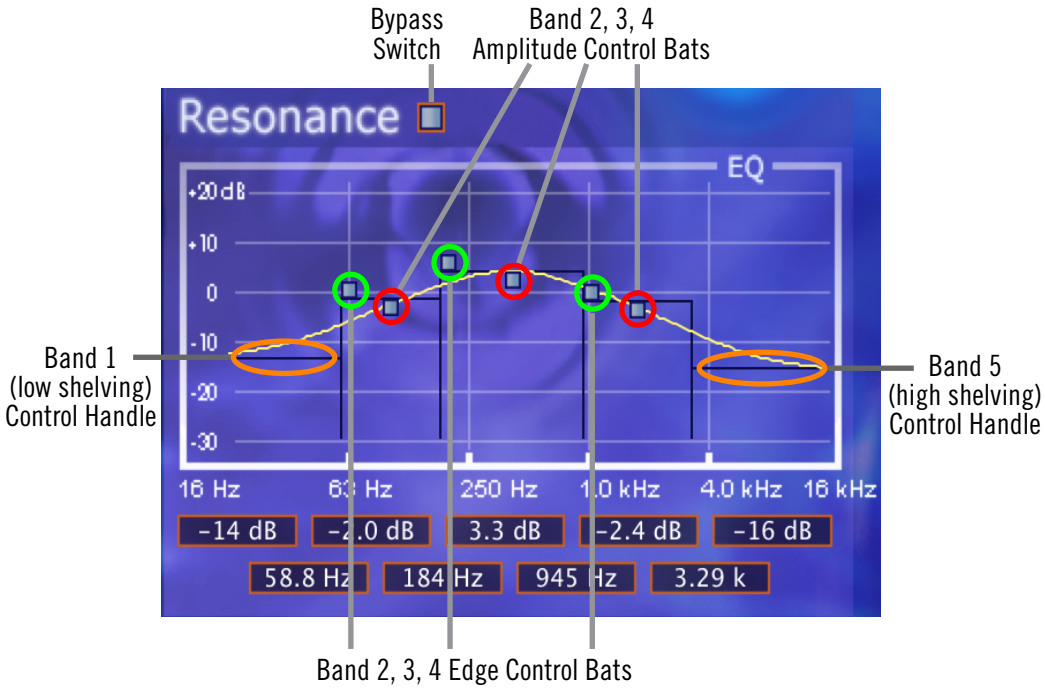
The Resonance panel is a five-band equalizer that can control the overall frequency response of the reverb, effecting its perceived brilliance and warmth. By adjusting its Amplitude and band Edge controls, the equalizer can be configured as shelving or parametric EQs, as well as hybrids between the two.

The EQ curve effects the signal feeding both the early reflections and the late field reverberations, but not the direct path.

Bands 1 and 5 are configured as shelving bands. Bands 2, 3, and 4 also have an Edge control for adjusting its bandwidth.

Generally speaking, a lot of high-frequency energy results in a brilliant reverberation, whereas a good amount of low-frequency content gives a warm reverberation.

> ***Note:*** *The values for the EQ parameters are displayed in the text fields at the bottom of the Resonance panel. The values can also be entered directly using the text entry method.*



Resonance panel

Bypass

The equalizer can be disabled with this switch. When the switch is off (black instead of grey), the other resonance controls have no effect. This switch has no effect on the direct signal path.

Band Amplitude

Each of the five bands has its own amplitude (gain) control. The amplitude range of each band is -30 dB to +20 dB.

To adjust the amplitude of bands 2, 3, and 4, grab the control bat for the band and drag vertically or use the direct text entry method. For bands 1 and 5, drag the horizontal line (these do not have a control bat).

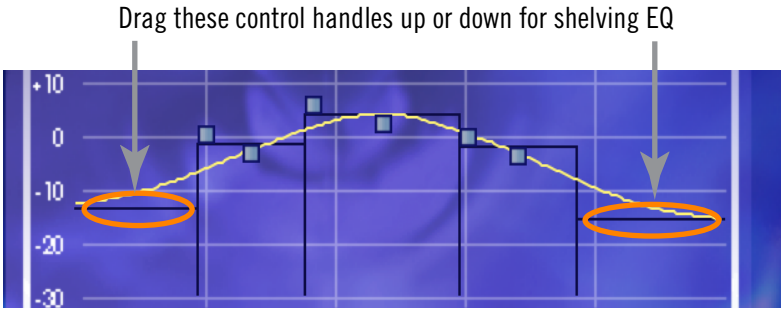
Band Edge

Bands 2, 3, and 4 have an Edge control. This parameter effects the bandwidth of the band. To adjust the band edge, grab its control bat and drag horizontally or use the direct text entry method.

The effect of the band edge on the filter sound can depend upon the settings of the adjacent bands. For example, the sonic effect of this parameter is more pronounced if the amplitude of adjacent bands is significantly different than that of the band whose edge is being adjusted.

Shelving

The simplest (and often most practical) use of the equalizer is for low and/or high frequency shelving. This is achieved by dragging the left-most or right-most horizontal line (the ones without control bats) up or down, which boosts or cuts the energy at these frequencies.



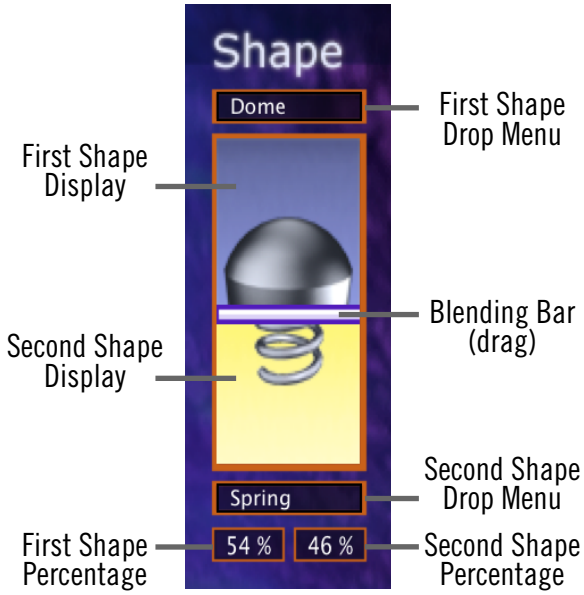
Resonance Shelving Bands

Shape Panel

The parameters in the Shape panel, in conjunction with the Materials panel, effect the spatial characteristics of the reverb.

The pattern of early reflections in a reverb is determined by the room shape(s) and the ER start and end points. Two shapes can be blended from 0-100%. All parameters can be adjusted dynamically in real time without causing distortion or other artifacts in the audio. 21 shapes are available, including various plates, springs, rooms, and other acoustic spaces.

> ***Note:*** *The Shape parameters effect only the early reflections. They have no effect on the late field reverberation.*



Shape panel

Shape Menus

DreamVerb lets you specify two room shapes that can be blended to create a hybrid of early reflection patterns. The first and second shape each have their own menu. The available shapes are the same for each of the two shape menus.

The first shape is displayed in the upper area of the Shape panel, and the second shape is displayed in the lower area.

To select a first or second shape, click its drop menu to view the available shapes, then drag to the desired shape and release.

Shape Blending Bar

The Shape Blending Bar is used to blend the two shapes together at any ratio. The two shapes are not just mixed together with this parameter; the early reflections algorithm itself is modified by blending.

Blend the early reflection patterns of the two rooms by dragging the Blending Bar. Drag the bar to the bottom to emphasize the first shape; drag to the top to emphasize the second shape.

The relative percentages of the two rooms appear at the bottom of the Shape panel. To use only one room shape, drag the Blending Bar so a shape is set to 100%.

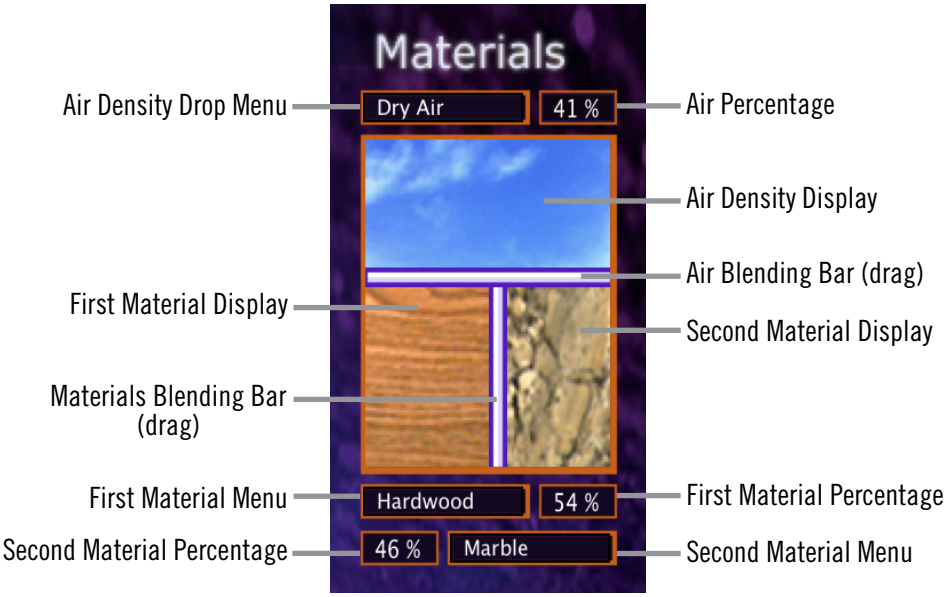
The resulting early reflection pattern is displayed at the top of the Reflections panel, where each reflection is represented by a yellow vertical line with a height indicating its arrival energy, and a location indicating its arrival time.

Materials Panel

The parameters in the Materials panel, in conjunction with the Shape panel and Reverberation panel, affect the spatial characteristics of the reverb.

The material composition of an acoustical space effects how different frequency components decay over time. Materials are characterized by their absorption rates as a function of frequency--the more the material absorbs a certain frequency, the faster that frequency decays.

> ***Note:*** *While materials are used to control decay rates as a function of frequency, the overall decay rate of the late-field reverberation is controlled from the Reverberation panel.*



Materials panel

24 real-world materials are provided, including such diverse materials as brick, marble, hardwood, water surface, and audience. Also included are 24 artificial materials with predefined decay rates, and seven air densities.

> ***Note:*** *The parameters in the Materials panel always effect the late-field reverberations. However, the materials parameters effect the early reflections ONLY if the "Filtering" parameter in the Reflections panel is set to a non-zero value.*

Materials Menus

DreamVerb lets you specify two room materials, which can be blended to create a hybrid of absorption and reflection properties. The first and second room material each has its own menu. The available materials are the same for each of the two materials menus.

The first material is displayed in the lower left area of the Materials panel, and the second material is displayed in the lower right area.

To select the first or second material, click its drop menu to view the available materials, then drag to the desired material and release.

In addition to the "perfect" materials marked with a K, DreamVerb provides "J" materials that are not found in RealVerb Pro. These perform the inverse of the "K" materials. The materials marked with a J preferentially absorb low frequencies; they give the selected decay time at high frequencies, and a much shorter decay time at low frequencies.

Air Density Menu

DreamVerb allows you to specify the density of the air in the reverberant space with this menu, enabling another dimension of sonic control.

The more dense the air is, the more it absorbs high frequencies. At the top of the Air Density menu is Ideal Gas, where no frequencies are absorbed. The air quality increases in density with each selection as you go down the menu.

Inverse Air and Inverse Thick Fog absorb more low frequencies instead of high frequencies.

Materials Blending Bars

The Materials Blending Bars are used to blend the three materials together at any ratio. The materials are not just mixed together with the bars; the reverberation algorithm itself is modified by blending.

Materials Blending

Blend the two materials by dragging the vertical Blending Bar horizontally. Drag the bar to the right to emphasize the first material; drag to the left to emphasize the second material.

The relative percentages of the two materials appear next to each menu in the Materials panel. To use only one material, drag the Blending Bar so a material is set to 100%.

Air Blending

Blend the air density with the materials by dragging the horizontal Blending Bar vertically. Drag the bar to the top to emphasize the solid materials; drag to the bottom to emphasize the air.

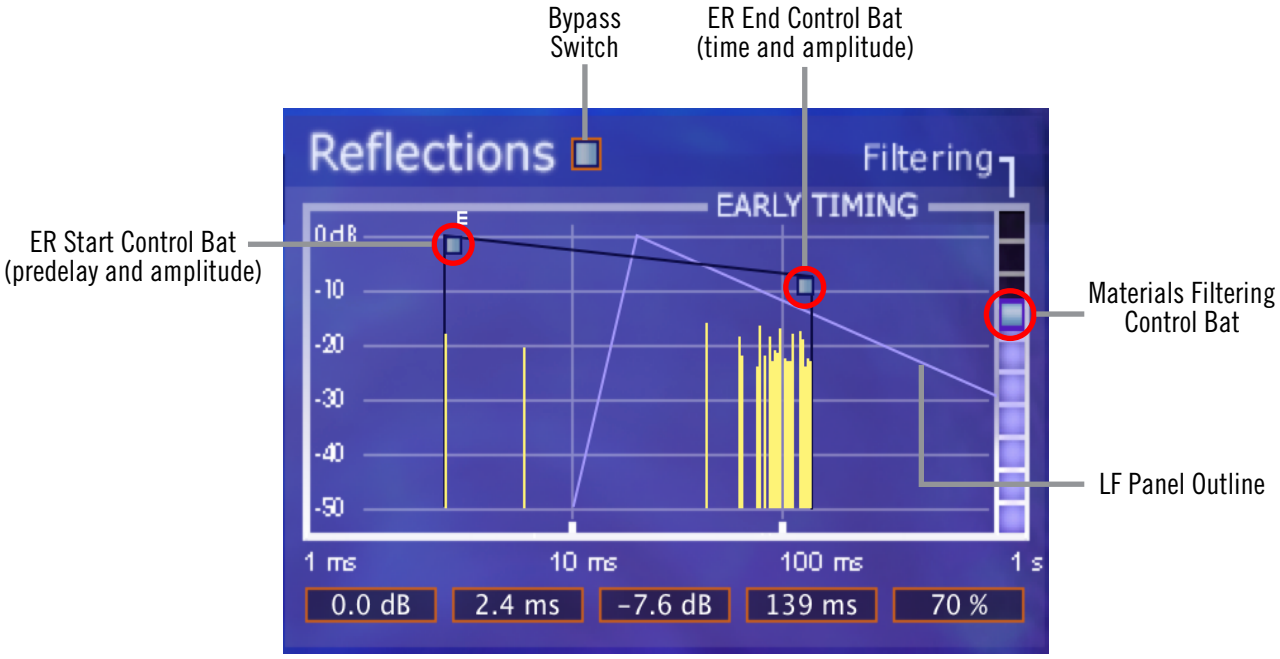
The percentage of air used appears next to the Air Density menu. To use only solid materials, drag the horizontal Blending Bar to the top so air is set to 0%. To use only air, drag the horizontal Blending Bar to the bottom so air is set to 100%.

Reflections Panel

The Reflections panel offers control over the timing and relative energies of the reverb early reflections (ER). These parameters effect the reverb's perceived clarity and intimacy. Each early reflection is visually represented by a yellow vertical line with a height indicating its arrival energy and a location indicating its arrival time.

Unique to DreamVerb is independent control of the amplitude at the early reflection start and end points which facilitates envelope shaping of the reflections. This allows the ability to fade-in or fade-out the reflections to more accurately emulate acoustic environments or for special effects.

> ***Note:*** *The values for the Start and End bats are displayed in the text fields at the bottom of the Reflections panel. These values can also be entered directly using the text entry method.*



Reflections panel

Bypass

The early reflections can be disabled with this switch. When the switch is off (black instead of grey), the other Reflections controls have no effect. This switch has no effect on the direct signal path.

Reflections Start

This bat controls two early reflections start parameters. Dragging the bat horizontally controls the ER predelay (the delay between the dry signal and the onset of the ER). Dragging it vertically controls the amplitude of the reflections energy at the ER start time.

Reflections End

This bat controls two ER end point parameters. Dragging the bat horizontally controls the ER end time (the time at which the ER is no longer heard). Dragging it vertically controls the amplitude of the reflections energy at the end point.

Filtering

This parameter determines the amount of filtering from the Materials panel to be applied to the early reflections. The Materials effect upon the ER is most pronounced when Filtering is set to 100%.

> ***Note:*** *The parameters in the Materials panel have no effect on the early reflections unless this parameter value is above 0%.*

Late-Field Relative Timing

To highlight the relative timing relationship between the early reflections and late-field reverberation components, the shape and timing of the late-field is represented as an outline in the Reflections panel.

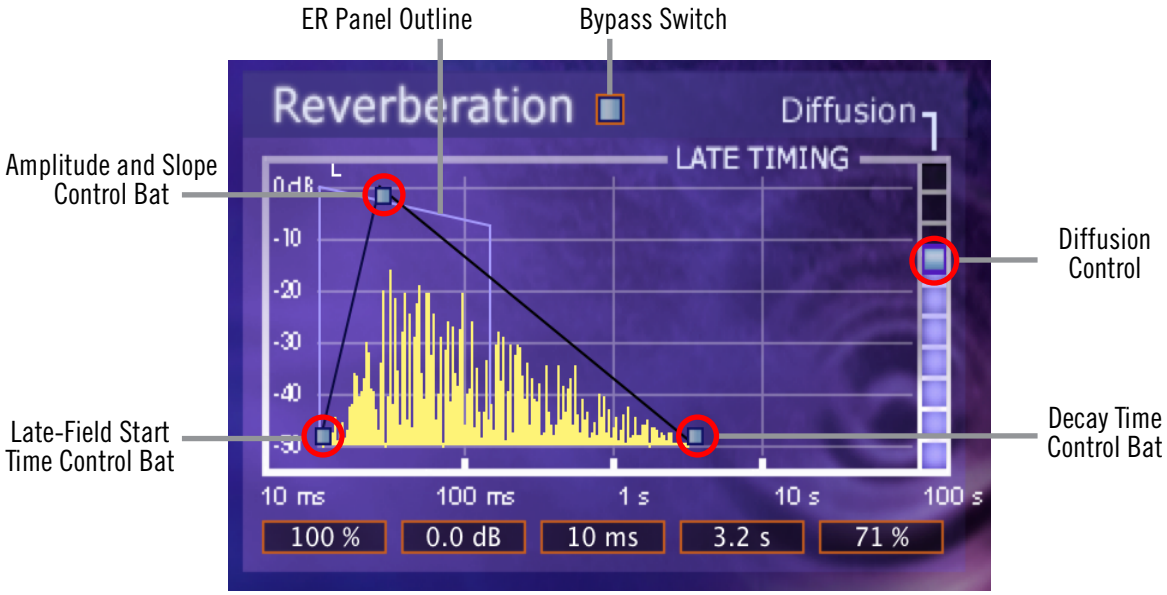
> ***Tip:*** *The shape of the LF outline is modified by parameters in the Reverberations panel, not the Reflections panel.*

Reverberation Panel

The Reverberation panel contains the parameters that control the late-field (LF) reverb tail for DreamVerb.

The primary spectral characteristics of the late-field reverberation are determined by the parameters in the Materials panel in conjunction with the Reverberation panel settings.

> ***Note:*** *The values for the late-field controls are displayed in the text fields at the bottom of the Reverberations panel. These values can also be entered directly using the text entry method.*



Reverberation panel

Bypass

The late-field reverberations can be disabled with this switch. When the switch is off (black instead of grey), the other Reflections controls have no effect. This switch has no effect on the direct signal path.

Late-Field Start

This parameter defines when the late-field reverb tail begins (the delay between the dry signal and the onset of the LF) in relation to the dry signal.

Amplitude & Slope

This bat controls two late-field parameters. Dragging the bat vertically controls the maximum amplitude of the LF reverb energy. Dragging it horizontally controls the LF slope (fade-in) time.

Decay Time

This control effects the length of the reverb tail. Drag the bat to the left for a short decay, or to the right for a long decay.

Diffusion

This slider effects how quickly the late-field reverberations become more dense. The higher the Diffusion value, the more rapidly a dense reverb tail evolves.

ER Relative Timing

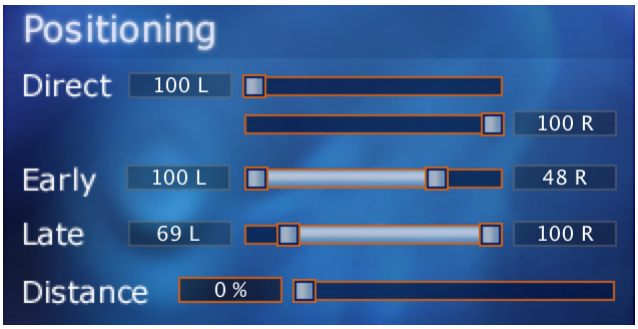
To highlight the relative timing relationship between the early reflections and late-field reverberation components, the shape and timing of the early reflections is represented as an outline in the Reverberation panel.

> ***Tip:*** *The shape of the ER outline is modified by parameters in the Reflections panel, not the Reverberation panel.*

Positioning Panel

DreamVerb has the ability to separately position the direct path, early reflections, and late-field reverberation. The Positioning panel provides panning controls for each of these reverb components. In addition, a proprietary Distance control adjusts perceived source distance. These controls allow realistic synthesis of acoustic spaces--for instance listening at the entrance of an alley way, where all response components arrive from the same direction, or listening in the same alley next to the source, where the early reflections and reverberation surround the listener.

> ***Note:*** *When DreamVerb is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, all Positioning controls except Distance are unavailable for adjustment.*



Positioning panel

Direct

These two sliders control the panning of the dry signal. The upper Direct slider controls the left audio channel, and the lower Direct slider controls the right audio channel.

A value of <100 pans the signal hard left; a value of 100> pans the signal hard right. A value of <0> places the signal in the center of the stereo field.

> ***Note:*** *If the Mix parameter is set to 100% wet or the Wet button is active, these sliders have no effect.*

Early

This slider, which contains two control handles, adjusts the stereo width of the early reflections.

Late

This slider, which contains two control handles, adjusts the stereo width of the late-field reverberations.

Early & Late Adjustment

The left and right slider handles are dragged to adjust the stereo width. For a full stereo spread, drag the left handle all the way to left and right handle all the way to the right. When the slider handles are not set to maximum width, the center of the slider can be dragged left or right to set the positioning of the signal.

To pan a mono signal hard left or right, drag the slider all the way to the left or right.

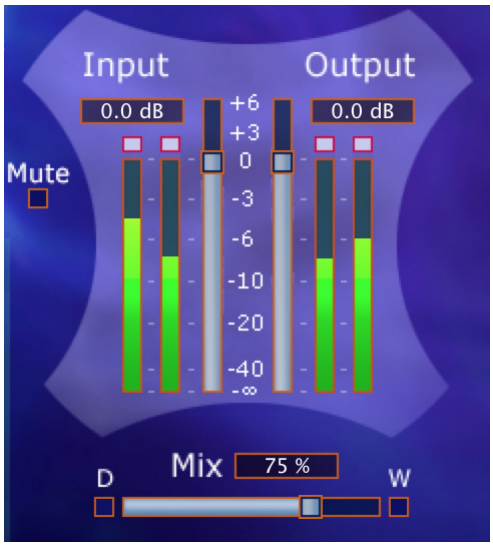
Distance

DreamVerb allows you to control the distance of the perceived source with this slider. In reverberant environments, sounds originating close to the listener have a different mix of direct and reflected energy than those originating further from the listener.

Larger percentages yield a source that is farther away from the listener. A value of 0% places the source as close as possible to the listener.

Levels Panel

This panel is where DreamVerb input/output levels, wet/dry mix, and reverb mute controls can be modified.



Levels panel

Input

Modifies the signal level at the input to DreamVerb. A value of zero is unity gain.

Output

Modifies the signal level at the output of DreamVerb. A value of zero is unity gain.

Mute

This switch mutes the signal at the input to DreamVerb. This allows the reverb tail to play out after mute is applied, which is helpful for auditioning the sound of the reverb. Mute is on when the button is gray and off when the button is black.

Mix

The wet and dry mix of DreamVerb is controlled with this slider. The two buttons above this slider labeled “D” and “W” represent Dry and Wet; clicking either will create a 100% dry or 100% wet mix.

Dry

When this button (labeled “D”) is enabled, DreamVerb is 100% dry. It has the same effect as moving the Mix slider to 0%. Dry is on when the button is gray and off when the button is black.

Wet

When this button (labeled “W”) is enabled, DreamVerb is 100% wet. It has the same effect as moving the Mix slider to 100%. Wet is on when the button is gray and off when the button is black.

Spatial Characteristics

Size

The apparent size of a reverberant space is dependent on many factors. Most reverbs on the market have a “size” parameter, which usually modifies several facets of the reverb algorithm at once. You may notice DreamVerb does not have a “size” parameter. Instead, the elements that control the reverberant space are available to the user.

In DreamVerb, room size is determined by the interaction between all the parameters in the Reflections and Reverberation panels. To get a larger-sounding space, increase the T60 (reverberation time), use proportionally more air, increase the pre-delays, and slightly shift the Resonance transition frequencies to lower values.

Pre-Delay

Intimacy and remoteness are largely controlled by the pre-delays. Generally speaking, use shorter pre-delays for more intimate spaces. Clear spaces have most of their energy in the first eighty milliseconds or so; muddy spaces have a lot of late arriving energy.

Space

In some sense, Shape determines the spatial characteristics of the reverberator, whereas Materials effects the spectral characteristics.

DreamVerb Presets

DreamVerb includes 100+ presets in addition to the internal factory bank. Presets in the internal factory bank are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The additional presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer and can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Preset Design Tips

Here are some practical tips for creating useful reverbs with DreamVerb. These are not rules of course, but techniques that can be helpful in designing the perfect sonic environment.

ER = Early Reflections	Hf = High Frequency
LF = Late-field Reverberation	Lf = Low frequency

Preset Design Tips abbreviations

General Tips (a tour):

- Start by setting a general timing on the ER and LF graphs to give a rough reverb size. This timing ordinarily needs to be tweaked several times along the way.
- The materials and air density define the frequency decay of the LF, and also the coloration of the ER if ER filtering is used (the slider on the right of the Reflections panel).
- Typically, materials should be blended. Try blending contrasting high frequency roll-off materials with high-frequency reflecting materials or inverse materials. This tends to add nice dimension to the LF tail. Start with one useful material and experiment with blending.
- Materials can have an extreme filtering effect if no air density is used. Most presets sound better with an air blending. If you don't want the additional coloration of air, blend with "Ideal Gas" which performs no filtering.
- The room shapes define the ER pattern; they do not effect the LF. Solo the ER and choose a shape that works well for your source or environment.
- Blending shapes does not always yield desirable results. Use shape blending with discretion, or to define a more complex room.
- Start with the EQ flat, set the approximate sound with the materials, then EQ the input to cut or boost specific frequencies.
- The EQ is often most useful for a simple Lf or Hf roll-off/boost, or to notch out bothersome frequencies for particular sources. For full mix ambience/mastering presets, use the EQ to cut most of all LF input, which yields added ambience without mucking up the mix. This is a powerful EQ, so experiment!

- Try different diffusion settings for your preset (the slider on the right of the Reverberation panel). Diffusion radically alters the reverberation sound and is source dependent. Higher diffusion values yield a fuller sound, good for percussive sounds; lower diffusion values yield a less dense sound, good for vocals, synths, etcetera.
- When monitoring your preset, try switching from Dry solo, Wet solo, and a useful mix. Solo the reflections and reverberation, and disable/enable EQ. Try different sources and mixes. Reach for the headphones every now and then. In general just keep things moving, as ear fatigue can be particularly deceiving with reverb sounds.
- The Positioning panel is generally only needed for automation. Ignore these settings for preset design unless going for a panning effect or monitoring real-world use.
- Often when you've got a really great preset designed, all it takes are a few subtle changes to make a number of other great presets.

Tips for designing a natural environment sound:

- Make timing proportional. As the size of the simulated environment increases, the length of the pre-delay for the EF, LF, and LF tail should increase proportionally. Typically, ER and LF pre-delay should be not too far apart, with LF starting shortly after ER.
- Place the ER timing preceding/leading into the LF
- ER amplitude naturally decays. Slope the amplitude down from left to right.
- Use ER filtering, as this improves the reverb sound in almost all situations.
- Try a gradual Lf or Hf roll-off (or boost) with the EQ section. The left and right-most EQ bands are shelf filters, which are perfect for this job. The adjacent bands can be used to shape the roll-off.
- Try natural materials and air densities before the unnatural custom or inverse materials and air densities.
- Try adding onset (slope) to the LF, as many environments naturally have an LF onset.

Empirical Labs EL7 Fatso

Get the rich sound of magnetic tape, class A transformers, and tube circuits

Able to warmly burnish frequencies and transients, or crush them with thick saturation, the FATSO™ Jr./Sr. Tape Simulation & Compressor plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces exhaustively emulates the iconic, industry standard Empirical Labs hardware.

Used by legendary engineers Ed Cherney, Al Schmitt, and Brendan O'Brien, the FATSO can also increase the apparent volume of your source material. The FATSO plug-in is officially endorsed and scrutinized for accuracy by its designer, Dave Derr.

Now You Can:

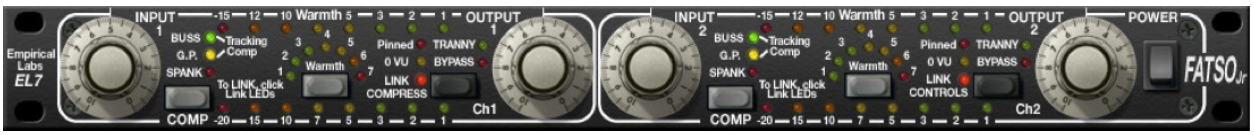
- Inject the warm, musical qualities of magnetic tape, tubes, and class A transformers to instruments or an entire mix
- Lightly color or destroy drums, vocals, and more with tube and tape saturation
- Harness "plug-in only" Tranny Saturation, Sidechain Filtering, and Stereo/Mono controls
- Dial-in a wealth of analog textures with Warmth and Spank controls

Go From Tame — to Trashed

The FATSO plug-in offers a wide palette of possibilities for adding fat analog character and cohesiveness to your DAW tracks. It's also a creative tool, able to add varying degrees of saturation — from subtle to severe — on any source. The FATSO's Input control lets you dial in shades of harmonic generation and distortion, while the Tranny and Warmth features provide varying amounts of of tape and tube tone.

Plug-In Only Features

The FATSO plug-in's versatility is greatly expanded with the addition of Dave Derr's custom mods. The FATSO Sr. offers a "Tranny" saturation control, Sidechain Filtering, and deeper compression parameters including Threshold, Attack and Release. These special FATSO Sr. mods are only available with the UAD plug-in version of this essential studio tool.



FATSO Jr. interface

FATSO Functional Overview

Four Processing Types

The FATSO was essentially designed to integrate frequencies in a musical manner and provide some foolproof vintage sounding compression. Generally, it is difficult to make the unit sound unnatural due to its vintage topology. FATSO provides four types of processing: Saturation and Distortion, Warmth, Tranny, and Compression.

Saturation and Distortion Processor

Harmonic Generation & Soft Clipper

Basically, this is a distortion generator associated with the Input knobs. Anytime you pass a signal through the FATSO, it passes through this part except in bypass. This processing is useful to softly but instantly clip peaks and transients, allowing a higher average level. Aggressive distortion can also be achieved through the same controls.

It is well known that the triode distortion in tube circuits produces lots of 2nd order and 3rd order harmonics, in somewhat varying ratios. Analog tape also saturates in this manner. The 3rd order harmonic is induced in the FATSO by increasing the level through two discrete distortion circuits and is usually the result of flattening the tops and bottoms of waveforms. Second order harmonics are also added especially while compressing in the FATSO.

The FATSO's input clipping will give you the same result. These lower order harmonics form "the octave" and "the octave and a fifth" to the fundamental musical tones. They are actually "musical" distortion. Harmonics above the 2nd and 3rd get increasingly harsh and unmusical, and therefore should be lower in amplitude (<-60 dB) to keep within our line of thinking. Second harmonic is considered to be the warmest and most "consonant" harmonic distortion.

Warmth Processor

High Frequency Saturation

This circuit is meant to simulate the softening of the high frequencies that occurs with analog tape. Basically, as the Warmth is increased, overly bright signals and transients will be quickly attenuated. The time constants are very nearly instant, so the high frequencies return very quickly after a loud burst.

The Warmth circuit is by far the most complex part of the FATSO. Basically, it is a very strange high frequency (HF) gain control circuit or HF limiter. It is very unobtrusive in operation since it gets in and out of the way very quickly. The desired result is akin to the HF saturation that analog tape exhibits when the HF amplitude interacts with the tape recorder bias to produce "self erasure" of certain frequencies. The nature of the filter allows the corner frequency to move as attenuation occurs.

There is only one control for Warmth but there are other ways to control the overall action of this circuit. If you do decide to use the compressor, set it up first because it affects the operation of Warmth. There is heavy interaction between the compressor and Warmth settings. Perhaps the best way to think of the settings is as compressor threshold, with 7 having the lowest threshold and the most Warmth, responding quickly and often to high frequency content. Just remember that instead of controlling the overall level, the Warmth "compressor" threshold only affects the high frequencies.

The Tranny Processor

Transformer & Tape Head Emulation

The Tranny circuit ("Tranny" is short for transformer) is a simulation of the effect of input and output transformers of older devices and adds the low frequency harmonics that characterize analog tape. This is extremely useful on pure low frequency type tones that don't cut through small speakers. It adds upper "warm" harmonics to frequencies below 150 Hz, especially those even lower such as 40 Hz, the low string on a bass guitar, helping it to cut through on smaller speakers.

Transformer design and use is an art, and there are always trade-offs. However, it has been widely known that a good audio transformer circuit can do wonderful things to an audio signal. This was the goal of the Tranny circuit. The hardware designers tried to emulate the desirable characteristics of the good old input/output transformers in a consistent musical way, and in a selectable fashion. The addition of harmonics and peak saturation along with frequency and phase changes on the low frequencies occurs. They found that they could capture the low frequency effects of large and now expensive older output transformers in a weird, internally buffered switchable design.

To sum up the musical results of the Tranny circuit, there will be a little more edge in the midrange, and the super low frequencies will have been harmonically altered in a way that allows them to sound louder, even though the peaks are less than the original. Playback on small speakers will show an improved audibility of low end from the result of the psycho-acoustically-pleasing distortion the Tranny adds.

Compression Processor

Classic Knee Compression, Empirical Labs Style

These are your typical automatic leveling devices that you find used on just about every instrument and vocal track, as well as on the overall buss. Only it's Empirical Labs compression - smooth and sweet, but in your face!

There are essentially four discrete compressors in the FATSO: Buss, General Purpose (G.P.), Tracking, and Spank. Switching modes simultaneously sets the compressor threshold, ratio, attack, and decay. This was done to provide an easy-to-set, yet versatile group of curves. The release curve of all types is logarithmic, meaning it lets off quickly at first and then slows. This release curve is a big part of the FATSO's compressor sound.

Note: *Threshold, attack, and decay values can be modified in the FATSO Sr.*

Buss

Buss mode (green LED) is a very gentle 2:1 type ratio with slow attack, fast release, and very soft knee. One to four dB of gain reduction is typical for this compressor type. Five or more dB of Buss compression is hitting it hard!

G.P.

General Purpose mode (yellow LED) is medium attack slow release type that sounds pretty invisible while able to maintain a consistent RMS level. The slow release will not pull things into your face unnaturally.

Tracking

Tracking mode (green and yellow LED) is an 1176 type compressor that is great for tracking instruments and vocals during the recording process or during mixdown.

Spank

Spank mode (red LED) is a radical limiter type compressor that was specifically designed to emulate the nice squeeze of the older SSL talkback compressors from the 70's & 80's, but with quite a bit of higher fidelity. Note that Spank's aggressive nature will tend to dominate when combined with any of the other modes.

FATSO Controls

General notes about FATSO controls are below, followed by a detailed description of each channel-specific control, the global controls, and the FATSO SR. controls.

Mono/Stereo Operation

The FATSO is a two-channel device capable of running in stereo or dual-mono modes. Controls for both channels can be linked for ease of stereo operation when both channels require the same values (see Link Controls), or unlinked when dual-mono operation is desired.

Each of the channel functions has its own separate group of controls (one set each for channels 1 and 2). Since the controls for each of the two channels are identical, they are detailed only once.

> ***Note:*** *When the FATSO is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the channel 2 controls have no effect and the LINK parameters (page 182) are disabled.*

Pushbuttons

All FATSO pushbuttons are momentary. The value of the parameter increments by one step each time the button is clicked (holding the button down does not continue to increment the value). The value cycles to the beginning when the end of the range is reached. Clicking on the control LED indicators has no effect, with the exception of the LINK parameters (page 182).

> ***Tip:*** *Shift+click any pushbutton to decrement its value by one.*

Channel Controls

Note: *The channel controls are identical for channels 1 and 2.*

Input

The Input knob defines the signal level going into the plug-in. Higher levels result in a more saturated signal. Levels above 0 VU provide dramatically higher distortion characteristics, especially when clipped (as indicated by the Pinned LED).

When the compressor is active, higher input values also result in more compression, as indicated by the gain reduction meters.

Note: *This control has no effect when Bypass (page 180) is active.*

THD Indicators

The Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) LEDs provide some reference operating levels. The yellow “0 VU” LED light indicates around 1% THD, and the red “Pinned” LED indicates 5% THD or more. These LEDs are an excellent guide to where the user is in the “Grunge Department.” You will find that the harmonic distortion is generally more obvious on overall mixes and complex programs. On individual instruments, sometimes 10% distortion sounds “fat” and “analog” and isn’t heard as distortion at all.

Compressor Mode

The COMP button defines which compressor mode is active. See Compression Processor for a description of the modes.

Spank mode can be combined with any of the other three modes for a total of seven available compressor modes.

Note: *Generally speaking, the Input and compressor Mode controls should be set before the other FATSO processor settings, because of the high degree of interaction between the compressor and the other processors.*

Mode LEDs

The three Mode LEDs indicate the active mode. Refer to the table below for each specific value. The compressor is inactive when all Mode LEDs are off.

Compressor Mode LED State	Active Compressor Mode(s)
All Unit	Compressor inactive
Green	Buss
Yellow	General Purpose (G.P.)
Green + Yellow	Tracking (most versatile ratio)
Red	Spank
Red + Green	Spank + Buss
Red + Yellow	Spank + General Purpose
Red + Green + Yellow	Spank + Tracking

Compressor Mode LED States

GR Meter

The Gain Reduction Meter displays the amount of gain reduction occurring within the FATSO compressor, expressed as negative dB values.

> ***Note:*** *At extreme settings, the GR Meter may indicate gain reduction is occurring even when the compressor is disabled. This behavior is identical to the hardware unit.*

Warmth

This button defines the Warmth amount. Warmth simulates the softening of the high frequencies that occurs with analog tape saturation (see Warmth Processor for a detailed description). Higher values increase the Warmth, as indicated by the Warmth Meter.

Values of 1 to 7 are available. The current value is indicated by the arc of Warmth LEDs. Warmth is off when all LEDs are unlit.

Warmth Meter

The Warmth Meter is a very accurate display of the amount of high frequency attenuation, as defined by the Warmth button. The meter shows the amount of HF gain reduction occurring at 20 kHz.

> ***Note:*** *At extreme settings, the Warmth Meter may indicate activity even when Warmth is disabled. This behavior is identical to the hardware unit.*

Bypass/Tranny

This black button is a multifunction control. Clicking the button repeatedly cycles through Tranny, Bypass, and Tranny Off modes. The currently active mode is indicated by the adjacent LEDs.

Tranny (green LED)

The Tranny Processor is active in this mode. The Tranny circuit adds frequency "rounding," low order clipping, intermodular distortion and transient clipping. On FATSO Sr., the Tranny amount can be set with the Tranny Level control

> ***Note:*** *Disabling Tranny will yield a significant reduction in UAD DSP usage when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), disabling Tranny will not reduce DSP usage.*

Tranny Off (red and green LEDs off)

In this mode, the Tranny processor is inactive but the other processors are active. This mode requires less UAD DSP than when Tranny is active.

Bypass (red LED)

All FATSO controls and processing for the channel are inactive in this mode.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP load is not reduced in Bypass mode. If you want to reduce UAD DSP usage when bypassing both channels of the FATSO, use the Power switch instead.*

Output

The Output knob controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect when Bypass/Tranny is active.*

Global Controls

The global controls are not channel-specific; they apply to both channels.

Link Compress

The control signal sidechains of the gain reduction processors for channels 1 and 2 can be linked using the Link Compress function.

To activate Link Compress, click the LINK COMPRESS text or LED on Ch1, on the left. The feature is active when the LED is illuminated.

In typical use on stereo signals, Link Compress should be active so the stereo imaging is maintained. If the compressor is inactive ("Compressor Mode" on page 179), or when FATSO is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control has no effect.

> ***Important:*** *Unlike the other controls for channels 1 and 2, which are identical on the left and right sides of the interface, the Link COMPRESS function is on the left side only (not to be confused with Link CONTROLS, which is on the right side only).*

Link Controls

The parameter controls for channels 1 and 2 can be linked using the Link Controls function.

To activate Link Controls, click on the LINK CONTROLS text or LED on Ch2, on the right. The feature is active when the LED is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *Although the left/right Warmth and Tranny controls are linked when Link Controls is active, the actual Warmth and Tranny processors are not stereo linked. This behavior is identical to the original hardware.*

Controls Linked

Link Controls is provided for stereo operation when both channels require the same values. When enabled, the right channel controls "snap" to match the left channel control values, and modifying any channel control causes its stereo counterpart control to move to the same position (channel 1 & 2 controls are ganged together in this mode).

> ***Important:*** *Right channel parameter values are lost the moment Link Controls is enabled.*

Controls Unlinked

Important: Unlink the controls when dual-mono operation is desired. Channel 1 and 2 controls are completely independent in this mode, and automation data is written and read by each channel separately. Link Controls is disabled when the FATSO is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

> ***Important:*** *Unlike the other controls for channels 1 and 2, which are identical on the left and right sides of the interface, the Link CONTROLS function is on the right side only (not to be confused with Link COMPRESS, which is on the left side only).*

Power

The Power toggle switch determines whether the plug-in is active. It is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. When Power is in the Off (down) position, plug-in processing is disabled, UAD DSP usage is reduced, and all LEDs are unlit.

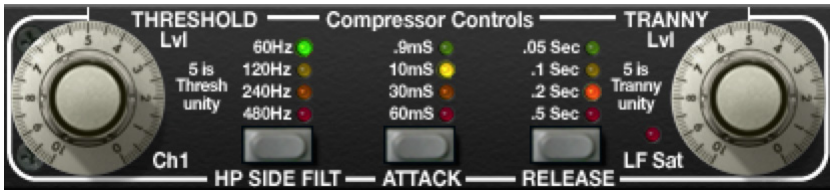
> ***Note:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), disabling Power will not reduce DSP usage.*

Click the lower portion of the switch to disable the plug-in; click the upper portion to activate (or click+drag up/down on the switch).

FATSO Sr. Controls

These controls are unique to the FATSO Sr. However, because the additional controls in the FATSO Sr. do not add to the DSP functionality of the FATSO Jr., both plug-ins use the same amount of UAD DSP.

> ***Note:*** *The additional controls in the FATSO Sr. do not add to the DSP functionality of the FATSO Jr. Both plug-ins use the same amount of UAD DSP.*



Threshold

This knob enables manual threshold control of the FATSO compressor. Higher values lower the threshold, and therefore increase the amount of compression. A value of 5 is the unity setting.

The Input control also affects the compression threshold. Generally speaking, set the amount of desired signal saturation with Input first, then adjust Threshold as desired.

Filter (HP SIDE FILT)

Filter regulates the cutoff frequency of the filter on the compressor's control signal sidechain. When active, frequencies below the filter value are not passed to the sidechain. Values of 60 Hz, 120 Hz, 240 Hz, 480 Hz, and Off are available. The filter slope is 6 dB per octave. When the compressor is disabled, Filter has no effect and its LED turns off. When the compressor is enabled, Filter returns to its original value.

> ***Tip:*** *Removing low frequency content from the sidechain can reduce excessive gain reduction and/or "pumping" on bass-heavy audio signals without reducing bass content of the audio signal itself.*

> ***Note:*** *The Filter parameter affects the control signal (sidechain) of the compressor only. It does not filter the audio signal.*

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches the threshold level before compression is applied. The faster the attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold.

The available attack time values are 0.9ms, 10ms, 30ms, 60ms, and Default (unlit). The unlit behavior is depends upon whether or not the compressor is active. These behaviors are described below.

> ***Note:*** *Attack values are approximations. Actual attack and release times may vary depending on the compressor mode selected.*

Attack LEDs Unlit - Compressor Active

When the compressor is enabled and all Attack LEDs are unlit, the attack characteristic of the active compressor mode in FATSO Jr. is used. This "default" FATSO Jr. behavior can then be manually overridden with the Attack button. However, when "pure" Spank mode is active, Attack cannot be modified. When Spank mode is combined with another compressor mode, Attack can be changed, but the results are typically very subtle.

> ***Tip:*** *After experimenting with other time constants, one can return to the default attack setting of the FATSO Jr. if desired by cycling the attack control until NO LEDs are lit (which indicates the default FATSO Jr. time constant).*

Attack LEDs Unlit - Compressor Inactive

When the compressor is disabled and all Attack LEDs are unlit, the button is disabled.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect when the compressor is inactive, or when it is in "pure" Spank mode (see Compressor Mode).*

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for compression to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if you set too large of a Release time, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to lengthy sections of audio with lower signals.

The available release time values are 0.05s, 0.1s, 0.s, 0.5s, and Default (unlit). The unlit behavior is depends upon whether or not the compressor is active. These behaviors are described below.

> ***Note:*** *Release values are approximations. Actual attack and release times may vary depending on the compressor mode selected.*

Release LEDs Unlit - Compressor Active

When the compressor is enabled and all Release LEDs are unlit, the release characteristic of the active compressor mode in FATSO Jr. is used. This "default" FATSO Jr. behavior can then be manually overridden with the Release button. However, when "pure" Spank mode is active, Release cannot be modified. When Spank mode is combined with another compressor mode, Release can be changed, but the results are typically very subtle.

> ***Tip:*** *After experimenting with other time constants, one can return to the default release setting of the FATSO Jr. if desired by cycling the release control until NO LEDs are lit (which indicates the default FATSO Jr. time constant).*

Release LEDs Unlit - Compressor Inactive

When the compressor is disabled and all Release LEDs are unlit, the button is disabled.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect when the compressor is inactive, or when it is in "pure" Spank mode (see Compressor Mode).*

Tranny Level

This control determines the amount of Tranny processing (see The Tranny Processor for a detailed description). Higher values make the Tranny effect more prominent. Increasing the Tranny level also increases the signal THD (see THD Indicators), and the sensitivity of the Warmth processor. A value of 5 is the unity setting.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect when the Tranny processor is inactive.*

LF Sat LED

The LF Sat (Low Frequency Saturation) LED indicates the amount of LF saturation in the Tranny processor. Higher Tranny Level values increase the LF saturation.

FATSO Jr. Presets

When loading presets created on the FATSO Jr. into the FATSO Sr., the parameters that are unique to FATSO Sr. are set to their default control values. The default values of the unique FATSO Sr. parameters are: Threshold/Tranny knobs at 5, and Filter/Attack/Release buttons off.

Empirical Labs EL7 FATSO Jr. hardware

All visual and aural references to the FATSO and all use of EMPIRICAL LABS's trademarks are being made with written permission from EMPIRICAL LABS, INC.
Special thanks to Dave Derr for assistance with this project.

Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor

The world's most popular compressor, exactingly recreated for UAD and Apollo.

Introduced in 1993, the Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor is revered in studios all over the world as the modern, "must-have" compressor. Versatile, super fast, and offering tons of color, the Distressor picks up where the legendary UA 1176 and Teletronix LA-2A compressors leave off — a modern tool that's equal parts utilitarian and creative, as heard on thousands of hit records.

The only authentic Distressor plug-in endorsed by Empirical Labs' founder Dave Derr, the UAD Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor is available exclusively for UAD hardware and Apollo interfaces. An exhaustive end-to-end emulation of Derr's iconic hardware, the UAD EL8 Distressor is the only faithful emulation of this true "desert island" compressor.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with the only authentic emulation of the EL8 Distressor — the world's most popular modern compressor
- Radically shape guitars, drums, and vocals with nearly infinite gain reduction variations
- Creatively color instruments and vocals with famous "Dist 2" and "Dist 3" modes
- Embellish, pump up, or destroy bass, synth, and room mics with custom detector filtering

The Only End-to-End Distressor Emulation

The Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor Compressor plug-in provides all the features and coveted colorful sound of the original Distressor design. UA's team of DSP experts started with a complete circuit trace and component study of Dave Derr's selected golden unit. Simultaneously, the team analyzed three more Distressors representing the lifetime of the product — ensuring one of UA's tightest circuit models to date.

When comparing Distressor software emulations, contrast the original hardware's ultra-fast attack time to quickly hear where most plug-ins fail, and the authentic UAD Distressor succeeds.

The Right Ratio

The crux of the Distressor are its staggering variations in compression — 2:1, 3:1, 4:1, 6:1, 10:1, 20:1 and Nuke — each delivering unique tones and curves. Use the 1:1 ratio to gently warm up synths or strings without compression, while adding musical low-order harmonics. At the other extreme, the Nuke limiter setting is famous for adding explosive excitement to room mics, or energizing a entire mix.

Distortion Modes

The Distressor's iconic Dist 2 and Dist 3 modes feature a wide palette of compression colors, letting you shape sources with even or combined even/odd-order harmonic distortion. From delicate thickening to burnished tape to fully saturated, the Distortion Modes, combined with low-frequency filtering, let you focus the Distressor's textures.

Powerful Sidechain Controls

The Distressor's sidechain control lets you easily focus your dynamics. High Pass filters unwanted low frequency pumping and breathing — perfect for drum bus processing. Band Emphasis works to tame strident vocals or can laser in on harsh "power region" instrument midrange peaks, or use both together.

You can also run the Distressor on buses, linked or unlinked, for flexible imaging. Exclusive plug-in features like Dry/Wet Mix offer easy parallel compression on a mix bus or instrument group. Finally, the Headroom control lets you optimize the Distressor's overall operating level to your playback system.

Key Features:

- Painstaking, end-to-end circuit emulation of the iconic hardware designed by Dave Derr, exclusively for Universal Audio
- Provides the entire circuit path and control set of the original Empirical Labs hardware
- Features seven fixed ratios, including Optical and Nuke, Distortion Modes, and Detector Modes
- Plug-in-exclusive features include Dry/Wet parallel processing and Headroom for user-customizable operating level

Artist Presets

Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor includes 32 presets provided by prominent artists. The artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

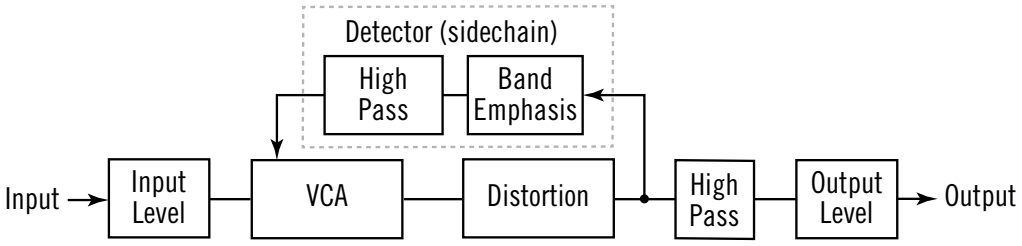
Chris Coady	Jimmy Douglass
Chris Zane	Joe Chiccarelli
Hector Delgado	Mike Larson
Jacquire King	Vance Powell

Artists that have provided presets for Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor

Distressor Controls

Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor interface

A simplified version of the signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below. Understanding this signal flow may help you obtain a more predictable result.



Simplified signal flow within Distressor

BYPASS

BYPASS disables the Distressor circuit but keeps the plug-in loaded on UAD DSP for a glitch-free bypass. To toggle the BYPASS state, click the BYPASS button, label, or LED. BYPASS is active when its LED is lit.

The gain reduction meter remains active in bypass mode. In the original hardware unit, this switch controls a relay that hard-wires the inputs directly to the outputs.

Tip: *To unload the plug-in and conserve UAD resources, use the POWER switch.*

RATIO

This switch cycles through the available compression ratios. Each ratio provides a distinct compression curve and threshold offset. The table below lists the available values and a description of the setting.

> ***Caution:*** *With high amounts of gain reduction, switching RATIO to 1:1 can cause extreme increases in output level (as there is no gain reduction with 1:1 RATIO). To avoid sudden output increases when adjusting RATIO, click directly on a RATIO text label or LED to change the value instead of cycling through available values with the RATIO button.*

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through available ratios in reverse, hold SHIFT while clicking RATIO.*

Ratio Descriptions

Ratio	Description
1:1	Saturation only. No compression. Warms the signal.
2:1 3:1	Mild compression with gentle "parabolic" knee shape. 2:1 knee can be as long as 30 dB, depending on attack and release settings.
4:1 6:1	Mid-level compression with steeper knee shape. A good starting point for many signals.
10:1	"Opto" compression curve, with special detection circuitry that emulates electro-luminescent optical gain reduction.
20:1 NUKE	Hard limiting curves with special detector circuitry. Great for controlling highly dynamic signals and for "blowing up" room sounds.

DETECTOR

This switch cycles through eight modes of sidechain signal processing. Each mode has a distinct effect on dynamics detection and compression behavior.

High Pass

Band Emphasis

Stereo Link

Three separate sidechain functions are available: High Pass, Band Emphasis, and Stereo Link. The function is active when its LED is lit. The functions can be combined to access all detector modes.

To select a detector mode, click the LEDs or labels directly, or SHIFT click to select multiple functions. To cycle through detector modes in reverse, hold SHIFT while clicking DETECTOR.

Detector Modes

Detector Switch State	Detector Mode Description
Normal (Detector LEDs off)	Standard detector behavior.
High Pass	A high pass filter (100 Hz cutoff, 6 dB/oct. slope) is applied to the sidechain, reducing low-frequency modulation.
Band Emphasis	Sidechain signal is boosted around 6 kHz, influencing the compressor to tame harsh upper-mid frequencies.
High Pass + Band Emphasis	High Pass and Band Emphasis modes are enabled.
Link	Stereo linking is enabled, for more coherent gain reduction behavior on heavily divergent stereo sources.
High Pass + Link	High Pass and Stereo Link modes are enabled.
Band Emphasis + Link	Band Emphasis and Stereo Link modes are enabled.
HP + Band Emphasis + Link	All three detector modes are enabled.

Unique Mono Detector Link Behavior

Hardware Link Overview

The Distressor hardware unit is monophonic. However, it features sidechain I/O jacks for linking two units together in a stereo configuration. With two properly connected units, the Link switch enables stereo operation.

The Link switch influences the sound even when there is only a single unit. When Link is on but nothing is connected to the hardware's sidechain I/O, this "dead patch" impacts threshold behavior and increases harmonic distortion.

UAD Mono Out Behavior

UAD Empirical Labs Distressor models the unique mono link behaviors of the original hardware. When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration and Link is on, the "dead patch" response of the hardware is fully emulated.

> ***Important:*** *Because of the hardware's unique monophonic Link behaviors, UAD Distressor presets saved in mono-out configurations with Link enabled may sound different when subsequently opened in stereo-out configurations.*

AUDIO

AUDIO cycles through six modes of audio processing. Each mode has a distinct effect on frequency balance and saturation.

Three separate audio functions are available: High Pass, Distortion 2, and Distortion 3. The function is active when its LED is lit. The functions can be combined to access all audio modes.

To change the audio mode, click the LEDs or labels directly, or SHIFT click to select multiple functions.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through audio processing modes in reverse, hold SHIFT while clicking AUDIO.*

Audio Mode Descriptions

Audio Switch State	Audio Mode Description
Normal (Audio LEDs off)	No special audio processing.
High Pass	Applies an 18 dB per octave Bessel type high pass filter with 80 Hz cutoff to help reduce rumble and clean up signals.
Dist 2	Engages a distortion circuit that emphasizes the 2nd harmonic. Adds warm, consonant saturation, akin to an overdriven tube circuit.
High Pass + Dist 2	High Pass and Distortion 2 modes are enabled.
Distortion 3	Engages a distortion circuit that emphasizes the 3rd harmonic. Emulates friendly tape-like behavior when pushed.
High Pass + Dist 3	High Pass and Distortion 3 modes are enabled.

DISTORTION METERS

These LEDs provide a visual approximation of total harmonic distortion and can be used to gauge audible distortion. The distortion is measured at the input amplifier, and also from the distortion VCAs when Distortion 2 or Distortion 3 audio modes are active.

REDLINE LED

This LED glows when total harmonic distortion reaches approximately 3%. When lit, REDLINE also indicates output clipping.

1% LED

This LED glows when total harmonic distortion reaches approximately 1%.

POWER

POWER disables the plug-in and unloads it from DSP, conserving UAD resources.

GAIN REDUCTION METER

The Gain Reduction Meter displays the amount of gain attenuation occurring in the compression circuit. Greater negative dB values (as the LEDs move towards the left) indicate more compression is occurring.

> ***Note:*** *The gain reduction meter remains active when BYPASS is engaged. The meter is unlit when POWER is off.*

INPUT

INPUT simultaneously adjusts input gain and modifies compressor threshold. The amount of threshold modification is relative to the response of each RATIO setting.

The nonlinear input amplifier response of the hardware is fully emulated.

ATTACK

ATTACK sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches compressor threshold before compression is applied. Setting the knob to 0 produces the fastest attack time. The faster the attack time, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold.

The available range is from 50 microseconds to 30 milliseconds. However, with ATTACK at 0, Distressor can achieve even faster times when RATIO is set to 2:1, 3:1, and 4:1.

RELEASE

RELEASE sets the time it takes for processing to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. Setting the knob to 0 produces the fastest release time. The available range is from 0.05 seconds to 3.5 seconds.

> ***Note:*** *In 10:1 "Opto" mode, release can extend up to 20 seconds due to program dependent behaviors.*

OUTPUT

OUTPUT adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in. The nonlinear output amplifier response of the hardware is fully emulated.

HEADROOM (HR)

The Headroom control is a UAD-only feature that is not available in the original hardware. Headroom enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the plug-in so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into processing as much. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor.

By fine-tuning Headroom, the nonlinear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels. Increasing Headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise) allows signals at the input to be pushed higher before they are processed.

Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw "dot" is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is *increased* as the dB value *decreases*.

Tip: *Click the "HR" text label to return the control to the default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals will push the plug-in into processing more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less processing and less color is desired.

Note: *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

MIX

A blended output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the MIX control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

Note: *The MIX control does not exist in the original hardware.*

When MIX is set to Dry, only the unprocessed source signal is output. When set to Comp (the default value), only the processed (wet) signal is output. When the knob's tick mark is pointing straight up (50%), an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable, and phase accurate, throughout the control range.

Tip: *Click the Dry text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the Comp text label to set the control to the maximum position.*

Operation Notes From Empirical Labs

Courtesy of Dave Derr, designer of the EL8 Distressor

Using the Distressor for the First Time

Where to start - 5 5 5 5

Start with 6:1 ratio and set all four knobs to 5, the midway position. This is a great starting place for anything. Push the ratio button until the LED's cycle to the 6:1 ratio (Yellow LED). Adjust input to drive into more compression. The harder you drive, the more knee you'll hit, and the greater the ratio will be. Only 1 LED should be lit - the 6:1 LED (not counting any bargraph LED's). If you need more obvious compression, push ratio button to progress to higher ratios. If you would like lower ratios, the very long knees of 2:1, 3:1, 4:1 are silky smooth. The 2:1 ratio has a +15 dB knee, where the ratio gradually increases! Unit will scroll around "Nuke" back to these lower ratios, but if you must cycle through 1:1 while unit is in use, do it quickly since compression will be turned "off" and the signal will swell to its peak input levels, possibly becoming dangerously loud. Waiting for a pause in the input before changing ratio is a safe thing to do. For a quick +4 tape levels, try setting output knob to 8.

Distortion Settings

If all the LED's are off in the "Audio" area, your Distressor is operating in its cleanest mode. Distortion settings should be used when subtle analog distortion is desired. Dist 2 mode produces "Class A" type warmth, producing mostly 2nd harmonic when compressing (tube distortion is known for its 2nd harmonic) and Dist 3 adds 3rd along with 2nd harmonic. Dist 3 can look and sound very similar to tape distortion - it gradually flattens out the top and bottom of the waveform. If you want a digital signal to sound like an analog tape signal, try 2:1 mode with Dist 3 engaged, and compress 1 - 3 dB (as displayed on bargraph). Tape goes in and out of saturation quickly, so fast attacks and decays are appropriate. If you want to make it sound like over-saturated tape, you could try one of the higher ratios and drive the input to produce 1 - 5 dB of compression. With the quick release, 2nd harmonic will still be strong in Dist 3 mode. More than 3 to 5 dB of reduction will sound less like tape, more like compression.

Advanced Detector Functions

The new user may want to stick with a basic setup until he feels comfortable, but with the push of a button he can enable some advanced sidechain functions. While tracking vocals for instance, sometimes "p's" and "b's" can hit the mic with an air blast that shows up as a high amplitude, low frequency signal, causing the compressor to "kick in". The result may be a brief, unnatural drop in the apparent vocal level. By pushing the detector button once, you engage a high-pass (abbreviated with HP) filter in the detector (the part of the circuit that figures out how much to turn down the signal). This high-pass, or low cut, will not allow low, low frequencies to trigger compression, and in this case, prevent the unnatural drop in vocal level from a "p" or "b" blasting the mic with wind. It may also help to HP (high-pass) the audio in this case.

Another detector sidechain filter can be engaged with a second push of the button. This is the "band emphasis function" that inserts an Eq into the detector circuitry that makes the circuit much more sensitive to harsh, mid band frequencies. This is useful on vocals (for those singers with a nasty edge to their voice when they go up high), guitars, synths, and many other solo instruments that may become harsh and too loud in the mix. See "Detector Modes" on page 6 for more info.

Example Settings

Generally, it is difficult to make the unit sound unnatural due to its vintage topology. The ratio and release times are the most critical settings. Again, around 5 on the release knob is a good starting spot. The attack is variable from 50uS to 30mS. The release is variable from 50mS to 3 seconds. For percussive material, if you need to add attack, add attack. That is, slow the attack by turning the knob clockwise towards 10. Conversely, if you need to get rid of some pick noise, or over transient sounds, the fast attack and release is the way to go. With these tools, an engineer can mold the envelope of sounds in a very controlled manner, adding or softening attack, sustaining, smoothing and evening until the sounds fit into the mix as desired.

Vocals – Turn off all distort modes if you're going to tape, however the High-pass (HP) in both the detector and audio paths may be useful. Set ratio to 6:1 or less, attack 5, release 4. Adjust input to produce anywhere from 3 to 17 dB of compression. Sometimes the band emphasis setting is effective for those dynamic, "piercing" vocal passages. On mixdowns, Dist 2 can add a warm edge to vocals. The "Opto" mode in 10:1 is guaranteed to give you a classic compression curve. Try 10:1, with attack on 10, release on 0. Separate detector circuitry will be enabled.

A well known producer gave us another more aggressive vocal compressor setting: Ratio 6:1, Attack 2.5-3,5, Release 0 – 2, Audio modes HP & Dist 2. In soft passages, no compression should occur while on loud passages 17 – 20dB. This setting was used for tracking as well as mixing.

Bass – 4:1, 6:1 turn attack on 5, release 4. The distortion audio modes sound great on bass, but caution should be observed if you are going to tape/HD. You cannot un-distort. If you have a very "clacky" bass player, sometimes the band emphasis in the detector just flattens that stuff out. Use fast attack and release times to keep "clacks" from pumping. Also, try "Opto" mode.

Electric Guitar – A wide range of settings can be used. To get rid of edgy attacks, use quick attack, medium release. To smooth out solos, try the band emphasis in the detector to pull up the lower, softer notes and push back and sustain the higher, and often, thinner notes. Try "Opto".

Acoustic Guitar – We've been told by a couple of engineers that the Distressor is one of the best sounding units for acoustic they've ever heard. Use 6:1, [7, 2, 5, 7] settings (i.e. Input 7, Attack 2, Release 5, Output 7). High-pass (HP) is often useful in both detector and audio modes. The fast attack will get you a "glassy" full sound since the pick noise will be attenuated and the sustain lengthened.

Piano/Keys – Start with quick attack (0-4) and medium release (4-6). Acoustic pianos often need less attack to fit into a mix, but there are millions of exceptions. Bruce Hornsbyish pianos are often real or samples of real pianos with medium attack and medium release, getting that "bite" followed by sustained body. Try attack 5, rel 5. Opto mode is very nice here, too. Sometimes brittle high notes can be extra compressed by using the "band emphasis" detector mode.

Drums – Start by keeping the attack over 3 to keep transients. Play with decay to get more or less "in your face" sounds. Because of the wide range of attack, the Distressor puts the drum "percussiveness" much more into the engineer's control than the older, classic units.

Snares/Kicks/Toms – Try [3:1 to 6:1, 6,5,5,6]. Shorten decay if you need to bring up "after ring". If a tom has too much attack , turn attack down between 0 - 4. If crackling from L.F., modulation occurs, play with longer attack or release times, or Det HP. Since you can load compression on without sounding funny, watch "mic leakage" which can become a problem. Kick drums sound great using Opto mode (10:1, attack on 10, release 0) and Det HP on.

Room Mics – For radical treatment, try 20:1 or "Nuke", [10, 6, 2.5, 6]. The "Nuke" ratio was originally developed for room mics, but we have since found it useful in many areas. "Nuke" and 20:1 are pretty much brick wall limiting, keeping any normal signal within 1 dB or so. Just patch in a room mic that is 10 - 25 feet from drums (or other instruments) and slam the meters. Try attack on 5 and release on 3. Fifteen to twenty dB of compression is starting to sound about right for the John Bonham thing, but don't be afraid to run the gain reduction meters right off scale. You will find the output a little lower than the other ratios in "Nuke".

Better have quiet mic preamps too - as 20 dB of compression can bring the noise floor up by 20 dB. The release should be quick (< 3) for the largest sound, but slower releases can often be effective when mixed in with the rest of the kit. Room ambience can be made to "swell up" on the tom and snare rings later, filling in behind the close mics. If you want to add "grunge", experiment with Dist 2 and Dist 3.

The Ratios and their Curves

Each "ratio mode" of the Distressor sets both the threshold and the ratio, in the standard sense of the word. This was done to provide an easy to set, yet versatile group of curves. The 1:1 mode provides no compression, but allows the audio to pass through the "warming" circuits of the unit (we'll get to the distortion modes in a moment). Ratios 2 through 6 are general purpose curves great for tracking. The 2:1 and 3:1 ratios are "parabolic" knees - very gentle curves that won't typically go into hard limiting and therefore, also won't provide absolute overload protection. Ratios 4:1 and 6:1 have steeper knees and are good general purpose curves that gradually move towards hard limiting, "nailing" the signal in its place. The ratio of 6:1 is very useful for vocals, bass, and acoustic instruments. It has an easy slope at first until after the knee, where an increasing ratio "musically" limits the peaks of the signal before damage is done. The 6:1 and 10:1 Opto ratios employ shorter knee limiting, reminiscent of some old classics from the 60's and 70's (see Classic Emulation).

"Nuke" is a different story. The "Nuke" ratio was developed for room mics, but we have since found it useful in many areas. "Nuke" has a medium threshold but when the signal hits it, a nuclear blast won't budge the output level. It is brick wall limiting, keeping any normal signal within 1 dB or so. Just patch in a room mic while recording drums (or other instruments) and slam the meters. Try attack on 4 and release on 2. The release curve of "Nuke" is logarithmic, meaning it lets off quickly at first and then slows. This release curve is a big part of the Distressor's sound. Experiment with the release times - this guy can release really fast without too much crackling, even on bass. 20:1 can be used similarly to "Nuke".

Each of these curves again has their own feel to them, with the release slopes slightly altered, and the knees falling in slightly different places. Most exceptional are the 2:1, 10:1 and Nuke ratios, which employ special detector circuitry. Just what is a soft knee? A "soft knee" is a compression curve where the first few dB of gain reduction occur at very low ratios, gradually increasing as the signal increases (gets louder). This makes the onset of compression very hard to detect. The knee usually extends for a few dB and gradually flattens out toward a final ratio. All curves with the exception of 20:1 and "Nuke" have dominant knees. The 2:1 ratio has a knee that can be as long as 30 dB, depending on attack and decay settings.

Just what is a soft knee?

A "soft knee" is a compression curve where the first few dB of gain reduction occur at very low ratios, gradually increasing as the signal increases (gets louder). This makes the onset of compression very hard to detect. The knee usually extends for a few dB and gradually flattens out toward a final ratio. All curves with the exception of 20:1 and "Nuke" have dominant knees. The 2:1 ratio has a knee that can be as long as 30 dB, depending on attack and decay settings.

Classic Emulation

Since the unit is based on the oldest compressor topology, the unit can be made to sound very similar to older classics. The nonlinear nature of the older gain control elements of opto-couplers, FET's, pentode (or triode) tube bias or "mu" modulation, etc., can be closely emulated if proper settings are used. A special "Opto" mode has been provided in the 10:1 ratio.

Some Examples:

- To simulate the opto-VCA models of old (the LA-2A, LA-3A, LA-4A), try 10:1 "Opto" ratio, with attack on 10, release on 0, Det HP on. Adjust input and outputs to your taste. Keep the attack above 4 to keep the OPTO flavor. Faster attacks will give you a more aggressive sound. Remember our LED metering deflects much faster than the old VU's so don't be afraid to hit the unit quite hard (10-20 dB of compression on peaks). To emulate tubes, try Dist 2 & 3 mode, but let your ears be your guide.
- For a classic "Over E-Z" type sound, try ratios 2:1 thru 6:1, att 9, release 2, clean mode.
- 1176LN 6:1, Att 0 - 3.5, rel 1 - 10.5. Use ratios 3:1, 4:1, 6:1, 20:1 to emulate 4 1176LN ratios. Clean mode is appropriate (Dist 2 or 3 off). Remember that the 1176LN attacks extremely fast and you must keep attack under 4 max. A familiar sound is 6:1, att2, rel 4.
- Old Fairchild IGFET - 6:1 att 3-5, rel 2 - 7 (start with att 4 and rel 4)

Due to the transformerless design, you will maintain a low transient intermodulation distortion, but will get the warming grunge of 2nd and 3rd harmonic distortion, if distortion modes are enabled. Also, unlike some of the older units, the Distressor is uniform and predictable from one unit to the next. Precise factory calibration assures that if you go from one Distressor to another, these settings will all sound the same.

Empirical Labs would like to thank Universal Audio for not only creating classic audio gear, but for kindly allowing us to refer to their model numbers. As they say "Once a classic, always a classic."

Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor hardware

All visual and aural references to the EL8 Distressor and all use of EMPIRICAL LABS's trademarks are being made with written permission from EMPIRICAL LABS, INC.
Special thanks to Dave Derr for assistance with this project.

EMT 140 Plate Reverb

Three Legendary Plate Reverbs Captured in Single, Powerful Plug-In

Endorsed by EMT Studiotechnik GmbH, the EMT 140 Classic Plate Reverberator plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces gives you the organic lushness that only plate reverb can provide.

By expertly modeling three uniquely different EMT 140s installed at The Plant Studios in Sausalito, California, the EMT 140 plug-in will infuse your sources with the unmistakable warmth and beauty of this iconic plate reverb.

Now You Can:

- Choose from three uniquely different EMT plate reverbs
- Add natural depth and shimmer to vocals and instruments
- Sculpt your sound with original controls such as mechanical damping and system input filters
- Enhance plate ambience further with “plug-in only” Balance, Width and Modulation controls

Expertly Emulated Features

The EMT 140 plug-in offers three distinct flavors of the classic EMT hardware. Plates A and B model the original EMT electronics system, for which the plates themselves had intentionally not been tuned in some time. Conversely, Plate C — the most full-frequency plate — uses the more modern Martech electronics which had just been fully serviced.

New Controls, More Flexibility

WIth “plug-in only” features such as Balance, Width, and Modulation, you’re able to harness the EMT 140 in ways previously unavailable with the hardware. Pinpoint a mono snare reverb with the Balance control, spread out strings with the Width function, or use the Modulation feature to add subtle shimmer, or an intense reverb trail, to a lead vocal. By adding these controls to the original EMT circuit, you’re afforded tons of plate reverb textures for all of your sources.

EMT 140 Controls

The EMT 140 interface is an amalgam of controls found at the plate amplifier itself and the remote damper controls, plus a few DAW-friendly controls that we added for your convenience. The GUI incorporates the original look and feel of those controls, and utilizes that look for the DAW-only controls.

EMT 140 Plate Reverb interface

Input Filter

The Input Filter is a dedicated equalizer that is used to reduce low frequency content in the reverb. On hardware plate systems, this setting is rarely modified because it is found at the plate amplifier unit itself and is not easily accessed from the control room.

EMT 140 contains two types of filters: original EMT electronics and Martech electronics which was/is a common plate system retrofit.

In the modeled source units at The Plant, plates A and B use the EMT electronics while Plate C utilizes the Martech electronics. In EMT 140, you can use either filter type with any of the three available plates.

The original EMT filter (indicated by black text) is a cut filter centered at 80 Hz, with three available levels of attenuation: -4 dB, -10 dB, and -16 dB. In controls mode, these values are prefaced with an “E” to designate the original EMT electronics model.

The Martech filter (indicated by red text) is a shelf filter, therefore all frequencies below the frequency are reduced. Six shelving frequencies are available: 90 Hz, 125 Hz, 180 Hz, 250 Hz, 270 Hz, and 360 Hz. In controls mode, these values are prefaced with an “M” to designate the aftermarket Martech electronics model.

> ***Note:*** *There is one Input Filter per plug-in instance. Each plate model (A, B, C) within a preset cannot have a unique Input Filter value.*

Reverb Controls

Plate reverb systems are extremely simple: A remote damper setting, and a high pass or shelf filter found at the plate itself. Additional manipulation is often used, including reverb return equalization, which is typically achieved at the console. Predelay is/was often achieved when necessary with tape delay, sending the return to a tape deck. Different tape speeds allowed different pre-delay amount.

The original damper controls are remote control devices, usually found somewhere near the control room for quick access. Our hybrid panel combines three remotes into the panel, with a switch to select each of the three available systems.

> ***Note:*** *The reverb controls (Plate Select and Reverb Time) are completely independent from all other plug-in controls.*

Plate Select

Three plate models (algorithms) are available for reverb processing. The Plate Select switch specifies which plate will be active.

Each setting is a model of a completely separate and unique plate system. Three 140's for the price of one!

> ***Tip:*** *You can also switch the active plate by clicking the A, B, or C letters above the Plate Select switch and the Reverb Time meters.*

Reverb Time Meters

The Reverb Time Meters display the reverb time of plates A, B, and C in seconds. The meter for the active plate model (as specified by the Plate Select switch) is illuminated.

Damper Controls (Reverb Time)

The Damper Controls (the green buttons beneath the Reverb Time Meters) change the reverb time for each plate. The range is from 0.5 to 5.5 seconds, in intervals of 0.1 sec. Click the buttons to increment or decrement the reverb time.

> ***Note:*** *The reverb time can be changed by dragging a Reverb Time Meter "needle" in addition to its corresponding Damper controls.*

Stereo Controls

Width

Width allows you to narrow the stereo image of EMT 140. The range is from 0 - 100%. At a value of zero, EMT 140 returns a monophonic reverb. At 100%, the stereo reverb field is as wide as possible.

Balance

This control balances the level between the left and right channels of the reverb return. Rotating the knob to the left attenuates the right channel, and vice versa (it is not a mono pan control).

EQ Controls

This group of parameters contains the controls for EMT 140's onboard utility equalizer. It is a two band (low and high) shelving EQ that uses analog-sounding algorithms for great tonal shaping options.

The EQ section is independent from the reverb algorithms and the Input Filter on the modeled plate systems.

The frequency parameters specify the center of the transition band, which is defined as the frequency at which the level in dB is the midpoint between DC and the band edge level.

> ***Note:*** *There is one EQ per plug-in instance. Each plate model (A, B, C) within a preset cannot have unique EQ values.*

EQ Enable

The EMT 140 equalizer can be disabled with the EQ Enable switch. UAD DSP usage is not increased when EQ is enabled.

Low Frequency

This parameter specifies the low shelving band transition frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the low band Gain setting. The range is 20 Hz to 2 kHz.

Because this is a shelving EQ, all frequencies below this setting will be effected by the low band Gain value.

Low Gain

This parameter determines the amount by which the transition frequency setting for the low band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±12 dB, in increments of 0.5 dB (fine control) or 1.0 dB (coarse control).

High Frequency

This parameter determines the high shelving band transition frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the high band Gain setting. The range is 200 Hz to 20 kHz.

Because this is a shelving EQ, all frequencies above this setting will be effected by the high band Gain value.

High Gain

This parameter determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the high band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±12 dB, in increments of 0.5 dB (fine control) or 1.0 dB (coarse control).

Modulation Controls

The EMT 140 reverb time can be modulated by a low frequency oscillator using rate and depth controls. The effect is subtle but it can increase dispersion and reduce ringing on some source material, such as loud signals with sudden endings and percussive content.

Mod Rate

Mod Rate controls the rate of reverb time modulation. The available range is from 0.01 Hz to 1.0 Hz.

Mod Depth

This parameter controls the amount of reverb time modulation. The available range is from 0 - 10 cents.

Output Meter

The vintage-style VU Meter represents the plug-in output level. It is active when the Power switch is on, and slowly returns to zero when Power is switched off.

Blend Controls

Predelay

The amount of time between the dry signal and the onset of the reverb is controlled with this knob. The range is 0.0 to 250 milliseconds.

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is in the 12 o'clock position, the value is 50 milliseconds.

Mix

The Mix control determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from Dry (0%, unprocessed) to Wet (100%, processed signal only).

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is in the 12 o'clock position, the value is 15%.

Note: *If Wet Solo is active, adjusting this knob will have no effect.*

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo button puts EMT 140 into 100% Wet mode. When Wet Solo is on, it is the equivalent of setting the Mix knob value to 100% wet (and the Mix value is ignored).

Wet Solo defaults to On, which is optimal when using EMT 140 in the "classic" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When EMT 140 is used on a channel insert, this control should be deactivated.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per EMT 140 plug-in instance) control.*

Power Switch

This toggle switch enables or disables EMT 140. You can use it to compare the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in which reduces (but not eliminates) the UAD DSP load (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). The red EMT power indicator glows brighter when the plug-in is enabled.

Note: *The EMT 140 distills 1800+ pounds of classic vintage reverb into a single plug-in. Exercise caution when lifting.*

EMT 250 Electronic Reverberator

Iconic lever-driven digital reverb & modulation effects unit

Still regarded as one of the best-sounding reverb units ever made, the EMT® 250 Classic Electronic Reverb plug-in for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces is a faithful emulation of the first digital reverb/modulation effects unit introduced in 1976.

The EMT 250 continues to leave an immeasurable mark on record-making history in the hands of studio legends like George Massenburg, Bruce Swedien, Daniel Lanois, Brian Eno, and Allen Sides.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with the only emulation of the EMT 250 reverb unit, fully endorsed by EMT Studiotechnik GmbH
- Dial in lush delay, phasing, chorus, and echo effects
- Add distinctive space and depth to drums, guitars, and vocals with the same algorithm found in the original hardware
- Harness plug-in-only features including Dry/Wet Mix, Wet Solo, and Hard bypass

Used on Countless Classics

The EMT 250's distinctive clear and open reverb sound has appeared on countless records, including Prince & The Revolution's Purple *Rain*, Elvis Costello's *Spike*, and modern classics like The Red Hot Chili Pepper's *Stadium Arcadium*.

Exclusively endorsed by EMT Studiotechnik

Designed in conjunction with EMT 250 designer Dr. Barry Blesser, the UAD plug-in version uses the same algorithms found in the original, extremely rare hardware. The EMT 250 plug-in was modeled from Allen Sides' "golden unit" EMT 250 that resides at the legendary United/Ocean Way Recording.

Added Versatility with New Features

The EMT 250 plug-in goes beyond the original hardware, adding modern, workflow enhancing features like Dry/Wet Mix, Wet Solo, and Hard bypass. With these useful additions, the EMT 250 plug-in is even more powerful than the iconic hardware.

EMT 250 Electronic Reverberator interface

Functional Overview

Program Modes

The EMT 250 offers six effect types: Reverb, Delay, Phase, Chorus, Echo, and Space. These effects are called “program modes” in the EMT 250. Only one mode can be active at a time.

Each program mode has up to five parameters that can be modified by the four main control “levers” plus the front/rear switch. The function of these controls varies per program mode (see below). Additionally, there are several global controls that have the same function in all modes.

Variable Control Functions

The function of control levers 1, 2, 3, and the Front/Rear switch depends upon which program mode is active. This is a primary consideration to remember when operating the EMT 250. The Program Mode Control Functions Table the varying functions of the control levers and the front/rear switch in each mode.

> ***Important:*** *The function of the “levers” and the front/rear switch changes depending on the program mode.*

Each unique parameter in the plug-in retains a distinct value, but only the parameters that are active in the current program mode are visible in the graphical user interface. All parameters are always visible in Controls View (see “Controls View” in the UAD System Manual), even when they are not active in the current program mode.

> ***Important:*** *The value of lever parameters that are not active in the current program mode are not saved in sessions or presets. The unsaved parameters are marked with an asterisk in the Program Mode Control Functions Table.*

When switching between program modes that have different parameters mapped to the same control, parameter values are retained within each mode (controls jump back to the prior value that was set in each respective mode).

Lever 4 Predelay

In all program modes, lever 4 controls the predelay (the initial delay before other processing occurs) of both channels (left and right). Predelay times of 0ms, 20ms, 40ms, and 60ms are available in 4 steps. The green LEDs on the right side of lever 4 display the current predelay value.

Mono/Stereo Operation

The EMT 250 hardware unit has one (mono) input. For accurate emulation when the plug-in is used in a stereo-in/stereo-out configuration, stereo signals at the plug-in input are summed to mono before processing; the dry signal is passed in stereo.

Four channels of processed audio, selectable with the Front/Rear Outputs switch, are generated from this mono input in all modes (with the exception of Echo, which has mono output only).

Front/Rear Outputs

The EMT 250 hardware unit has four discrete outputs. Two outputs were designed to be used as the main stereo left/right outputs, or the "front" left/right outs in quadraphonic applications. The other two outputs were used for the "rear" left/right signals in quad (or other creative applications). The UAD EMT 250 fully models the individual sonics of all four outputs.

The name of the "Front/Rear Outputs" switch is derived from the original hardware design. This control (which is unique to the plug-in) enables access to the processed quadraphonic signal in pairs, at either the front L/R or rear L/R outputs. When a different sound is available at the front and rear outputs, the yellow "LED ring" around the control is illuminated. For program modes that do not offer quadraphonic processing (e.g., Delay), the switch is re-purposed to sum the processed outputs to mono. In Echo mode, it functions as an input mute.

In some program modes, the yellow "LED ring" around the control is illuminated to indicate that changing the switch position will change the sound. For program modes that do not offer quadraphonic processing (e.g., Delay), the switch is re-purposed to sum the processed outputs to mono. In Echo mode, it functions as an input mute.

Automation

Some EMT 250 control functions change depending on the active mode (see Variable Control Functions). To accommodate this design, all EMT 250 parameters are exposed for automation and external control surfaces even if the parameter is not active in the current program mode.

> ***Important:*** *Parameters that are automated and/or externally controlled will have no effect if those parameters are not active in the current program mode.*

Modeled I/O

All input and output characteristics of the EMT 250 are fully emulated in the plug-in. This includes all of its idiosyncrasies, such as the A/D and D/A anti-aliasing filters (which are not linear-phase), system latency, input clipping, and limited frequency response. All these quirks embellish the unique sonic signature.

EMT 250 Latency

The EMT 250's anti-aliasing filters for its A/D and D/A conversion are not linear-phase filters; therefore the emulation does not have a latency that is the same at all frequencies. Thus, we cannot report to the delay compensation engines a delay that is correct for all frequencies. The value we report is good at low frequencies, but becomes off at high frequencies. For additional information, see Additional Latency.

Program Mode Controls

The details of each unique program mode are below, followed by descriptions of the global controls, which affect all program modes.

Control Functions

The table below displays the parameter that each control is mapped to for each of the EMT 250 program modes. See Variable Control Functions for details.

Program Mode Control Functions Table

Program Mode	Lever 1	Lever 2	Lever 3	Lever 4	Front/Rear
Reverb	Reverb Decay	LF Decay	HF Decay (damping)	Predelay	Output Pair
Delay	Coarse Delay Time	Fine Delay Time	Selects L/R channel for time adjustment*	Predelay	Stereo/Mono
Phase	Phase (curve)	(none)*	(none)*	Predelay	Output Pair
Chorus	(none)*	(none)*	Variation	Predelay	Stereo/Mono
Echo	Coarse Delay Time	Fine Delay Time	HF Decay (damping)	Predelay	Input Mute
Space	(none)*	(none)*	(none)*	Predelay	Output Pair
*Note: The parameter values of lever positions marked with an asterisk are not saved in sessions or presets.					

Program Mode

The Program Mode buttons define which of the available program modes is active. The six program modes are: Reverb (REV), Delay (DEL), Phase (PHAS), Chorus (CHOR), Echo, and Space (SPC).

Click a Mode button to activate that program mode; the button is illuminated for the currently active mode (only one mode can be active at a time). Each program mode and its associated parameters are described in detail below.

> ***Tip:*** *See the* Program Mode Control Functions Table *for a matrix of controls that are available in each program mode.*

Reverb

Reverb program mode offers the same all-time classic reverb algorithm that made the EMT 250 famous.

Decay Time (Lever 1)

Lever 1 controls the main reverb tail decay time. The red LEDs on the left side of lever 1 indicate the current decay time; the green LEDs on the right side of lever 1 are inactive.

The decay time range (at 1 kHz) is 0.4 seconds to 4.5 seconds, selectable via 16 steps.

LF Decay (Lever 2)

Lever 2 controls the low frequency decay time (at 300 Hz). The red LEDs on the left side of lever 2 display the current value; the green LEDs on the right side of lever 2 are inactive.

Four multipliers are available: x 0.5, x 1.0, x 1.5, and x 2.0. The multiplier refers to a factor of the main decay time (lever 1). Higher values (upper lever positions) generally result in more low frequency content in the reverb tail.

HF Decay (Lever 3)

Lever 3 controls the high frequency decay time. The red LEDs on the left side of lever 3 display the current value; the green LEDs on the right side of lever 3 are inactive.

Four multipliers (at 6 kHz) are available: x 0.25, x 0.33, x 0.5, and max. At the max position, the HF decay factor is x 1.0 at approximately three seconds. The multiplier refers to a factor of the main decay time (lever 1). Higher values (upper lever positions) generally result in more high frequency content in the reverb tail.

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 is used as a typical reverb predelay parameter. See Lever 4 Predelay for more information.

Front/Rear

In Reverb mode, the Front/Rear Outputs switch is illuminated. Changing the switch setting will yield a slightly different effect. See Front/Rear Outputs.

Delay

Delay program mode offers two independent delay processors, one each for the left and right output channels. Up to 375 ms delay time is available for each channel. Delay repeats (feedback) are not available in Delay mode; use Echo mode if delay feedback is desired.

> ***Note:*** *The maximum per-channel delay time of 375 ms in Delay mode is obtained by setting the coarse, fine, and predelay times to their respective maximum values.*

Coarse Delay Time (Lever 1)

Lever 1 controls the coarse delay time for the currently selected channel (left or right). The currently selected channel is defined by lever 3.

The coarse delay time range is 0 to 300 ms, selectable via 16 steps. The green LEDs on the right side of lever 1 display the current value; the red LEDs on the left side of lever 1 are inactive.

Fine Delay Time (Lever 2)

Lever 2 controls the fine delay time for the currently selected channel (left or right). The currently selected channel is defined by lever 3.

Fine delay times of 0ms, 5ms, 10ms, and 15ms are available. The green LEDs on the right side of lever 2 display the current value; the red LEDs on the left side of lever 2 are inactive.

> ***Note:*** *Levers 1 and 2 both control the delay time, but these parameters are not individually exposed for external control surfaces and automation. Instead, a single delay time parameter is exposed for each channel, and levers 1 and 2 in the plug-in interface are both updated to match the value.*

Channel Select (Lever 3)

> ***Important:*** *In Delay mode, lever 3 selects which channel (left or right) the delay time parameters (levers 1 and 2) will affect. When lever 3 is in position "L" the left channel delay time can be adjusted; when in position "R" the right channel delay time can be adjusted.*

The green LEDs on the right side of lever 3 display the channel selected for delay time adjustment; the red LEDs on the left side of lever 3 are inactive.

> ***Note:*** *Lever 3 position "I" is a duplicate of position "II - L" in Delay mode. Likewise, position "IV" is a duplicate of position "III - R." All positions can be used to select a channel for delay time adjustment.*

> ***Important:*** *In Delay mode, lever 3 does not control a "real" parameter; it is only used to select the active channel for other parameters in the graphical user interface. For this reason, the parameter is not exposed for external control surfaces or automation, nor is it saved in sessions or presets.*

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 can be used as a common predelay to both channels (the predelay time is added to the delay times of both channels). See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.

Front/Rear

In Delay mode, the Front/Rear Outputs switch is not illuminated (the sound is identical in both pairs of outputs). When moved to the Rear position, the plug-in output is summed to mono. See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.

Phase

Phase program mode creates a comb filter curve that results from the addition and subtraction of two signals with a small time shift between them. The comb filter changes the amplitude of the source signal's harmonic overtones, resulting in interesting tonal variations.

> ***Tip:*** *Phasing is most apparent when the plug-in is set to 100% wet (or when Wet Solo is active).*

In the EMT 250, the input is fed to two delay processors; one with a fixed delay time of 15 ms, and the other which is variable from 0-15 ms, controlled by lever 1. By changing this variable "time shift" the phase (shape) of the comb filter, and therefore the timbre of the output signal, is changed.

> ***Note:*** *Unlike many "phasors," the EMT 250 does not modulate the variable "time shift" with a low frequency oscillator (LFO), which results in the continuously varying "swooshing" effect that is often associated with the process name. This conventional phasor effect can be reproduced (with outstanding results) by moving lever 1 back and forth, either manually or with automation.*

Phase (Lever 1)

In Phase program mode, lever 1 controls the delay time (the phase time shift) between the two signals that create the comb filter. Phase values of 0 ms to 15 ms are available, selectable via 16 steps.

In Phase mode the green LEDs to the of right lever 1 are active, but the panel markings (0 - 300 ms) do not represent the actual phase delay time values. Instead, the LEDs indicate the relative value between 0-15 ms.

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 can be used as a common predelay to both phase delays. See Lever 4 Predelay for more information.

> ***Note:*** *Levers 2 and 3 have no effect in Phase program mode.*

Front/Rear

The Front/Rear Outputs switch is illuminated in Phase program mode. Changing the switch setting will yield a different comb filter phase. Due to the nature of the effect in Phase mode, when the switch is in the Rear position and the Phase time (lever 1) is at minimum and maximum values, the signal is only output on one side (right-only at minimum, left-only at maximum). This behavior is identical to the original hardware. See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.

For more information about phasing, see the "Flangers and Phasors" article in the December 2008 Webzine:

- www.uaudio.com/webzine/2008/december/doctors.html

Chorus

Chorus program mode creates an ensemble effect by simulating the impression of multiple imprecisions added to the original signal. In EMT 250, this is accomplished by routing the same signal to four delay processors, each having short delay times that are continuously and randomly modulated.

While it was necessary to combine the various physical outputs for variations of Chorus complexity, the EMT 250 plug-in is “pre-mixed” in four popular combinations.

Note: *Levers 1 and 2 have no effect in Chorus program mode.*

Chorus Mode (Lever 3)

Four subtle variations of the chorus effect are available (I, II, III, and IV). Lever 3 specifies the current variation.

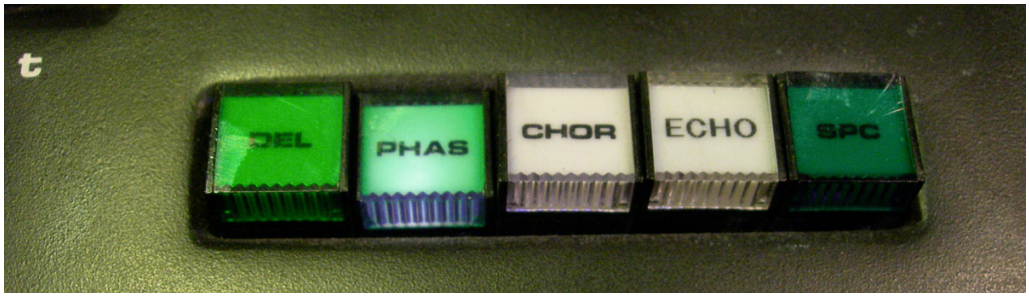
Positions I and II are of a simpler nature, while III and IV are more complex. Position I duplicates the Left Front and Right Front outputs of the hardware. II duplicates Left Rear and Right Rear outputs of the hardware. III combines both the Left Front and Left Rear on the left side, and Right Front and Right Rear on the right. IV combines Left Front, Left Rear and Right Rear on the left side, and Left Rear, Right Front and a phase inverted Right Rear on the right. IV imparts a pseudo-quadraphonic sound.

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 is can be used as a common predelay to all four delays. See Lever 4 Predelay for more information.

Front/Rear

In Chorus mode, the Front/Rear Outputs switch is not illuminated (the sound is identical in both pairs of outputs). When moved to the Rear position, the plug-in output is summed to mono. See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.



Echo

Echo program mode produces a single monophonic delay effect, with feedback and adjustable delay time. Up to 375 ms of delay is available.

The feedback (recirculation) circuit is always active in Echo mode. The feedback signal path is attenuated by approximately 10% per loop circulation, and includes an adjustable high frequency attenuator for damping.

> ***Note:*** *The maximum delay time of 375 ms in Echo mode is obtained by setting the coarse, fine, and predelay times to their respective maximum values.*

Coarse Echo Time (Lever 1)

Lever 1 controls the coarse delay time. The coarse delay time range is 0 to 300 ms, selectable via 16 steps.

The green LEDs on right side of lever 1 display the current value; the red LEDs on the left side of lever 1 are inactive.

Fine Echo Time (Lever 2)

Lever 2 controls the fine delay time. Fine delay times of 0 ms, 5 ms, 10 ms, and 15 ms are available. The green LEDs on right side of lever 2 display the current value; the red LEDs on the left side of lever 2 are inactive.

> ***Note:*** *Levers 1 and 2 both control the echo time, but these parameters are not individually exposed for external control surfaces and automation. Instead, a single echo time parameter is exposed, and levers 1 and 2 in the plug-in interface are both updated to match the value.*

HF Decay (Lever 3)

Lever 3 controls the high frequency damping in Echo mode. The red LEDs on left side of lever 3 display the current value; the green LEDs on the right side of lever 3 are inactive.

Four multipliers are available: x 0.25, x 0.33, x 0.5, and max. Higher values (upper lever positions) result in more feedback.

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 is used as a predelay to the echo processor in this mode. The predelay time is added to the echo times, but not to the HF decay feedback loop. See Lever 4 Predelay for more information.

Front/Rear

The Front/Rear Outputs switch is not illuminated in Echo mode (the same monophonic signal is generated at the front and rear outputs). However, the Front/Rear Outputs switch has a special function in Echo mode.

In the Front position, the program behaves normally. In the Rear position, the input to the echo processor is muted, while still allowing the echo output to be passed. This feature is useful for adding echo to specific passages only, by flipping the switch to Front when echo is desired. The behavior is identical to the popular “dub” switch on the Roland RE-201. See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.

Space

Space mode is a special reverb program with an extremely long decay time and linear distribution of the reverberation time with frequency (all frequencies decay at the same rate). Because this condition doesn't exist in nature, and the program was originally intended for science fiction productions, the "reverberation in outer space" moniker was derived.

The reverb decay time is approximately 10 seconds in Space mode. Predelay and Front/Rear are the only adjustable parameters in this program mode.

> ***Note:*** *Levers 1, 2, and 3 have no effect in Space mode.*

Predelay (Lever 4)

Lever 4 is used as a typical reverb predelay parameter. See Lever 4 Predelay for more information.

Front/Rear

In Space mode, the Front/Rear Outputs switch is illuminated. Changing the switch setting will yield a slightly different effect. See Front/Rear Outputs for more information.

Global Controls

The global controls are not program-specific; they apply to all program modes.

Power

The Power button (the red EMT logo) determines whether the plug-in is active. It is useful for comparing the processed signal to the original signal. Click the button to disable the plug-in; click it again to enable it.

When Power is in the Off (unlit) position, plug-in processing is disabled, and UAD DSP usage is reduced.

> ***Note:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), disabling Power will not reduce DSP usage.*

Input Meter

The Input Meter indicates the level going into the plug-in. On the original hardware, the red "Register" LED illuminates when digital full code is reached, at 6 dB above 0 dB (i.e., there is 6 dB of headroom on the hardware, as the meaning of "0 dB digital" wasn't yet standardized in those days).

The distortion characteristics of the A/D converters are modeled, therefore "EMT 250-style" clipping can be heard when the EMT 250 input is overdriven.

Dry/Wet

The Dry/Wet slider control determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry, unprocessed) to 100% (wet, processed signal only).

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the slider is in the center position, the value is 15%.

Note: *If Wet Solo is active, adjusting Dry/Wet will have no effect.*

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo button puts the EMT 250 into "100% Wet" mode. When Wet Solo is on, it is the equivalent of setting the Dry/Wet control to 100% wet.

Wet Solo defaults to On, which is optimal when using the EMT 250 in the "classic" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When the EMT 250 is used on a channel insert, this control should be deactivated.

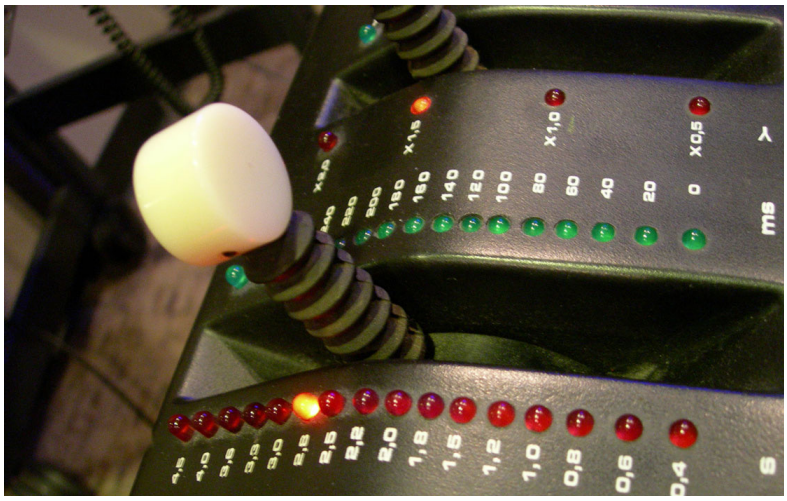
Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per EMT 250 plug-in instance) control.*

Noise

When Noise is active, the noise characteristics of the original hardware unit are fully intact. Disabling Noise eliminates the modeled noise characteristics for quieter operation.

Noise is active when the yellow LED is illuminated; it is enabled by default. Click the LED to change the setting.

The Noise parameter is unique to the UAD EMT 250 plug-in. Noise is dynamic to the response of the effect processing, and the noise level differs from program to program. The noise floor of the hardware EMT 250 may seem a bit high when compared to modern digital processors, but it adds to the EMT 250's quirky character.



EP-34 Classic Tape Echo

Warm, Highly Adjustable, Tape Echo Emulation Inspired By Two Classic Echoplex* Units.

Universal Audio's EP-34 Tape Echo plug-in gives guitar players and mix engineers the rich, warm tape delay effects of vintage Echoplex units on the UAD Powered Plug-Ins platform for Mac and PC. One need only listen to classic recordings from Jimmy Page, Brian May, Chick Corea, Eddie Van Halen, Eric Johnson and Andy Summers to hear the Echoplex sound in action. Unlike other Echoplex emulations, the EP-34 is the first plug-in that targets specific behaviors of both the EP-3 and EP-4 Echoplexes.

The original Echoplex hardware boxes employed an infinite tape loop combined with a sliding record head, allowing the user to set the desired delay length. Of course, as an analog tape-based unit, there were many idiosyncrasies along the way — including distortion, wow and flutter, self-oscillation, squelch effects, and other vintage magic. The EP-34 plug-in emulates all of these attributes, with a record head slider that can be moved in real time and used in conjunction with an Echo Repeats control to create echo and pitch chaos. The distinct, musical input clipping of the original hardware is also captured via a Record Volume control, giving the EP-34 some subtle to not-so-subtle tonal coloring and distortion as desired. Recreating the infinite delay times afforded by a sliding record head — as well as capturing the desirable distortion of the hardware's preamp circuit — were difficult and DSP-intensive tasks, but the experts at UA sweated every last detail, ensuring that the EP-34 plug-in is verifiably the most accurate model for those who want the distinct, chaotic Echoplex sound, "warts and all."

Just like the original hardware, faster-than-tape-path speeds can be achieved with the EP-34 plug-in, leading to "sonic-boom/tape squeal" effects, self-chorusing due to speed variations, plus pinch roller wow and flutter. The Echo Volume control allows the blending of processed and unprocessed signal; however as with the original, even the dry signal is tonally affected by the plug-in. Finally, the original Echoplex's self-oscillation capabilities are present as well, including the "squelch" effect (an interruption in self-oscillation) achieved at extreme settings when processing low-frequency material.

The EP-34 includes the same metering and highly musical tone controls found on the EP-4, but removes its undesirable in-line noise reduction circuit that guitarists often disabled (original manufacturer Maestro removed this circuit soon after the product's release). A few EP-34 "extras" not found on the original hardware include modern conveniences like Tempo Sync, Input Select (allows for a cleaner sound [LO] or a dirtier sound [HI]), Tension (for a snappy or sludgy response time), Echo Send, Wet Solo, Pan (wet signal only) and Power (plug-in bypass).

Taken together, these features make the EP-34 more than just a tape delay plug-in, but a warm and inspiring instrument that can be played by manipulating the controls as you go.

*EP-34 Tape Echo is not affiliated with, sponsored nor endorsed by any companies currently using the Echoplex name. The EP-34 Tape Echo name, as well as the EP-3 and EP-4 model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

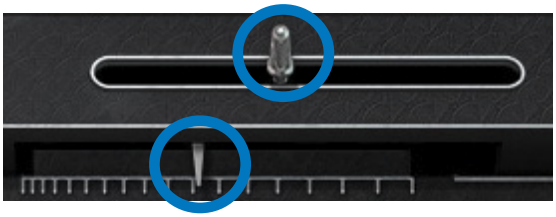
EP-34 Controls

EP-34 Tape Echo interface

Echo Delay

Echo Delay controls the delay time of the unit. The selected value is shown in the Echo Display.

The parameter can be adjusted by using the metallic “slider handle” or the “slider nose” (both sliders control the same parameter).



The Echo Delay sliders

The available delay range is 80 to 700 milliseconds. When Sync is active, beat values from 1/64 to 1/2 can be selected.

When the beat value is out of range, the value is displayed in parenthesis. This occurs in Sync mode when the time of the note value exceeds 700 ms (as defined by the current tempo of the host application). See the Tempo Sync chapter in the UAD System Manual for more information about tempo synchronization.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the control slider(s) then use the computer keyboard arrow keys to increment/decrement the sync value.*

Echo Display

This panel displays the current delay time of the EP-34. Displayed values are defined by the Echo Delay parameter. Delay values can be entered here directly using the text entry method.

When Sync mode is off, delay times are expressed in milliseconds. When Sync is on, delay times are expressed as a fractional bar value.

When the beat value is out of range, the value is displayed in parentheses. This occurs in Sync mode when the time of the note value exceeds 700 ms (as defined by the current tempo of the host application).

Echo Repeats

This knob controls the repeat level (feedback) of the echo signal. At the minimum (fully counter-clockwise) position, only one repeat is heard. Rotating the control clockwise increases the number of echoes. Higher values will cause self-oscillation.

The self-oscillation of the EP-34 is one of the magic features that really makes it more than a mixing tool, it's also an instrument to be played. The effect may be used subtly, sending the unit into gentle oscillation on held notes, or can be put into "over the top" oscillation with extreme settings.

The EP-34's oscillation qualities are heavily dependent upon program material and control settings. Different sources of audio, gain, tone, repeat rate and input settings will all effect "oscillation performance." The EP-34 can also achieve oscillation with no signal, making the it a truly unique instrument.

Echo Volume

This knob determines the wet/dry mix of the delayed signal. In the minimum position, the "dry" signal is colored by the circuitry of the modeled emulation. Rotate the control clockwise for louder echo. Reducing the control to its minimum value will mute the delay.

The EP-34 models the unusual taper of this control that is found on the original hardware. It is normal operation to have the control in the 85-95% range to get a "50/50" wet/dry balance.

Note: *When the Wet switch is in the On position, Echo Volume has no effect.*

Recording Volume

Recording Volume adjusts the input gain and clipping characteristics of the delayed tape signal. Increasing this control will increase the tape distortion and "grit" that is an important element of the famous hardware sound. The Recording Volume is indicated by the Input Meter.

Input Meter

The Input Meter in the EP-34 is a three-segment horizontal LED array (two green, one red) that indicates the recording level at the input of the tape recorder.

The yellow LED indicates that the plug-in is active. When the Power switch is enabled, the yellow LED is illuminated.

Echo Tone

The frequency response of the delayed (wet) signal can be modified with the Echo Tone controls. These knobs are cut/boost controls; they have no effect when in the 12 o'clock position. The available range is ±10 dB of gain.

> ***Note:*** *The Echo Tone controls do not effect the dry signal.*

Treble

Controls the high frequency response in the delayed signals.

Bass

Controls the low frequency response in the delayed signals.

Echo Pan

Pan sets the position of the delayed (wet) signal in the stereo field; it does not affect the unprocessed (dry) signal.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "Echo" control text to return the knob to center.*

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the Pan knob does not function and cannot be adjusted.*

Input

The original hardware unit had two inputs: Instrument and Microphone. The Input switch on the EP-34 toggles between the gain levels of these two inputs.

The "LO" position captures the gain structure of the Instrument input, while the "HI" position captures the gain structure of the Microphone input. This allows for a cleaner (LO) or dirtier (HI) sound depending on the switch position.

> ***Important:*** *Depending on the source material and gain structuring, switching between LO and HI may cause a significant jump in output levels.*

Tension

The original hardware provides a tension adjustment screw on the bottom of the Echo Delay slider. Adjusting this tension screw varies the pitch shifting effects (technically, the slew rate) that are obtained when the Echo Delay parameter is manipulated in realtime.

The Tension switch emulates two different tension adjustments of this adjustment screw.

LO

The LO position emulates a loose tension adjustment. With this setting, realtime adjustments to the Echo Delay parameter have a faster slew rate, resulting in "snappier" pitch shifting effects.

HI

The HI position emulates a tight tension adjustment. With this setting, realtime adjustments to the Echo Delay parameter have a slower slew rate, resulting in "sluggish" pitch shifting effects.

Send

The Send switch disables the signal sent into the echo portion of the unit when set to OFF. This control is sometimes affectionately referred to as the "dub switch."

Sync

This switch engages Sync mode for the plug-in. In Sync mode, delay times are synchronized to (and therefore dependent upon) the master tempo of the host application. When Sync is toggled, parameter units are converted between milliseconds and beats to the closest matching value.

See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.

Wet

The Wet switch puts the EP-34 into 100% Wet mode. When Wet is on, it mutes the dry unprocessed signal.

Wet is optimal when the plug-in is used on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends. When the plug-in is used on a channel insert, this control should be deactivated.

> ***Note:*** *Wet is a global (per plug-in instance) control. Its value is saved within the host project/session file, but not within individual preset files.*
>
> ***Important:*** *Depending on the source material and gain structuring, engaging Wet may cause a significant jump in output levels.*

Power

Power determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Note: *The yellow LED in the Input Meter is illuminated when the plug-in is active.*

EP-34 Hardware History

Originally designed by Mike Battle in the late 50's as a portable echo device as an answer to the problem of tying up studio tape machines often employed for echo effects. Legendary artists such as Jimmy Page, Miles Davis, Brian May, Andy Summers, Eddie Van Halen among many others have used the hardware to add simple slap echo effects all the way to self-oscillation chaos to their sonic creations.

The EP-3 is the favored unit by guitarists, and EP-4 is the last unit that was released and has an improved feature set over its predecessors such as metering and tone controls making it even more useful as a mix tool. Some didn't like the EP-4 because of a noise reduction circuit that was added that was not implemented correctly. Unfortunately in a production mistake, the circuit was placed in across both the direct signal and the tape playback causing the dry source signal sustain to be cut off prematurely. Most modded their units to remove the noise compressor, and Maestro quickly removed the compressor design from the design.

The Echoplex EP-3 hardware unit

*EP-34 Tape Echo is not affiliated with, sponsored nor endorsed by any companies currently using the Echoplex name. The EP-34 Tape Echo name, as well as the EP-3 and EP-4 model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection

The Gold Standard in Vintage Tube Limiters

The Fairchild 670 and 660 are the most coveted vintage compressor/limiters in the world, with good reason. These 20-tube tone titans — which now fetch upwards of $50,000 — impart an unmistakable silky warmth heard on hundreds of hit records from the Beatles and Pink Floyd, to Miles Davis and countless Motown classics. Now your vocal tracks, drum bus, and entire mix can benefit from the world's most accurate plug-in recreations of these one-of-a-kind compressors.

Now You Can:

- Give your tracks and mixes classic Fairchild tube warmth and character
- Harness the Fairchild's tube-driven gain control, compression curves, and tube amp and transformer sections
- Duplicate the famed Ocean Way Studios' compression sound with circuit-modeled recreations of their golden reference units
- Complete your "Big Three" compressor arsenal, alongside the LA-2A and 1176 plug-ins

The World's Most Coveted Compressor

The very first Fairchild limiter that audio genius Rein Narma created on Les Paul's kitchen table transformed the sound of recording forever. Soon, these 20-tube, 14-transformer, 67-pound behemoths were embraced by world-class studios, many of which still employ their vintage Fairchilds despite the increasing difficulty in maintaining these tube-driven tone machines.

For a half-century, the Fairchild 670 — and its aggressive little brother, the Fairchild 660 — have defined popular music's most revered vocal and drum sounds. In fact, the world's elite mixers often employ a 670 simply for the "glow" it brings to their final mixes, even without compression happening.

The Closest You Can Get to Vintage Fairchilds in a Plug-In

In 2004, Universal Audio released the Fairchild 670 Legacy plug-in, which was quickly heralded as the best 670 emulation available. Today, UA's team of DSP experts have improved the original Time Constants and gain reduction curves, while modeling — for the first time ever — the complete tube-powered amplifier and transformer sections of their hardware counterparts. Far beyond other Fairchild emulations, only the new UAD Fairchild Collection is based on an accurate circuit models of Ocean Way Studios' "golden-reference" units.

New Features — Classic Tones

Although the Fairchild Tube Limiter Plug-In Collection nails the classic sonics of yesteryear, it also sports useful new features for modern workflows.

Blend Sounds with the Wet/Dry Mix Control

A Parallel Mix control lets you blend your unprocessed signal with the compressed signal, opening worlds of textural possibilities on everything from a drum bus to a mix bus.

Enhance Drums with Sidechain Filters

By using the Fairchild's Sidechain Filtering, you gain another level of control over your tracks. In this example, it's used to punch up the drum bus to enhance its impact without triggering the threshold of the compressor with the kick drum.

Add Grit with the Headroom Control

The Headroom (HR) control can be increased to make mastering applications a breeze, raising the gain reduction threshold and lowering distortion. Conversely, you can decrease headroom, lowering the gain reduction threshold and raising distortion for grittier textures that work on everything from vocals and drums to guitar and bass.

The Ultimate Companion to the LA-2A and 1176 Plug-In Collections

Combined with the Electro-Optical (LA-2A) and FET-based (1176) compressor plug-ins, the Fairchild's unique tube-driven sound completes the compression "Triple Crown." Renowned for its aggressive power on piano, bass, and guitar, the 660 is a stereo/mono version of the original mono compressor, while the flagship 670 is a full stereo compressor that can inject vibe and color into tracks or add the final touch to mixes.

Historical Background

The origins of the Fairchild 660/670 design come from Estonian-born immigrant Rein Narma. Les Paul hired Narma to modify his first 8-track Ampex machine. Later, Narma built consoles for Olmsted Recording, Rudy Van Gelder, and Les Paul, who then asked him to build an all-new, sonically reliable audio limiter. In the post-war years, this refugee from Soviet Russia worked for the U.S. Army as a broadcast/recording tech during the Nuremberg trials, then later immigrated to the New York and took a job at Gotham Recording. Narma and others founded Gotham Audio Developments to build recording gear.

The compressor's Fairchild connection begins with Sherman Fairchild, the son of Congressman George Winthrop Fairchild, one of the founders of IBM. Sherman Fairchild built and designed the first aerial photography equipment during World War I. After that war ended, he started the Fairchild Aerial Camera Corporation in 1920. Sherman Fairchild eventually went on to design a multitude of products, from aircraft to semiconductors, and opened several more companies, including Fairchild Recording Equipment Corporation. After Narma began the limiter project for Les Paul, Sherman Fairchild heard about it, licensed the design, and hired Narma as the company's chief engineer. Afterhis time at Fairchild, Narma moved to Northern California and was a vice-president at Ampex. The Fairchild was advertised as "The World Accepted Standard for Level Control" back in the 1950s when it was originally sold. It is still revered for its extremely smooth, artifact-free sound.

Fairchild 660 interface

Fairchild 670 interface

Fairchild 670 Legacy interface

Fairchild Plug-In Family

The complete Fairchild family is comprised of three individual plug-ins, as seen in the screenshots above and described below. Each variation has its own unique sonic characteristics.

Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection

The Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection includes three UAD plug-ins: Fairchild 660, Fairchild 670, and Fairchild 670 Legacy.

Fairchild 660

The original Fairchild 660 hardware is a single-channel (monophonic) processor. The UAD Fairchild 660 plug-in was faithfully modeled from the original 660 hardware, independently from the Fairchild 670 plug-in modeling.

The Fairchild 660 may be handy with mono sources, or when less control is required via its simpler interface. The Fairchild 660 controls are identical to one channel of the Fairchild 670.

Fairchild 670

The Fairchild 670 is the two-channel (stereo) workhorse revered by engineers and producers worldwide.

Second-Generation Algorithms

The newer state-of-the-art algorithms in the Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection take full advantage of the extra processing power available on UAD-2 devices, along with the design sophistication and expertise gained since the original Fairchild Legacy plug-in was developed.

Sonic Differences

Like the differences between the original Fairchild 660 and 670 hardware units, the UAD models in the Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection offer variations in threshold behaviors, total gain, input attenuation range, distortion amount, distortion structure, program dependence, time constant subtleties and more. These differences provides an expanded palette within the Fairchild sound.

Fairchild 670 Legacy

The original version of the Fairchild 670 was released in January of 2004 for the UAD-1 platform. To accommodate the limited DSP resources of the first-generation UAD-1 hardware, the transformer and I/O distortion characteristics were not modeled in this version of the plug-in.

The Fairchild 670 Legacy has a great sound and is very usable, especially in situations where less distortion is desirable, or when there are not enough DSP resources to use the second-generation models in the newer Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection. It also has slightly less overall latency since it is not an upsampled plug-in.

> ***Note:*** *See the Additional Latency chapter for related information.*

The Fairchild 670 Legacy can be distinguished from the two newer Fairchild plug-ins by the word LEGACY in the plug-in title and within the interface.

> ***Note:*** *The Fairchild 670 Legacy is included with the purchase of the Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection if it is not already owned.*

Mono/Stereo Operation

Although the Fairchild 660 original hardware is a single-channel processor and the Fairchild 670 original hardware is a dual-channel processor, all UAD Fairchild plug-ins can each be used on either mono or stereo sources.

Artist Presets

The Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection includes artist presets from prominent Fairchild users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu.

The artist presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. These presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see the "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" chapter in the UAD System Manual).

The Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection includes additional artist presets that are not available in the internal factory bank. These additional presets can also be accessed using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

> ***Note:*** *Presets created with the original Fairchild Legacy plug-in are incompatible with the newer Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection plug-ins.*

Fairchild 670 Operational Overview

Unique Controls

Controls in the UAD Fairchild plug-ins are original Fairchild hardware controls with the following exceptions:

- The VU meter and the Meter Switch are re-purposed, enabling the ability to monitor input and output levels (the original hardware does not have this ability). In the hardware, the function of the meter switch is to enable calibrating the bias currents; this function is achieved automatically in the plug-in when the Balance control is in the default position.
- The Headroom (HR) control replaces the VU meter's Zero control, which originally corrected for component wear offsets in the VU meter pin.
- The Sidechain Link control is a common modification which had been performed on the unit we modeled.
- Output Level, Controls Link, Sidechain Filter, Mix, and Headroom controls are digital-only additions for the UAD plug-ins.
- The D.C. Threshold controls are original controls, however on the Fairchild 660 they were located on the rear panel.

Note: *Not all controls are available in the Fairchild 670 Legacy plug-in.*

Lateral/Vertical

One of the design goals of the Fairchild 670 hardware was to facilitate its use as a limiter when producing vinyl phonograph masters. The terms lateral (side-to-side) and vertical (up-and-down) refer to the mechanical modulations in a vinyl record groove that are transduced into electrical audio signals by the phonograph stylus and cartridge.

The Fairchild 670 can perform dynamics processing on the lateral (LAT) and vertical (VERT) components of stereo signals independently. In other words, the monophonic (middle) and/or stereo (side) components of a stereo source signal can be compressed or limited separately from the other component.

Lat/Vert processing facilitates maximum usable levels and efficient use of available groove space in phonograph mastering, resulting in higher volume recordings with longer playing times. Of course, the feature can also be used for creative effects outside of the phonograph environment.

Note: *Lat/Vert processing is an operating mode of Fairchild 670. For additional details on the modes and how to access them, see Fairchild 670 Modes.*

Lat/Vert processing is accomplished by first routing the stereo source signal through a sum/difference (mid/side) matrix which separates the stereo source into lateral (middle, or center without stereo) and vertical (side, or stereo without mono) signal components. The lateral/vertical components are then compressed or limited independently. Finally, the mid/side components are recombined into a normal stereo signal via a second sum/difference matrix.

In the Fairchild 670, the left+right (sum) middle signals are routed to the Lat channel, and the left-right (difference) side signals are routed to the Vert channel. The two channels can work independently of each other, or the sidechain control signals can be optionally linked.

Tip: *Controls related to Lat/Vert processing contain red Lat/Vert text labels.*

Operating Levels

The Headroom (HR) control enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the Fairchild 670 and Fairchild 660. This feature enables more sonic range and the ability to fine-tune the non-linear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics to be tailored independently of signal input levels.

By increasing the Headroom (by rotating the HR control counter-clockwise), signals at the input can be pushed higher before they compress. For complete details about this feature, see Headroom.

Fairchild 670 Modes

2 Compressors, 4 Modes

There are two independent compressors within the Fairchild 670. Depending on the state of the AGC Switch and the Sidechain Link switch, four operating modes are possible. The modes are detailed in this section.

Operating Modes

The switch positions required for each operating mode is shown in the table below. See Lateral/Vertical for an overview of these terms.

AGC Switch Setting	Sidechain Link Setting	Operating Mode
Left Right	Unlinked	Dual Mono
Lat Vert	Unlinked	Dual Lateral/Vertical
Left Right	Linked	Stereo Left/Right
Lat Vert	Linked	Stereo Lateral/Vertical

Dual Mono

In dual mono mode, the Fairchild 670 operates as two separate monophonic compressors with independent control of the left and right channel signals. There is no interaction between the two compressors.

Dual Lat/Vert

In dual lateral/vertical mode the Fairchild 670 operates as two monophonic compressors with independent control of the middle and side components of the two input signals. The input signals are processed by the sum/difference (mid/side) matrix before and after the compressors, but there is no interaction between the two compressors.

Stereo Left/Right

In this mode, the Fairchild 670 operates as a typical stereo dynamics processor. The left input is fed to the one compressor, and the right input is fed to the other. The dynamics control signal sidechain of the two compressors are linked so that they both compress the same amount at any instant, preventing transients which appear on only one channel from shifting the stereo imaging of the output.

Any transient above the threshold (on either channel) will cause both channels to compress, and the amount of compression will be similar to the amount of compression for a transient which appears on both channels at the same time.

Additionally, the attack and release times for the two compressors will be the same, and attack and release behavior will be the average of the settings for the two channels. Mono transients will have an effective attack time of about one half the attack time for transients on only one of the two channels.

Stereo Lat/Vert

Stereo lateral/vertical (mid/side) mode, like stereo left/right mode, causes the two compressors to be linked together so that they always compress the same amount. In this mode however, the inputs to the two compressors are fed with the middle and side components of the signal respectively. This generally means that a transient which occurs in both channels will cause a bit more compression than a transient which only appears on left or right. The attack and release behavior is determined by the average of the settings for the two channels.

Fairchild Controls

The control functions are essentially identical across all three UAD plug-ins in the Fairchild family, so they are described only once. Any control differences between the three plug-ins are noted in the control descriptions.

Stereo Controls

Controls that are identical for the left and right channels (Fairchild 670 and Fairchild 670 Legacy only) are only described once.

Power Switch

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. When the Power switch is in the Off position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Power Lamp

The lamp beneath the Power switch is illuminated when the plug-in is active.

Tip: *Click the Power Lamp to toggle the enable/disable state of the plug-in.*

VU Meters

There are two VU meters, one for each channel. The VU meters can display input levels, output levels, or gain reduction levels, as determined by the Meter Switch.

Meter Switch

This switch determines what is displayed on the VU meters. Input, output, or gain reduction ("GR") levels can be selected.

The default position is GR. If GR is selected, the meter will show gain reduction in dB for the corresponding compressor channel.

If the AGC Switch is set to left/right, the GR shown will be for the left or right channel. If the AGC switch is set to Lat/Vert, the GR shown will be for the middle (upper meter) or side (lower meter) channel. In GR mode, the upper labels show gain reduction in dB.

If the meter select switch is set to IN or OUT, then that meter will reflect the relative level of the right or left input or output signal (the I/O meters are not calibrated).

Channel Input Gain

This is a stepped attenuation control which always applies to the left or right input, regardless of the AGC control setting. The steps are approximately 1 dB apart.

Fairchild 670

The available range is -20 to 0 dB with a default value of -4 dB (unity gain).

Fairchild 660

The available range is -Infinity (off) to 0 dB with a default value of -14 dB (unity gain).

> ***Note:*** *Like the 660 hardware, there is some signal leakage even when Input Gain is set to -Inf.*

Fairchild 670 Legacy

The available range is -20 to 0 dB with a default value of -18 dB (unity gain).

Threshold

This continuously variable control determines the amount of compression to be applied to the channel. Rotate clockwise for more compression (increasing the control lowers the threshold).

In the Fairchild 670, the default value is 1.5. In the Fairchild 660, the default value is 5. In the Fairchild 670 Legacy, the default value is 3.

Input Gain versus Threshold

The amount of signal compression is determined by both the Input Gain and Threshold controls. If one is increased and the other decreased, the compression characteristics won't change much, but the distortion characteristics will.

The input control is located ahead of the tubes, directly "behind" the input transformer. Therefore as the input control is increased, the input tube (the gain-varying stage) is hit with more signal which can increase distortion (which may or may not be desirable).

> ***Tip:*** *For less distortion with the same amount of compression, lower the input gain and increase the threshold control.*

Time Constant

This 6-position switch provides fixed and variable time constants (attack and release times) to accommodate various types of program material. Positions 1-4 provide successively slower behavior, and 5 and 6 provide program dependent response.

The values published by Fairchild for each position are in Fairchild Time Constants below. The actual measured times are a bit different, but the overall trend is the same. The default value is Position 5.

> ***Tip:*** *When Sidechain Link is enabled and Controls Link is disabled, the Time Constant settings of the two channels are interactive, which enables the ability to have many other attack/release variations than those listed in the table.*

Fairchild Time Constants

Time Constant	Attack Time	Release Time
Position 1	200 microseconds	300 milliseconds
Position 2	200 microseconds	800 milliseconds
Position 3	400 microseconds	2 seconds
Position 4	800 microseconds	5 seconds
Position 5	200 microseconds	Program dependent: • 2 seconds for transients • 10 seconds for multiple peaks
Position 6	400 microseconds	Program dependent: • 300 milliseconds for transients • 10 seconds for multiple peaks • 25 seconds for consistently high program level

AGC Switch

This switch determines whether the two compression channels will receive left/right or lateral/vertical (mid/side) signals as the inputs.

In conjunction with the Sidechain Link switch, this control determines the operating mode of the Fairchild 670. See Fairchild 670 Modes for detailed mode descriptions.

> ***Note:*** *This control is unavailable on the Fairchild 660.*

Left/Right

If Left/Right is selected and Sidechain Link is off, the compressor is in dual mono mode. If Sidechain Link is on, the mode is stereo left/right.

Lat/Vert

If Lat/Vert (mid/side) is selected and Sidechain Link is off, the compressor is in dual lateral/vertical mode. If Sidechain Link is on, the mode is stereo lateral/vertical.

Sidechain Link

When this control is set to Link, it causes the two channels of the compressor to compress in equal amounts. This does not mean that the compressor will be equally sensitive to either channel however; that depends on the settings of the other controls.

> ***Note:*** *This control is unavailable on the Fairchild 660.*

Linking the sidechains simply means that the instantaneous amount of compression for the two channels will always be the same, thereby preventing left-right image shifting at the output. Threshold and input gains can be set independently to cause the compressor to be more sensitive to instruments which are panned to one side or the other. Output controls can be set separately in order to correct an overall image shift at the output.

> ***Tip:*** *In conjunction with the AGC Switch, the Sidechain Link switch determines the operating mode of the Fairchild 670 and Fairchild 670 Legacy.*

Controls Link

This switch allows the two sets of controls for the interface to be stereo linked. The control is unavailable on the Fairchild 660.

> ***Important:*** *When unlink is switched to link, the left channel values are copied to the right channel, and any control offsets between channels are lost.*

Headroom

The Fairchild hardware units can accept an analog signal level of approximately +27 dBm before undesirable signal clipping occurs. As the signal increases up to this point however, desirable audio-path nonlinearities and "good" harmonic distortion characteristics occur. This musically pleasing "warmth" at higher levels is what gives the unit much of its revered sonic character. Because analog mixing consoles can typically output high signal levels, audio engineers often take advantage of the ability to "push" the hardware unit into the colorful arena.

This complete pallet of sonic nuance, including the dynamic input response, is captured in the Fairchild Tube Limiter Collection models (but not the Fairchild 670 Legacy). The 660 and 670 plug-ins are calibrated internally so that when the Headroom control is at its nominal value of 16 dB, 0 dBFS at their input is equivalent to an input level of approximately +20 dBu on the hardware, where the coloring is more prominent. The result is that a typical signal within a DAW will drive the UAD Fairchild 660/670 into these "virtual" higher levels, resulting in fairly high amounts gain reduction.

Headroom Control

The Headroom (HR) control is provided to accommodate applications where high amounts of gain reduction are not desired. Headroom simply changes the internal operating level so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much.

> ***Note:*** *There is only one headroom parameter. Although the HR control appears twice in the Fairchild 670 window, they are permanently linked.*

Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw dot is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is increased as the dB value decreases.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the HR text label to return the control to the default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals will push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion color) more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less gain reduction and less color is desired.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

Keep in mind there are no hard and fast headroom rules. Feel free to experiment with the various positions of the HR control regardless of the audio source. If it sounds good, use it!

> ***Note:*** *The HR control is not available with Fairchild 670 Legacy. On the hardware unit, the Zero screw (as displayed in the Fairchild 670 Legacy) adjusted the meter pointer to compensate voltage fluctuation and component wear.*

Balance

Balance (BAL) controls the bias current balance. It always controls one channel of the compressor, regardless of what the nearby Meter Switch is set to. The point of perfectly calibrated bias currents is achieved when the screw slot is at the 12 o'clock position (the default value).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the BAL text label to return the control to the default position.*

At the default setting, the amount of additive signal deflection ("thud") which happens due to an attack is minimized. Setting this control counter-clockwise from this position results in a thud of one polarity on transients, and going clockwise produces a thud of opposite polarity.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid the DC settling artifacts that can result when adjusting Balance, automating this control is not recommended.*

Sidechain Filter

The Sidechain Filters (one each for the Left/Lat and Right/Vert channels) control the cutoff frequency of a low-cut filter on the compressor's control signal sidechain. They have a slope of 12 dB per octave. The available range is 20 Hz to 500 Hz, and Off. The default value is Off.

Tip: *Click the OFF label to disable the sidechain filter.*

Removing low-frequency content from the sidechain can reduce excessive gain reduction and/or "pumping" on bass-heavy audio signals without reducing bass content of the audio signal itself.

Note: *Sidechain Filters are not available with Fairchild 670 Legacy.*

Auditioning the Sidechain Filter

To quickly switch back and forth between OFF and the last set value, click the OFF label. This feature is handy for comparing the filtered and unfiltered sidechains.

Note: *The Sidechain Filter affects the control signal of the compressor only. It does not filter the audio signal.*

DC Threshold

DC Threshold controls the ratio of compression as well as the knee width. As the knob is turned clockwise, the ratio gets lower and the knee gets broader. The threshold also gets lower as the knob is turned clockwise.

It's more technically accurate to say that this control simply changes the knee width, since no matter where it's set, the ratio always approaches true limiting eventually. However, the knee becomes so broad that it becomes more practical to speak of the ratio changing, because for reasonable amounts of compression (less than 25 dB), this is the case.

CAL

To calibrate the plug-in to factory specifications (the default value), align the white CAL mark with the black dot on the adjustment screw.

Tip: *Click the CAL text label to return the control to the factory calibrated position.*

OWR

To calibrate the plug-in to the setting used by Ocean Way Recording (the source unit for the plug-in modeling), align the white OWR mark with the black dot on the adjustment screw.

Tip: *Click the OWR text label to return the control to the Ocean Way Recording position.*

Output Gain

These controls provide clean, uncolored gain to the output signals. The available range is ±20 dB. The default value is 0 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OUTPUT text label to return the control to the default position.*

Fairchild 670 Legacy

In the Fairchild 670 Legacy, Output Gain is a stepped control, with each step being separated by 0.5 dB, and an available range of -18 dB to +6 dB.

Mix

The output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the Mix control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

> ***Note:*** *This control is not available with Fairchild 670 Legacy.*

When set to 0%, only the unprocessed (dry) source signal is output. When set to 100% (the default value), only the processed (wet) signal is output. When set to 50%, an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable throughout the control range.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the MIX text label to set the control to the 50% position. Click the 0 text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the 100% text label to set the control to the maximum position.*

Fender ‘55 Tweed Deluxe

The only stem-to-stern emulation of Leo Fender’s most iconic amplifier

Vintage Fender tweed Deluxe amplifiers are the Holy Grail of tone for good reason. Their low-volume clean sounds are pristine and complex. And as you inch the volume upward, you’re greeted with sweet, blooming overdrive, before arriving at full-on distorted, utterly viscous tube saturation. It’s no wonder blues and country icons of the ’50s and ’60s — as well as a who’s-who of modern legends — have relied on this dynamic, versatile, landmark amplifier.

After two-plus years of research and development, Universal Audio is proud to introduce the Fender ’55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces. Endorsed by Fender Musical Instruments, the ’55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in captures every nuance of this historically unrivaled tone machine by emulating every last ingredient of the hallowed 5E3 Deluxe circuit.

Fender ‘55 Tweed Deluxe interface

Now You Can:

- Use your Apollo with Unison™ technology to track through an authentic emulation of a 1955 Fender tweed Deluxe amplifier— with indiscernible latency
- Re-amp previously recorded tracks with any UAD-2 hardware
- Easily track perfect studio amp tones with different microphone combinations and placements — without phase issues
- Choose from three different speaker types for a huge range of tones and textures

Through Science We Found... Magic

Universal Audio chose two bone-stock 1955 tweed Deluxe amps as "golden units" to be emulated. This began a two-year R&D project to capture every single component — from speaker paper and heat dissipation, to filter caps and transformers — the essential ingredients that allow the tweed Deluxe to deliver expressive, dynamic, easy-to-record sounds, with only Volume and Tone controls.

Three Genre-Defining Speaker Choices

The speaker is one of the most important elements to the character of the tweed Deluxe. The '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in gives you three common "hot rod" mods that pro players have been using for over 40 years.

Expertly Placed Dual Mic Setup

The '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in offers expertly placed multi-mic tones with a collection of legendary mics — and zero phase issues. You can use the intuitive Mic Mixer to season your tones with separate Level, Pan, and high-pass filter. Additionally, you can set each mic to a secondary off-axis position for further tone tweaking.

Dialed-In Presets

A broad selection of carefully crafted plug-in presets are provided. The presets are designed by guitar tone experts to provide optimum combinations of amp, speaker, and microphone settings.

Auditioning the presets is a great way to learn how professional guitar players and engineers dial in their sound. Of course, experimentation is encouraged — it's practically impossible to get a bad sound out of this plug-in.

Unison™ Technology for Apollo Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in gives you the impedance, gain staging, and circuit behaviors that have contributed to making the tweed Deluxe one of the most recorded guitar amps in history. And like the original amp, you can plug into any of the amp's four inputs and achieve different gain levels or impedance changes, or plug in using a vintage "Y" cable to jump the inputs and blend the channels.

Technical Overview

> ***Note:*** *This section provides a conceptual overview of the plug-in. For detailed control descriptions, see the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe Controls section in this chapter.*

The UAD Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in contains three distinct areas of technology that comprise the overall plug-in: The amplifier circuitry, the speakers, and the microphones. These items have all been separately and meticulously emulated using the latest state-of-the-art proprietary modeling techniques.

The 1955 Fender Deluxe

This particular Fender Deluxe amp, one of a long line of Deluxe models, was originally produced in 1955. Its simple feature set is comprised of two channels with a volume control for each channel and a single tone control shared by the two channels. The amp outputs approximately 15 watts into a single 12" speaker enclosed in an open-back cabinet covered with distinctive tweed fabric.

The 5E3 Circuit

The amp's electronics are designated by Fender as the "5E3" circuit. The circuit is simple compared to most amps, and contains five tubes: 12AX7 and 12AY7 preamp tubes, two 6V6GT power tubes, and a single 5Y3GT rectifier tube. There are no transistors in this circuit.

The 5E3 is well known for its warmth, touch sensitivity, and a fuzzy distortion characteristic that cleans up nicely as the guitar's volume is reduced. The preamp and power sections both run hot – breaking up easily in a musically pleasing way – creating layers of gain and distortion that are key to its dynamic response. The tube rectifier also contributes to its spongy, compressed quality.

Despite its simplicity, the amp is popular and surprisingly versatile with players – not just guitarists – in a multitude of genres. The complex interactions between the simple controls, preamp tubes, power amp tubes, and speaker provide an exceptionally wide range of excellent tones.

The interactive dynamic tonal response of the amp is legendary. The amp has been notoriously difficult to model because of the extreme interactions between components. However, the authentic sound and live feel of the amp is available with stunning accuracy in the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in, which provides all the tools you need to easily produce great recorded guitar tones.

Speakers

Three classic speaker selections are available in the plug-in. In addition to the original stock speaker, two alternate speakers were carefully chosen that complement the 5E3 circuit and suit a variety of musical genres.

Each speaker has a unique frequency response and dynamic range, providing a wide sonic palette from classic American clean, British rock, and everything in between.

Microphones

Five high quality mics, from the vintage and modern eras, are available in the plug-in for capturing the sound of the amp. Two mics can be used simultaneously, each with its own level, high pass filter, and pan settings.

Because two mics can be mixed together, the available mics were selected to complement each other as well as the speaker itself. For example, you can choose a mic with punchy midrange to cut through the mix and blend in a second mic that has more low end to add body and depth.

Mic Placements

It can take experienced engineers years to find the perfect combinations of mic and position for every type of speaker. Even extremely nuanced adjustments to a mic's position in relation to the speaker cone can have a significant impact to the recorded sound of the amp.

With the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe plug-in, this work is done for you. Each mic placement is carefully positioned for the optimum "sweet spot" and each placement is unique to the specific speaker that is selected.

An option to place the mic in a off-axis position is available, offering an alternate tonal option. As with the normal positions, the off-axis placements are positioned for optimum sound, and the placements are unique for every speaker selection.

Mic Mixing

In the physical realm, using two microphones on a single source can cause out-of-phase signals, resulting in undesirable sonic artifacts such as comb filtering. With the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe, all phase alignment is done by our experts, allowing you to concentrate on the music. By using both microphones together, big and lush guitar tones are easily achieved.

Guitar Workflows

The Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe can be used with Apollo's Realtime UAD Processing and/or DAW setups with UAD-2 devices. For optimum results when playing live through UAD guitar amp plug-ins, and when processing previously recorded tracks, see the example setups in the Guitar Amp Plug-In Workflows section in this chapter.

Unison Interactions

The Fender ‘55 Tweed Deluxe takes full advantage of Unison technology available with Universal Audio’s audio interface products.

Unison Impedance Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a Hi-Z input’s dedicated Unison insert within Apollo’s Console application, the physical impedance of the Apollo Hi-Z instrument input jack is adjusted to inherit the impedance characteristics of the original amp hardware’s input jack(s).

This physical impedance and electrical interaction between the guitar pickups and the amplifier input(s) is an important key to the accurate sound, dynamic touch response, and feel when playing through the amp with Apollo’s Realtime UAD Processing.

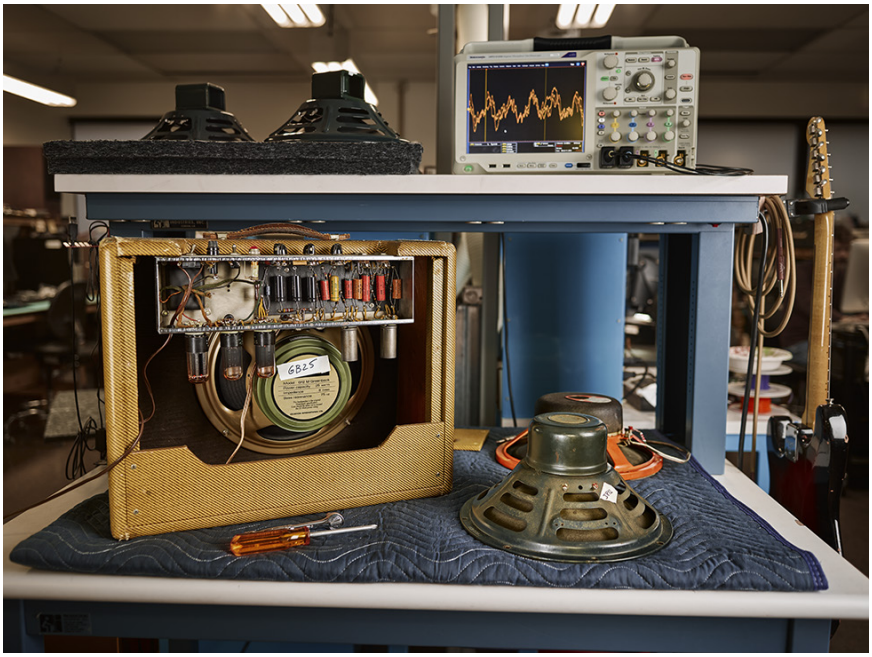
Unison impedance interaction is available on all of the amp’s four available inputs, and also when the guitar signal is split with the virtual “Y-cable” for patching into both of the amp’s INST and MIC inputs simultaneously.

> ***Note:*** *Hi-Z input impedance interaction is unavailable with first-generation (silver) Apollo DUO/QUAD/FireWire rackmount models.*

Unison Gain Controls

As with all Unison plug-ins, the main gain parameter (in this case, the amp’s INST VOL knob) can be easily adjusted with bidirectional control using the physical preamp gain knob on Apollo’s hardware panel.

By entering Gain Stage Mode, all primary gain parameters in the plug-in (INST VOL, MIC VOL, MASTER LEVEL) can be adjusted with bidirectional control using the physical gain knob on Apollo’s hardware panel.



Fender ‘55 Tweed Deluxe Controls

The specific operation of all controls are detailed in this section. For an overview of the amplifier and operating principles, see the Technical Overview section in this chapter.

Amplifier Panel

Amplifier panel elements

Line/Normal

When this switch is in the LINE position, the signal is attenuated by -14 dB at the input of the plug-in. LINE pads high level signals, providing more headroom so the amp does not distort as readily as the NORMAL position.

> ***Note:*** *This control is not available on the original hardware.*

The amplifier circuit was originally designed for passive instrument and mic level signals. When using the plug-in on low-level signals such as those from unamplified passive instrument pickups (e.g., electric guitars), this switch is typically best in the NORMAL position.

When using the plug-in on hotter signals (such pre-recorded tracks that have already been preamplified), this switch is typically best in the LINE position. LINE can also help get cleaner tones when using hotter instrument signals, such as those produced by humbucking and/or active guitar pickups.

> ***Tip:*** *The Master Level control can be used to compensate for the lowered output levels that occur when LINE is engaged.*

Speaker Select

This rotary switch determines the active speaker model. Three speaker selections are available; each has distinct and highly usable sonic characteristics.

Speaker Descriptions

JP 12

Modeled on the original factory-installed 25-watt Jensen P12R speaker. It has a sparkly top and thick bottom, but not as much midrange as the other speakers. The quintessential sound of early country & western, blues, and rock 'n' roll.

JB 120

Modeled on the 120-watt JBL D-120F that was designed for Fender as an aftermarket speaker in the '70s. It delivers a glassy, snappy sound, a more airy presence, and a slight peak in the upper midrange.

GB 25

Modeled on the classic Celestion 25-watt "greenback" speaker that's popular with rock players. It has a warm, thick bottom end, buttery midrange, and a darker, more velvety treble response that's perfect when pushing the amp into distortion.

On/Off (Enable)

The OFF/ON toggle switch is the plug-in's glitch-free bypass control for comparing the processed sound to the original signal.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the power lamp to toggle the OFF/ON state.*

When this toggle switch is in the ON position (down), plug-in processing is active and the red power lamp is lit. In the OFF position (up), plug-in processing is bypassed and the power lamp and mic buttons are unlit.

When set to OFF, UAD DSP usage is reduced (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive). To unload the plug-in and conserve UAD resources, use the Power (UA logo) switch instead.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a Hi-Z input's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, Unison's physical impedance interactions between Apollo's Hi-Z input and the amp's input jack selection remains active and can be switched, even when Enable is set to OFF.

This feature allows the amp's input jack selections to control Apollo's Unison impedance interactions without otherwise processing the signal with the amp. You could, for example, record the signal dry but with Unison impedance interactions so the amp's sound can be subsequently added and adjusted to taste during mixdown, thus maintaining complete Unison modeling accuracy all the way through the tracking and mixing process.

> ***Note:*** *For specific examples, see the Guitar Amp Plug-In Workflows in this chapter.*

Tone

The shared TONE control shapes the overall timbre of the signal at the INST and MIC inputs. Rotate TONE clockwise to increase treble and reduce bass; rotate counter-clockwise increase bass and reduce treble. Set the control straight up (approximately 6.5) for the most neutral sound.

The tone circuit is located between the preamp and power amp circuits. Generally speaking, as TONE is increased, it adds gain and increases distortion in the power section. Singing lead tones can be achieved at the maximum position.

TONE is not a clean control; it pushes the power section hard and has a broad effective range that interacts significantly with both VOL controls.

Instrument Volume

The INST VOL knob controls the volume and distortion of signals at the INST inputs. For the cleanest tones, keep this control around 2.5 or lower.

Due to circuit interdependencies within the original hardware, adjusting INST VOL will subtly alter the sound of the MIC inputs as well, even when INST inputs are not connected.

Increasing INST VOL with no INST input connection will reduce the gain available at the MIC input, resulting in a thinner sound with less bass at the MIC input.

Unison Interactions

Default Apollo Control

When the plug-in is placed in a Hi-Z input's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, this parameter can be adjusted with Apollo's preamp gain knob (the hardware control on the interface panel) and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface. This bidirectional interaction is available even when Apollo is not in Gain Stage Mode.

Gain Stage Mode Control

When Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, this parameter is the initial gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob. When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, an orange dot is overlaid on this control in the plug-in interface as shown at right, indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

> ***Tip:*** *Press and hold Apollo's preamp gain knob for three seconds to enter or exit Gain Stage Mode. When in Gain Stage Mode, press Apollo's preamp gain knob to cycle through the available gain stages. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for details.*

Mic Volume

The MIC VOL knob controls the volume and distortion of signals at the MIC inputs. For the cleanest tones, keep this control around 2.5 or lower.

Due to circuit interdependencies within the original hardware, adjusting MIC VOL will subtly alter the sound of the INST inputs as well, even when MIC inputs are not connected.

Increasing MIC VOL with no MIC input connection will reduce the gain available at the MIC input, resulting in a thinner sound with less bass at the MIC input.

Unison Interaction

Gain Stage Mode Control

When Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, this parameter is the second gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob. When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, an amber dot is overlaid on this control in the plug-in interface as shown at right, indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

> ***Tip:*** *Press and hold Apollo's preamp gain knob for three seconds to enter or exit Gain Stage Mode. When in Gain Stage Mode, press Apollo's preamp gain knob to cycle through the available gain stages. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for details.*

Input Select

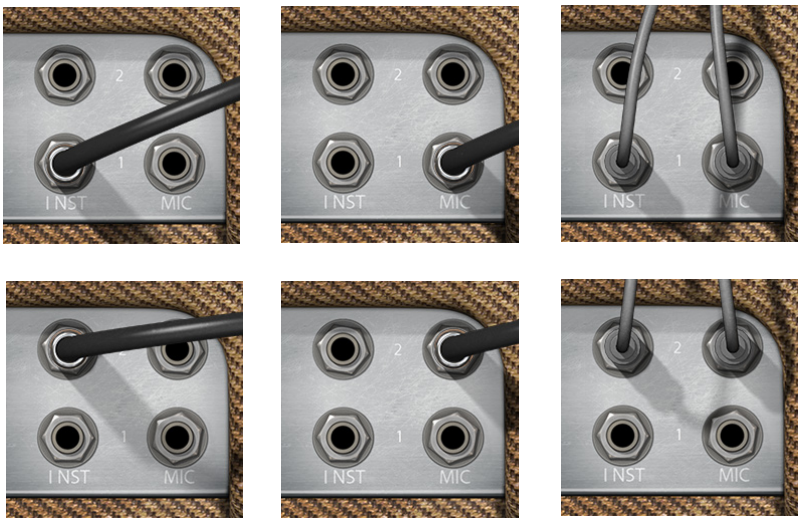
As with the original amp, four discrete input jacks are available; two each for the INST and MIC channels. The INST and MIC inputs can also be patched simultaneously using a virtual Y-cable, offering additional sonic options with Apollo's Unison technology.

To patch the source signal into an input, click the desired input jack. To patch into both the INST and MIC inputs simultaneously via the virtual Y-cable, click the input jack again.

> ***Note:*** *Y-cable patching into inputs INST 1 + MIC 2, and INST 2 + MIC 1, are not available.*

The INST and MIC inputs sound similar, but not identical. All six input selections are accurately modeled, including the vintage Y-cable itself.

> ***Note:*** *The Y-cable input selections do not affect the amp's sound when used in standard (non-Unison) plug-in inserts. Y-cable input impedance interactions are only available when the plug-in is used with Apollo's Unison technology.*



Available Input settings

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a Hi-Z input's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, the physical impedance of the Apollo Hi-Z input jack is adjusted to inherit the impedance characteristics of the original hardware's input jack(s).

This physical impedance matching is an important key to the accurate sound, dynamic touch response, and feel when playing through the amp with Apollo's Realtime UAD Processing.

> ***Note:*** *Hi-Z input impedance interaction is unavailable with first-generation (silver) Apollo DUO/QUAD/FireWire rackmount models.*

INST Inputs

Two instrument input jacks (INST 1 and INST 2) are available. The INST input has more treble and less bass versus the MIC input.

Both INST inputs are controlled primarily by the INST VOL knob. However, due to circuit interdependencies, adjusting MIC VOL will also subtly alter the sound of the INST inputs.

Signals at the INPUT 2 jack are attenuated by 6 dB. INST 2 is typically used with hotter signals (such as humbucking or active guitar pickups) for more clean headroom.

MIC Inputs

Two microphone input jacks (MIC 1 and MIC 2) are available. The MIC input has more bass and less treble versus the INST input.

The mic Both MIC inputs are controlled primarily by the MIC VOL knob. However, due to circuit interdependencies, adjusting INST VOL will also subtly alter the sound of the MIC inputs.

Signals at the MIC 2 jack are attenuated by 6 dB. MIC 2 is typically used with hotter signals for more clean headroom.

Y Inputs

Using the virtual Y-cable patches into both the INST and MIC inputs simultaneously, which halves the impedance of the input when used with Apollo's Unison technology. This results in more midrange and less treble, smoothing out the top end as if a longer guitar cable was used.

> ***Note:*** *The Y-cable input selections do not affect the amp's sound when used in standard (non-Unison) plug-in inserts. Y-cable input impedance interactions are only available when the plug-in is used with Apollo's Unison technology.*

Microphone Panel

Note: *The controls for MIC 1 and MIC 2 are identical.*

Microphone panel elements

Mic Select

Five microphones are available; each is described below. With such great mics and expert placements, it's always best to try a different mic (and/or speaker) before reaching for EQ when tracking or mixing.

Either of these methods can be used to select a mic:

- Click the mic icon within the microphone panel to cycle through the available microphones. Tip: Shift+click to cycle in reverse order.
- Click the disclosure triangle in the lower right corner of the mic icon to display the drop menu, then select a microphone from the menu.

Mic Select menu

Mic Descriptions

Dyn-57

Modeled from an original vintage Shure Brothers Unidyne III SM57 dynamic mic. A standard for capturing guitar amps, it has an upper midrange bump that makes guitars jump out of a mix. Its internal transformer also rolls off the bottom end, so no matter how much bass the guitarist dials in at the amp, it never gets tubby in the mix.

Dyn-421

Modeled from an original vintage 1962 white Sennheiser MD 421 dynamic mic. The MD 421 was a top choice for many guitarists in the '70s. This warm favorite is still popular with engineers for capturing huge sounding guitars. It's great at capturing transients and has a little extra bottom and softer top versus the SM57.

Rib-121

Modeled from a Royer Labs R-121 ribbon mic. This modern classic, a favorite guitar mic of many engineers, has lots of bass, low midrange, and a smooth (but somewhat lacking) top end. It has a similar big silky sound as the M 160, but with more headroom for louder sources. Often paired with an SM57 to add highs back into the mix, this mic captures so much bass that it's often helpful to engage the high pass filter to eliminate rumble.

Rib-160

Modeled from an original vintage '60s beyerdynamic M 160 ribbon mic. This handheld mic was frequently used in England by famous engineers to add big, silky tone to loud guitar amps. This mic captures less high end, so an amp's treble can be cranked without sounding brittle. For a classic buttery '60s tone, set the TONE knob to max and fatten it up with this mic in the OFF AXIS position.

Con-67

Modeled from an original vintage 1967 Neumann U 67 condenser mic in the original Ocean Way Studios collection owned by Allen Sides. The U 67 is the undisputed king of late '60s to mid '70s recording sessions. It has a sweet midrange, not too much bottom end, and a crispy top end that's not at all harsh. A very nice full range and even mic that's great for guitar amps.

Mic Pan

When the plug-in is used on a stereo source, this control adjusts the mic's position in the stereo panorama.

> ***Tip:*** *To return to the center position, click the "C" text label.*

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration, this control is locked in the center position. For stereo operation examples, see the Guitar Amp Plug-In Workflows later in this chapter.*

Mic Level

This knob controls the volume of the microphone. By adjusting LEVEL individually for both MIC 1 and MIC 2, a mixed blend of both microphones can be heard.

Note: *When MIC MUTE is active, this control has no effect.*

The available range is from Off (-Inf dB) to +12 dB. When set to the "0" position, the level is 0 dB (unity gain).

Tip: *To return to the 0 dB position, click the "0" text label.*

Off Axis

This switch places the mic in an optimized alternate position, resulting in a different sonic characteristic. OFF AXIS typically generates a thicker, more robust midrange response.

Click the button to engage OFF AXIS. Click the button again to return the mic to its default placement. When OFF AXIS is engaged, this button is lit, and the graphics in the plug-in interface reflects the modeled mic placement.

Note: *When MIC MUTE is enabled, this control has no effect.*

High Pass

This switch engages a high pass filter, reducing low frequency rumble that may be present with some source signals. The high pass filter cutoff frequency is approximately 82 Hz with a slope of 18 dB per octave.

Click the button to enable the high pass filter. The button is lit when the filter is active. Click the button again deactivate the filter.

Note: *When MIC MUTE is active, this control has no effect.*

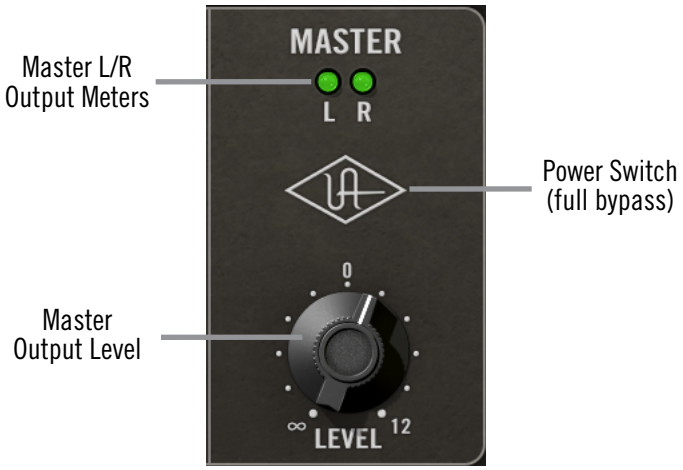
Mic Mute

This switch disables the microphone. Click the button to mute the mic. The button is lit red when the mic is muted. Click the button again unmute the mic.

Mic Meter

This LED, located directly above the PAN knob, is a signal level indicator for the microphone. When the LED is green, audio is present at the mic. The LED glows brighter as the level increases.

Master Panel



Master panel elements

Master Level

This knob controls the level at the output of the plug-in. It adjusts the overall mix of the two MIC LEVEL controls.

The available range is from Off (-Inf dB) to +12 dB. When set to the "0" position, the level is at unity gain (0 dB).

> ***Tip:*** *To return to the 0 dB position, click the "0" text label.*

Unison Interaction

Gain Stage Mode Control

When Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, this parameter is the third gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob. When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, a green dot is overlaid on this control in the plug-in interface as shown at right, indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

> ***Tip:*** *Press and hold Apollo's preamp gain knob for three seconds to enter or exit Gain Stage Mode. When in Gain Stage Mode, press Apollo's preamp gain knob to cycle through the available gain stages. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for details.*

Master Meters

The dual Master Meter LEDs (labeled L and R) are signal level indicators for the output of the plug-in. When audio is present at the left or right output channel, its corresponding LED glows.

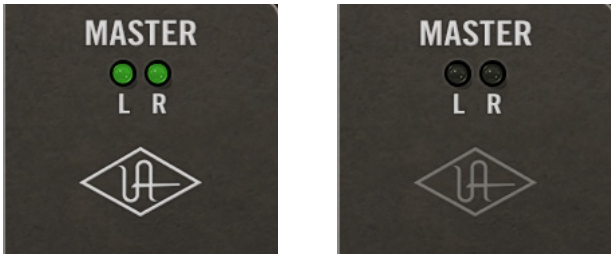
The Master Meter LEDs are red when the virtual signal is clipped. If clipping occurs, reduce the MIC and/or MASTER LEVEL controls (and/or the DAW's master output) so digital clipping does not occur at the D/A converters.

> ***Important:*** *To prevent undesirable digital clipping at the plug-in output, reduce the MIC and/or MASTER level controls.*

Power (UA Logo)

This switch completely powers off the plug-in. Click the UA diamond logo (above the MASTER LEVEL knob) to toggle the Power state. Power is on when the UA Logo is lit and off when the logo is gray.

The Power switch performs the same function as the host application's plug-in bypass control. Power is a hard bypass that conserves UAD DSP but may cause audible glitching as the plug-in is unloaded. For a soft glitch-free bypass, use the ON/OFF switch instead.



Power switch active (left) and powered off (right).

> ***Note:*** *DSP usage is reduced with the Power switch only when DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel application. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), this switch will not reduce DSP usage.*

Graphic Panel

All microphones, placements, and positions (including normal and off axis positions) are accurately depicted in the graphic panel.

> ***Note:*** *Elements in the graphic panel are for display purposes only. There are no controls in this area.*

Graphic panel

Guitar Amp Plug-In Workflows

UAD plug-ins can be used with any Apollo audio interface or UAD-2 DSP accelerator. Typical input (monitoring/recording) and output (playback/mixing) workflows for the two product types when using Fender 55' Tweed Deluxe are described below.

Apollo Workflows

Apollo's Realtime UAD Processing feature enables monitoring and/or recording through UAD plug-ins with no discernible latency. While using this feature, the plug-in can be recorded with or without amp processing, while still monitoring the processed signal.

> ***Important:*** *Whenever Apollo is used for input monitoring, software monitoring must be disabled in the DAW to prevent doubled signals. Consult the DAW's documentation for instructions.*
>
> ***Note:*** *For related details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Apollo: Live input processing

For the most authentic sound, dynamic touch response, and feel of the original amp:

1. Plug the guitar (or other passive instrument) into the Hi-Z instrument input on Apollo's front panel. The input is automatically switched to use the Hi-Z jack.
2. Within Apollo's included Console application, place the amp plug-in into the Hi-Z input's dedicated Unison insert slot. The Hi-Z input is routed into the amp with Unison impedance and bidirectional control interactions.
3. DAW tracks that use this Hi-Z input as its source will have the complete sound of the amp (Unison insert processing is always recorded).

> ***Tip:*** *Adjust the amp's INST VOL control with Apollo's preamp gain knob and/or enter Gain Stage Mode to adjust additional plug-in gain stages with the hardware knob.*

Apollo: Recording dry with impedance interactions

Apollo's Hi-Z input signal can be recorded without the amp's sound processing, while still capturing the amp's input jack impedance interactions. This workflow allows you to record the signal dry but with Unison impedance interactions so the amp's sound can be subsequently added and adjusted to taste during mixdown, thus maintaining complete Unison modeling accuracy all the way through the tracking and mixing process.

To record or monitor Unison Hi-Z impedance interactions without amp processing:

1. Plug the guitar (or other passive instrument) into the Hi-Z instrument input on the front panel of Apollo. The input is automatically switched to use the Hi-Z jack.
2. Within Apollo's included Console application, place the amp plug-in into the Hi-Z input's dedicated Unison insert slot. The Hi-Z input is routed into the amp with Unison impedance and bidirectional control interactions.
3. Within the plug-in interface, set the amp's ON/OFF toggle switch to the OFF position. The amp's red power lamp turns off, but the impedance interaction remains active.
4. In the DAW, set the Hi-Z input as a track's input source. The track will now capture the amp's impedance interactions without the amp processing.

Tip: *To monitor amp processing in real time while recording dry with impedance interactions, use the Apollo: Live stereo monitoring with impedance interactions workflow below in addition to this one.*

Apollo: Live stereo monitoring with impedance interactions

To hear the amp's dual microphones in stereo, the plug-in must be used on a stereo source. However, Apollo's Hi-Z inputs are monophonic. With this workflow, two amp plug-in instances are used in Console: One in the Unison insert to capture impedance interactions, and one on a stereo auxiliary bus for amp processing so the mic pan controls can be adjusted.

To capture Unison Hi-Z impedance interactions while monitoring amp processing in stereo:

1. In Console, prepare an AUX for the workflow by muting (or lowering to zero) the SEND to AUX controls for all inputs except the Hi-Z input.
2. Follow steps 1, 2, and 3 in the Apollo: Recording dry with impedance interactions workflow above.
3. In Console, switch the Hi-Z input to MUTE. The input is no longer routed to the monitor outputs, preventing doubled signals.
4. In Console, route the Hi-Z input to the AUX by setting the SEND control in the Hi-Z channel to maximum. The dry signal with impedance interactions is routed to the AUX for further processing.
5. In Console, place the amp plug-in into an insert in the AUX. (The signal is not yet heard, because the Hi-Z input is muted.)
6. Switch the AUX from POST to PRE so the muted Hi-Z input is heard in the AUX. The Hi-Z input can now be monitored in stereo with complete Unison amp processing.

Tips:

- To record complete Unison amp processing in the DAW with this configuration, set a stereo track to use the AUX as its source.
- To record the signal dry but with Unison impedance interactions, set a mono track in the DAW to use the Hi-Z input as its source.

UAD-2 Workflows

The Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe amp plug-in can be used as a standard UAD plug-in inside any compatible DAW. Following the guidelines below, the plug-in adds great guitar amp color and tone on any signal source with any UAD-2 hardware.

UAD-2: Live input processing

When playing live through UAD plug-ins when loaded in a DAW using a traditional (non-Apollo) audio interface, the DAW's software monitoring feature is used, and throughput latency is determined by the hardware I/O buffer setting. In this scenario, you'll want to lower the I/O buffer to the lowest setting your system will allow.

> ***Note:*** *This technique is controlled by features within the DAW and/or audio interface. Consult the manufacturer's documentation for detailed procedures.*

To minimize live input latency and get the best sound when playing through the amp plug-in when it's loaded in a DAW:

1. Set the hardware I/O buffer size to the lowest value the system will allow without audio artifacts. The lower the buffer size, the lower the latency.
2. To prevent doubled signals, disable the audio interface's hardware input monitoring feature (if available). Consult the audio interface documentation for instructions.
3. Insert the amp plug-in on the live input's channel in the DAW. For optimum results, use a Hi-Z instrument input (if available).
4. Enable software input monitoring in the DAW (and the low-latency monitoring feature, if available). You should now be able to hear the input through the amp plug-in.
5. Don't preamplify the guitar signal in the analog domain (audio interface preamps or other external mic preamps) or digital domain (gain controls within the DAW). The amp plug-in input is expecting low-level instrument signals, such as those from passive guitar pickups. If the amp sounds overloaded (but not like a guitar amp), try engaging the LINE switch in the amp plug-in's interface.
6. After monitoring and/or recording the live input, the I/O buffer size can be increased during playback to reduce the computer's CPU load. Throughput latency is irrelevant during playback.

> ***Tip:*** *To reduce latency when using a UAD-2 PCIe card or UAD-2 Satellite (Thunderbolt or USB models only), enable UAD-2 LiveTrack mode by clicking the mic icon in the UAD Toolbar at the bottom of the plug-in interface.*

UAD-2: Playback processing

To add traditional amp tones to previously recorded tracks (aka re-amping), it's usually best to attenuate the previously-preamplified track back down to the passive low-level instrument signals the amp was originally designed for. This can be easily accomplished within the plug-in itself.

To process previously-recorded tracks with the amp plug-in:

1. Insert the amp plug-in on any mono or stereo source as you would any other plug-in.
2. Within the plug-in interface, set the amp's NORMAL/LINE toggle switch to the LINE position. LINE attenuates the input signal by -14 dB, so the amp behaves as it would if the signal was not already preamplified.

Tip: *Don't record the dry input source signal at high levels. With very hot signals (e.g., approaching 0 dBFS), the amp's input can be overloaded, even if the plug-in is set to LINE mode.*

History of the 1955 Fender Deluxe

The Deluxe began as one of Leo Fender's first ever amps to go along with his main business of selling lap-steel instruments. Early versions of the Deluxe (known as TV-front and later narrow-panel) came out in 1946, years before the release of his first solid-body electric guitars like the Esquire/Broadcaster/Telecaster (1950) and Stratocaster (1954).

With some tweaks and tube changes to the circuit, Leo eventually landed on the now historic, "wide-panel" 5E3 Deluxe in 1955. This version of the amp became legendary as the ultimate bar gig, mid-sized club, and studio amp. With a single 12-inch speaker and around 15 watts, it was just loud enough to compete with most country and jazz drummers of the '50s.

As rock 'n' roll began to take shape, and drummers and bass players starting digging in and getting louder, the Deluxe couldn't keep up. And it was that limitation of the 5E3 circuit being pushed into tube saturation that gave birth to the gritty, overdriven sound of rock guitar.

Even as Leo Fender made bigger, and cleaner sounding tweed amps like the 2x12 80-watt Twin, many players never gave up their Deluxe. This was nearly a decade before distortion and fuzz pedals even existed. If you wanted that overdriven rock sound, you needed to turn your amp all the way up.

Even as the '60s, '70s, and '80s saw many new ways to get distortion and that classic "tweed on 12" sound live at any volume, many guitar icons always took their Deluxe into the studio to capture the real deal. For them, nothing could replace the powerful and dynamic tones of their favorite guitar, and a cable plugged directly into that iconic, tattered, and road worn tweed-covered Deluxe amp. Regardless of the decade and musical genre, the Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe is what electric guitar is supposed to sound like: ICONIC.

The original Fender Deluxe amplifier

All visual and aural references to the Fender Deluxe, and all use of Fender's trademarks, are being made with written permission from Fender Musical Instruments Corporation.

Galaxy Tape Echo

Endless, lush, dub-style delays and psychedelic spring reverb

In 1973, Roland created the RE-201 Space Echo* — a tape delay/spring reverb system that created warm, warped, unabashedly analog echo effects. From subtle tape textures to mindbending chaos, this iconic contraption can be heard on classic Pink Floyd and David Bowie, to seminal dub sides from King Tubby, Scientist, and Lee "Scratch" Perry.

The Galaxy Tape Echo plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces is an exhaustive emulation of the iconic, legendary '70s unit, and expertly captures the physical behavior of the inspiring hardware, down to its distortion, musical wow and flutter, sci-fi pitch shifting, and real time tweakability.

Now You Can:

- Add subtle tape delay or colorful cacophony to drums, vocals, guitars, and synths
- Harness distortion, wow and flutter, and pitch shifting, for organic time-based effects
- Use wild-self-oscillation for creative sci-fi textures
- Employ the ambient shimmer of spring reverb on any source
- Create with plug-in-only features Tempo Sync, Effects Pan, and Tape Select

Space is the Place

Universal Audio has painstakingly captured every quirk and characteristic of this complex device. For example, just like the hardware, you can drive the input hard to add hair to a vocal, or widen a drum bus with fat analog character. Tweak the controls and harness seemingly infinite wow and flutter and pitch shifting combinations — perfect for energizing electric guitars. From rockabilly slapback to hazey trails of swirling delay, the Galaxy Tape Echo is a secret sauce for any source in any genre.

A Faithful Reproduction — Warts and All

The Galaxy Tape Echo plug-in retains all the controls of the original hardware, and adds a few features for modern workflows. Use the Head Selector for various head combinations, Echo Rate for fine timing control, and Feedback which sets repeat count and allows the unit to achieve self-oscillation.

The all-important Echo/Mute, or "Dub" switch is also included, letting you mute the signal to the tape echo while global Bass and Treble controls let you season the effect to taste. New "plug-in-only" features include Tempo Sync, separate Pan controls for reverb and delay, and Tape Select, letting you choose from new, used, or old tape cartridges for varying timbres of delay. By capturing all of the eccentricities of the original, and adding enhancements along the way, the Galaxy Tape Echo plug-in is a tool of infinite creativity.

*Note: The Galaxy Tape Echo product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland. The Roland name, as well as the RE-201 and Space Echo model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Galaxy Tape Echo interface

Galaxy Tape Echo Controls

The following digital-only features are included with the plug-in:

- Mic and instrument volume controls are replaced with single input control
- Tape Age switch for emulating newer or older tape
- Wet Solo control for auxiliary bus send/return effect configurations
- An output volume control for utility
- Separate Pan controls for Echo and Reverb
- Splice switch for triggering the tape splice at will
- Tempo synchronization for tempo-based effects

Peak Level

The Peak lamp indicates when transient signal peaks and clipping are detected just after the input volume control. It begins illuminating at approximately -2 dB to -1.5 dB, then gets brighter as the level increases.

Input Volume

This control determines the signal level that is input to the plug-in. Unity gain is at the 12 o'clock position.

Like the original hardware, clipping distortion at the input to the plug-in effects the tone of the echo and reverb. Clipping is often used as part of the desired effect. At unity gain, clipping can be easily induced. However, if a cleaner sound is desired, reduce the input volume below unity and increase the plug-in output volume to compensate.

Head Select

Galaxy Tape Echo contains a tape echo effect and a spring reverb effect. The active effect(s) are selected with the Head Select knob.

> ***Tip:*** *Galaxy Tape Echo uses less UAD DSP in reverb-only or echo-only modes versus when both modes are used simultaneously if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.*

The original hardware has three tape playback heads. By changing the combination and positions of the heads, a total of 12 different echo/reverb modes can be obtained (four echo only, seven echo+reverb, and one reverb only). All modes are faithfully reproduced in the plug-in.

Head Select Knob Positions

The tape head and reverb modes for each Head Select knob position is detailed in the table below. A black dot indicates the head and/or reverb is active in that knob position.

	ECHO				REVERB ECHO							REVERB
Knob Position >>	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**Reverb**
Tape Heads Active 1	•				•			•		•	•	**(N/A)**
Tape Heads Active 2		•		•		•		•	•		•	
Tape Heads Active 3			•	•			•		•	•	•	
Reverb Active					•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Echo Rate

This knob controls the delay time for the echo effects. Rotate the control counter-clockwise to *increase* delay time; rotate clockwise to *decrease* delay time.

The available delay times are as follows:

- **Head 1:** 69 ms - 177 ms
- **Head 2:** 131 ms - 337 ms
- **Head 3:** 189 ms - 489 ms

The delay times available with this control depend on the Head Select knob. As with the original hardware, this control varies the tape playback speed in realtime by manipulating the tape capstan motor and therefore has a musically useful “ramp-up” and “ramp-down” effect.

When Tempo Sync is enabled, this control is quantized to allow only rhythmic notes available at the leading head.

Feedback

This knob controls the repeat level of the echo signals. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the number of echo repeats. Higher values will cause self-oscillation.

The self-oscillation of Galaxy Tape Echo is one of the magic features that really makes it more than a mixing tool; it's also an instrument to be played. The effect may be used subtly, sending the unit into gentle oscillation on held notes, or it can be put into over-the-top oscillation with extreme Feedback settings. Different Head Select modes will reveal different qualities of oscillation. Single head modes tend to have simpler oscillation qualities, while multiple head modes will have a more complex sound when oscillating.

Galaxy Tape Echo's oscillation qualities are heavily program and control dependent. Different sources of audio, gain, tone, echo rate, and tape settings will all effect oscillation performance. Galaxy Tape Echo can also achieve oscillation with no signal, making the plug-in a truly unique instrument.

Treble

Treble controls the high frequency response in the tape echo portion of the signal. It does not effect the dry signal or the reverb signal. This is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock (straight up) position.

Bass

Bass controls the low frequency response in the tape echo portion of the signal. It does not effect the dry signal or the reverb signal. This is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock (straight up) position.

Echo Pan

Echo Pan controls the placement of the echo signal in the stereo output panorama when the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations.

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is disabled.*

Echo Volume

This control sets the volume of the echo effect. Rotate the control clockwise for louder echo. Reducing the control to its minimum value disables the echo effect.

> ***Note:*** *Echo Volume has no effect when the Head Select is in the REVERB ONLY position.*

Reverb Pan

Reverb Pan controls the placement of the reverb signal in the stereo output panorama when the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations.

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is disabled.*

Reverb Volume

This control sets the volume of the spring reverb effect. Rotate the control clockwise for more reverb. Reducing the control to its minimum value disables the reverb effect.

On the original hardware the reverb output is quite low, and with some sources, unusable due to a high noise floor. Our model of the spring reverb has no noise, and has an increased available output level to improve usability.

> ***Note:*** *Reverb Volume has no effect when the Head Select knob is in positions 1 through 4.*

Input Send

When set to MUTE, this switch disables the signal sent into the echo portion of the processor. This control, sometimes affectionately referred to as the "dub" switch, is typically used to automate the echo effect.

> ***Note:*** *This switch has no effect if the Head Select knob is set to REVERB ONLY.*

Delay Time Display

These LED-style readouts display the current delay time(s) of Galaxy Tape Echo. The three displays correspond to the three tape heads. Because the distance between the tape heads is fixed, the delay times always maintain their proportional relationship to each other.

The delay time values are displayed in milliseconds unless tempo sync is active, in which case beat values are displayed instead. When a particular head is inactive (see Head Select Knob Positions), dashes are displayed.

When Tempo Sync is active, note values that are out of range will flash. Imprecise note values due to head relationships are displayed with superscript + or - symbol before the note.

Tempo Sync

This switch puts the plug-in into tempo sync mode, for synchronizing the delay times to the tempo of the host DAW application. See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for related information.

Tape Loop

Splice

This switch resets the location of the tape splice when the switch is actuated.

Normally, the splice point on the tape loop (where the two ends are joined) circles around at regular intervals. This interval is determined by the current Echo Rate setting. Depending on the Tape Age selection, the splice can be subtle or obvious, and it can work as a catalyst for chaos especially when Galaxy Tape Echo is in a state of self-oscillation.

Splice a momentary switch that pops back into the off position immediately after it is activated, allowing a new splice point to be triggered whenever desired.

Note that the splice effect isn't immediate. It drops the splice at the write head, and it needs time to go over the read heads (at which point there will be a dropout), and then the tape capstan (where it will create some wow and flutter).

Tape Age

In the original hardware, the tape loop is contained in a user-replaceable cartridge. As the tape wears out, it is subject to fidelity loss plus increased wow and flutter. The Tape Age switch allows the plug-in to mimic the behavior of new, used, and old tape cartridges.

Newer tape may be ideal for a pristine vocal track, while older tape could be described as having more character and might be more appropriate for sources where greater chaos may be musical.

Wet Solo

When this switch is OFF, the dry/unprocessed signal is mixed with the wet/processed signal. When set to ON, only the processed signal is heard.

Wet Solo is useful when the plug-in is placed on an auxiliary group/bus return that is configured for use with channel sends. When the plug-in is used on a channel insert, this control should generally be OFF.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per Galaxy Tape Echo plug-in instance) control.*

Output Volume

This control sets the output volume of the plug-in. It modifies the dry and effected signals.

The range of this control is ±20 dB from unity gain. Therefore, some signal may still be heard when this control is set to its minimum value.

VU Meter

The VU meter indicates the average signal that is recorded to the tape. Used in conjunction with the Peak Level lamp, an indication of signal level can be deduced.

Because this is essentially an input meter, it doesn't react when the Input Send switch is switched from Echo to Mute.

> ***Note:*** *The Peak lamp and VU meter measure signal just after the input volume control. However, as with the original hardware, echo feedback is applied just before the level detection circuit. For this reason, the Feedback control will effect the level readings.*

Power

The is the plug-in's overall bypass control for comparing the processed and unprocessed signal. In the ON position, signal processing is active. In the OFF position, the unprocessed signal is heard.

UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the POWER is off if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

> ***Tip:*** *Toggling the power switch will also clear the tape echo. This can be useful if Galaxy Tape Echo is self-oscillating and restarting the feedback loop is desired.*

Note: The Galaxy Tape Echo product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland. The Roland name, as well as the RE-201 and Space Echo model names, are used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Harrison 32C EQ

Overview

The Harrison 32C is the EQ channel module from the prestigious Harrison 4032 console. Countless hit records have been made with Harrison consoles, with artists from Abba to Sade. Most notably, the 4032 is famous as the mixer from which many Michael Jackson records including Thriller — the best-selling album of all time — were made. An original 4032 still resides in Florida with Thriller engineer and Bill Putnam protégé Bruce Swedien, where he continues his love affair with the desk he calls "marvelous sounding." Universal Audio's plug-in version of the all-important 32C EQ module is measured from Mr. Swedien's personal console. This colorful 4-band EQ with high and low cut filters will impart the same "warm and rich sound" from his Harrison, and will impart the same "impact, sonic clarity and creativity" as he experienced making some of the best-loved records of our time.

The Harrison 32C contains four overlapping parametric peaking bands. Each band has fully sweepable Frequency and Gain controls. Instead of traditional Q controls, the 32C has special circuitry that, according to the original hardware documentation, "automatically adjusts the effective bandwidth under all conditions." This dynamic property, and the interplay between the overlapping bands, contribute to the device's musicality and unique sonic signature.

The low EQ band can be switched from peak to shelf mode, and high/low pass filters are available. Additional "digital only" features not included on the original hardware include gain, phase invert, and a global power switch. An SE version is also provided for higher instance counts.

Harrison 32C EQ interface

Harrison 32C Controls

Note: *Knob settings, when compared to the graphical user interface silkscreen numbers, may not match the actual parameter values (e.g., if a knob is pointing to 8 kHz, the actual frequency may not be 8 kHz). This behavior is identical to the original hardware, which we modeled exactly. When the plug-in is viewed in parameter list mode (Controls View), the actual parameter values are displayed.*

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. Click the button to toggle the state. When the Power switch is in the Off (lighter) position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Power LED

The Power LED is illuminated when the plug-in is active.

Polarity

The Polarity (Ø) button inverts the phase of the signal. The polarity is inverted when the button is engaged (darker). Leave the button inactive (lighter) for normal polarity.

Cut Filters

In addition to the four-band EQ, the Harrison 32C offers two cut filters, one each for low and high frequencies. The slope of the cut filters is 12 dB per octave.

Cut Enable

The high and low pass filters are engaged with the Cut Enable switch. The Cut Filters are active when the "In" switch is engaged (darker). When the Cut Filters are engaged, circuit coloration is modeled even when set to "zero cut" frequency values (25 Hz and 20 kHz respectively).

The Cut Enable "In" switch is to the left of the EQ "In" switch on the graphical interface.

High Pass (HP)

This control determines the cutoff frequency for the high pass filter. The available range is 25 Hz to 3.15 kHz.

Low Pass (LP)

This control determines the cutoff frequency for the low pass filter. The available range is 1.6 kHz to 20 kHz.

Four EQ Bands

Each of the four EQ bands have similar controls. The band center frequency is controlled the top row of knobs, and the band gain is controlled by the bottom row.

Low Peak

The low EQ band can be operated in either peak or shelf mode. When the Low Peak switch is in the "out" position, the low EQ band operates in shelf mode. When the Low Peak switch is engaged (darker), the low EQ band operates in peak mode (the other bands always operate in peak mode).

Low Frequency

This control determines the low band center frequency (or the edge frequency when in shelf mode) to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 40 Hz to 600 Hz.

Low Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the low band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±10 dB.

Low Mid Frequency

This control determines the low midrange band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 200 Hz to 3.1kHz.

Low Mid Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the low midrange band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±10 dB.

High Mid Frequency

This control determines the low midrange band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 400 Hz to 6 kHz.

High Mid Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the high midrange band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±10 dB.

Hi Frequency

This control determines the high band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 900 Hz to 13 kHz.

Hi Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the high band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±10 dB.

Gain

The Gain knob controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±10 dB.

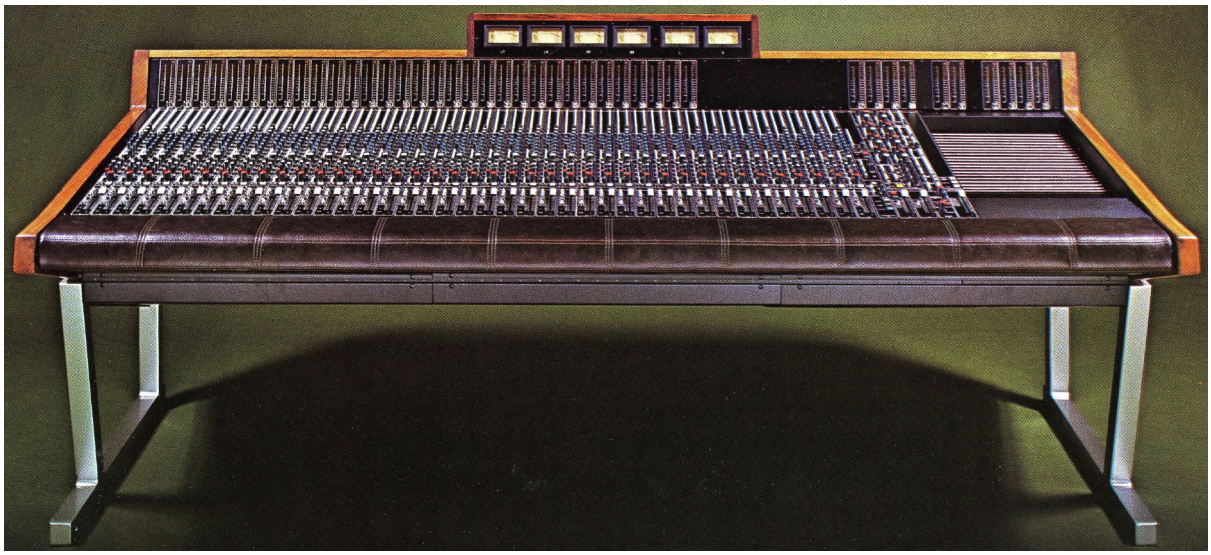
Harrison 32C SE

Harrison 32C SE interface

The Harrison 32C SE is derived from the Harrison 32C. Its algorithm has been revised in order to provide sonic characteristics very similar to the Harrison 32C but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow Harrison-like sound when DSP resources are limited.

The Harrison 32C SE interface can be differentiated from the Harrison 32C by knob color and the module name. The Harrison 32C SE blue knobs instead of the Harrison 32C's ivory knobs, and the module name on the upper right of the interface panel includes "SE."

Note: *The Harrison 32C SE controls are exactly the same as the Harrison 32C.*



The Harrison 4032 Console, featuring the Harrison 32C EQ

Special thanks to Bruce Swedien for his gracious cooperation with the Harrison 32C project.

Helios Type 69 EQ and Preamp Collection

The hallowed Helios Type 69, totally re-modeled with Unison technology.

Whether it was housed at Olympic in London, Musicland in Munich, or in the famed Rolling Stones' mobile studio, the Helios Type 69 console was at the center of hundreds of iconic albums from rock's "Golden Age." From must-own albums by Led Zeppelin, The Beatles, Jimi Hendrix, and Pink Floyd, to Bob Marley and the Wailers, David Bowie, Black Sabbath and AC/DC, the Type 69 delivered fat, unmistakable attitude, with a punchy midrange and an assertive growl.

The all-new Helios Type 69 Preamp and EQ plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and UA Audio Interfaces is a masterful, end-to-end circuit emulation of the rare hardware, going well beyond UA's original Helios Type 69 plug-in.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix through a stunning emulation of the Helios Type 69 vintage analog channel
- Get the full character of the original hardware's Lustraphone transformer-based mic preamp with Unison™ technology
- Sculpt your sources with a colorful inductor-based three-band EQ
- Shape guitars, vocals, and more with legendary Type 69 midrange aggression
- Tweak low-end character with uniquely voiced low-frequency boost and cut filters
- Mix with artist presets from J.J. Blair (Johnny Cash, George Benson), Chris Coady (Yeah Yeah Yeahs, TV on the Radio), Jacquire King (Kings of Leon, Tom Waits), and more

Turn Your DAW into a Classic Helios Type 69 Console

In crafting the new Helios Type 69 plug-in, UA's team of engineers dug deep into two original Type 69 Olympic-era "golden units," faithfully modeling their custom-made, feedback-style, 70 dB input section — along with a complete emulation of the coveted Lustraphone mic input transformer. This end-to-end circuit capture is the only "triple amp" preamp on the UAD platform, giving you complex, colorful flavors that will make any source come to life.

Unison Technology for UA Audio Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the new Helios Type 69 plug-in gives you the hardware's line/mic preamp impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and exact circuit behaviors. Just insert the plug-in into the Console app's Unison preamp slot to track in real time through a spot-on Helios Type 69 modeled preamp.

Passive, Aggressive EQ

The new Helios Type 69 also offers a ground-up redesign of the original hardware's famously bold passive three-band EQ. For the first time, the Helios Type 69 plug-in perfectly emulates the rich sounding inductor saturation behaviors that keep radical EQ moves sounding ultra musical, even at extreme settings.

The Low End Theory

With four uniquely voiced low frequency bell-shape boost filters, the Helios Type 69 Preamp and EQ Collection imparts the same solid and wide bass foundation found on seminal rock, pop, and reggae recordings. You can also clean up sources like overheads and room mics by switching the Bass band into a fixed 50 Hz low cut mode, with stepped gain control.

Add Tough Type 69 attitude with any UAD hardware

Of course, the Helios Type 69 Preamp and EQ Collection isn't just for UA Audio Interface owners. UAD hardware owners can use the Collection on any mix, for bold, intense colors, without going outside the box. With the Helios Type 69 complete console channel emulation, plus the included DSP-lite Helios Type 69 Legacy plug-in, you can craft your projects with the same bold flavor found on the biggest records ever made.

Operational Overview

The Helios Type 69 Plug-Ins

The Helios Type 69 Preamp and EQ Collection consists of two distinct plug-ins: Helios Type 69 and Helios Type 69 Legacy. Although the controls are very similar, each plug-in has its own features and benefits.

Helios Type 69

Helios Type 69 is based on a deep analysis of two original "golden unit" Helios Type 69 modules, including the original Danner output attenuating fader.

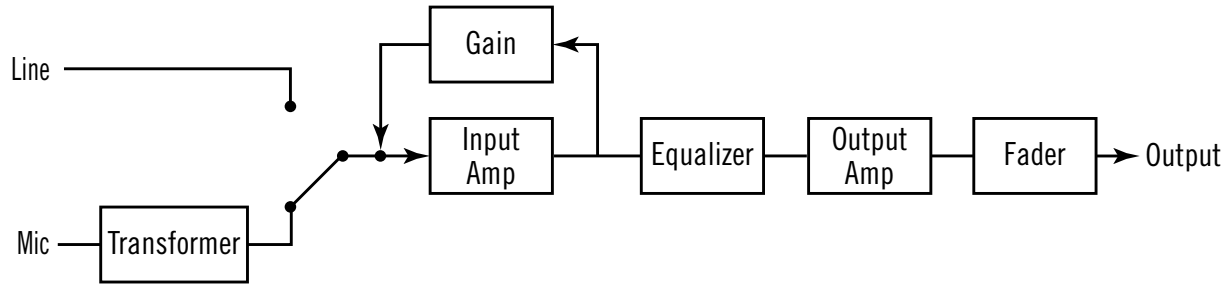
UA's Helios Type 69 provides the only authentic, end-to-end circuit model of this rare preamp and EQ circuit. An extremely detailed model was made from these handpicked "Olympic"-era Helios modules, starting with the Lustraphone input transformer model (including real physical impedance switching when used with UA audio interfaces). The transformer stage is followed by Helios' feedback-style bipolar "triple amp" amplifier circuit, rich with the signature nonlinearities afforded by its unique design.

The aggressive three-band passive EQ circuit is also faithfully modeled, benefiting from UA's research into the saturation behavior of Helios' custom inductors. The EQ retains the original's ability to be pushed to its limits with pleasing results.

Helios Type 69 interface

Signal Flow Diagram

A simplified version of the signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below.



Simplified signal flow within Helios Type 69

Artist Presets

The Helios Type 69 includes presets provided by these prominent artists. The artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or the Apollo/Arrow Console's preset manager. Artist presets are not available for Helios Type 69 Legacy.

Chris Coady	Joe Chiccarelli
J.J. Blair	Vance Powell
Jacquire King	

Artists that have provided presets for Helios Type 69

Unison™ Integration

The Helios Type 69 features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces. With Unison interfaces, the ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the Helios Type 69 hardware preamps.

Note: *Unison technology is active only when Helios Type 69 is in the dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of Helios Type 69 plug-in settings using both the digitally-controlled panel hardware on the UA audio interface and the UAD plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity) are mirrored and bidirectional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the Helios Type 69 hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Unison mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Unison preamps to match the input impedance of the emulated hardware, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original hardware preamp.

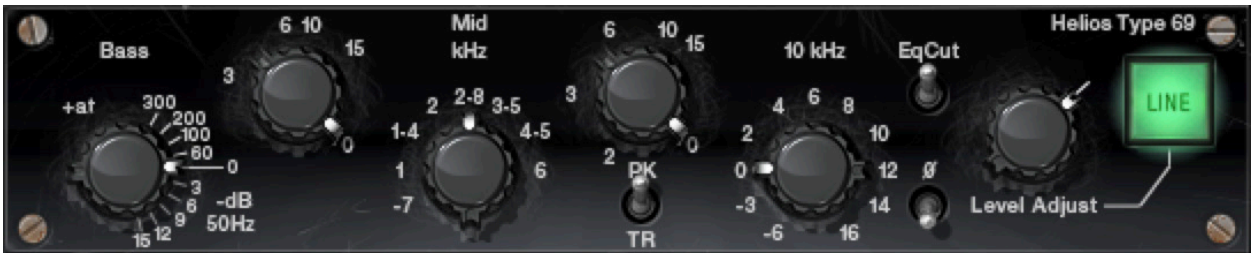
Tactile Gain Staging

The hardware preamp knob on the UA audio interface can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via the interface hardware, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Note: *Helios Type 69 Legacy does not feature Unison technology.*

Helios Type 69 Legacy

UA's original Helios Type 69 EQ plug-in was a major feat of analog circuit emulation, offering the best representation of the Helios EQ sound available at the time. While Helios Type 69 Legacy does not include preamp emulation, Unison integration, or the other nonlinear enhancements of the newer Helios Type 69, its lower DSP usage and lean feature set continue to make it a useful tool, especially when DSP demands are high.



Helios Type 69 Legacy interface

Type 69 Control Differences

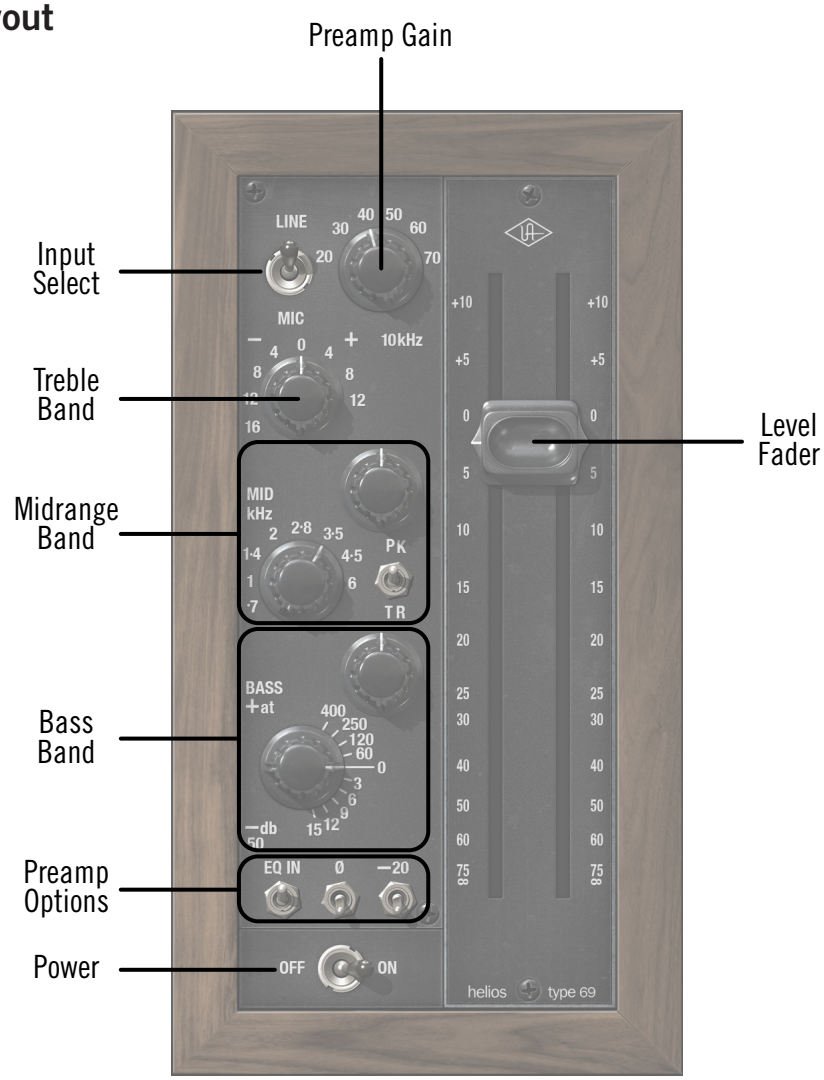
The following parameters are unique to Helios Type 69, and are not available on Helios Type 69 Legacy:

- Unison technology
- Preamp Gain
- -20 dB Pad
- Mic/Line Input Select
- Full-travel Output Level Fader (-∞ to +10 dB)

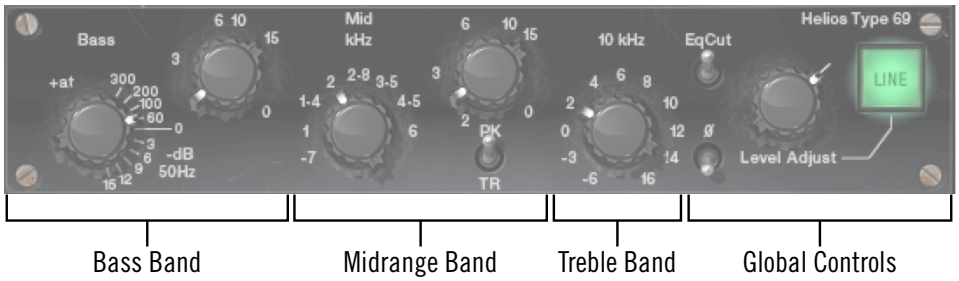
Helios Type 69 Controls

Note: *All control descriptions apply to both Helios Type 69 and Helios Type 69 Legacy unless specifically noted otherwise.*

Controls Layout



Helios Type 69 controls layout



Helios Type 69 Legacy controls layout

Preamp Controls

Note: *Preamp functions are not available with Helios Type 69 Legacy.*

Input Select (LINE/MIC)

Input Select determines which input (line or mic) is being controlled with the Gain knob. To change the input being controlled, click the LINE/MIC switch.

Like the hardware, this plug-in easily facilitates sending Line level signal through the "virtual" Mic input, which allows creative use of distortion to color signals. This is the equivalent of routing a line level signal into a mic level input, so a large jump in gain is expected.

Note: *Use caution when switching to Mic from Line, as output levels can increase significantly (as they would with any hardware preamp).*

Tip: *Click the LINE and MIC labels to switch to the corresponding input.*

Unison Interaction

When Helios Type 69 is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's MIC/LINE switches, or with the Apollo/Arrow hardware buttons. When an Apollo/Arrow Hi-Z input is connected, MIC mode is automatically selected and the LINE/MIC switch is disabled.

GAIN

This six-position switch controls the gain feedback network of Helios' "triple amp" preamplifier circuit. GAIN values of 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, and 70 dB are available.

Tip: *Click the numeric indicators to jump between GAIN values.*

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the hardware's PREAMP knob can be used to adjust this parameter. When in Gain Stage Mode, an orange dot is overlaid on this parameter indicating it is available for hardware control.

Tip: *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

EQ Controls

The Helios EQ's band interactions and nonlinear inductor and output amplifier behaviors are captured in the Helios Type 69. The Helios Type 69 design works in such a way that entire EQ circuits are switched in and out as you make changes to certain parameters.

> ***Tip:*** *With Helios Type 69 (but not Helios Type 69 Legacy) when the EQ section is bypassed, UAD DSP usage is reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive.*

High Shelf Gain

Helios Type 69 – The High Shelf Gain knob offers fixed frequency shelving equalization at 10 kHz. This control can cut treble in 4 dB increments down to –16 dB, or boost treble in 4 dB increments up to +12 dB.

Helios Type 69 Legacy – The High Shelf Gain control can cut treble by 3 or 6 dB, or boost treble in 2 dB increments up to +16 dB

Mid Freq (MID kHZ)

This control determines the frequency of the midrange band. The following frequencies can be selected: 700 Hz, 1 kHz, 1.4 kHz, 2 kHz, 2.8 kHz, 3.5 kHz, 4.5 kHz, and 6 kHz.

> ***Note:*** *In the graphic interface of this control, what may appear to be a dash ("-") actually represents a decimal point. This anomaly mimics the original hardware silkscreen.*

> ***Tip:*** *Click the numeric frequency labels to jump between Mid Freq values.*

Mid Gain

This control determines the amount of gain or attenuation to be applied to the mid band. Up to 15 dB of boost or 9.9 dB of cut is available. The Q (bandwidth) on the midrange band is fairly wide and gentle at low settings, but gets progressively narrower as the gain value is increased.

Mid Type (PK/TR)

Mid Type specifies whether the midrange band is in Peak or Trough mode. When switched to Peak, the Mid Gain control boosts the midrange. When switched to Trough, Mid Gain cuts the midrange.

> ***Note:*** *When using Trough, a 1 dB loss occurs on the overall output of the plug-in. This is authentic to the behavior of the original hardware.*

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "PK" and "TR" labels to switch to the corresponding Mid Type.*

BASS

The Bass knob serves dual functions for two bass filter types, depending on its setting.

> ***Note:*** *As with the original hardware, simply putting this control on any low peak filter frequency will yield a gain increase even if Bass Gain is set to 0.*

When Bass is set to one of the frequency values (60 Hz, 100 Hz, 200 Hz, or 400 Hz) the low band is in peak mode. In this mode, the amount of gain (bass boost) applied to the specified frequency is determined by the Bass Gain knob.

> ***Note:*** *In Helios Type 69 Legacy, the highest bass frequency setting is 300 Hz.*

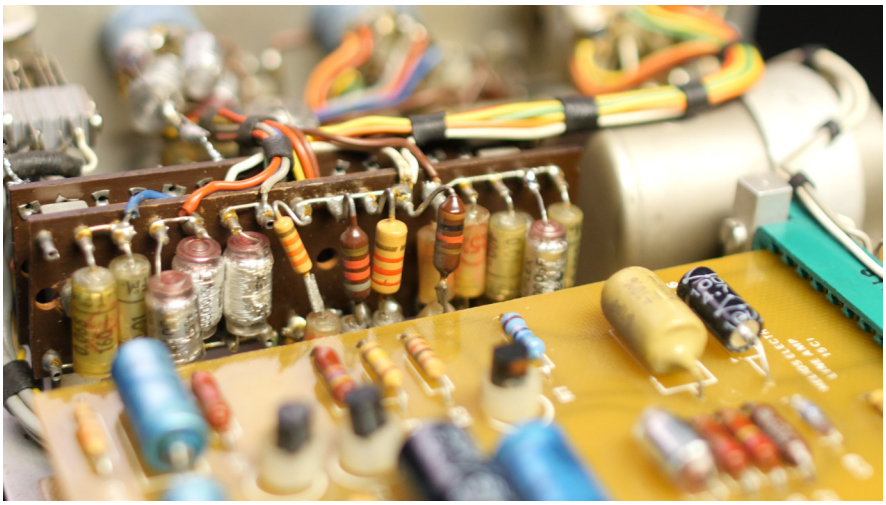
When this knob is set to one of the decibel values (-3, -6, -9, -12, -15 dB) the low band is in "bass cut" shelving mode with a set frequency of 50 Hz.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the shelving amount and peak frequency labels to jump between BASS values. Click the "+" and "-" labels to increment or decrement through BASS values.*

Bass Gain

The Bass Gain knob determines the amount of low band boost to be applied when the Bass knob is in one of its frequency positions. When Bass Gain is set to its lowest value, the Bass EQ circuit is bypassed. When Bass Gain is pushed up from zero, the EQ circuit is enabled, starting at 3.3 dB of boost as in the original hardware. Bass Gain can boost the bass band by as much as 15 dB.

> ***Note:*** *Bass Gain has no effect when the BASS knob is set to one of its shelving (dB-labeled) positions.*



Global Controls

EQ IN

This switch is the EQ bypass control. The EQ is active when in the up position. The EQ is bypassed when in the down position.

> ***Tip:*** *With Helios Type 69 (but not Helios Type 69 Legacy) when the EQ section is bypassed, UAD DSP usage is reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive.*

> ***Note:*** *In Helios Type 69 Legacy, this parameter is labeled EqCut, and the function is inverted.*

In the original Helios hardware, the audio is still slightly colored even when the EQ switch is in the Cut position. This is due to the fact that the signal is still passing through its circuitry. Because the plug-in emulates the hardware in every regard, the signal is slightly processed when this switch is in the bypassed position.

> ***Tip:*** *If a true bypass is desired, use the Power (ON/OFF) switch instead. In Helios Type 69 Legacy, if true bypass is desired, use the Line switch.*

Polarity (Ø)

The Polarity (Ø) switch inverts the polarity of the signal. The signal is inverted when the switch is in the up position. Leave the switch down for normal polarity.

Unison Interaction

Software and hardware control of polarity is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with the UA audio interface hardware polarity button.

-20 (Pad)

The -20 (Pad) switch attenuates the input signal by 20 dB. This switch only functions when the plug-in is in Mic input mode.

Unison Interaction

Software and hardware control of the pad is mirrored. Pad can be switched within the plug-in interface, with Console's PAD button, or with the UA audio interface hardware PAD button.

> ***Note:*** *Pad is not available in Helios Type 69 Legacy.*

Level

This control, modeled from an original Danner console output fader, adjusts the signal output level of Helios Type 69. This may be useful if the signal is dramatically boosted or reduced by the EQ settings. The available range is -∞ dB to +10 dB. By design, the Level fader offers only clean, uncolored attenuation, as the last component in the signal path. 10 dB of uncolored boost is added for user convenience.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the Level fader to its unity gain position.*

> ***Note:*** *In Helios Type 69 Legacy, this control is labeled Level Adjust and the available range is -20 dB to +10 dB.*

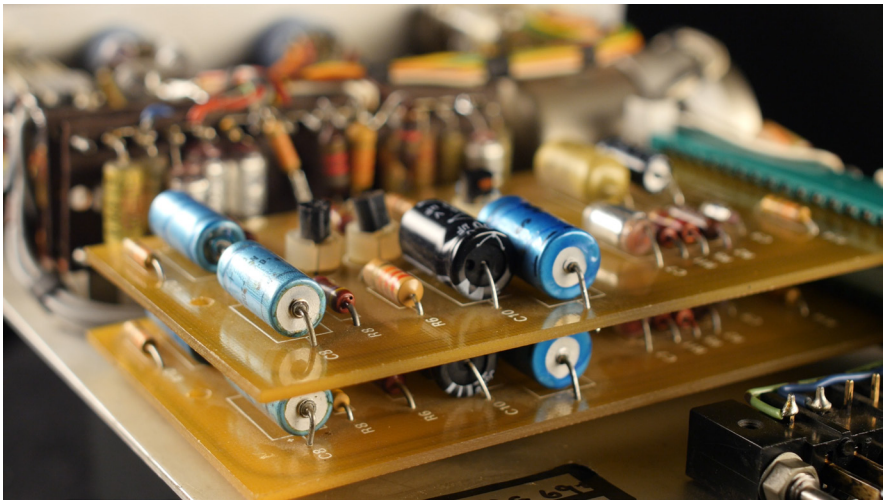
Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the interface is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, a green dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control as the Helios' second gain stage.

Power (ON/OFF)

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Note:*** *In Helios Type 69 Legacy, this control is labeled LINE. Click the switch to toggle the state. The LINE switch is illuminated in green when the plug-in is active.*



Partial List Of Albums Recorded On Helios Type 69 Consoles

The Beatles “All You Need Is Love” (1967, Olympic Studios)

The Beatles “Magical Mystery Tour” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Jimi Hendrix Experience “Are You Experienced?” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Jimi Hendrix Experience “Axis: Bold As Love” (1967, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Their Satanic Majesties Request” (1967, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Between The Buttons” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Procol Harum “A Whiter Shade of Pale” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Traffic “Mr. Fantasy” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Sammy Davis Jr. Songs for the musical “Doctor Dolittle” (1967, Olympic Studios)

Jimi Hendrix Experience “Electric Ladyland” (1968, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Beggars Banquet” (1968, Olympic Studios)

Traffic “Hole In My Shoe” (1968, Olympic Studios)

Traffic “Traffic” (1968, Olympic Studios)

The Zombies “Odessey and Oracle” (1968, Olympic Studios)

Joe Cocker “With a Little Help from My Friends” (1969, Olympic Studios)

Ella Fitzgerald “Ella” (1969, Olympic Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Led Zeppelin I” (1969, Olympic Studios)

Rod Stewart “An Old Raincoat Won’t Ever Let You Down” (1969, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Let It Bleed” (1969, Olympic Studios)

Quincy Jones Soundtrack to “The Italian Job” (1969, Olympic Studios)

Andrew Lloyd Webber & Tim Rice “Jesus Christ Superstar - A Rock Opera” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Black Sabbath “Black Sabbath” (1970, Island Studios)

Black Sabbath “Paranoid” (1970, Island Studios)

Free “Fire & Water” (1970, Island Studios)

Ginger Baker Airforce “Airforce 2” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Led Zeppelin II” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Led Zeppelin III” (1970, Olympic Studios / Rolling Stones Mobile / Island Studios)

Eric Clapton “Eric Clapton” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Leon Russell “Leon Russell” (1970, Olympic Studios / Island Studios)

Memphis Slim “Blue Memphis” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Paul McCartney “McCartney” (1970, Paul McCartney’s Home Studio)

Stephen Stills “Stephen Stills” (1970, Island Studios)

Traffic “John Barleycorn Must Die” (1970, Olympic Studios)

Roy Budd Soundtrack to “Get Carter” (1970, Olympic Studios)

B.B. King “In London” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Deep Purple “Fireball” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Frank Zappa “200 Motels” (1971, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Graham Nash “Songs For Beginners” (1971, Island Studios)

Harry Nilsson “Nilsson Schmilsson” (1971, Island Studios)

Howlin’ Wolf “The London Howlin’ Wolf Sessions” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Jethro Tull “Aqualung” (1971, Island Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Led Zeppelin IV” (1971, Rolling Stones Mobile / Island Studios)

The Faces “A Nod Is As Good As a Wink... to a Blind Horse” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Leon Russell “Leon Russell And The Shelter People” (1971, Island Studios)

Stephen Stills “Stephen Stills 2” (1971, Island Studios)

Supertramp “Indelibly Stamped” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Ten Years After “A Space in Time” (1971, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Sticky Fingers” (1971, Olympic Studios)

The Who “Who’s Next” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Traffic “The Low Spark Of High Heeled Boys” (1971, Island Studios)

Alan Price Soundtrack to “O’Lucky Man” (1971, Olympic Studios)

Big Youth “Screaming Target” (1972, Harry J. Studios)

Deep Purple “Machine Head” (1972, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Eagles “Eagles” (1972, Olympic Studios)

Elton John “Don’t Shoot Me I’m Only The Piano Player” (1972, Strawberry Studios)

Funkadelic “America Eats Its Young” (1972, Olympic Studios)

Genesis “Foxtrot” (1972, Island Studios)

Harry Nilsson “Son Of Schmilsson” (1972, Apple Studios)

Hugh Masekela “Home Is Where the Music Is” (1972, Island Studios)

Mott The Hoople “All The Young Dudes” (1972, Olympic Studios)

Slade “Slade Alive!” (1972, Olympic Studios)

Ten Years After “Rock & Roll Music to the World” (1972, Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Exile on Main Street” (1972, Olympic Studios / Rolling Stones Mobile)

Mott the Hoople “All the Young Dudes” (1972, Olympic Studios)

Eric Clapton “Eric Clapton’s Rainbow Concert” (1973, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Eagles “Desperado” (1973, Island Studios)

Emerson Lake & Palmer “Brain Salad Surgery” (1973, Olympic Studios)

George Harrison “Living In The Material World” (1973, Apple Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Houses of the Holy” (1973, Olympic Studios)

Mike Oldfield “Tubular Bells” (1973, The Manor Studios)

Paul McCartney & Wings “Red Rose Speedway” (1973, Olympic Studios / Island Studios)

Ringo Starr “Ringo” (1973, Apple Studios)

The Ozark Mountain Daredevils “The Ozark Mountain Daredevils” (1973, Olympic Studios)

The Wailers “Burnin’” (1973, Harry J. Studios / Island Studios)

The Wailers “Catch a Fire” (1973, Harry J. Studios / Island Studios)

The Who “Quadrophenia” (1973, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Toots & The Maytals “Funky Kingston” (1973, Island Studios)

Bad Company “Bad Company” (1974, Olympic Studios)

Barclay James Harvest “Everyone Is Everybody Else” (1974, Olympic Studios)

Bryan Ferry “Another Time, Another Place” (1974, Island Studios / Ramport Studios)

Camel “Mirage” (1974, Island Studios)

Deep Purple “Burn” (1974, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Deep Purple “Stormbringer” (1974, Musicland Studios)

Eagles “On The Border” (1974, Olympic Studios)

Genesis “The Lamb Lies Down On Broadway” (1974, Island Studios / Island Mobile)

King Crimson “Red” (1974, Olympic Studios)

Rick Wakeman “Journey To The Centre Of The Earth” (1974, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Rory Gallagher “Irish Tour ‘74” (1974, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Supertramp “Crime of the Century” (1974, Ramport Studios)

The Rolling Stones “It’s Only Rock & Roll” (1974, Musicland Studios)

The Who “Tommy - Original Soundtrack Recording” (1974, Ramport Studios)

Slade “Slide in Flame” (1974, Olympic Studios)

10cc “The Original Soundtrack” (1975, Strawberry Studios)

Bad Company “Straight Shooter” (1975, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Natty Dread” (1975, Harry J. Studios)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Live!” (1975, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Donna Summer “Love To Love You Baby” (1975, Musicland Studios)

Electric Light Orchestra “Face The Music” (1975, Musicland Studios)

Eric Clapton “E.C. Was Here” (1975, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio)

Led Zeppelin “Physical Graffiti” (1975, Olympic Studios / Island Studios)

Peter Frampton “Frampton” (1975, Olympic Studios)

Queen “A Night at the Opera” (1975, Olympic Studios)

Stephen Stills “Stills” (1975, Island Studios)

Supertramp “Crisis? What Crisis?” (1975, Ramport Studios)

The Rocky Horror Picture Show “The Rocky Horror Picture Show” (1975, Olympic Studios)

The Who “Who By Numbers” (1975, Ronnie Lane’s Mobile Studio / Ramport Studios / Island Mobile)

Andrew Lloyd Webber & Tim Rice “Evita” (1976, Olympic Studios)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Rastaman Vibration” (1976, Harry J. Studios)

David Bowie “Diamond Dogs” (1976, Olympic Studios / Island Studios)

Electric Light Orchestra “A New World Records” (1976, Musicland Studios)

Joan Armatrading “Joan Armatrading” (1976, Olympic Studios)

Led Zeppelin “Presence” (1976, Musicland Studios)

Rory Gallagher “Calling Card” (1976, Musicland Studios)

Queen “A Day At The Races” (1976, The Manor Studios)

Santana “Moonflower” (1976, Rolling Stones Mobile)

The Rolling Stones “Black and Blue” (1976, Musicland Studios / Rolling Stones Mobile)

Thin Lizzy “Jailbreak” (1976, Ramport Studios)

Original Cast Recording Tim Rice and Andrew Llyod Webber’s “Evita” (1976, Olympic Studios)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Exodus” (1977, Harry J. Studios / Island Studios)

Donna Summer “I Remember Yesterday” (1977, Musicland Studios)

Iggy Pop “The Idiot” (1977, Musicland Studios)

Eric Clapton “Slowhand” (1977, Olympic Studios)

Giorgio Moroder “From Here to Eternity” (1977, Musicland Studios)

Joni Mitchell “Don Juan’s Reckless Daughter” (1977, Island Studios)

Judas Priest “Sin After Sin” (1977, Ramport Studios)

Motörhead “Motörhead” (1977, Olympic Studios)

Peter Gabriel “Peter Gabriel” (1977, Olympic Studios)

The Stranglers “Rattus Norvegicus” (1977, Olympic Studios / Island Mobile)

David Bowie “Low” (1977, Hansa Tonstudio)

David Bowie “Heroes” (1977, Hansa Tonstudio)

Iggy Pop “Lust for Life” (1977, Hansa Tonstudio)

Electric Light Orchestra “Out of the Blue” (1977, Musicland Studios)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Kaya” (1978, Island Studios)

Bob Marley & The Wailers “Babylon By Bus” (1978, Island Mobile)

Buzzcocks “Another Music in a Different Kitchen” (1978, Olympic Studios)

Eric Clapton “Blackless” (1978, Olympic Studios)

Dire Straits “Dire Straits” (1978, Island Studios)

Giorgio Moroder “Midnight Express (Music From The Original Motion Picture Soundtrack)” (1978, Musicland Studios)

Little Feat “Waiting for Columbus” (1978, Manor Mobile)

The Who “Who Are You” (1978, Ramport Studios / Olympic Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Some Girls” (1978, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Tangerine Dream “Force Majeure” (1978, Hansa Tonstudio)

AC/DC “Highway To Hell” (1979, Island Studios)

Frank Zappa “Sheik Yerbouti” (1979, Manor Mobile)

Led Zeppelin “In Through The Out Door” (1979, Strawberry Studios)

Orchestral Manoeuvres In The Dark “Electricity” (1979, Strawberry Studios)

Electric Light Orchestra “Discovery” (1979, Musicland Studios)

Life of Brian Soundtrack (1979, Olympic Studios)

Peter Gabriel “Peter Gabriel III” (1980, Manor Mobile)

Queen “The Game” (1980, Musicland Studios)

The Rolling Stones “Emotional Rescue” (1980, Rolling Stones Mobile)

Pink Floyd “The Final Cut” (1983, Olympic Studios)

helios

Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808

The Most Iconic Overdrive Pedal Ever Created

Released in 1979, the Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 overdrive pedal quickly became legend for its dynamic, touch-sensitive distortion and throaty midrange. A mainstay on the pedalboards of Stevie Ray Vaughan, Eric Johnson, Brad Paisley, Trey Anastasio, and Joe Bonamassa, the TS808 holds a hallowed place in guitar lore.

The Ibanez Tube Screamer has inspired hundreds of knock-offs and vintage units command insane prices. Now, for the first time, you can track through the only Ibanez-licensed TS808 emulation with the Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Track through a stunning emulation of the legendary Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 with Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD
- Add colorful distortion textures to guitars, synths, drums, and vocals at mixdown with any UAD-2 hardware
- Get the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of a vintage TS808 Tube Screamer thanks to Unison technology for Apollo Twin, DUO, and QUAD
- Use the TS808 plug-in in front of an already-overdriven amp model, adding body and sustain to your sound

Dynamic Distortions

The Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 for UAD-2 and Apollo nails every detail of this vintage grind machine, allowing guitarists of all styles a vast array of sounds at tracking or mixdown. Key to this is capturing the original's unique circuit, which actually mixes the clean input signal with the output signal of the TS808's clipping circuit — preserving your playing dynamics and actually improving clarity and responsiveness.

From Subtle Rhythms to Searing Solos

No matter what type of guitar you're using, the TS808 plug-in can transform your tones with its signature character. Use it to add a touch of dirt to ringing chords, enhancing your guitar's string-to-string separation, or crank the Level and Drive controls to unleash the TS808's legendary creamy, singing midrange. You can also call on the TS808 plug-in to deliver chunky rhythm tones à la Keith Richards.

Unison Technology for Authentic Tube Screamer Tones

The interaction of your instrument and the first pedal in your signal chain is an essential ingredient to capturing a stompbox's unique character and tone. Thanks to Universal Audio's Unison technology, your guitar gets the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of a vintage Tube Screamer when you plug in to an Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD. This gives you the true tone, feel, and response of the original hardware.

An Essential Tone Stage for Tracking and Mixing

Creative producers and engineers have employed the Ibanez TS808 in myriad ways. Producer/engineer Andy Sneap (Megadeth, Kreator, Exodus) runs a TS808 in front of an amp to lean-out the bass response and add teeth, while Joe Barresi (The Melvins, Tool, Weezer, and Bad Religion) uses a vintage TS808 at mixdown to add texture and distortion to already-tracked guitars, synths, drums, and vocals. The Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 for UAD-2 and Apollo allows you to do the same thing, effortlessly in your DAW.

Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 interface

Note: *The UAD Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 plug-in is no longer available for purchase. It has been replaced by the UAD TS Overdrive plug-in.*

Using Ibanez Tube Screamer

Standard DAW Inserts

In much the same way as some premier recording and mix engineers use stomp boxes in a mix, Ibanez Tube Screamer can be used for creative purposes on any source signal by placing it in any plug-in insert within a DAW. For typical guitar tones, follow the pedal with a guitar amp emulation (as one would with a hardware guitar pedal and amp).

Because the plug-in accurately models the original hardware's high-impedance operating levels, precautions may need to be taken to avoid undesirable input clipping.

> ***Note:*** *Since Hi-Z devices typically operate at much lower signal levels than line-level devices, signal levels being routed into the pedal may need to be reduced to avoid undesirable input distortion.*

Unison™ Technology with Apollo

The Ibanez Tube Screamer features Unison technology for integration with the high-impedance input hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's Hi-Z inputs inherit all of the unique circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of the original guitar pedal.

Hi-Z Signal Routing

For the most authentic stompbox tones, plug any high-impedance instrument (guitar, bass, etc.) into Apollo's Hi-Z instrument input and place the pedal plug-in into the unique Unison INPUT insert on the same channel within Apollo's Console application. If desired, follow the Unison pedal plug-in with another pedal or guitar amp emulation in Console's standard insert slots.

This Hi-Z workflow enables near-zero latency monitoring or recording with the same input characteristics and dynamic response as the original pedal.

> ***Note:*** *This plug-in can be Unison-enabled with Apollo's Mic or Line inputs. However, because the original hardware has a high-impedance instrument input only, Apollo's Hi-Z input and Unison insert will provide the most accurate sound and experience of the hardware pedal that is modeled.*

> ***Important:*** *Unison is active only when the pedal plug-in is placed in the unique INPUT insert available on Hi-Z inputs within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Tactile Control

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the Overdrive, Level, and Output controls available within the Unison pedal plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The control being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the control levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Ibanez Tube Screamer Controls

Overdrive

Overdrive varies the amount of signal distortion. Rotate the control clockwise to increase overdrive and sustain.

Tone

Tone adjusts the high-frequency content of the signal. Rotate the control clockwise to decrease the filter amount, which increases treble content.

Level

Level adjusts the pedal's modeled output level. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the volume.

Bypass

The stomp switch toggles the overdrive effect. When the effect is active, the red LED (above the Tone knob) glows.

Like the original hardware, this is a not a "true bypass" switch. When the effect is inactive, the signal is still colored by the circuitry.

Tip: *For true bypass, click the UA diamond logo.*

Output

Output controls the clean (unmodeled) gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to return the control to zero dB.*

Power

The UA diamond logo switch toggles between plug-in enable and disable (true bypass). Click the switch to toggle the Power state.

When Power is off, the UA diamond logo is dim and the external power supply cable is unplugged.

> ***Tip:*** *Power can also be toggled by clicking the image of the external power supply cable.*

The unplugged power cable in true bypass mode

All visual and aural references to the Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 and all use of Ibanez's trademarks are being made with written permission from Ibanez.

Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay

The delay that revolutionized modern rock and pop.

Introduced in 1982, the KORG SDD-3000 Digital Delay was popularized by U2 guitarist, The Edge, to forge one of the most identifiable guitar sounds in the history of rock. Far from a one-instrument-pony, however, the SDD-3000 also found a home in early new wave and 80's synth music. Fully endorsed by KORG, the KORG SDD-3000 Digital Delay plug-in for UAD and Apollo interfaces exactly captures the original unit's colorful analog circuitry, and burnished-sounding 13-bit delays.

Now You Can:

- Tap into the song-inspiring sounds of the legendary KORG SDD-3000 Digital Delay in a fully authenticated plug-in
- Add unique, chewy 13-bit delay, phase, flange, and chorus to guitar, synths, vocals and more
- Get the dynamic interaction of the SDD-3000's analog preamp stage with Unison™ technology for Apollo interfaces
- Use the Hold function to layer shimmering pads and soundscapes

An Iconic Rack Unit

Beginning with U2's The Unforgettable Fire, The Edge took his guitar textures to a whole new level using the KORG SDD-3000's responsive dynamics and colorful sonic palette. *The Unforgettable Fire* sessions turned Daniel Lanois onto the unit, and it has since become a staple of his studio and live rig, as well as that of electronic music icon William Orbit.

Legendary Delay

With just over a second of old school, 13-bit delay, the Korg SDD-3000 is famous for its percussive, rhythmic repeats. Like the original, you can select any value up to 1023 milliseconds, or you can simply use the plug-in-only Sync control to line up the repeats to your DAW's tempo. The plug-in's Delay Time window also features a handy drop down menu for assorted routing variations.

An End-to-End Circuit Emulation

Universal Audio meticulously modeled a vintage "golden unit" Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay, immaculately capturing its famed analog preamp and output section. Filled with JRC-made op-amps — the same type as many classic preamp, boost, and overdrive pedals of the era — the UAD Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay plug-in precisely emulates this ultra-musical analog circuit.

Swirly Goodness

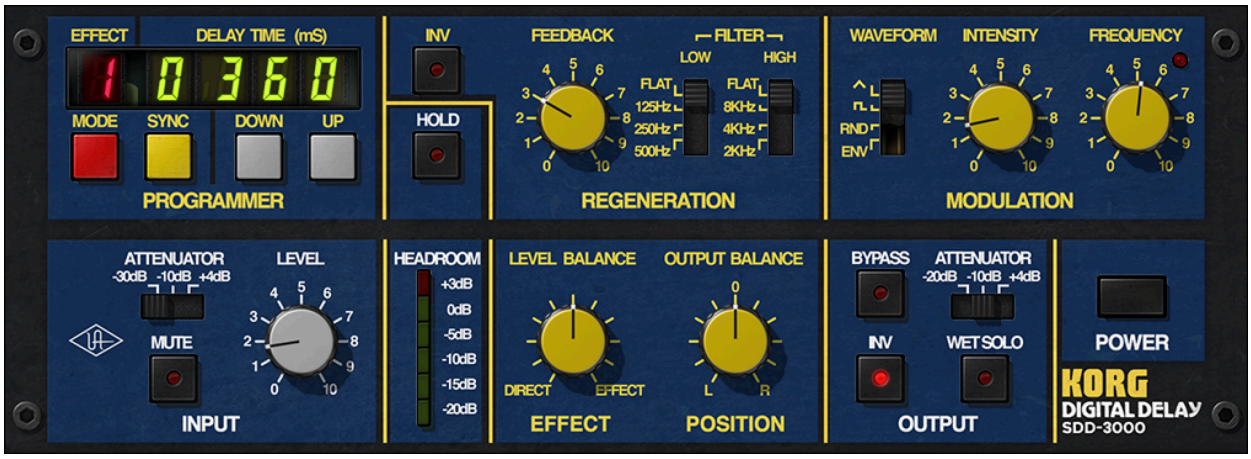
The Korg SDD-3000 plug-in's Modulation section is the secret to adding depth and motion to your echoes. Use the Intensity knob to adjust the pitch variation of your repeats, while the Frequency control conjures varying degrees of subtle movement and vibrato — crucial for long, Daniel Lanois-esque pillowy delays. Lastly, the Waveform selector lets you craft complex phase, flange, and chorus effects that are simply unobtainable with any other unit.

Feedback, Hold, and Filtering

The Regeneration section of the Korg SDD-3000 plug-in is an ambient effect lover's dream. You can dial in simple slapback to long trails, or instant oscillation using the Feedback control. And, if you like what you've created, simply hit the Hold button and freeze that sound in place. Finally, the Filter controls offer tons of tone shaping, letting you add air or chewy warmth to repeats— perfect for guitars, synths, drums, vocals, and more.

Unison Technology for Apollo Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Korg SDD-3000 plug-in delivers all the analog and digital goodness of the original with the impedance, gain staging, and quirky behaviors that have made the rack unit legend.



Korg SDD-3000 interface

Operational Overview

This section provides a general technical overview of the Korg SDD-3000. For specific details about individual controls, see Korg SDD-3000 Controls later in this chapter.

Features

- Complete circuit model of the famous Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay used by The Edge, Daniel Lanois, WIlliam Orbit, and more
- Exacting emulation of the analog input and output analog preamp of the Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay
- Filter circuit for shaping delay repeats
- Comprehensive Waveform and Modulation section for phaser, flanger, chorusing and doubling effects
- Unison technology allows for authentic Hi-Z guitar interaction with Apollo Interfaces
- Sync mode for note value-based DAW tempo sync
- Mono and discrete stereo operation
- The only fully endorsed plug-in of Korg's most sought-after digital delay

Classic 80s Analog Character

With its 1980s-era design, many players have found the Korg SDD-3000 invaluable simply for its boosting abilities and tonal texture, even when the delay circuit is not in use. UA took great care to model the classic analog preamp and support circuitry of the SDD-3000.

Attenuators

The Korg SDD-3000 input ATTENUATOR circuits were originally designed as a way to set the gain staging of the delay to match the level standard of the input signal: -30 dB (Hi-Z instrument), -10 dB (unbalanced/consumer line-level), or +4 dB (balanced/professional line-level). The delay circuit nominally operates at line-level, so when -30 dB is selected, the signal is passed through an additional amplification stage, employing the colorful JRC op-amps that made the SDD-3000 and other classic 80s effects sound so unique.

When a line-level signal is input while in -30 dB mode (or a +4 dB signal is input while in -10 dB mode), additional saturation and "crunch" is introduced, a behavior that is beloved by SDD-3000 aficionados. Trying different ATTENUATOR settings in conjunction with the setting of the LEVEL control can provide a wealth of useful colorations and distortion.

Low-Bitrate Digital Sheen

Today, we may be used to high-quality "colorless" 16 or 24-bit converters in our digital hardware. However, at the time Korg designed the SDD-3000, such converters were either unavailable or too expensive to be practical. This led to the choice of a "12-bit plus one" system, imparting a gritty, organic 13-bit sound that goes far beyond mere repetition. The sample rate-based modulation system further adds to the unique "early digital" character of this classic unit.

Wide-Ranging Delay and Modulation Effects

With a wide range of delay times and a host of filtering and modulation options, the Korg SDD-3000 can produce beautiful phasing, flanging, chorus, doubling, and delay effects. If delay-plus-chorus or another combination effect is your aim, you can stack multiple SDD-3000 instances, without the need to clear additional space in your budget or gear racks.

Unison™ Integration

The Korg SDD-3000 features Unison technology for integration with Hi-Z instrument inputs in Universal Audio Apollo audio interfaces. When the Korg SDD-3000 is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, Apollo's Hi-Z input circuits physically adapt to the Korg delay's input impedance, providing your instrument input signal with the same reactive response and gain staging interaction found in the vintage hardware, providing all the sonic character and loved imperfections of this 80s classic.

Additionally, with Unison gain staging mode, the LEVEL and ATTENUATOR controls can be adjusted using Apollo's hardware controls.

> ***Note:*** *Unison Hi-Z interaction is active only when SDD-3000 is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.*

New Functionality

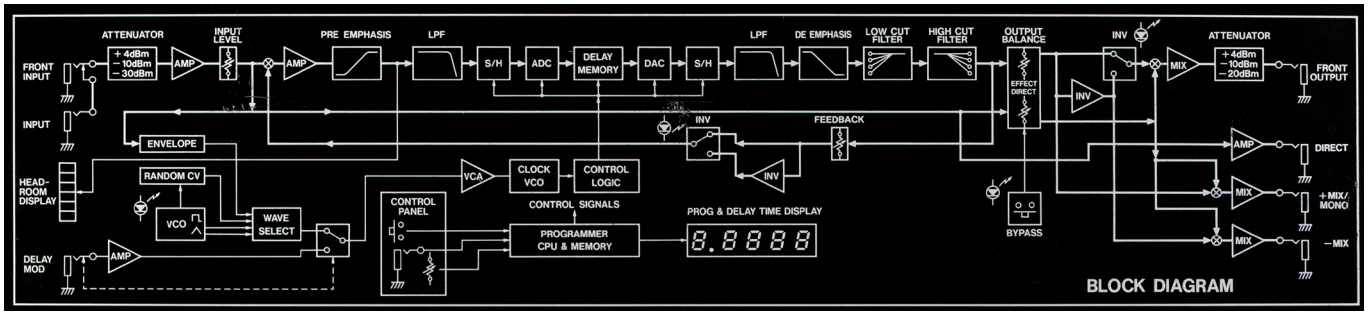
While the original Korg SDD-3000 hardware had to be cabled up for a mono and dedicated dry out, the UAD Korg SDD-3000 plug-in gives you five output routing options from a drop menu. Plus, you can use a dedicated Position control to place the effect anywhere in the stereo field.

Artist Presets

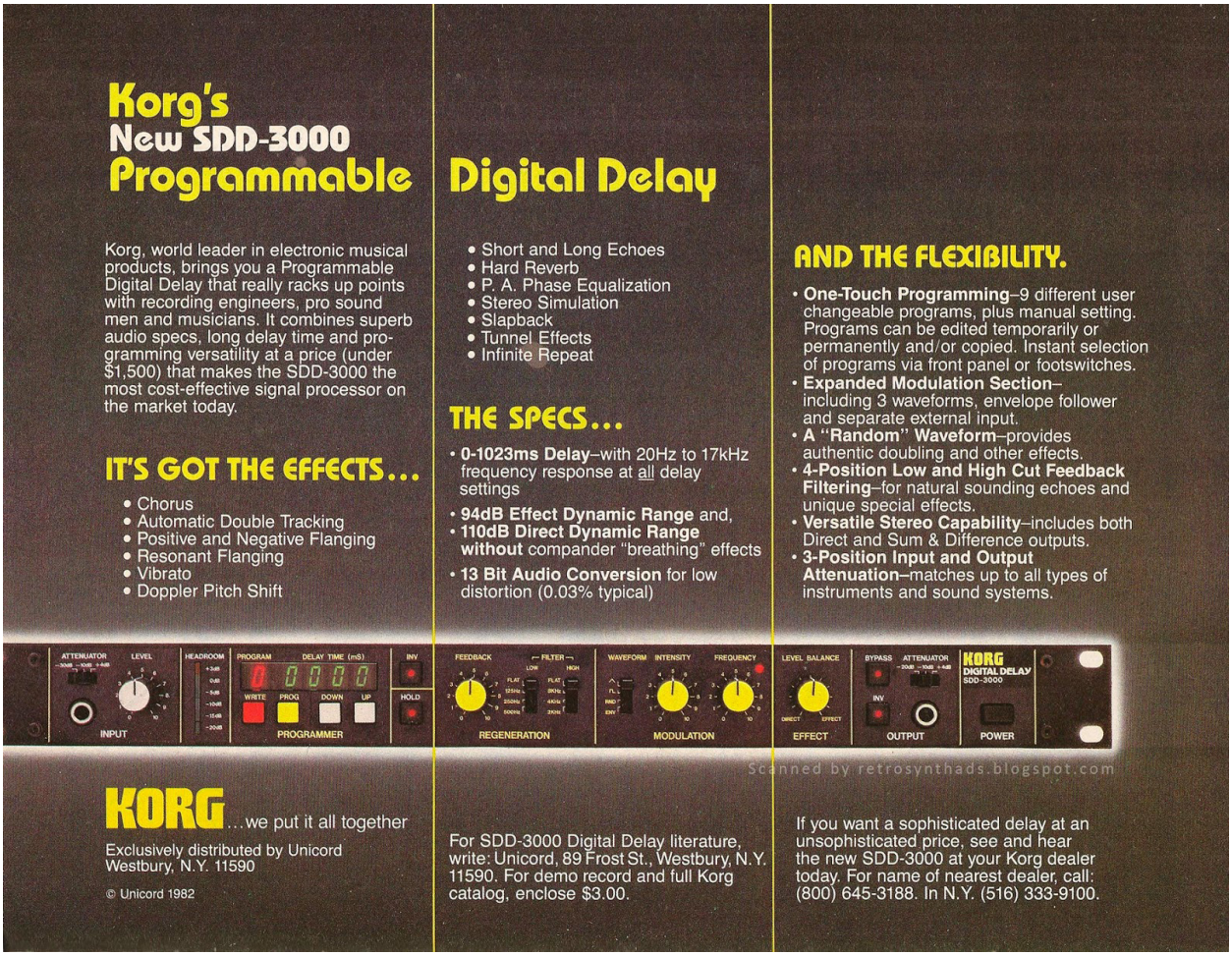
The Korg SDD-3000 includes artist presets from prominent users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also placed by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual).

Signal Flow

This signal flow diagram was printed on top of the original SDD-3000 rack unit. Although the plug-in does not have external control inputs, its algorithm is faithful to the signal flow of the original hardware.



Korg SDD-3000 signal flow diagram



Korg SDD-3000 advertisement, circa 1982

Korg SDD-3000 Controls

Control Groupings

Associated controls are grouped by processor function. Control descriptions in this chapter are similarly grouped.

INPUT

This section provides access to the classic Korg SDD-3000 input "attenuator" circuit with its distinctive preamp.

INPUT elements

INPUT ATTENUATOR

The stepped input ATTENUATOR helps match the level of signals connected to the SDD-3000 input. The -30 dB setting provides the most gain and is intended for instrument-level signals. The -10 dB and +4 dB settings are intended for line-level signals, with +4 dB providing the least amount of gain. Experimenting with ATTENUATOR settings can provide a range of tonal options.

> ***Note:*** *While the values of the ATTENUATOR switches may seem counter-intuitive, with lower numbers providing more gain, it is faithful to the original hardware circuit.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

Gain Stage Mode Control

When the plug-in is placed in a preamp channel's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application and Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, the input ATTENUATOR is the second gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob.

When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, a yellow rectangle surrounds this control in the plug-in interface (as shown at right), indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

> ***Tip:*** *Press and hold Apollo's preamp gain knob for three seconds to enter or exit Gain Stage Mode. When in Gain Stage Mode, press Apollo's preamp gain knob to cycle through the available gain stages. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for details.*

LEVEL

The LEVEL control sets the gain amount for the input preamp that follows the attenuator circuit. Judicious setting of input and output attenuators along with the LEVEL control opens up a range of clean or colored effects. The HEADROOM meter is useful when making these settings, to see how "hard" the signal is hitting the delay circuit.

Apollo Unison Interactions

Default Apollo Control

When the plug-in is placed in a preamp channel's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, LEVEL can be adjusted with Apollo's preamp gain knob (the hardware control on the interface panel) and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface. This bidirectional interaction is available even when Apollo is not in Gain Stage Mode.

Gain Stage Mode Control

When Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, LEVEL is the first gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob. When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, an orange ring surrounds this control in the plug-in interface (as shown at right), indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

HEADROOM Meter

The HEADROOM meter displays the signal level present at the input of the delay circuit. This can be useful when setting the input ATTENUATOR and LEVEL controls, to get a sense of whether the delay circuit input is operating within its more linear range (dimly-lit 0 dB or below), or being pushed into saturation or distortion (strongly-lit 0 dB or above).

> ***Note:*** *As with the original hardware, the HEADROOM meter will indicate an overload before the signal actually clips.*

MUTE

The MUTE switch, which is not available on the original hardware, mutes the dry signal entering the delay processor, while the wet processor output is still heard. MUTE is active when the switch's LED is lit.

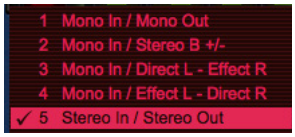
PROGRAMMER

This section contains controls for delay time, effect mode, and host sync.

PROGRAMMER elements

MODE

The MODE function selects the input/output routing mode for the delay processor. Clicking the MODE button increments through the available modes sequentially. Shift-clicking the button decrements through the available modes. For a drop menu containing all available modes (as shown at right), click the red EFFECT LCD display.



The following routing modes are available:

- **Mono In/Mono Out** – Monophonic input and output.
- **Mono In/Stereo "B" +/- Out** – Routes the standard wet/dry summed signal to one channel, and the "difference" (out-of-phase mix) of the same signals to the other channel. This can add dramatic stereo imaging effects to mono signals.
- **Mono In/Direct L-Effect R** – This mode accepts mono signals, and outputs the dry signal on the left channel, and the processed signal on the right channel.
- **Mono In/Effect L-Direct R** – This mode accepts mono signals, and outputs the processed signal on the left channel, and the dry signal on the right channel.
- **Stereo In/Stereo Out**– Unique to the plug-in, this mode provides true stereo processing of stereo signals. This option is not possible with the original hardware.

MODE Notes:

- If a stereo signal is input when SDD-3000 is in one of its mono-in modes (1, 2, 3, or 4), only the left input signal is processed.
- When the plug-in is inserted in a mono in/mono out configuration, mode 1 (Mono In/Mono Out) is the only available mode. In this case, the other modes in the drop menu are gray and cannot be selected.

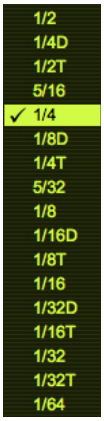
DELAY TIME Display

This LCD display shows the current delay time. When SYNC is inactive, the delay time is displayed in milliseconds. When SYNC is active, the delay time is displayed as a fractional rhythmic subdivision of the host application's current tempo.

The DELAY TIME display can be used to enter delay times and select tempo subdivisions. When SYNC is inactive, click the display to enter delay times directly using text entry. When SYNC is active (when a comma is shown in DELAY TIME display) click the display to view and select available rhythmic subdivision values from a drop menu.

SYNC

When SYNC is enabled, delay times are synchronized to the host's tempo instead of absolute time. SYNC delay times are fractional beat/bar rhythmic subdivision values. Click the SYNC button to toggle the state; SYNC is enabled when a "comma" is shown in the DELAY TIME display.



To adjust the rhythmic division in SYNC mode, use the UP/DOWN buttons, or click the DELAY TIME display to view and select available rhythmic subdivisions from a drop menu, as shown at right.

> ***Note:*** *For complete details about this feature, see the Tempo Synchronization chapter within the UAD System Manual.*

DOWN/UP

The DOWN & UP buttons can be used to specify the delay time. When SYNC is disabled, these buttons lower or raise the delay time in milliseconds. When SYNC is enabled, these buttons decrement/increment the available synchronized rhythmic subdivisions.

Tip: Press and hold the DOWN or UP buttons to increase the rate at which the delay times are changed.

REGENERATION

This section offers controls for delay feedback and filtering, as well as delay hold and wet signal inversion for phase effects.

REGENERATION elements

DELAY INVERT (INV)

Enabling this INV option inverts the polarity of the delayed signal. Polarity inversion is active when the switch's LED is lit.

Polarity inversion can create unique "hollow" chorus and flange effects by introducing phase cancellations and interactions.

HOLD

Enabling the HOLD option repeats the entire 1023 ms of content in the delay processor indefinitely, until the HOLD button is pressed again. HOLD is active when the switch's LED is lit.

HOLD can help create creative stuttering, swelling, or ringing effects, depending on the current processor settings. Other controls remain functional when HOLD is active, enabling further manipulation of the delay's memory content.

FEEDBACK

The FEEDBACK knob controls the amount of delayed signal that is fed back into the delay circuit's input. At lower settings, fewer repeats are heard. At higher settings, more repeats are heard. At very high settings, the delay can repeat infinitely, with each repeat "degrading" the signal in a colorful manner over time.

> ***Tip:*** *Enabling the HOLD option provides "infinite" repeats without the cumulative signal coloration caused by high FEEDBACK values.*

FILTERS

The four-position LOW and HIGH filter circuits apply to the delayed signal. When set to FLAT, the delayed signal is unaffected. The filters are used to create band-limited delay effects.

LOW – As the switch is moved downward the cutoff frequency is increased, filtering low frequency energy from the delayed signal.

HIGH – As the switch is moved downward the cutoff frequency is decreased, filtering high frequency energy from the delayed signal.

MODULATION

This section contains the waveform, intensity, and speed controls for modulating the delay time.

MODULATION elements

WAVEFORM

The WAVEFORM switch selects the shape of the delay time modulator. The following options are available:

- **Triangle –** A cyclical up-and-down shape with slanted linear slopes.
- **Square –** A cyclical up-and-down shape with vertical linear slopes.
- **RND (Random) –** A randomized motion, derived from a sample-and-hold circuit.

Note: *As with the original hardware, FREQUENCY is disabled in RND mode. Although the frequency LED still shows activity in RND mode, the FREQUENCY control doesn't actually do anything.*

- **ENV (Envelope) –** This mode employs an envelope follower on the audio input signal, shifting the delay time according to input signal dynamics.

INTENSITY

The INTENSITY control sets the amount of delay time modulation. Low settings allow for subtle changes over time. Higher settings invite more radical shifts.

FREQUENCY

FREQUENCY sets the rate of delay time modulation. When ENV selected, this control sets the release time of the envelope follower.

Note: *FREQUENCY has no effect when WAVEFORM is set to RND.*

FREQUENCY LED

The LED to the right of the FREQUENCY control changes its brightness to reflect the current value of the modulation circuit. When the LED brightens, the modulation circuit is in its higher ranges. When the LED dims, the circuit is in its lower ranges.

BALANCE

These controls provide for blending of the original and processed signals, and stereo positioning of the output signals.

BALANCE elements

EFFECT

The EFFECT control sets the mix between processed (wet) and source (dry) signals that appears at the output. At its center position, dry and wet are blended at a 1:1 ratio. As the control is rotated counter-clockwise towards the DIRECT label, the processed signal is decreased, with a 100% dry signal at the end of the range. As the control is rotated clockwise towards the EFFECT label, the processed signal is increased, with a 100% wet at the end of the range.

POSITION

The POSITION control, which is not available on the original hardware, continuously positions the output of the dry/wet blended signal across the stereo field. As the control is rotated counter-clockwise towards the “L” label, the right output channel is attenuated, with only the left signal heard at the end of the range. As the control is rotated clockwise towards the “R” indicator, the left output channel is attenuated, with only the right signal heard at the end of the range.

When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is locked in the center position.

Tip: *Click the “0” text label to return the POSITION knob to its center position.*

OUTPUT

This section provides the final output controls, with the classic Attenuator circuit and a range of utility settings.

OUTPUT elements

BYPASS

BYPASS disables the delay processor while the functions and sonics of the analog circuitry remain active. Bypass is active when the switch's LED is lit.

Tip: If HOLD is active when BYPASS is engaged, the looped phrase retained by the HOLD feature is heard again when BYPASS is disengaged.

OUTPUT ATTENUATOR

The stepped output ATTENUATOR helps match the level of signals connected to the SDD-3000 output. The -20 dB setting provides the most output gain, with +4 dB providing the least amount of output gain. Experimenting with ATTENUATOR settings can provide a range of tonal options.

> ***Note:*** *While the values of the ATTENUATOR switches may seem counter-intuitive, with lower numbers providing more gain, it is faithful to the original hardware circuit.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

Gain Stage Mode Control

When the plug-in is placed in a preamp channel's dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application and Apollo is in Gain Stage Mode, the output ATTENUATOR is the second gain stage that can be controlled with Apollo's preamp gain knob.

When this gain stage is selected in Gain Stage Mode, a green rectangle surrounds this control in the plug-in interface (as shown at right), indicating the parameter is available for bidirectional adjustment with the hardware knob and/or the software knob in the plug-in interface.

> ***Tip:*** *Press and hold Apollo's preamp gain knob for three seconds to enter or exit Gain Stage Mode. When in Gain Stage Mode, press Apollo's preamp gain knob to cycle through the available gain stages. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for details.*

OUTPUT INVERT (INV)

Enabling the output INV option inverts the polarity of the processed signal at the output. When used in by itself or in conjunction with the input INV option, a further variety of phase-manipulation effects are possible.

WET SOLO

Enabling WET SOLO mutes the dry signal entirely, mirroring the effect of turning the EFFECT knob fully clockwise to the 100% wet position. WET SOLO is active when the switch's LED is lit.

POWER

Turning POWER off turns off the DISPLAY TIME LCD, disables the SDD-3000 algorithm, unloads the plug-in from the UAD DSP. POWER is useful for comparing the processed sound to the original signal. Pressing POWER a second time re-enables the effect.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when Power is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

Korg SDD-3000 FAQ

What lengths did UA go to create Korg SDD-3000?

The Korg SDD-3000 delay has been out of production for many years now. And, even if you find one, many of the parts needed to repair and maintain these units are discontinued. Many dedicated fans of this delay have to find broken units just to steal parts from. These are just some of the reason finding a perfectly working unit can be costly and time consuming.

Once we found our "golden unit", a year long process went into uncovering all the analog and digital secrets this sought-after unit had to offer. First was the analog preamp & output section. Filled with JRC-made op-amps (the same type as many classic preamp, boost, and overdrive pedals of that era), the analog section is critical in achieving a pushed "front of amp" sound when used in a guitar rig.

Now comes the AD/DA converters. While many are used to seeing 16-bit or 24-bit converters these days, back then they decided on the more affordable 12-bit plus 1-bit design for an unusual 13-bit delay. Considered low resolution by today's standards, this gave the delay line a more gritty and organic sound. Along with its sample-rate based modulation, this gave the Korg SDD-3000 a sound like no other delay. All of these characteristics were painstakingly measured and reproduced for our plugin.

And with Unison technology, the analog preamp responds to your guitar just like the original hardware!

What is the Korg SDD-3000?

This now vintage rackmounted 80's digital delay became the sound of some of the biggest guitar driven hits of that era. With its instrument friendly analog input and output stage, many artists found it perfect for driving guitar amps to the edge with punch and clarity.

Why does the SDD-3000 matter?

It's all about one major artist, U2. According to Daniel Lanois, the producer for many of U2's biggest recordings, the Edge's rig was simple starting with THE UNFORGETTABLE FIRE:

"It wasn't a complicated rig: just a guitar he liked through a Korg SDD-3000 digital delay into a Vox. Three components, mono - that's it. The great thing about the Korg's is its three-position level switch, which lets you hit the amp with about 10 extra dB. It's more overdriven than if you just plugged the guitar straight into the amp, even when it's on bypass." Guitar Player Magazine – 1993

Next to people like David Gilmour from Pink Floyd, The Edge's sound has been a topic of discussion for many guitar effects devotees. It is the stuff of legend. And next to making the Vox AC-30 cool again for pop/rock music, he made rhythmic delay hooks practically an entire style of playing. Just listen to "Pride - In the Name of Love".

How does Unison work with the SDD-3000?

To enable near-zero latency Unison recording, simply plug your guitar into the Hi-Z input of your Apollo interface, and place the plug-in in the dedicated Unison insert in Apollo's Console application. In addition to physical gain and input impedance control of the Apollo's hardware preamps, Unison allows tactile bidirectional control of the modeled amp parameters. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for more information.

How do I run the SDD-3000 in stereo?

To take advantage of the SDD-3000's stereo features and sound, insert the plug-in on an aux bus in Apollo's Console, then route the signal to the aux via the input channel's send control. Alternately, you can insert the plug-in on a stereo track in your DAW.

How do Unison preamp plug-ins work with Apollo's built-in preamps?

Apollo's preamplifiers are digitally controlled and offer high-resolution, ultra-transparent translation from input to converter. While fantastic sounding on their own, these preamps are also designed as an ideal starting point to add processing color through Unison-enabled preamp plug-ins. Specifically, Unison preamp plug-ins control the analog impedance and gain structure of the Apollo's physical preamps — so hardware and software works in tandem to very convincingly emulate classic tube and solid state preamp designs.

How do I monitor the SDD-3000 in Apollo's Console, but send only a dry DI signal to the DAW for re-tracking/tone tweaking later?

Simply place the plug-in in any regular (non-Unison) INSERTS slot in Console, and set Console's INSERT EFFECTS function to UAD MON (print dry) instead of UAD REC (print wet).

I own UAD-2 hardware and/or Apollo 16. Can I still use the SDD-3000?

Yes. Unison plug-ins can also be used as standard UAD plug-ins inside your DAW of choice, or for realtime processing in any Apollo Console insert. Unison plug-ins are great for adding color and tone with any UAD-2 hardware, but Unison preamp interactivity is only possible with Apollo interfaces that have physical mic preamps.

KORG

Original Korg SDD-3000 hardware unit

All visual and aural references to the SDD-3000 and all use of Korg trademarks are being made with written permission from Korg Inc. Special thanks to Hironori Fukuda, Kei Nakajima, John McCubbery, Shige Kawagoe, Yoshihiro Hashimoto, and Masaki Ono.

LA-3A Compressor

Signature Solid State Electro-Optical Compressor

The LA-3A Classic Audio Leveler made its debut at the 1969 NY AES show, and marked the departure from the tube design of the Teletronix LA-2A. The LA-3A incorporated components and design concepts from the Putnam-designed 1176LN Limiting Amplifier, giving the LA-3A its own distinctive sound. This plug-in provides the same unique compression character and solid mid-range — capable of moving sounds right to the front of your speakers — that make its analog counterpart a favorite among audio professionals everywhere.

Immediately embraced as a studio workhorse, the LA-3A is still widely used today. Engineers and producers the world over favor the LA-3A for its unique compression characteristics and sonic signature. Modeled from a unit in UA's vintage collection, our digital emulation of the LA-3A faithfully captures the hardware's sound, working magic on vocals, guitars and drums.

LA-3A interface

LA-3A Controls

Comp/Lim

This switch changes the characteristics of the compressor I/O curve. When set to Compress, the curve is more gentle, and presents a low compression ratio. When set to Limit, a higher compression ratio is used.

Gain

The Gain knob adjusts the output level (by up to 50 dB). Make sure to adjust the Gain control after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Peak Reduction control. The Gain control does not affect the amount of compression.

Peak Reduction

This control adjusts the amount of gain reduction, as well as the relative threshold. A Peak Reduction value of 0 yields no compression. Rotate this control clockwise until the desired amount of compression is achieved (to monitor the Peak Reduction, set the VU Meter to Gain Reduction). The Peak Reduction should be adjusted independently of the Gain control.

Meter

This switch sets the mode of the VU Meter and also disables the plug-in. When set to Gain Reduction, the VU Meter indicates the Gain Reduction level in dB. When set to output, the VU Meter represents the output level (the output meter is not calibrated).

When in the Off position, the plug-in is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced.

> ***Note:*** *(UAD-2 only) UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), setting the switch to Off will not reduce DSP usage.*

Stereo Operation

As with all UAD plug-ins, phase-coherent stereo imaging is maintained when the LA-3A plug-in is used on a stereo signal.

Lexicon 224 Digital Reverb

An Era-Defining Digital Reverb

From the moment it was unleashed in 1978, the Lexicon 224 Digital Reverb — with its tactile, slider-based controller and famously lush reverb tail — single-handedly defined the sound of an entire era. From Talking Heads' Remain In Light and Grandmaster Flash & The Furious Five's The Message, to Vangelis' incredible

Blade Runner soundtrack and U2's The Unforgettable Fire, the Lexicon 224 remains one of the most popular digital reverb units of all time. Now you can track and mix with this singular piece of audio history with the Lexicon 224 Reverb plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with the legendary Lexicon 224 Digital Reverb, using the same algorithms as the original hardware
- Employ eight classic reverb programs and one chorus program on drums, vocals, guitars, and more
- Use the Plate and Concert programs for vintage '80s sounds
- Mix with presets from famous Lexicon 224 users Chuck Zwicky (Prince), Kevin Killen (Peter Gabriel), and others

A Breakthrough in Emulation

Using the exact algorithms and control processor code from the original hardware, the Lexicon 224 plug-in precisely captures all eight legendary reverb programs and the chorus program — based on the Lexicon 224's final and hard-to-find firmware version 4.4. The Lexicon 224 plug-in also incorporates the original hardware's input transformers and early AD/DA 12-bit gain stepping converters.

Easy Navigation

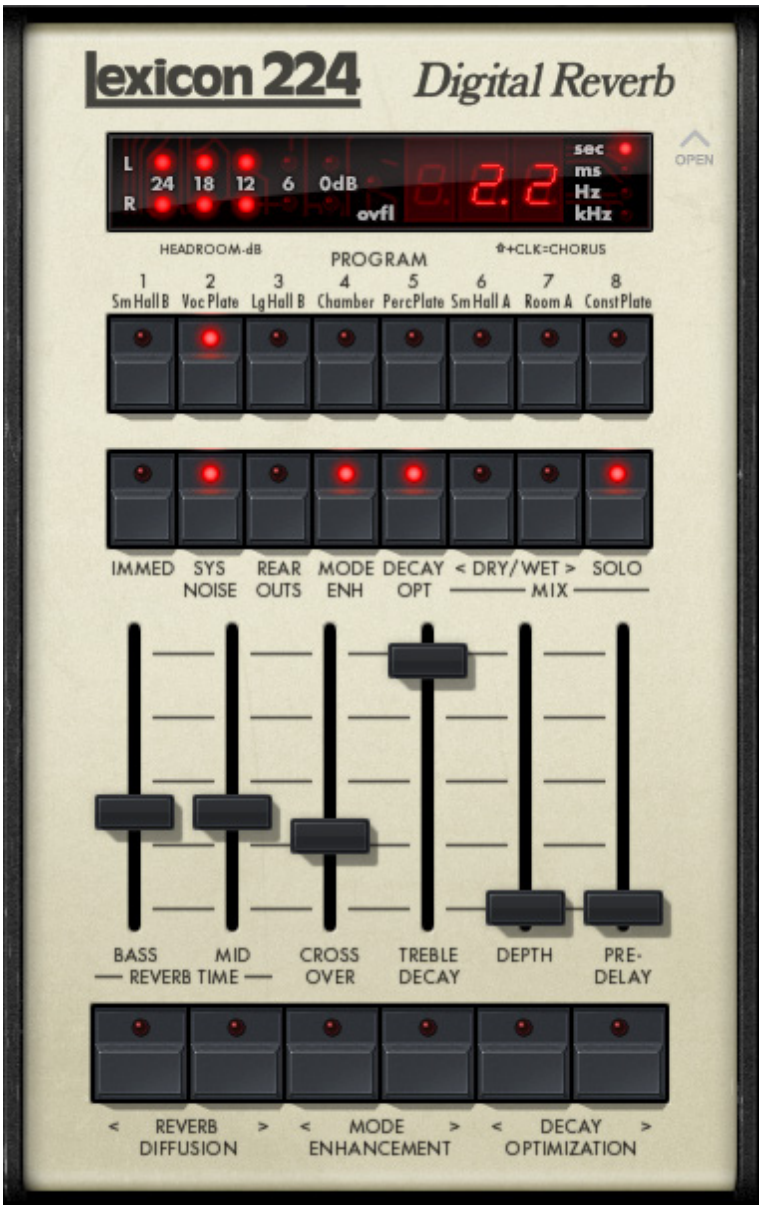
Every parameter from the original hardware is present in the Lexicon 224 plug-in, and exposed as dedicated sliders and buttons. Lexicon's distinctive Bass/Mid "split decay" adjustments and Crossover control set the highly tunable reverb image, while the Treble Decay rolls off high frequencies. Use the Depth control to adjust the distance between source and reverb, while Predelay produces a short delay between the sound source and the onset of reverberation. Diffusion affects how quickly the echo density in the reverb builds up over time.

Modeled to the Last Detail

For total authenticity, the UAD-2-only System Noise control enables or disables the inherent dynamic system noise of the original Lexicon 224 hardware — removing the modeled gain stepping, parameter zippering, and quiescent noise.

Clicking the OPEN text to the right of the display panel exposes several hidden controls, including Input/Output gain and Pitch Shift, and even a selectable "Bug Fix" mode which enables/disables historical bugs fixes from the Hall B and Chorus programs.

Taken together, the Lexicon 224 plug-in for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces is the world's most authentic model of a true studio classic.



Lexicon 224 interface

Operational Overview

Graphical User Interface

The original Lexicon 224 consists of two hardware elements. The "mainframe" rack-mountable 4U chassis contains the power supply, circuitry, and audio input/output connectors. The remote control unit has a display, buttons, and sliders which control the 224 parameters and functionality. Some of these buttons and sliders have dual and even triple functionality, which makes using certain "buried" functions a tricky procedure.

The Lexicon 224 interface resembles the appearance and functionality of the original hardware remote control. Operation has been simplified however by reassigning the buried "shift" functions to the buttons that are no longer necessary in a plug-in (such as managing saved programs). Additional parameters are exposed by opening a panel cover.

Lexicon 224 Programs

The original Lexicon 224 hardware has *programs* that are defined by the firmware ROM (Read-Only Memory chip) installed in the unit. A Lexicon 224 program is comprised of a unique DSP algorithm and an initial set of factory parameter values voiced by Lexicon. In modern terminology, these initial values would be called a preset.

In Lexicon 224 hardware-speak, a program is *called* (loaded) which selects the DSP algorithm and sets the default "recommended" factory parameter values. These settings can then be modified with the various controls and saved in a user *register* for later recall. The plug-in behaves the same way, except user registers are not implemented. Instead, settings are stored within the session file or they can be saved as a preset for later recall (as with all other UAD plug-ins).

Lexicon 224 version 4.4 firmware contains nine programs (the maximum available for the unit), consisting of eight reverb programs and one chorus program. Descriptions of the various programs can be found in the Program Descriptions.

Lexicon 224 Algorithms

The active algorithm determines the inherent sonic character of the current program. Algorithms are changed by selecting a different program; the algorithm cannot be changed within the same program.

Lexicon 224 v4.4 contains seven unique algorithms. All seven algorithms and the nine factory programs have been authentically modeled in the Lexicon 224 plug-in. There are more programs than algorithms because some programs use the same algorithm. See Program Descriptions for details.

Lexicon 224 Buttons

Like the original hardware, Lexicon 224 buttons are momentary-style and don't latch in a down position. When a function is unavailable within a particular program, the button's LED will not illuminate when clicked (the LEDs also don't illuminate for the increment/decrement buttons).

The first click of an increment/decrement button displays the current value of the parameter; the value is actually changed only with subsequent clicks. This feature enables viewing the current setting without changing it.

> ***Tip:*** *For the inc/dec buttons (e.g., Reverb Diffusion), the value can be continuously changed by holding the button down.*

Lexicon 224 Sliders

The six sliders control the main reverb parameters within a program. These are the most obvious controls to reach for when fine-tuning a reverb program to best suit the material at hand.

In P9 Chorus A, the first four sliders don't control the labeled parameters. See P9 Chorus A for descriptions of the sliders in this program.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking a slider "cap" will show its value in the Numerical Display. Clicking the text label of any slider will return that slider to the default value for the active program.*

Inputs & Outputs

The Lexicon 224 hardware has two inputs (see Mono/Stereo below), and four discrete outputs, labeled as A, B, C, and D. Outputs A and C were designed to be used as the main stereo left/right outputs. The other two outputs, B and D, are implemented in some programs for use as quadraphonic reverb.

The UAD Lexicon 224 fully models the individual sonics of all four outputs when available in the program algorithm. The alternate B and D outputs are available via the Rear Outs control.

> ***Note:*** *The dry signal at the Lexicon 224 output is completely unprocessed.*

Mono/Stereo Operation

The Lexicon 224 hardware has dual channel inputs (left and right) and is a true stereo processor. Like the hardware, when the Lexicon 224 plug-in is used in a stereo-in/stereo out configuration, the left and right channel signals are both processed.

When used in a mono-in/stereo out configuration, the mono input is sent to both channels of the stereo processor.

When configured as mono-in/mono-out (MIMO), output A is used exclusively except in programs 2, 4, and 9, where outputs A and C are summed into one monophonic signal. This implementation is recommended in the original hardware manual. If Rear Outs is enabled in MIMO mode, outputs B and D are used instead of A and C. See MIMO Program Outputs for a list of outputs used with each program in this configuration.

Primary & Hidden Controls

The primary controls (those that are most typically used) are on the main "remote control" panel interface. Additional (less typically used) controls are available in a hidden control panel. The hidden control panel (see The Lexicon 224 Hidden Controls) is accessed by clicking the OPEN text label to the right of the Display Panel.

Parameter Ranges & Default Values

The parameter value ranges, default values, and availability of particular parameters within a given program may vary depending on which program is active. Parameter ranges are listed in the individual control descriptions. Default parameter values for each program are listed in the Program Descriptions.

> ***Note:*** *Extreme parameter settings can cause Lexicon 224 to self-oscillate or cause other unexpected sounds. This behavior is identical to the original hardware.*

Display Panel

The Lexicon 224 display panel (shown below) consists of four display elements: Numerical Value, LED Value, Stereo Level Meters, and Overflow indicator. Exactly what is displayed here is dependent on the parameter being edited (if any) and the state of the Display Hold switch.

Lexicon 224 Display Panel

Numerical Value

The three-character Numerical Value Display shows the value of parameters as they are being edited. The value of the edited parameter is displayed for 1.5 seconds unless the Display Hold switch is set to infinite, in which case the last edited parameter value continues to be displayed.

If Display Hold is set to 1.5 (the default value), after parameters are edited, the value displayed here reverts after 1.5 seconds to a reverb time which is related to the combined Bass and Mid slider values. This relationship is based on approximations designed by the original Lexicon engineers; the actual decay times may not match the displayed value.

Value LED

The Value LED shows the units of the numerical value being displayed for a particular control. For parameters in the time domain, the “sec” (seconds) or “ms” (milliseconds) LED is lit. For parameters in the frequency domain, the “Hz” (Hertz) or “kHz” (kilohertz) LED is lit. For parameters that have no units value (e.g., Dry/Wet Mix), the value LED does not illuminate.

LED Meters

The six-segment LED meters display the left and right signal input levels at the Lexicon 224 analog-to-digital converters, which are fully modeled. The Meter LEDs indicate levels at -24 dB, -18 dB, -12 dB, -6 dB, and 0 dB. When the 0 dB LED illuminates, input clipping has occurred.

Overflow LED

The Overflow LED illuminates when an arithmetic processor overflow has occurred. Overflows can happen when loud signals are present at the input, when reverb decay times are long, and/or when self-oscillation occurs. Unexpected sonic artifacts and/or ringing can occur when the processor overflows.

Overflow behavior in the hardware is fully modeled in the plug-in. If processor overflows are causing undesirable sounds, overflow can usually be eliminated by reducing the levels with the Input controls, or by reducing the value of the Bass, Mid, and/or Treble Decay controls.

Primary Controls

Program

The Program buttons are used to specify which of the nine default Lexicon programs, and its associated algorithm, is active. See Lexicon 224 Programs for an overview.

Eight reverb programs and one chorus program are available. Click a reverb program button 1 - 8 to select that program. To select the chorus program, shift+click any program button, or click the CLK=CHORUS text label. The program button LED indicates which program is active except in chorus mode, when all eight program button LEDs are illuminated.

Lexicon 224 Program Buttons

When a program is loaded, the original default Lexicon "recommended" factory settings for that algorithm are also loaded at the same time, overwriting previous settings (except when Immediate mode is active). Program settings can then be adjusted to taste using any available controls.

The Program Descriptions contains details about each program.

> ***Important:*** *If the program is changed when Immediate mode is disabled, settings from the previously selected program are lost. To retain custom program settings for future use, save the settings as a plug-in preset by using the UAD Toolbar or host application preset management techniques.*

Reverb Time

Reverb Time is the duration of the decay of the reverberant sound (the "reverb tail"). The reverb tail time is separated into two frequency component bands, Bass and Mid. The separation frequency of the two bands is defined by the Crossover control.

Bass

The Bass slider defines the reverb decay time for the frequencies below the Crossover value. Higher Bass values result in longer bass frequency decay times (when Crossover is not set too low). The Bass reverb decay time value, in seconds, is shown in the Numerical Display. The available range is 0.6 seconds to 70 seconds.

This control works in conjunction with the Crossover parameter, which defines the range of the bass frequencies affected by the Bass control. Therefore adjusting Bass may have little audible effect if Crossover is set to a very low value.

Mid

The Mid slider defines the reverb decay time for the frequencies above the Crossover value. Higher Mid values result in longer high frequency decay times (when Crossover is not set too high). The Mid reverb decay value, in seconds, is shown in the Numerical Display. The available range is 0.6 seconds to 70 seconds.

Mid works in conjunction with the Crossover parameter, which defines the range of high frequencies affected by the Mid control. Therefore adjusting Mid may have little audible effect if Crossover is set to a very high value.

Mid is a slightly misleading label, because this control actually affects the reverb decay for all frequencies above the Crossover value (not just the midrange). However, because the "highs" in the reverb can be rolled off with the Treble Decay control (and usually are), the midrange frequencies are often more prominent than a full-range tail.

Crossover

This control defines the crossover frequency (the split point) between the bass and upper frequency bands in the reverb tail. Higher Crossover values make the Bass parameter control a wider range of frequencies. Conversely, lower values make the Mid parameter control a wider range of frequencies. The available range is 100 Hz to 10.9 kHz.

Crossover affects the reverb decay because it works in conjunction with the Bass and Mid reverb time parameters, which both define the length of the reverb tail (one control for each frequency band). If those parameters are set to very short times, the result of adjusting Crossover may be very subtle.

> ***Note:*** *Crossover will have no apparent effect if Bass and Mid are set to the same value.*

Treble Decay

Treble Decay sets a frequency above which decay is very rapid. Lower values will produce a "darker" reverb with less high frequency content. If Treble Decay is set very low, then adjusting Bass, Mid, and Crossover may have little to no audible effect. The available range is 100 Hz to 10.9 kHz.

> ***Tip:*** *Treble Decay adjusts the AMOUNT of reverb tail highs, while Mid adjusts the TIME.*

Depth

Depth sets the apparent distance between a source and its reverb, much like the positioning of microphones in an echo chamber. As the value is increased, the apparent distance from the source increases. The available range is 0 - 71, with zero being "close" and 71 being "far" (the numbers are arbitrary). The default value is program dependent.

> ***Note:*** *Depth is not available in P9 Chorus A. In this program, the display is not updated when the Depth slider is moved.*

Reverb Diffusion

In most programs, Diffusion affects how quickly the echo density in the reverb builds up over time. In the original hardware, this parameter was usually referred to as "Shift-Depth" (changing the diffusion value required holding down the shift button while adjusting the depth amount).

Click the left ("<") decrement button to decrease the Diffusion value; click the right (">") increment button to increase the value. The available range is 0 - 63 (the numbers are arbitrary). The default value is program dependent; the Program Descriptions lists the default values for each program.

> ***Note:*** *Diffusion is unavailable in P4 Acoustic Chamber.*

Zero is the least dense setting. Density increases as the Diffusion value is increased, but setting Diffusion higher than 40 can actually sound less dense. The fastest density buildup is achieved with Diffusion values near the middle of the range (approximately 32-37).

Higher Diffusion values are frequently desirable when the material has a lot of percussion. Higher Diffusion can also contribute to a smoother-sounding reverb. With low Diffusion values the early reverb will be "grainy" and sparse, but will produce a clear, bright sound that is very useful with strings, horns, and vocals. Low Diffusion is also useful in classical music or in adding a sense of depth to an overall mix. Note that in Lexicon 224, lower frequencies are generally less diffuse.

> ***Note:*** *If Immediate mode is active, the Diffusion value is retained when changing programs.*

Predelay

Predelay produces a short delay between the sound source and the onset of reverberation. Higher Predelay values increase the time before reverb onset. The range of this parameter varies depending on the active program; see the table below for the available values. The default value is program dependent.

Lexicon 224 Predelay Ranges

Program	Predelay Range	Program	Predelay Range
1. Small Concert Hall B	24 - 152	6. Small Concert Hall A	24 - 152
2. Vocal Plate	0 - 107	7. Room A	24 - 255
3. Large Concert Hall B	24 - 152	8. Constant Density Plate A	5 - 185
4. Acoustic Chamber	25 - 255	9. Chorus A	0 - 253
5. Percussion Plate A	0 - 107	Note: Predelay values are in miliseconds.	

Immediate

When Immediate ("IMMED") is enabled, current parameter values are retained when a new program is selected. When Immediate is inactive and a program is selected, the Lexicon default factory preset parameter values for the program are loaded and the control sliders move to the preset values.

Enabling Immediate mode is convenient for quickly auditioning the various program algorithms using the same "persistent" parameter values. Disabling Immediate mode is convenient for quickly auditioning the various programs with the Lexicon factory default settings.

The default Immediate value is OFF. Immediate affects the following parameters: Bass, Mid, Crossover, Treble Decay, Depth, Predelay, Diffusion, Mode Enhancement, Pitch Shift, Decay Optimization, and Rear Outs.

> ***Important:*** *When Immediate is off and a program is changed, previously modified parameter values are lost, unless the settings were saved as a preset or if the session file was previously saved so it can be recalled.*

System Noise

This UAD-only control ("SYS NOISE") enables or disables the modeled inherent dynamic system noise of the original Lexicon 224 hardware. Disabling System Noise enables a more modern-sounding (i.e., cleaner) 224. Click the button to toggle the state; System Noise is active when the button LED is lit. The default state is ON.

The elements of the modeled System Noise include quantization effects (at input A/D, output D/A, and within the algorithm), zipper/stepping noise when adjusting parameters, transformer distortion, and the quiescent noise floor.

Zipper/stepping noise when adjusting parameters can be defeated by disabling System Noise. However, zipper/stepping noise in delay modulation (i.e., Mode Enhancement) can only be reduced, but not completely defeated, by disabling System Noise.

> ***Note:*** *System Noise is a global (per instance) parameter; its state does not change when different programs are selected.*

Rear Outs

The Rear Outs control is available to select the alternate pair when the algorithm has alternate sonics at outputs B and D. See Inputs & Outputs for an overview of the hardware implementation.

Rear Outs Notes

- The left/right outputs of the plug-in always reflect hardware outputs A and C respectively when Rear Outs is inactive, and outputs B and D respectively when Rear Outs is active.
- Outputs A and C are "recommended" for stereo use (the rear outs are generally not used in typical applications).
- Outputs A and C are identical to D and B respectively in the following programs: P2 Vocal Plate A, P5 Percussion Plate A, P8 Constant Density Plate A, and P9 Chorus A. Consequently, the Rear Outs control effectively swaps the left/right outputs in these programs.

Mode Enhancement

Mode Enhancement makes the sound of the Lexicon 224 programs more natural by preventing room modes from ringing in the reverb tail. Mode Enhancement works by continuously modulating certain delay lines (taps) within the program algorithms, which increases the effective density without thickening the reverb itself.

Mode Enhancement is factory-optimized for each program and should not require adjustment in typical use. For this reason, it was deliberately made difficult to access in the original hardware. However, creative use of the parameter is encouraged by making it easier to access in the plug-in.

Mode Enhancement has three control elements: Enable, Amount, and Pitch Shift. As in the original hardware, lower values of Mode Enhance Amount and higher values of Pitch Shift increase "movement" and make the result more prominent.

> ***Note:*** *The Mode Enhance Amount and Pitch Shift controls have no effect unless the Mode Enhance Enable control is active.*

Mode Enhance Enable

This button ("MODE ENH") enables or disables Mode Enhancement for the active program. Mode Enhancement is active when the button LED is lit. The default state is ON for all programs.

> ***Tip:*** *This control, just as with the original hardware, resets the algorithm. Therefore Mode Enhance Enable can be used to quickly "kill" the reverb tail while staying in the same program.*

Mode Enhance Amount

These two adjacent buttons control the amount of Mode Enhancement, or technically speaking, the amount of time between delay line updates. Click the left ("<") button to decrement the value; click the right (">") button to increment the value. The available range is 1 through 16. Lower values increase the effect.

Mode Enhance Pitch Shift

Pitch Shift is a secondary parameter of Mode Enhancement that controls the size of the delay line update steps. Lower values produce smaller steps, while higher values produce larger steps. Click the left ("<") button to
decrement the value; click the right (">") button to increment the value. The available range is 1 through 16. Higher values increase the effect.

The Pitch Shift controls are accessed in the Hidden Controls panel.

Decay Optimization

Decay Optimization improves the Lexicon 224 reverb clarity and naturalness by dynamically reducing reverb diffusion and coloration in response to input signal levels. However, if set too high, it can make the decay less even. Decay Optimization has two control elements: Enable and Amount.

Decay Optimization is factory-optimized for each program and should not require adjustment in typical use. For this reason, it was deliberately made difficult to access in the original hardware. However, creative use of the parameter is encouraged by making it easier to access in the plug-in.

Decay Optimize Enable

This button ("DECAY OPT") enables Decay Optimization for the active program. Decay Optimization is active when the button LED is lit. The default state is ON.

> ***Note:*** *Decay Optimization is unavailable for P8 Constant Density Plate A and P9 Chorus.*

Decay Optimize Amount

These two adjacent buttons control the amount of Decay Optimization. Click the left ("<") button to decrement the value; click the right (">") button to increment the value. The available range is 1 through 16. As in the original hardware, lower values make the result more prominent.

> ***Note:*** *The Decay Optimization Amount controls have no effect unless the Decay Optimization Enable control is active.*

Mix Controls

The Dry, Wet, and Solo parameters control the effect mix in the plug-in. These controls are not available in the original hardware.

> ***Note:*** *The Mix controls are global parameters; their state does not change when different programs are selected.*

Solo

When Solo is activated, the Dry/Wet mix is set to 100% wet and the Dry/Wet controls are deactivated. Solo mode is optimal when using Lexicon 224 in the "classic" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When Lexicon 224 is used on a channel insert, Solo should be deactivated. The default state is ON.

> ***Note:*** *Solo is a global (per Lexicon 224 plug-in instance) control.*

Dry/Wet

These two buttons control the balance between the reverb processor and the source signal when Solo mode is inactive. Click the DRY button to reduce the reverb amount; click the WET button to increase the reverb amount.

The Dry/Wet mix is indicated in the Numerical Display as a percentage. A value of 50 produces an equal blend of the wet and dry signals. Values greater than 50 emphasize the wet signal, and values less than 50 emphasize the dry signal.

Clicking the DRY button once will decrement the value by one percent; clicking WET once will increment the value by one percent. To increase the fine resolution when adjusting these controls, hold SHIFT (on the computer keyboard) when clicking the controls. Shift+click will decrement (DRY) and increment (WET) by a value of 0.1 percent instead of one percent.

The Dry/Wet controls are typically used when Lexicon 224 is inserted on individual channels. When Lexicon 224 is used on a group/bus in a typical reverb send/return configuration, set to 100% WET or activate SOLO mode.

Hidden Controls

Additional UAD controls are available in a hidden control panel. Refer to the image below in parameter descriptions.

The Lexicon 224 Hidden Controls

Access

The hidden controls are exposed by clicking the "OPEN" text to the right of the Display Panel. Conversely, the exposed panel is closed by clicking the "CLOSE" text while the panel is open.

> ***Note:*** *The last-used state of the Hidden Controls panel (open or closed) is retained when a new Lexicon 224 plug-in is instantiated.*

Pitch Shift

Pitch Shift is a component of Mode Enhancement. See Mode Enhance Pitch Shift for parameter details.

Input Gain

The independent left ("L") and right ("R") Input Gain parameters control the signal levels at the input to the reverb processor. They do not affect the dry signal, so Input Gain can be used to adjust the wet/dry mix. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±12 dB. The right channel control is unavailable when Lexicon 224 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

As signal levels into the Lexicon 224 increase, the analog and digital response of the device becomes increasingly nonlinear. If signals are too high, the Lexicon 224 A/D inputs and/or processor can overload, lighting the Overflow LED and causing sonic artifacts. See Overflow LED for more information.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the text label ("I") to return the value of both channels to zero.*

Output Level

The independent left ("L") and right ("R") Output Level parameters control the signal levels at the output of the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is - ∞ (infinite) dB to +12 dB. The right channel control is unavailable when Lexicon 224 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the text label ("Output Level") to return the value of both channels to zero.*

Link

Link/unlink allows the left and right controls for Input Gain and Output Level to be unlinked (non-ganged) in order to apply a different value for each channel. Link is inactive when the LED is unlit. Click the Link LED to toggle the state. The default state is ON.

If the left and right controls have different values when link is inactive and Link is engaged, the left channel value is copied to the right channel (thereby overwriting the right channel value).

When Link is active, automation data is written and read for the left channel only. The automation for the left channel controls both channels in Link mode.

> ***Note:*** *When link is active, modifying the right channel parameters will have no effect when changed from a control surface or when in "controls only" (non-GUI) mode.*

Bug Fixes

The original Lexicon 224 code contains programming errors in the Hall B and Chorus algorithms. These computer code bugs can cause incorrect Bass decay times (Hall B programs) and undesirable "pops" and/or "thumps" in the right channel (Chorus program) with certain source signals and parameter configurations.

The bugs have been corrected in the UAD implementation of the plug-in, but we have provided the option of using the original code for the sake of pure authenticity.

The UA logo is actually a switch. When the UA logo is illuminated, the source code bugs are fixed. The default state is ON. Click the UA logo to disable the UA bug fixes and revert to the original hardware behavior.

Display Hold

The Display Hold switch alters the behavior of the Numerical Display (See Numerical Value). In the original hardware, the values of parameters that are being modified are displayed for 3 seconds before reverting back to displaying the average decay time.

The Hold switch changes this behavior. When set to infinite ("∞"), the Numerical Display will continue to show the last modified parameter value. When set to infinite and a program is changed, the average decay time is displayed until a parameter is modified.

> ***Note:*** *The last-used state of the Display Hold parameter is retained when a new Lexicon 224 plug-in is instantiated.*

Power

The Power switch is a bypass control. Click the switch to change the Power state. When bypassed, plug-in processing is disabled, and the Display Panel and all button LEDs are dimmed.

Program Descriptions

P1 Small Concert Hall B

This program emulates the sound of a small concert hall, with moderate initial density and moderately non-uniform decay. It is optimized for reverb times of 1.5 to 5 seconds (for longer decay times, P3 Large Concert Hall B is recommended instead). The most natural sound is obtained when Bass and Mid are relatively close to the same setting. This program uses the exact same algorithm as P3 Large Concert Hall B.

P2 Vocal Plate

This is a plate reverb emulation optimized for voice. It has low initial density and coloration, resulting in a clear, bright sound. This program uses the exact same algorithm as P5 Percussion Plate A, but with slightly different inherent diffusion.

P3 Large Concert Hall B

This program emulates the sound of a large concert hall, with low density and minimal coloration. It is optimized for long reverb times. With percussive sounds, increasing the diffusion value is recommended. This program uses the exact same algorithm as P1 Small Concert Hall B.

P4 Acoustic Chamber

This program sounds like a chamber, but with less initial density. It tends to sound best with shorter reverb times (2 to 5 seconds). The most chamber-like sound is obtained with Depth at a value of zero. Diffusion is preset in this program and cannot be modified. Unlike all other Lexicon 224 programs, this algorithm has monophonic input.

P5 Percussion Plate A

This is a plate reverb emulation optimized for percussive sounds. It has high initial density and coloration, and sounds best with shorter reverb times. This program uses the exact same algorithm as P2 Vocal Plate, but with slightly different inherent diffusion.

P6 Small Concert Hall A

This program is similar to P1 Small Concert Hall B, except it is brighter overall and the Treble Decay control is more gentle. The original hardware manual recommends equalizing this reverb return about +3 dB below 200 Hz to “add to the richness and naturalness of the reverb.”

P7 Room A

Program 7 is a room simulator with moderate to high initial density and low to moderate coloration. It sounds great on speech and many types of music. This program presents an especially wide output when used with a stereo input source.

P8 Constant Density Plate A

In naturally occurring reverb, new reflections are continuously added to the decaying sound over time. This sonic build-up increases density and coloration in the reverb tail. P8 Constant Density Plate A has high initial density and coloration (giving a "plate" type of sound), however the density does not increase over time and remains inherently constant. This can result in less "swoosh" in the reverb tail and provides another creative option. Decay Optimization and true stereo input are unavailable in this program (inputs are always summed to mono, even in stereo-in/stereo-out configurations).

P9 Chorus A

The Chorus A program is an eight-voice chorus with four voices on each stereo channel. Each voice has a time delay which varies randomly and independently, resulting in a thick, rich sound. To select the chorus program, shift+click any program button, or click the CLK=CHORUS text label.

When Chorus is active, each of the first four sliders controls the gain level for a stereo pair of voices. The sliders are linear faders, not log faders, so the default positions of all four sliders (about 1/2 way up) correspond to gains 6 dB below maximum.

The first two voice pairs have overlapping delay ranges. Phasing/flanging effects can be achieved by setting their gains to similar levels. Phasing/flanging can also be achieved (with a mono or centered input) when the left and right channels are mixed together, such as when used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

The Reverb Diffusion control is active in this program. Diffusion acts upon the third and fourth pair of stereo voices, producing a cluster of tightly spaced echoes whose shape is governed by the Diffusion control. The Lexicon 224 is one of the few processors that has diffusion on chorus voices; this feature is a primary factor in its distinctive character.

> ***Note:*** *The Bass, Mid, Crossover, and Treble Decay behaviors are unavailable in P9 Chorus A. Instead, each of these sliders controls the level of a stereo voice pair.*

MIMO Program Outputs

When Lexicon 224 is used in a mono-in/mono-out (MIMO) configuration, the hardware outputs that are used for the plug-in are listed in the table below. These software assignments are per the guidelines in the original hardware manual and cannot be modified.

Program	Output(s)	Program	Output(s)
1. Small Concert Hall B	A	6. Small Concert Hall A	A
2. Vocal Plate	A + C	7. Room A	A
3. Large Concert Hall B	A	8. Constant Density Plate A	A
4. Acoustic Chamber	A + C	9. Chorus A	A + C
Percussion Plate A	A + C		

Lexicon 224 Outputs Used With Monophonic Output

The original Lexicon 224 Digital Reverberator hardware

All visual and aural references to Lexicon products and all use of Lexicon trademarks are being made with written permission from Harman International Industries, Inc.

Lexicon 480L Digital Reverb and Effects

Mix with the world's most famous algorithmic reverb, in all its lush digital glory.

Released in 1986, the Lexicon 480L Digital Effects System and its iconic fader-driven remote control are recognized the world over — residing at the center of famous studio consoles for more than 30 years. The 480L's spacious reverb and vivid effects textures are a coveted sonic benchmark, helping to shape thousands of chart-topping tracks to this day.

Now available exclusively for UAD hardware and UA Audio Interfaces, the UAD Lexicon 480L Digital Reverb and Effects plug-in is the world's only Lexicon-endorsed emulation of this classic studio reverb — expertly capturing its unique, infinitely moldable ambience and modulation splendor.

Now You Can:

- Record and mix with the only authentic Lexicon 480L digital reverb plug-in, derived from the final v4.10 firmware
- Experiment with rich, colorful "Random" and "Ambience" reverb algorithms, perfect on vocals, drums, synths, guitars, and more
- Apply classic, out-of-the-ordinary reverse effects, doubling, tremolo, and chorus sounds
- Sculpt your own textures with an improved version of Lexicon's famous "LARC" controller

A Digital Classic

The result of an intense, multi-year engineering effort — from poring over an impossible-to-find service manual, to studying an all-original "Golden Unit" — the Lexicon 480L Digital Reverb and Effects plug-in dutifully captures the complex space, texture, and otherworldly reverb tails that can enhance or transform vocal, guitar, synth, or drum tracks from mundane to heavenly.

Infinite Flexibility

Shimmering or dense, immediate or blooming, the 480L lets you create almost any space using Shape and Spread parameters, combined with Lexicon's famed Split Decay Reverb algorithms. Adjust the Random algorithm's innovative Spin and Wander parameters to customize the movement in the 480L's famously long reverb tails. Or use the Ambience algorithm to add natural space and dimension, without losing the definition of instruments.

Stunning Multi-Effects

In addition to Lexicon's prized reverbs, the 480L plug-in's random time-varying "Effects" algorithm — available for the first time ever — lets you explore dramatic reverse, doubling, tremolo and chorus sounds. Combined with its unique four-voice Twin Delay algorithm, the Effects algorithm turns the 480L into a versatile multi-effects system with unending creative potential.

Better Workflow

Ask any veteran engineer, and they'll tell you the Lexicon 480L's iconic Lexicon Alphanumeric Remote Control ("LARC") wasn't the easiest interface to grasp. Thankfully, the plug-in gives you an expanded parameter display, making its original controls easier to understand. Other workflow enhancements include simple A/B toggling of reverb machines, Input/Output Gain and Gain Link controls, as well as direct access to signal routing and metering.

Grammy-Winning Presets

The Lexicon 480L plug-in includes over 100 artist presets from Grammy-winning 480L power users such as Spike Stent (Beyoncé, Madonna), Chuck Zwicky (Prince, Nine Inch Nails), Ian Boxill (Janet Jackson, Quincy Jones), Jacknife Lee (The Killers, U2), and more, giving you a head start on your own mixes.

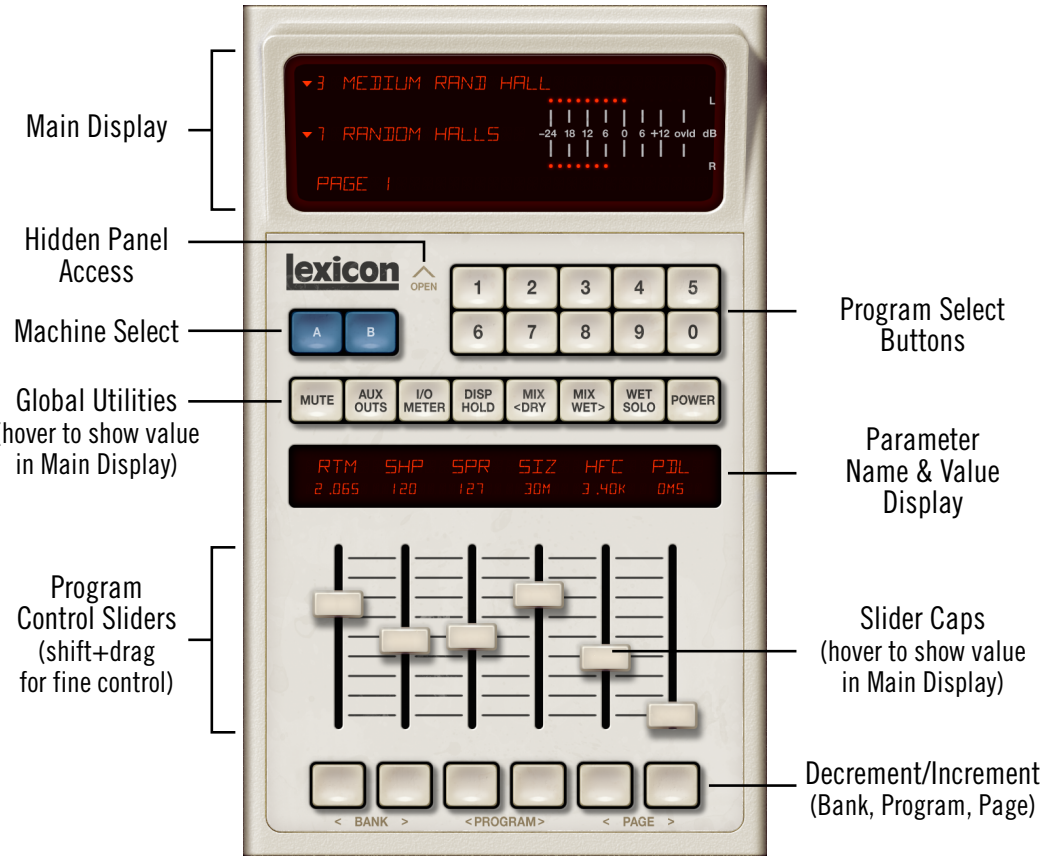
Key Features

- Licensed and endorsed by Lexicon, featuring their pinnacle achievement algorithm designs
- Provides the essential sound and control set of the legendary Lexicon hardware
- Enduring Lexicon reverb and effects derived from final software version 4.10 including Plate, Hall, Random, Ambience, and Effects algorithms
- UAD plug-in recreates iconic desktop "LARC" remote with logical workflow improvements
- Includes over 100 artist presets from Spike Stent, Chuck Zwicky, Eli Janney, Ian Boxill, Jacknife Lee, and more

Operational Overview

The original Lexicon 480L hardware consists of two separate elements. The “mainframe” rack-mountable 3U chassis contains the logic, converter and amplifier circuitry, audio input and output connectors, and input and output gain controls. The Lexicon Alphanumeric Remote Control (LARC) unit has displays, buttons, and sliders that control the Lexicon 480L mainframe parameters and functionality.

The UAD Lexicon 480L interface resembles the appearance and functionality of the LARC, but operation has been simplified and enhanced by re-assigning functions to the buttons that are no longer necessary in a plug-in. Additional parameters, including Input Gain and Output Level, are exposed by opening a hidden panel.



UAD Lexicon 480L interface

Banks and Programs

As with the original hardware, UAD Lexicon 480L factory presets are arranged into Banks and Programs. 10 Banks are available, and each Bank contains up to 10 Programs that were hard-coded in the v4.10 ROM (Read-Only Memory chip).

A single Lexicon 480L Program is a unique DSP algorithm with a set of parameter values creatively voiced by Lexicon. The UAD Lexicon 480L plug-in replicates this feature by providing Programs that always recall the factory settings.

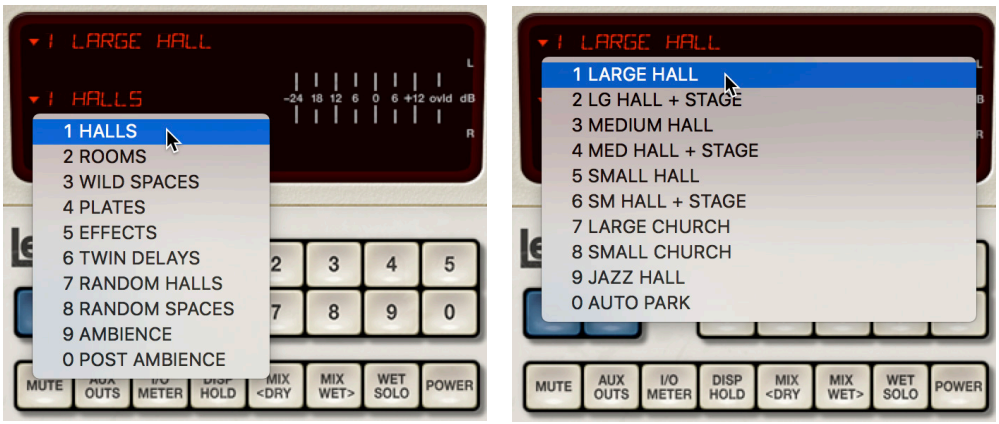
With the exception of Bank 0 (at the bottom of the Bank drop menu) which is actually Bank 10, all Programs in each Bank use only one of the five available algorithms (although certain parameter availability may differ between Programs within a Bank).

Selecting Factory Banks and Programs

The Main Display shows the current Bank and Program by number and name. To select a Bank, click the Bank name in the Main Display and choose a bank from the drop menu or click the Bank Decrement/Increment buttons.

To select a Program in the current Bank, click the Program name in the Main Display and choose a program from the drop menu, click any of the ten numeric Program buttons, or click the Program Decrement/Increment buttons.

> ***Note:*** *Output levels can vary noticeably among the Banks and Programs. Bank changes are not recommended for automation.*



Bank (left) and Program (right) drop menus

Programs versus Custom Presets

If the controls are adjusted for the selected Program and then the Program is reselected (or if a different Program is selected), any changes are lost and the Program's controls revert to the Program's factory settings. To store and recall custom settings as a preset (which includes the selected Bank, Program, and all current control settings), use the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or use Console's preset manager with UA audio interfaces.

> ***Important:*** *To prevent the loss of custom settings when selecting a different Program, save the settings as a plug-in preset using the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Console's preset manager.*

Machine A and B

The UAD Lexicon 480L plug-in provides two separate processor configurations: Machine A and Machine B. A Machine is simply an independent Bank and Program (factory or custom) within the same plug-in instantiation. To switch between Machine A and Machine B, click the blue A and B buttons.

This feature is useful for auditioning or automating between different reverbs or effects. Parameter changes in one Machine do not affect the other. When saving custom plug-in presets, the settings for both Machine A and B are stored and recalled with the preset.

Mono/Stereo Operation

The Lexicon 480L hardware has dual channel inputs and is a true stereo processor. As with the hardware, when the Lexicon 480L plug-in is used in a stereo-in/stereo-out plug-in configuration, the left and right input signals are processed in stereo and are output in stereo. When used in a mono-in/stereo-out configuration, the mono input signal is sent to both channels of the stereo processor and output in stereo. When used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the mono input signal is sent to both channels of the stereo processor and the output is summed to mono.

Artist Presets

UAD Lexicon 480L includes over 100 presets voiced by prominent artists. The artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Console's preset manager with UA audio interfaces.

Chuck Zwicky	Erik Madrid	Richard Chycki
Eli Janney	Ian Boxill	Spike Stent
Eric Thorngren	Jacknife Lee	Tom Marks

Artists that have provided presets for UAD Lexicon 480L

Algorithm Overview

The UAD Lexicon 480L plug-in includes the v4.10 firmware's five most popular reverb and effects algorithms based on the original Lexicon 480L hardware: Reverb, Effects, Twin Delays, Random, and Ambience.

Bank Algorithms Used

The following tables list which algorithm is used within a given Bank. Because the algorithms cannot be selected directly when editing a Program, choose a Bank with the desired algorithm as a starting point when creating custom presets.

Bank 1–9 Algorithms

BANK	ALGORITHM USED	BANK	ALGORITHM USED
1: Halls	Reverb	6: Twin Delays	Twin Delays
2: Rooms	Reverb	7: Random Hall	Random
3: Wild Spaces	Reverb	8: Random Spaces	Random
4: Plates	Reverb	9: Ambience	Ambience
5: Effects	Effects	0: Post Ambience	Various (see table below)

Unlike Banks 1–9, which all use the same algorithm within their respective Programs, the Programs within Bank 0 (Post Ambience) use one of three different algorithms: Reverb (Hall), Random (Hall), or Ambience. This impacts the available parameters within Bank 0 Programs.

The following table lists which algorithm is used in Bank 0 Programs. Use this table to determine which algorithm parameter description to refer to when editing the program.

Bank 0 Algorithms

BANK 0 PROGRAM	ALGORITHM USED	BANK 0 PROGRAM	ALGORITHM USED
1: Car Interior	Random	6: Small Foley	Ambience
2: Living Room	Reverb	7: Warehouse	Ambience
3: Bathroom	Reverb	8: Airhead	Random
4: Kitchen	Ambience	9: (Empty Program)	(N/A)
5: Kellars Cell	Random	0: Reverb Tail	Random

Algorithm Descriptions

Note: *Text in this section is sourced from the original hardware owner's manual.*

Reverb

With the Reverb algorithm (Banks 1, 2, 3, 4), almost any envelope can be created using the Lexicon 480L's innovative Shape and Spread parameters, combined with Lexicon's famed "split decay" carried over from its predecessor, the Lexicon 224. Reverb has two variations in its algorithm. The primary difference between the two is the density of the reverberation.

The Reverb algorithm with greater density is used in Rooms and Plates (Banks 2 and 4) and has two pre-echo voices. Halls and Wild Spaces (Banks 1 and 3) have less density with six pre-echo voices. Both variations have static (fixed) reverberation characteristics.

Effects

The Effects algorithm (Bank 5) is based on randomly varying time delays. Within this general class, a great variety of sounds are possible. The ten Programs provide a broad palette of dramatic reverse effects, modulated delays, doubling, tremolo, and chorus sounds. The Effects algorithm can also be used to create natural acoustical sound effects, such as a forest, a drum cage, or reflections from audiences, walls, and rooms.

Most of these natural effects are quite complex and are difficult or impossible to obtain using only a delay line with fixed taps. The effect of slightly moving sources, such as several musicians, cannot be achieved with fixed time delays and only one input. With the Effects algorithm, delay patterns and the resulting timbre is randomly time-variant, so the results are always dynamic and interesting.

Twin Delays

The Twin Delays algorithm (Bank 6) uses a four-voice delay line with independently adjustable Level, Feedback, and Delay Time for each voice. Feedback can be positive or negative. Note that Feedback for Delays 3 and 4 is cross-panned. Independent pan and low pass filters, adjustable between 120 Hz and full bandwidth, are provided for the first and second delay voices and their respective feedback paths.

Note: *When the Twin Delays algorithm is active and UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive, UAD DSP usage is reduced.*

Random

The Random algorithm (Banks 7 and 8) is similar to the Reverb algorithm, but with the addition of random delay elements to create the Lexicon 480L's famously long and otherworldly reverb tails. The Random algorithm provides a smoother reverberant characteristic and is better suited for material which requires large space emulation or a longer reverb time.

These random delay elements have several effects. First, there is a reduction of long-lived modes in the reverberant decay, which makes the decay less metallic and reduces the apparent reverb time. The random elements also improve the steady-state timbre of the program. The Random algorithm provides four pre-echo voices.

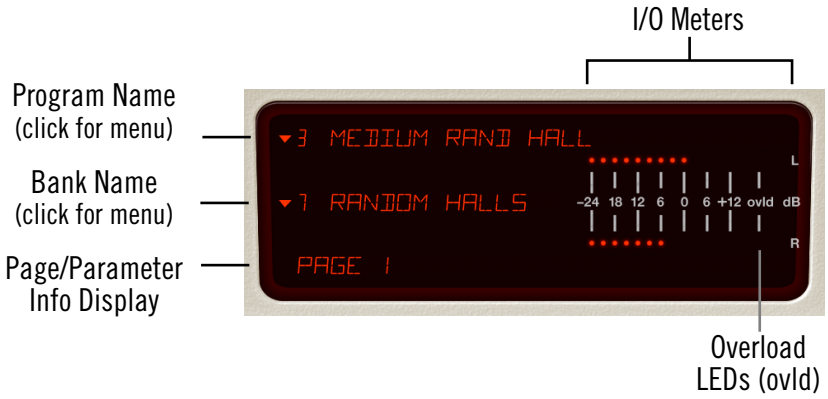
Ambience

The Reverb algorithms are designed to add a cushion of reverberance to recorded music, while leaving the clarity of the direct sound unaffected. However, the Ambience (Bank 9) algorithm is different. Ambience is intended to become a part of the direct sound—to give it both better blend and a definite position in space. Ambience is useful for adding a room sound to recorded music or speech.

In music recording, using Ambience is an effective way of realistically adding distance to a close-miced signal. If an ensemble has been recorded with close mics, Ambience can provide the missing blend and depth. The apparent position of the instruments is preserved in the reverb while the apparent distance is increased. Ambience can be used in a recording situation any time a close-miced sound is not wanted. Of course it can also be pushed far beyond the creation of realistic spaces.

Main Display Elements

The Main Display shows the current Bank and Program, selectable input or output meter levels, overload indication, and parameter/page information. Banks and Programs can also be selected using drop menus within the Main Display



I/O Meters

Lexicon 480L provides -24 to +12 dB segmented LED style peak metering for either Input or Output. The plug-in and its meters are set to the factory-recommended -12 dB headroom "pop" calibration. The current metering view (input or output) is selected with the I/O Meter button.

> ***Note:*** *Output metering is not available in the original hardware.*

Overload LEDs

An overload ("ovld") indicator illuminates when the modeled analog or digital system clipping occurs, or modeled arithmetic processor overloading occurs. Overloads can happen when loud signals are present at the input, when reverb decay times are long, or when self-oscillation occurs.

Unexpected sonic artifacts and/or ringing can occur when the processor overloads. If these artifacts are causing undesirable sounds, it can usually be eliminated by reducing the incoming levels or reducing reverb decay or effect feedback.

Page/Parameter Info Display

The Page/Parameter Information Display is similar to the hardware LARC's main display, dynamically showing effect parameter names and values, global utility parameter changes, or parameter pages. The plug-in improves information clarity with longer and more meaningful character strings. As with the original hardware, the default display shows the current parameter page number.

> ***Tip:*** *Hover the mouse pointer over any utility button or slider cap to show the full name of the parameter it adjusts, and the parameter's current value, in the Information Display.*

Global Utility Controls

The UAD Lexicon 480L offers direct access to global utility functions that are either not offered on the original hardware, or are hampered by the hardware's menu logic. The Global Utility controls apply to all reverb and effects algorithms and affect both Machines (A and B) regardless of which Machine is currently selected.

Global Utility Button Behavior

As with the hardware, UAD Lexicon 480L buttons are momentary switches that don't latch in a down position.

> ***Tip:*** *Hover the mouse pointer over any utility button to show the full name of the parameter it adjusts, and the parameter's current value, in the Information Display.*

Mute

The Mute button is used to creatively mute (or unmute) the input signal to the plug-in. When muting, the Input signal is silenced, but any delay, echo, or reverb tail continues.

Aux Outs

The Aux Outs button toggles the plug-in output between the Main outs and the Auxiliary outs, offering subtle sonic differences from the modeled analog hardware system.

I/O Meter

The I/O Meter button switches the peak meter in the Main Display between Input and Output views.

Display Hold

The Display Hold button switches the Parameter Information Display between three seconds and infinite hold.

3 SEC – When set to 3 seconds, the information displayed for any control persists for 3 seconds, after which the display reverts to showing the current Parameter Page number.

INF – When set to Infinite (INF), the information shown in the Parameter Information Display persists until any control is clicked or adjusted, at which point the Parameter Information Display is updated with the new information.

Mix Controls

The Mix Dry, Mix Wet, and Wet Solo parameters adjust the effect mix in the plug-in.

> ***Note:*** *Unlike the original hardware, the Mix controls are global parameters. Their state does not change when different programs are selected.*

Dry/Wet Mix

These two buttons control the balance between the reverb processor and the source signal when Wet Solo mode is inactive. Click the DRY button to reduce the reverb amount; click the WET button to increase the reverb amount. Clicking the DRY button once decrements the value by one percent; clicking WET once increments the value by one percent.

> ***Tip:*** *To increase the fine resolution when adjusting these controls, hold SHIFT (on the computer keyboard) when clicking the controls. Shift+click decrements (DRY) and increments (WET) by a value of 0.1 percent instead of one percent.*

The Dry/Wet mix is indicated in the Numerical Display as a percentage. A value of 50 produces an equal blend of the wet and dry signals. Values greater than 50 emphasize the wet signal, and values less than 50 emphasize the dry signal.

The Dry/Wet controls are typically used when Lexicon 480L is inserted on individual channels. When Lexicon 480L is used on a group/bus in a typical effect send/return bus configuration, set the Dry/Wet Mix to 100% Wet or activate Wet Solo mode.

Dry/Wet Mix Notes

- The Page/Parameter Info Display shows “N/A: WET SOLO ENABLED” if adjustments are made while Wet Solo is enabled (the Wet/Dry mix can still be adjusted, but Wet Solo remains active until Wet Solo is disabled).
- Dry/Wet Mix control is also available within the algorithm parameter (slider) pages.
- The Mix controls are global parameters. Their state does not change when different programs are selected.

Wet Solo

When Wet Solo is enabled, the Dry/Wet mix is set to 100% wet and the Dry/Wet controls are deactivated. Wet Solo mode is optimal when using Lexicon 480L in the “classic” reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends).

Wet Solo is enabled by default. When Lexicon 480L is used on a channel insert, Wet Solo should generally be deactivated.

> ***Note:*** *Wet Solo is not available in the original hardware.*

Power

The Power button functions as a hard bypass of the plug-in. The LARC graphical user interface appears “powered down” and the plug-in remains loaded on UAD DSP. Unlike the host’s plug-in enable switch (which unloads the plug-in from UAD DSP), this parameter allows glitch-free bypass and enabling of the Lexicon 480L plug-in.

Program Control Sliders

As with the original LARC hardware, UAD Lexicon 480L provides six sliders for adjusting various parameter settings within a Program. Depending on the algorithm, there are up to four pages of parameters that these sliders can control.

In the Page/Parameter Info Display, an abbreviated name for the parameter is displayed above the slider along with the current value of that parameter. Drag a slider for coarse adjustment, or shift+drag for fine adjustment. Double-click a slider cap to reset the parameter it is controlling to the default value for the Program or custom preset.

> ***Tip:*** *Hover the mouse pointer over any slider cap to show the full name of the parameter it adjusts, and the parameter's current value, in the Information Display.*

There are many common parameters between different algorithms and programs, such as Reverb Time or Dry/Wet Mix. Parameter value ranges within a given Program can vary according to the algorithm design or other dependent parameters. Also, as noted in the Parameter descriptions later in this chapter, not all parameters are available for automation.

> ***Note:*** *As with the original hardware, the sliders adjust parameters in discrete steps and are not smoothed.*

Decrement/Increment Buttons

The bottom row of buttons are used to navigate Banks, Programs, and Parameter Pages. Values are decremented (<) or incremented (>) by a value of one each time a decrement/increment button is pressed.

Hidden Controls

Additional UAD controls are available in a hidden control panel.

Hidden Controls with panel closed (left) and panel open (right)

Hidden Controls Access

The hidden controls are exposed by clicking the "OPEN" text label at the left of the numeric Program buttons. Conversely, the exposed panel is closed by clicking the "CLOSE" text while the panel is open.

> ***Note:*** *The last-used state of the hidden controls panel (Open or Closed) retained when a new Lexicon 480L plug-in is instantiated.*

Input Gain

Use the independent left (L) and right (R) Input Gain controls to adjust the signal levels at the input to the reverb processor. Input Gain does not affect the dry signal, so it can be used to adjust the wet/dry mix. The available range is ±12 dB.

As signal levels into the Lexicon 480L increase, processing may become increasingly nonlinear. If signals are too high, the Lexicon 480L inputs and/or processor can overload resulting in sonic artifacts. When this occurs, the "ovld" indicator in the I/O Meter illuminates.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "INPUT GAIN" text label to return the value of both channels to zero, or click the "L" or "R" labels to return the individual channels to zero when unlinked.*

Output Level

The independent left ("L") and right ("R") Output Level parameters control the signal levels at the output of the plug-in right before the Output Meter. The available range is –INF (infinite) dB to +12 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the text label ("Output Level") to return the value of both channels to zero, or click the "L" or "R" labels to return the individual channels to zero when unlinked.*

Link

Link/unlink allows the left and right controls for Input Gain and Output Level to be unlinked (non-ganged) in order to apply a different value for each channel. Link is inactive when the LED is unlit. Click the Link LED to toggle the state. The default state is ON.

> ***Note:*** *Link cannot be switched Off when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.*

If Link is Off and the Left and Right controls have different values, the Left channel value is copied to the Right channel (thereby overwriting the right channel value) when Link is switched On.

> ***Tip:*** *When Link is Off, click the text label ("L") to return the value of only the Left channel to zero and click the text label ("R") to return the value of only the Right channel to zero.*

When Link is On, automation data is written and read for the left channel only. The automation for the left channel controls both channels in Link mode.

> ***Note:*** *When link is active, modifying the right channel parameters has no effect when changed from a control surface or when in "controls only" (non-GUI) mode.*

Random Hall Bug Fix

During plug-in development, a bug in the Lexicon 480L firmware was discovered in the Random algorithm. This results in a ringing, metallic effect under certain conditions (such as when Spin is set to 0 and Size is adjusted). The UAD Lexicon 480L plug-in fixes this issue while retaining the ability to reproduce the effect.

Click the LED just below the Link switch to enable or disable the fix. The LED is lit when the fix is enabled and unlit when disabled.

Algorithm Parameter Descriptions

The number of parameters, and the parameters themselves, differ from algorithm to algorithm within the Lexicon 480L. Some parameters are common among two or more of the algorithms. Available parameters are defined by the underlying design of each algorithm. The number of available parameter pages span from two pages to four.

All of the original hardware parameters for these algorithms are available for adjustment, and all these parameters are saved with DAW sessions and within custom user presets.

> ***Note:*** *Some parameters are not available for external control surfaces and automation. These parameters are marked with an asterisk (*) in their descriptions below.*

The following parameter descriptions are grouped by algorithm: Reverb, Effects, Twin Delays, Random, and Ambience. In these descriptions, the parameter abbreviation (as it appears above its control slider) is shown in parentheses. The full parameter name appears in the Main Display.

Reverb Parameters

Programs that use the Reverb algorithm provide four pages of parameters. This includes all Programs in Banks 1–4, and Programs 2 and 3 in Bank 0.

Reverb Parameters – Page 1

Reverb Time (RTM) – Reverb Time sets the mid-frequency reverb time (in seconds) for mid-frequency signals. Because low-frequency reverb time (Bass Multiply/BAS) is a multiplier of Reverb Time, Reverb Time acts as a master control for the stopped reverb time. When Decay Opt (DCO) is set to Reverb mode (Reverb 0–9), the actual value set for Reverb Time varies with the Size setting. Adjust Size before Reverb Time since Reverb Time varies depending on the Size setting. This interaction is deactivated when Decay Opt is set to Effects mode (EFX 0–9).

Shape (SHP) – Shape and Spread work together to control the overall ambience of the reverberation. Shape determines the contour of the reverberation envelope. When Shape is set to 0, reverberation builds rapidly and decays quickly. As the value for Shape is increased, reverberation builds up more slowly and sustains for the time set by Spread. Use mid-range values for Shape to create a buildup and sustain of the reverberation envelope that emulates a large concert hall. When Decay Opt is in its Reverb range, Spread is linked to Size and the actual value for Spread depends on the selected Size.

> ***Note:*** *Spread only functions when Shape is set to a value higher than 8.*

Spread (SPR) – Spread works together with Shape to control the contour of the overall ambience of the sound created by the Lexicon 480L. Spread controls the duration of the initial contour of the reverberation envelope (Shape determines the envelope). Low Spread settings result in a rapid onset of reverberation at the beginning of the envelope, with little or no sustain. Higher settings spread out both the buildup and sustain. The range for Spread varies depending on the Size setting.

Spread and Shape control the rate at which reverberation builds up, and how the reverberation sustains as it begins to decay. When Decay Opt (DCO) is in Reverb mode, Spread is linked to Size and the actual value for Spread depends on the selected Size.

Size (SIZ) – Size sets the rate of buildup of diffusion after the initial period (which is controlled by Diffusion). It also acts as a master control for Reverb Time and Spread. For this reason, the Size control can be used to vary a reverb sound from very large to very small. Set the Size control to approximate the size of the acoustic space you are trying to recreate. The Size (in meters) is approximate to the longest dimension of the desired space. Note that adjusting Size while a signal is present momentarily changes to dry signal.

The range for Spread varies depending on the Size setting. The apparent size of the space is determined by the combination of the settings of Size, Shape, and Spread.

HF Cutoff (HFC) – HF Cutoff sets the frequency above which a 6 dB per octave low-pass filter attenuates the processed signal. It attenuates both pre-echoes and reverberant sound. Adjust HF Cutoff to roll off high frequencies for a more natural sounding reverberation.

Pre-delay (PDL) – Pre-delay sets the amount of time, in milliseconds, between the input of the dry signal and the onset of reverb processing.

> ***Note:*** *As with the original hardware, actual Pre-delay times may not match the displayed value.*

Reverb Parameters – Page 2

Bass Multiply (BAS) – Bass Multiply sets the reverb time for low-frequency signals as a multiplier of the Reverb Time value. For example, if Bass Multiply is set to 2.0, and Reverb Time is set to two seconds, the low frequency reverb time will be four seconds. For a natural-sounding hall ambience, try values of 1.5 or less.

Crossover (XOV) – Crossover sets the frequency (in Hz/kHz) at which the low-frequency reverberation transitions to the mid-frequency reverberation. Crossover should be set at least two octaves higher than the low frequency you want to boost. For example, to boost a signal at 100 Hz, set Crossover to 400 Hz (this setting typically works well for classical music). Crossover works best for boosting low frequencies when set to about 500 Hz and at around 1.5 kHz for cutting low frequencies.

Reverb Time HF Cut (RTC) – Reverb Time HF Cut sets the frequency above which sounds decay at a progressively faster rate, and filters all sound except pre-echoes. Lower values create a darker reverberant tone, simulating the effect of air absorption in a real hall. This also helps keep the ambience from muddying the direct sound.

Diffusion (DIF) – Diffusion controls the degree to which initial echo density increases over time. High settings result in high initial buildup of echo density. Low settings result in a low initial buildup. After the initial period, in which echo buildup is controlled by Diffusion, density continues to change at a rate determined by the Size setting.

To enhance percussive sounds, use high settings for Diffusion. For clear vocals, piano, buses, and full mixes use low to moderate settings for Diffusion. The Plate Programs and some of the Room Programs using higher inherent diffusion. If high diffusion is desired, start with one of these presets. They are easily identifiable because they have only two Pre-Echoes.

Decay Opt (DCO)* – Decay Opt (optimization) alters program characteristics in response to changes in input level. This contributes to a more natural reverberation decay. Decay Opt provides two modes: Reverb and Effect. Each mode has a range of 0 to 9. Typically, Reverb 7 is a good start setting.

In Effects mode, values 0–9 have the same natural effect as they do in the Reverb mode. However, in Effects mode the Spread control is not linked to the Size control, so it is possible to use high values for Spread with low values for Size, which can result in some interesting, but unnatural sounds.

> ***Historical note:*** *There is a bug in the DCO calculation on the V4.10 firmware which causes persistent crackle in the audio. However, earlier versions of the firmware don't have this behavior. This artifact is intentionally not included in the UAD Lexicon 480L emulation.*

Dry/Wet Mix (MIX) – See "Mix Controls" earlier in this chapter.

Reverb Parameters – Page 3

Pre-Echo Levels* 1 to 6 or 1, 2 – Pre-echo reflection parameters change the perceived locations of reflecting surfaces surrounding the source. Pre-echo Levels adjust the loudness of the corresponding Pre-Echo Delays found on page 4. Depending on the selected Program, either two or six pre-echoes are available.

Pre-echoes can best be understood by visualizing a stage where the early reflections are the sounds emanating from the rear and side stage walls directly after the sound from the stage. Usually the rear stage wall reflection is earlier and louder than those from the two side walls. Pre-echoes are actually clusters of echoes, with the density of the cluster set by Diffusion.

Reverb Parameters – Page 4

Pre-Echo Delay Time* 1 to 6 or 1, 2 – For each of the Pre-echo Level parameters, there is a corresponding Pre-echo Delay Time parameter. Depending on the selected Program, either two or six pre-echoes are available. Pre-echo Delay Time sets the delay time for each one of the pre-echoes. Pre-echo Delay Time is not affected by Pre-delay, so pre-echoes can be placed to occur before the reverberation starts.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Effects Parameters

Programs that use the Effects algorithm provide three pages of parameters. This includes all Programs in Bank 5.

Effects Parameters – Page 1

Spin (SPN)* – Spin sets the rate of Wander. There is always some spin, even with Spin set to 0. Note that lower Number settings increase the Spin speed.

> ***Note:*** *As with the hardware, after changing Spin or Length, the voices take a while to stabilize. Faster Spin settings stabilize more quickly.*

Slope (SLP)* – Slope controls the amplitude of the effect delays over time. When set to below halfway (value below 128), the slope decays. When set above halfway (value above 128), the slope rises. When set halfway (value of 128), the slope is essentially flat. Overall level is adjusted to keep the loudness constant.

Length (LNG)* – The delay of each voice is equal to the Length setting divided by the number of voices set with Number.

Wander (WAN)* – Sets the amount of time, in microseconds/milliseconds, that the delay moves in any direction. With Wander set to 0, the voices are absolutely fixed to their constant ratio apart and sounds like a single delay line with feedback. As Wander is added, delays go backwards and forwards randomly in respect to each other.

Number (NUM)* – Number sets the number of voices used.

Pre-delay (PDL) – Pre-delay sets the amount of time, in milliseconds, between the input of the dry signal and the onset of effect processing.

Effects Parameters – Page 2

Input Blend (MON)* – Input Blend allows manipulation of the input configuration, from normal stereo through mono, to reverse stereo. The Effects algorithm operates in true stereo. When Input Blend is set to stereo, the Left Output is derived only from the Left Input, and the Right Output is derived only from the Right Input. To create an effect with sound movement from one output to the other, set Input Blend to Mono.

Feedback Level (FBL)* – Feedback Level controls the level of signals recirculated back to the input of the delay line. Increase the amount of Feedback for interesting resonant effects.

Feedback Delay (FBD)* – Feedback Delay sets the delay that occurs between signal input and the onset of feedback. Try setting Feedback Delay to the same value as Length for interesting effects.

Diffusion (DIF) – Diffusion spreads out the input signal over time, turning sounds with sharp transients, such as clicks and other percussive sounds, into swishing sounds.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Input Delay (IND)* – Input Delay adds delay only to the dry signal path—it has no effect on the wet signal path. This lets you "live in the past" by delaying the input to present the effect before the dry signal is even heard. Note that this only works when using Dry/Wet Mix to mix the effect with the dry signal.

Dry/Wet Mix (MIX) – See "Mix Controls" earlier in this chapter.

Effects Parameters – Page 3

High Pass Left (HPL) – High Pass Left adjusts a 12 dB/octave filter on the Left Input channel to attenuate low frequencies.

High Pass Right (HPR) – High Pass Right adjusts a 12 dB/octave filter on the Right Input channel to attenuate low frequencies.

Signs (SGN)* – When the Signs parameter is set to 1 (as opposed to 0), a significant increase in output gain can occur.

Twin Delay Parameters

Programs that use the Twin Delay algorithm provide four pages of parameters. This includes all Programs in Bank 6.

Twin Delay Parameters – Page 1

Left Channel Dry Level (DRY)* – Left Channel Dry Level sets the dry signal level from the left input to the left output. It is not affected by Pan Left or Pan Right.

Right Channel Dry Level (DRY)* – Right Channel Dry Level sets the dry signal level from the right input to the right output. It is not affected by Pan Left or Pan Right.

Left Delay Roll Off (ROL)* – Left Delay Roll Off is a low pass filter that can be adjusted for the Left Delay 1 voice.

Right Delay Roll Off (ROL)* – Right Delay Roll Off is a low pass filter that can be adjusted for the Right Delay 2 voice.

Pan Left (PAN)* – Pan Left sets the panning of the Left Delay 1 and Left Delay Feedback 1 signal to the left and right outputs.

Pan Right (PAN)* – Pan Right sets the panning of the Right Delay 2 and Right Delay Feedback 2 signal to the left and right outputs.

Twin Delay Parameters – Page 2

Left Delay 1 Value (DL1)* – Sets the delay time, in milliseconds, for the first (left channel) delay voice.

Left Delay 1 Level (LV1)* – Adjusts the level (amplitude) of Delay 1.

Left Delay 1 Feedback (FB1)* – Adjusts the amount of feedback (positive or negative) around Delay 1.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Right Delay 2 Value (DL2)* – Sets the delay time, in milliseconds, for the second (right channel) delay voice.

Right Delay 2 Level (LV2)* – Adjusts the level (amplitude) of level for Delay 2.

Right Delay 2 Feedback (FB2)* – Adjusts the amount of feedback (positive or negative) around Delay 2.

Twin Delay Parameters – Page 3

Left Delay 3 Value (DL3)* – Sets the delay time, in milliseconds, for the third (left channel) delay voice.

Left Delay 3 Level (LV3)* – Adjusts the level (amplitude) of Delay 3.

Left Delay 3 Feedback (FB3)* – Adjusts the level of a cross-panned (L/R) feedback line. Feedback can be positive or negative.

Right Delay 4 Value (DL4)* – Sets the delay time, in milliseconds, for the fourth (right channel) delay voice.

Right Delay 4 Level (LV4)* – Adjusts the level (amplitude) of Delay 4.

Right Delay 4 Feedback (FB4)* – Adjusts the level of a cross-panned (R/L) feedback line. Feedback can be positive or negative.

Twin Delay Parameters – Page 4

Left Fine Delay (FIN)* – Sets the delay value of the left channel fine delay (in samples).

Right Fine Delay (FIN)* – Sets the delay value of the right channel fine delay (in samples).

Master Delay Multiplier (MST)* – This is a delay multiplier for all delay voices.

Dry/Wet Mix – See "Mix Controls" earlier in this chapter.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Random Parameters

Programs that use the Random algorithm provide four pages of parameters. These include all Programs in Bank 7 (Random Halls), Bank 8 (Random Spaces), and Programs 1, 5, and 8 in Bank 0 (Post Ambience).

Random Parameters – Page 1

Reverb Time (RTM) – Reverb Time sets the mid-frequency reverb time, in seconds, for mid-frequency signals when the signal stops. Because low-frequency reverb time (Bass Multiply) is a multiplier of Reverb Time, Reverb Time acts as a master control for the stopped reverb time. When Decay Opt (DCO) is set to Reverb mode (Reverb 0–9), the actual value set for Reverb Time varies with the Size setting. Adjust Size before Reverb Time. This interaction is deactivated when Decay Opt is set to Effects mode (Effects 0–9).

Shape (SHP) – Shape and Spread work together to control the overall ambience of the reverberation. Shape determines the contour of the reverberation envelope. When Shape is set to 0, reverberation builds explosively and decays quickly. As the value for Shape is increased, reverberation builds up more slowly and sustains for the time set by Spread. Use mid-range values for Shape to create a buildup and sustain of the reverberation envelope that emulates a large concert hall—also, set Spread to a mid-range value and Size should be suitably large (30 meters or larger).

Spread (SPR) – Spread works together with Shape to control the contour of the overall ambience of the sound created by the Lexicon 480L. Spread controls the duration of the initial contour of the reverberation envelope (Shape determines the envelope). Low Spread settings result in a rapid onset of reverberation at the beginning of the envelope, with little or no sustain. Higher settings spread out both the buildup and sustain.

Spread and Shape control the rate at which reverberation builds up, and how the reverberation sustains as it begins to decay. When Decay Opt is in Reverb mode, Spread is linked to Size and the actual value for Spread depends on the selected Size. These parameters are unlinked in Effect mode.

Size (SIZ) – Size sets the rate of buildup of diffusion after the initial period (which is controlled by Diffusion). It also acts as a master control for Reverb Time and Spread. For this reason, the Size control can be used to vary a reverb sound from very large to very small. Set the Size control to approximate the size of the acoustic space you are trying to emulate. The Size is approximate to the longest dimension of the desired space.

> ***Note:*** *Adjusting Size while a signal is present momentarily mutes the reverb signal.*

The apparent size of the space is determined by the combination of the settings of Size, Shape, and Spread. Small acoustic spaces are characterized by a rapid buildup of diffusion. However, both small and large spaces frequently have an uneven buildup of initial reverberation. This uneven buildup is controlled by Spread and Shape.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

HF Cutoff (HFC) – HF Cutoff sets the frequency above which a 6 dB/octave low-pass filter attenuates the processed signal. It attenuates both pre-echoes and reverberant sound. Adjust HF Cutoff to roll off high frequencies for a more natural sounding reverberation

Pre-delay (PDL) – Pre-delay sets the amount of time, in milliseconds, between the input of the dry signal and the onset of reverb processing.

Note: *Very high values of Pre-delay limit the amount of Spread available.*

Random Parameters – Page 2

Bass Multiply (BAS) – Bass Multiply sets the reverb time for low-frequency signals as a multiplier of the Reverb Time value. For example, if Bass Multiply is set to 2.0, and Reverb Time is set to two seconds, the low frequency reverb time will be four seconds. For a natural-sounding hall ambience, try values of 1.5 or less.

Crossover (XOV) – Crossover sets the frequency (in Hz) at which the low-frequency reverberation transitions to the mid-frequency reverberation. Crossover should be set at least two octaves higher than the low frequency you want to boost. For example, to boost a signal at 100 Hz, set Crossover to 400 Hz (this setting typically works well for classical music). Crossover works best for boosting low frequencies when set to about 500 Hz and at around 1.5 kHz for cutting low frequencies.

Reverb Time HF Cut (RTC) – Reverb Time HF Cut sets the frequency (in Hz/kHz) above which sounds decay at a progressively faster rate. It filters all sound except pre-echoes. Lower values create a darker reverberant tone, simulating the effect of air absorption in a real hall. This also helps keep the ambience from muddying the direct sound.

Diffusion (DIF) – Diffusion controls the degree to which initial echo density increases over time. High settings result in high initial buildup of echo density. Low settings result in a low initial buildup. After the initial period, in which echo buildup is controlled by Diffusion, density continues to change at a rate determined by the Size setting. To enhance percussion, use higher Diffusion settings. For clearer and more natural vocals, mixes, and piano music, use low or moderate settings for Diffusion.

Mode (MODE)* – Selects between linked and unlinked modes of operation for Reverb Time, Shape, Spread, and Size parameters: Reverb or Effects. Reverb mode maintains optimum relational values between these controllers as settings are changed. Effects mode permits independent parameter control.

Dry/Wet Mix (MIX) – See “Mix Controls” earlier in this chapter.

Random Parameters – Page 3

Pre-Echo Delay Levels* 1, 2, 3, 4 – Pre-echoes can best be understood by visualizing a stage where the early reflections are the sounds emanating from the rear and side stage walls directly after the sound from the stage. Usually the rear stage wall reflection is earlier and louder than those from the two side walls. Pre-echoes are actually clusters of echoes, with the density of the cluster set by Diffusion.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

The pre-echo reflection parameters change the perceived locations of reflecting surfaces surrounding the source. Pre-echo Level adjusts the loudness of the reflection.

These controls are similar to those available in the standard Reverb algorithm but there are four pre-echoes (versus up to six in the Reverb algorithm). The remaining two sliders on Page 3 control Spin and Wander (as with the Effects or Ambience algorithms).

Spin (SPN)* – Spin is identical to the spin control in the Effects algorithm. It affects the movement of the many delay taps in the program. Spin and Wander both to continuously alter the timbre of the reverberant sound. This makes for more natural results. It is not intended to make the position of instruments unstable. Spin should typically be set to 37 or higher. However, higher values may make the pitch of piano or guitar unstable.

Wander (WAN)* – Wander is identical to the Wander control in the Effects algorithm. It sets the distance in time that the early reflections move. For best results, set Wander to about 10 milliseconds with larger Size values.

Random Parameters – Page 4

Pre-Echo Delay Times* 1, 2, 3, 4 – For each of the Pre-echo Level parameters, there is a corresponding Pre-echo Delay Time parameter. Pre-echo Delay Time sets the delay time, in milliseconds, for each one of the pre-echoes. Pre-echo Delay Time is not affected by Pre-delay, so pre-echoes can actually be placed to occur before the reverberation starts.

Output Shelf (SHL)* – This is a level control that adds pre-high frequency cutoff energy to the reverb output for a double "knee" in the low pass filter.

> ***Note:*** *In the original hardware, Output Shelf (SHL) had a bug where the parameter did not work. This has been partially addressed in the UAD Lexicon 480L plug-in by making Output Shelf (SHL) a duplicate of the Output Filter (HFC).*

Reverb Level (LEV) – Controls the output gain from the processor. This is useful for setting different versions of overall program balance.

> ***Note:*** *Reverb Level values above 160 may result in algorithmic overload, which can produce undesirable results.*

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Ambience Parameters

Programs that use the Ambience algorithm provide two pages of parameters. This includes all Programs in Bank 9 (Ambience), and Programs 4, 6, and 7 in Bank 0 (Post Ambience).

Ambience Parameters – Page 1

Reverb Time (RTM) – This control is not of great importance to the sound as its range of action is limited. Be careful though—both long and short Reverb Time settings can sound unnatural. If a much longer or shorter apparent Reverb Time than the Program provides by default is desired, try adjusting Size first.

Reverb Level (RTL) – Reverb Level controls the level of the reverberant part of the ambient decay. When set to 0, only the early reflections are present, and there is an abrupt end to the sound when these early reflections are gone. Setting Reverb Level to about 70 results in a natural blend of early and late reflections.

Size (SIZ) – Size varies the apparent size of the space over a wide range. Adjusting Size can dramatically affect the results, so be careful to set it so that it matches the music or program material appropriately. It should be the first control that you adjust to tailor the desired space. Size also affects the Reverb Time in a similar way to the standard reverb programs.

Roll Off (ROL)* – Roll Off controls the -3 dB point of a 6 dB/octave filter on the output. It sets the effective bandwidth of both the early reflections and the reverberance.

Diffusion (DIF) – Diffusion controls the degree to which initial echo density increases over time. High Diffusion settings result in high initial buildup of echo density while low settings result in low initial buildup. After the initial period (controlled by Diffusion), density continues to change at a rate determined by Size. To enhance percussion, use high Diffusion settings. For clearer, more natural vocals, mixes, and music, use low or moderate settings.

Dry/Wet Mix (MIX) – See "Mix Controls" earlier in this chapter. For convenience, this control has been placed on both Pages 1 and 2.

Ambience Parameters – Page 2

Spin (SPN)* – Spin is identical to the spin control in the Effects algorithm. It affects the rate of movement of several early reflections. The object of Spin (and Wander) is to continuously alter the timbre of the early reflection parts of the ambient sound. This makes for a more natural sounding ambience. It is not intended to make the position of instruments unstable.

Wander (WAN)* – Wander is identical to the Wander control in the Effects algorithm. It sets the distance in time that the early reflections move.

**This parameter is not available for external control surfaces or automation.*

Pre-delay (PDL) – Pre-delay sets the amount of time, in milliseconds, between the input of the dry signal and the onset of ambience processing.

Input Delay (IND)* – Input Delay controls the amount of delay in the dry signal mixed by the MIX control. Normally, this control should be set to 0. This control may be useful in sound reinforcement scenarios when both delayed dry sound and synthesized reflections are desired.

Dry/Wet Mix – See "Mix Controls" earlier in this chapter. For convenience, this control has been placed on both Pages 1 and 2.

Program Descriptions

Note: *Text in this section is sourced from the original hardware owner's manual.*

Bank 1: Halls

Bank 1: HALLS provides reverberation programs designed to emulate real concert halls. While useful for a wide variety of tasks, they are especially good for traditional and classical music (acoustic music). For popular music (electronic music), they can be used to give multitrack recordings the sense of belonging to the same performance, by putting the whole mix in the context of a real-sounding acoustic space.

BANK 1: HALLS	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: LARGE HALL	Large Hall emulates the space and ambience of a large concert hall for music that has already been mixed. Acoustically, the sound of this Program resembles a large, relatively square concert hall. The musicians (sound source) are not placed in a stage area at one end, but in the middle of the hall, away from nearby walls and other surfaces that produce reflections. The reverberant pickups are located between the sound source and the walls, and are directed away from the musicians, so they pick up little or no direct energy. The resulting reverberation has the space and ambience of a large hall, but does not color or muddy the direct sound of the recording. Because of the large Spread value used, the sound of the Large Hall is most effective when relatively small amounts of it are mixed with the direct signal. If the reverberation sounds obtrusive or tends to reduce clarity, reduce the Wet signal. Bass Multiply, Reverb Time HF Cutoff, and HF Cutoff have been set to values typical of good concert halls. Size is set at maximum to provide reverberation with medium density and low color. If higher density is desired (for material such as closely-miced percussion) try reducing Size to about 25.
2: LG HALL + STAGE	Large Hall + Stage is similar to Large Hall, except that the musicians (sound source) are located at one end of the hall, and several pre-echoes simulate the effects of a proscenium arch.
3: MEDIUM HALL	Medium Hall is very similar to Large Hall, but smaller.
4: MED HALL + STAGE	Medium Hall + Stage is very similar to Large Hall + Stage, but smaller.
5: SMALL HALL	Small Hall is a smaller version of Medium Hall.
6: SM HALL + STAGE	Small Hall + Stage is a smaller version of Medium Hall + Stage.
7: LARGE CHURCH	Large Church is a big space with the musicians centrally located, and a comparatively long Reverb Time.
8: SMALL CHURCH	Small Church is a smaller version of Program 7.
9: JAZZ HALL	Jazz Hall is a relatively small space with hard bright walls and a short Reverb Time. It emulates a hall full of people, without the noise they make. It has high diffusion, and typically sounds really good with jazz or pop material.
0: AUTO PARK	Auto Park reproduces the sound of an underground parking garage.

Bank 2: Rooms

The Programs in Bank 2 are similar to those in Bank 1, but the spaces they emulate are smaller and more colored. Room Programs are useful for film and video production, as well as classical and popular music recording. If you want to closely match the ambient characteristics of a space, try using the programs found in Bank 9: Ambience.

BANK 2: ROOMS	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: MUSIC CLUB	Music Club is similar to Jazz Hall, but is smaller and less reverberant (especially at high frequencies).
2: LARGE ROOM	Large Room resembles a good-sized lecture room. It is smaller and more colored than Music Club, and includes comb-filtering and slap echoes.
3: MEDIUM ROOM	Medium Room is a smaller version of Large Room.
4: SMALL ROOM	Small Room is much smaller and less reverberant than the Large and Medium Rooms. It resembles a typical American living room.
5: VERY SM ROOM	Very Small Room has the intimate, close feel of a bedroom or den.
6: LG WOOD ROOM	Large Wood Room is similar to Large Room, but has a lower Bass Multiply setting. It simulates a room with thin wooden paneling, or a cheaply made warehouse or auditorium.
7: SM WOOD ROOM	Small Wood Room is a smaller version of Program 6.
8: LARGE CHAMBER	Large Chamber has few size cues. It produces a sound similar to a good live chamber with non-parallel walls and hard surfaces. Large Chamber can be used wherever a plate would normally be used, but it provides a more subtle acoustic sound.
9: SMALL CHAMBER	Small Chamber is a smaller version of Program 8.
0: SMALL & BRIGHT	Small & Bright adds presence to a sound without adding a lot of obvious reverberation.

Bank 3: Wild Spaces

The Programs in the Wild Spaces bank can best be described as reverberation effects. They produce reverberation, but the results bear little resemblance to anything found in nature. These programs are specifically intended for use in popular and electronic music production, and have no known applications in traditional or classical music.

BANK 3: WILD SPACES	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: BRICK WALL	Brick Wall, as in running into, rather than sounding similar to. This program can best be described as a subtle gated inverse room, but it's really much more. Unlike most gated reverb effects, this one's usefulness extends well beyond drum sounds. Try it on a wide variety of material.
2: BUCKRAM	Buckram is a variation of Brick Wall. The difference is that Buckram doesn't sound as dense as the Brick Wall, and has a longer reverb tail.
3: BIG BOTTOM	Big Bottom has a relatively short Reverb Time and a much longer Bass reverb time. This produces a big boom from low-frequency material, while leaving the high end more or less untouched. This is useful for adding a big bass and tom drum sound to an existing mix, or to a drum machine with premixed stereo outputs.
4: 10W-40	10W-40 emulates the sound of an oil drum.
5: 20W-50	20W-50 provides a more aggressive oil drum.
6: METALLICA	Metallica produces dense, metallic reverberation with lots of hard echoes. Designed especially for heavy metal.
7: SILICA BEADS	Put a small monitor upside down on top of a snare drum, pour a few thousand beads on top of the drum, and hit the monitor with a couple hundred watts. The result? Not nearly as interesting as the Silica Beads program.
8: INSIDE OUT	Inside Out produces a big echo with a big difference—it's turned inside out. Listen closely to the effect with percussive material.
9: RICOCHET	Ricochet emulates a fairly large space with a dangerous slapback echo.
0: VAROOM	Varoom is a room with no resemblance to any known acoustic space: the sound accelerates as it goes by.

Bank 4: Plates

The Plate programs mimic the sounds of metal plates, with high initial diffusion and a relatively bright, colored sound. Plates are great for percussion. They are designed to be heard as part of the music, mellowing and thickening the initial sound itself. The Plate sound is what most people associate with the so-called “world reverb,” but it is useful for all popular music.

BANK 4: PLATES	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: A PLATE	A Plate is a basic plate program with a very clear sound. It is useful for everything from vocals to percussion.
2: SNARE PLATE	Snare Plate has its HF Cutoff and Reverb Time HF Cutoff parameters set to Full Range, resulting in a rapid buildup in high-frequency information. As its name implies, it has been tuned to provide optimal results with snare drums.
3: SMALL PLATE	Another plate variation. As its name implies, it produces the sound of a smaller plate.
4: THIN PLATE	Another variation on the plate theme.
5: FAT PLATE	Fat Plate produces the sound of a very large, highly-colored plate.
6, 7, 8, 9, 0:	EMPTY PROGRAMS (N/A)

Bank 5: Effects

The Effects programs range from subtle to outrageous, depending on the type of source material used, and how much of the effect is added to the mix. These effects are powerful and complex, so spend some time listening and experimenting to get the best results.

BANK 5: EFFECTS	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: ILLUSION	Illusion (when added to the mix in relatively small amounts) creates a subtle effect that can enhance a sound without a listener even knowing it is there—one often doesn't notice that it is in use until it is taken away. Illusion is also useful for stereo synthesis and can be effective on complete mixes and as well as on individual tracks. When greater amounts of Illusion are added to the mix, the effect becomes more obvious, and some interesting phasing and panning become audible. The phasing is strong enough that spatial panning results, with some of the sound swirling around and even behind the listener.
2: SURFIN	Surfin produces flanging when fed with percussive material. Try it on everything from guitars to vocals and percussion.
3: VOC WHISPERS	Vocal Whispers is a delay-based effect designed to enhance vocals.
4: DOUBLER	Doubler is a doubler with a difference: The diffusion used on the delay lines thickens percussive sounds considerably. Use this program for fattening up uninteresting, dull sounds.
5: BACK SLAP	Back Slap provides a strong, fast slapback effect.
6: REBOUND	Throw something at this one and it comes rippling right back at you. Try it on vocals with short, explosive syllables (like in certain styles of rap).
7: GIT IT WET	It's Saturday afternoon in the guitar section of a large music store. Just add the metal guitar riffs and it makes its own sauce.
8: SUDDEN STOP	Sudden Stop produces a sound like a grainy, inverse gated room. Try it on snares, high toms, and cymbals. Note that it is not intended for use on low frequency material. Avoid using it with low toms, kick drums, and bass guitar.
9: IN THE PAST	In the Past is unique in that the dry signal is delayed by 504 ms so that it appears after the build-up of the effects signal. In the Past uses 40 well-diffused voices. The length of the delay is set to 500 ms with a build-up slope of 247.
0: TREMOLO L&R	Tremolo L&R uses four undiffused voices with the delay line and Wander set to 0. Spin controls the rate at which the mono blended signal tremelos between the left and right outputs. Tremolo depends for its effect on having the delay lines slightly out of sync.

Bank 6: Twin Delays

The Twin Delays algorithm (Bank 6) uses a four-voice delay line with independently adjustable Level, Feedback, and Delay Time for each voice. Feedback can be positive or negative. Note that Feedback for Delays 3 and 4 is cross-panned. Independent pan and low pass filters, adjustable between 120 Hz and full bandwidth, are provided for the first and second delay voices and their respective feedback paths.

BANK 6: TWIN DELAYS	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: 4-VOICE DOUBLE	The delay voices are doubled in stereo. When added to dry signal, the effect is crisp, wide, and uncluttered.
2: DOUBLE DELAY	Two voices produce a double effect. The other two provide a longer delay synced with the double. Cross-panned feedback ices the cake.
3: 4-BOUNCE DELAY	The delays bounce between left and right channels while maintaining a very clean signal.
4: PITTER PATTER	The delays are widely spaced with reiterative and cross-panned feedback.
5: X-PAN DOUBLE	Two voices are cross panned through delays. Try using it on stereo background vocals.
6: DELAY CAVE	The name says it all.
7: CIRCLES	This provides long delays with cross-panned feedback to create a “circular” delay effect.
8: THERE & BACK	The delay starts on one channel, slaps to the other, and then returns.
9: SOFT ROLLER	This is a stereo echo with high-frequency cut.
0: ON AND ON	On and On provides long echoes that pan across the center.

Bank 7: Random Halls

Like the programs in Bank 1: HALLS, the Programs in Bank 7: RANDOM HALLS are designed to emulate real concert halls. The random elements in these programs provide smoother decays, particularly when Size and Reverb Time are set to higher values.

BANK 7: RANDOM HALLS	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: LG RAND HALL	Large Random Hall provides the sense of space and ambience of a large concert hall to music which has already been mixed. Acoustically, the sound of this program resembles a large, relatively square concert hall. The musicians (sound source) are not placed in a stage area at one end, but in the middle of the hall, away from nearby walls and other surfaces that produce reflections. The reverberant pickups are located between the sound source and the walls, and are directed away from the musicians, so they pick up little or no direct energy. The resulting reverberation has the space and ambience of a large hall, but does not color or muddy the direct sound of the recording. Because of the large value used for Spread, the sound of the Large Random Hall is most effective when relatively small amounts of it are mixed with the direct signal. If the reverberation sounds obtrusive or tends to reduce clarity, attenuate the Wet Mix. Bass Multiply, Reverb Time HF Cutoff, and HF Cutoff are set to values typical of good concert halls. Size is set at maximum to provide reverberation with medium density and low color. If a higher density is desired (for material such as closely-miked percussion) try reducing Size to about 25.
2: LG RAND HALL & STG	Large Random Hall & Stage is similar to Large Random Hall, except that the musicians (sound source) are located at one end of the hall, and several pre-echoes simulate the effects of a proscenium arch.
3: MEDIUM RAND HALL	Medium Random Hall is very similar to Large Random Hall, but smaller.
4: MED RAND HALL & STG	Med Random Hall & Stage is very similar to Large Random Hall & Stage, but smaller.
5: SM RAND HALL	Small Random Hall is a smaller version of Medium Random Hall.
6: SM RAND HALL & STG	Small Random Hall & Stage is a smaller version of Medium Random Hall & Stage.
7: LG RAND CHURCH	Large Random Church is a big space with the musicians (sound source) centrally located, and uses a comparatively long Reverb Time.
8: SM RAND CHURCH	Small Random Church is a smaller version of Program 7.
9: JAZZ RAND HALL	Jazz Random Hall is a relatively small space with hard bright walls and a short Reverb Time. It emulates a hall full of people, without the noise they make. It has high diffusion, and typically sounds good with jazz or pop material.
0: AUTO PARK RAND	Auto Park Random reproduces the sound of an underground parking garage.

Bank 8: Random Spaces

The Random Spaces Programs are similar to the Programs in Bank 2: ROOMS. Most of these Programs simulate the same room sizes as those in Bank 2. However, the random delay elements make the rooms seem more "live." These elements are useful when you are attempting to simulate atmospheres that are busy, or that have movement. In Program 9: CHORUS ROOM and Program 0: WET & TACKY these elements have been optimized to provide a chorusing effect with spatial qualities.

BANK 8: RANDOM SPACES	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: MUSIC CLUB RAND	Music Club Random is similar to Jazz Hall, but is smaller and less reverberant,especially at high frequencies.
2: LG RAND ROOM	Large Random Room resembles a good-sized lecture room. It is smaller than Music Club Random and more colored, including comb-filtering and slap echoes.
3: MED RAND ROOM	Medium Random Room is a smaller version of Large Random Room.
4: SM RAND ROOM	Small Random Room is much smaller and less reverberant than the Large and Medium Random Rooms. It resembles a typical American living room.
5: VERY SM ROOM RAND	Very Small Room Random has the intimate, close feel of a bedroom or den.
6: LG CHAMBER RAND	Large Chamber Random has few size cues. It produces a sound similar to a good live chamber with non-parallel walls and hard surfaces. Large Chamber Random can be used wherever a plate would normally be used, but with a more subtle acoustic sound.
7: SM CHAMBER RAND	Small Chamber Random is a smaller version of Program 6.
8: SM & BRIGHT RAND	Small & Bright Random adds presence to a sound without adding a lot of obvious reverberation.
9: CHORUS ROOM RAND	Chorus Room Random emulates a small room with random delay elements that create a subtle chorus effect. This is especially useful for horns, strings, and ensemble vocals.
0: WET & TACKY	Wet & Tacky simulates a larger room with a long reverb time and chorus-like random delay elements. The random delay elements add a shimmer to the reverberant decay.

Bank 9: Ambience

The Programs in Bank 9: AMBIENCE were designed to emulate real ambient spaces typically required for music, jingle, and post-production work.

BANK 9: AMBIENCE	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: VERY LG AMBIENCE	This resembles a very large ambient space (such as a large shopping mall, parking garage, or warehouse) that has far more "clutter" than a concert hall or performance environment. Lowering the Reverb Level reduces the clutter while maintaining the sense of a very large ambient space.
2: LG AMBIENCE	Large Ambience is similar to Very Large Ambience, but less spacious. This Program provides the ambience of a large symmetrical room.
3: MED AMBIENCE	Medium Ambience is similar to Large Ambience, but smaller—imagine a large courtroom or a lecture room.
4: SM AMBIENCE	Small Ambience is similar to Medium Ambience, but smaller—imagine a typical lobby or small lounge.
5: STRONG AMBIENCE	With Strong Ambience, the room size is larger than Medium Ambience, but the Reverb Level is reduced to create a strong "wash" of ambience with a relatively short decay time.
6: HEAVY AMBIENCE	Heavy Ambience resembles a large rectangular performance space with musicians or performers (sound source) positioned in the middle of the space. Microphone proximity to the sound source can be simulated by adjusting the MIX control.
7: AMBIENT HALL	Ambient Hall provides a fast, dense ambient attack with the reverberant characteristics of Large Random Hall.
8: ANNOUNCER	This Program adds ambient spaciousness to a dry announcer's dialog track.
9: CLOSET	Just as the name implies—it even feels cramped!
0: GATED AMBIENCE	This Program provides a very strong ambience with fast decay—just feed it your favorite snare drum!

Bank 0: Post Ambience

This bank contains a group of programs that are optimized to meet the requirements of post production. Several different algorithms are used in this Bank depending on the Program (the algorithm used in the program is shown in parentheses).

> ***Note:*** *Because the underlying algorithms in Programs within Bank 0 vary, Program changes within Bank 0 are not recommended for automation.*

BANK 0: POST AMBIENCE	
PROGRAM	**DESCRIPTION**
1: CAR INTERIOR (Random)	It's a 4-door by default Raise the value of Shape to make it a station wagon. Raise pre-echo levels to close the windows.
2: LIVING ROOM (Reverb)	This Program emulates the average suburban living room.
3: BATHROOM (Reverb)	This Program emulates a larger than average bathroom.
4: KITCHEN (Ambience)	Can you find your disposal sound effect?
5: KELLARS CELL (Random)	No, it's not a padded cell. It is small, deep, and the surfaces are hard.
6: SMALL FOLEY (Ambience)	This program uses the Ambience algorithm for foley applications. Moving Size from its 1.5M setting, causes the ambience bloom to "open up." Varying MIX from 100% wet, presents the 19 ms dry delay into the audio path.
7: WAREHOUSE (Ambience)	It's big—really big!
8: AIRHEAD (Random)	Take a pair of headphones, remove the elements and replace them with diffuser panels spaced 10" from your ears. Now, hold a diffuser panel above your head. This program eliminates the need for you to look as though you are communicating with aliens. Use aggressively!
9: EMPTY PROGRAM	N/A
0: REVERB TAIL (Random)	This Program provides a very warm, very long, but not infinite, reverberant wash that makes for a great fade.

Program Design Tips by Lexicon

Note: *Text in this section is sourced from the original hardware owner's manual.*

Working with Reverb

In the Lexicon 480L, the Size, Spread, and Shape controls allow adjustment of the buildup and decay of the initial part of the reverberation envelope. Shape controls the shape of the envelope, while Spread and Size set the time over which this shape is active. In the Hall and Room programs, Size acts as a master control for the apparent size of the space being created by the Lexicon 480L. Both Spread and Reverb Time vary linearly with the Size setting, so the maximum Reverb Time and Spread require high Size settings. To find an appropriate reverb for your program material, start with a Program with a similar sound to what you want. Adjusting Size is often sufficient to arrive at the exact sound you want. Once you set Size, use Spread and Shape to adjust the shape and duration of the initial reverb envelope, which together provide the principal sonic impression of room size.

When Shape is set to a minimum, the reverberation envelope builds up very quickly to a maximum amplitude, and then dies away quickly at a smooth rate. This envelope is characteristic of small chambers and plates. There are few (if any) size cues in this envelope, so it is ineffective for ambience. With this Shape setting, Spread has no effect. The density is set by the Size control, and the rate of decay is set by Reverb Time. This reverberation envelope is typical of many popular digital reverbs of the 1980s and 90s.

As Shape is raised to 32—about an eighth of the way up on the LARC slider—the initial sharp attack of the reverberation is reduced, and reverberation builds more slowly. The envelope then sustains briefly before it begins to die away at the rate set by Reverb Time. Spread has little or no effect on this shape.

When Shape is at 64—about a quarter of the way up on the LARC slider—buildup is even slower and the sustain is longer. Now Spread affects the length of both the buildup and the sustain. As a rough estimate, the time value indicated by the Spread display (in milliseconds) approximates the duration of sustain.

As Shape is raised further, the buildup and sustain remain similar, but now a secondary sustain appears in the envelope, at a lower level than the first. This secondary plateau simulates a very diffused reflection off the back wall of a hall. This creates a sense of size and space. This reflection becomes stronger and stronger, reaching an optimal loudness at a Shape value of about 128—about halfway up on the LARC slider.

The highest Shape settings are typically used for effects. Near the top of the scale the back-wall reflection becomes stronger than the earlier part of the envelope, resulting in an inverse sound.

Note that unless you have a short Reverb Time, none of these shape effects are audible. Generally, Reverb Time should be set to a value of about 1.2 seconds for small rooms and up to 2.4 seconds or so for halls. Size should also be set to a value appropriate to the desired hall size (note, however, that small sizes color the reverberation). For example, .15 meters emulates a very small room, while 38 meters emulates a large hall.

Working with Effects

The Effects algorithm in the Lexicon 480L uses randomly varying time delays. Within this general class a great variety of natural acoustical effects are possible, such as the effect of a sound in a forest, a drum cage, or reflections from audiences, walls, and rooms. Most of these natural effects are quite complex and are difficult or impossible to obtain using a delay line with fixed taps. The sound of slightly moving sources, or several musicians, cannot be emulated with fixed time delays and only one input. Simple clusters of delays that may be interesting when first heard can quickly become annoying when the timbre they create applies in exactly the same way to every sound source. With the Effects algorithm in the Lexicon 480L, the delay pattern and the resulting timbre is never constant long enough to become boring.

The Lexicon 480L uses up to 40 voices, 20 on each input channel, for chorus effects. The unique way in which the 40-voice effects algorithm processes these voices provides a chorus that does not change pitch. This is extremely useful on material such as grand piano, where detuning from standard chorusing yields unacceptable results.

Delay times can be combined in phase or out-of-phase to change the timbre of the overall effect.

For some effects 40 voices is not enough—for example, to simulate the irregular surfaces of a drum cage, many trees in a forest, or many cars in a parking lot. Use the Diffusion control to expand each of the 40 voices into a dense cluster of reflections.

Use the High-Pass Filter (12 dB/octave slope) to change the quality of emulated reflective surfaces. For example, some reflective surfaces (such as people or music stands) reflect mostly high frequencies.

The time-varying taps can be adjusted to lie on top of each other, which can result in interesting phasing and flanging effects. Phasing can be delayed using the Pre-delay, and then made into echoes with Feedback, for special effects. Additionally, using the Input Delay control, the effect can be made to precede the source sound—so, for example, a high frequency brilliant edge can be added to a cymbal crash before the crash is struck, and the amount of the edge and its tone quality will be different with every strike.

Working with Random Reverb

Random Hall is similar to the standard Hall program in the Lexicon 480L, but with the addition of random delay elements. This results in the reduction of long-decays in reverberation, which makes the decay sound less metallic and reduces the apparent reverb time. The apparent Reverb Time of Random Hall is much closer to the value indicated by the display than with the standard Hall. The random elements also improve the steady-state timbre of the processing. The amount of coloration is significantly less than the standard Reverb programs—especially with small Spread settings. Additionally, the steepness of the filter in the Decay control has been increased. You may need to set this control higher for Random Programs than you would with the standard Reverb Programs.

The Random Hall and Ambience algorithms are particularly useful in sound reinforcement—it can improve the existing acoustics of a hall by adding lateral reflections—and maybe some delayed dry signal—from speakers hidden around the listening space. The fact that many of the reflections are time-varying means that it is important to increase the signal gain before feedback. Ambience incorporates both a Pre-Delay and an Input Delay that can be set to further enhance this effect.

Lexicon 480L Reverb & Effects hardware

All visual and aural references to Lexicon products, all use of Lexicon trademarks, and use of Owner's Manual content are being made with written permission from Harman International Industries, Inc.

Little Labs IBP

In-Between Phase Alignment “Fix-It” Tool & Creative Phase Manipulation

The Little Labs IBP Phase Alignment Tool easily eliminates the undesirable hollow comb-filtered sound when combining out-of-phase and partially out-of-phase audio signals. Designed as a phase problem-solving device, the award-winning Little Labs IBP (In-Between Phase) has established itself with audio engineers as not only a “fix it” tool, but as a device for manipulating audio phase as a creative, tonal color tool as well.

Whether combining direct and microphone signals, acoustic guitar and vocal mics, drum kit mics, or multiple split-guitar amps, the recorded audio signal phase can be quickly and easily controlled with the Little Labs IBP Phase Alignment Tool.

Little Labs IBP interface

Little Labs IBP Controls

All parameters are clearly labeled with control names.

Delay Adjust

The Delay Adjust parameter is unique to Universal Audio's "workstation" version of the Little Labs IBP. Delay Adjust is a continuously variable control that simply delays the input signal from 0.0 to 4.0 milliseconds.

Unlike the "analog" Phase Adjust parameter, which is frequency dependent, Delay Adjust is purely "digital" and shifts all frequencies equally. Delay Adjust accomplishes the same function as manually moving an audio region forwards in the timeline so it plays back a little later in relation to other regions.

Delay Adjust Bypass

This switch bypasses the Delay Adjust parameter. Delay Adjust is bypassed when the switch is engaged (darker).

Phase Adjust

Phase Adjust is the main parameter in the Little Labs IBP. It is a continuously variable control that shifts the phase of the input signal. The range of Phase Adjust is either 90° or 180°, dependent on the Phase Adjust 90°/180° switch.

The Little Labs IBP hardware is an all-analog device that uses analog allpass filters to produce phase shifting. Allpass filters displace signals in time as a function of frequency (they are frequency dependent). The modeled UAD version accurately models the hardware along with all its idiosyncrasies.

Therefore phase shifting using the Phase Adjust knob is not "perfect" like mathematically-manipulated signals in the digital domain. When Phase Adjust is set to 180° on one of two identical tracks side-by-side, the signals will not cancel as you may expect.

> ***Note:*** *If a "standard" 180° phase shift is desired, use the Phase Invert switch. If "digitally pure" frequency-independent phase shift is desired, use the Delay Adjust parameter.*

Phase Adjust Bypass

This switch bypasses the Phase Adjust parameter. The signal phase is normal when the switch is engaged (darker).

Phase Invert

This switch inverts the polarity of the input signal, like the phase button on a mixing console. Phase is inverted when the switch is engaged (darker).

Phase Adjust 90°/180°

This switch determines the range of the Phase Adjust parameter. This is useful when finer Phase Adjust resolution is desired.

When the switch is disengaged, the Phase Adjust range is 180°. When the switch is engaged (darker), the Phase Adjust range is 90°.

Phase Center Lo/Hi

This switch sets the range of frequency emphasis. When the switch is disengaged (lighter), the Phase Center range is Hi. When the switch is engaged (darker), the Phase Center range is Lo.

> ***Note:*** *Use of the 90°/180° and Lo/Hi parameters are typically used for individual tone signals such as a kick drum or toms as opposed to program material.*

Power

This switch disables the plug-in. When the switch is disengaged, the plug-in is bypassed. When the switch is engaged (darker), the plug-in is active and the green LED is illuminated.

The Little Labs IBP hardware unit

Little Labs VOG

A One-of-a-Kind "Magnifying Glass" for Low Frequencies — Emulated to Perfection

For many top engineers, the Little Labs VOG (Voice Of God) is the ultimate bass resonance tool for mixing. Available for the first time as a plug-in, the Little Labs-authenticated VOG for the UAD-2 platform accurately models the sonic characteristics of this unique 500-series hardware audio processor in every detail. The VOG is used to accurately target and accentuate low frequency material, from vocals to bass guitar and drums — adding both heft and precision beyond a simple EQ. Put simply, it's like a magnifying glass for the bottom end of your mixes.

One of the most important components of any good mix is blending the low frequencies together in such a way that they don't conflict. No matter what style of music you make — from rock to reggae, to hip-hop to hardcore — few tools are as easy to use and effective as the popular Little Labs VOG.

History

Little Labs has a knack for creating problem-solving tools for the studio that perform equally well as creative coloration effects and tone-boxes. The original collaboration between UA and Little Labs saw the release of the UAD Little Labs IBP plug-in — widely recognized as one of the most versatile phase correction plug-ins available today. Continued collaboration between Universal Audio and Little Labs now provides another instant studio classic, the VOG.

Upon its introduction in 2009, owners of the hardware VOG quickly realized multiple units are a must have — one for bass, kick drum, toms, low frequency percussion, and especially vocals. Fortunately, with the Little Labs VOG plug-in for the UAD-2, producers and engineers can have as many instances as they need to make "the low end" come to life.

Operational Overview

Two simple knobs allow you to dial in the VOG's desired frequency and effect amplitude. The center of the sweepable frequency range is selected via two push-buttons of 40 Hz and 100 Hz, or you can set the center to 200 Hz by pressing both buttons simultaneously. Everything below the targeted frequency peak is rolled off in a smooth curve — up to -24 dB per octave — ensuring that the low end is always tight and out of the mud, while the frequencies above remain intact. The higher the amplitude of the peak resonance frequency, the more you cut off the mud below, effectively performing two functions at once. A dedicated "flat" button allows you to quickly audition A/B comparisons.

In Use

The VOG is intended for mixing, mastering, post-production sweetening, sound design, and audio restoration. Use it to easily simulate proximity effect for adding chest resonance and "heft" to vocals. Simple adjustments will also yield enormous sounding drums just like tweaking the tension of a drumhead. Or, completely transform the tonal characteristics of electric bass tracks — for example, go from a solid body sound to a chambered body sound in seconds. The VOG's flexibility makes it the right choice on a wide range of musical sources; it's the perfect way to tune the low end of any mix for incredible detail and punch.

Stereo Functionality

Unlike the original hardware (which is monophonic), the plug-in enables stereo use with one control set, providing perfectly matched stereo response. When the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations, the controls affect both the left and right signals.

Little Labs VOG Controls

Amplitude

Amplitude adjusts the amount of the effect. Increasing the control boosts the gain of the frequencies determined by the Frequency and Center controls.

> ***Note:*** *The control values for Amplitude, which range from 0 - 10, are arbitrary and do not reflect a particular dB value.*

Frequency

This control adjusts the target frequency of the effect. Frequencies above the current setting are boosted by the amount set with the Amplitude control. Frequencies below the current setting are attenuated by -24 dB per octave.

The available frequency range is determined by the Center button settings, and are shown in the Center Switch Frequency Values chart below.

Like the original hardware, increasing the Frequency value (rotating clockwise) actually lowers the target frequency ("increases the low end"). Changes to this setting are heard only if Amplitude is set above zero.

> ***Note:*** *The control values for Frequency, which range from 0 - 10, are arbitrary and do not reflect a particular frequency value.*

Center

The two Center switches define the active center frequency of the effect, which in turn determines the available frequency range. The four available center frequencies, and resulting frequency ranges, are shown below.

A switch is ON when its LED is red. A green LED indicates the switch is OFF.

"40" Button LED	"100" Button LED	Center Frequency (Hz)	Frequency Range (Hz)
Green	Green	40	18 - 60
Red	Green	42	20 - 62
Green	Red	100	50 - 180
Red	Red	200	100 - 305

Center Switch Frequency Values

Flat

The EQ circuitry is bypassed when Flat is enabled (red LED); the circuit is active when Flat is disabled (green LED). When Flat is on, the dry signal path of the hardware is still being modeled and DSP is used. For true bypass, use the Power switch.

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, the LEDs are dimmed, and DSP usage is reduced (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled). Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

The Little Labs VOG hardware unit

Manley Massive Passive EQ Collection

Ultra high-end tube EQ for mixing and mastering

The Manley Massive Passive EQ Collection plug-ins for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces is a thorough emulation of Manley's flagship boutique tube EQ. Renowned for its natural sounding, organic curves the Massive Passive EQ excels at radical tonal shaping as well as delicate vocal shading or subtle mastering enhancement.

Officially licensed and endorsed by Manley Labs, the Manley Massive Passive EQ Collection plug-ins expertly capture the behavior of the original hardware, from the unusual filter curves, to the multiple band interdependencies, right down to the tube amplifier distortion, and all-important transformer/inductor hysteresis.

Now You Can:

- Expertly shape tracks and masters with Manley's ultra-boutique tube EQ
- Harness complex band interaction and tube amp distortion for organic, musical textures
- Add weight and punch to individual tracks and buses
- Dial-in air, sizzle, and clarity without adding harshness

Massive Reputation

The two-channel, four-band Manley Massive Passive tube EQ utilizes design strengths from choice console, parametric, graphic, and Pultec EQs — delivering sweet, musical curves with unparalleled clarity and headroom. The "Passive" in the Manley Massive Passive refers specifically to the tone shaping elements of the equalizer, which use only resistors, inductors, and capacitors to create all frequency changes.

Its Frequency controls intentionally interact with one another, as do the Gain and Bandwidth controls. While this may result in the appearance of some unorthodox knob positions, it is specifically these band interdependencies between all bell, shelf and cut filters that allow for the Massive Passive's natural and organic sound.

The Only Authentic Massive Passive Emulation

EveAnna Manley is renowned for her tireless attention to audio detail, and specifically the rich, musical tube qualities that her namesake gear imparts. Painstakingly modeled by Universal Audio over a six month period, and rigorously scrutinized by Manley Labs for authenticity, the Manley Massive Passive EQ plug-in amazingly captures the hardware's unique filter curves and musical distortion. And this plug-in is exclusive to the UAD and Apollo platforms.

Mix or Master

The Manley Massive Passive EQ Collection consists of two plug-ins: The Standard version that features continuous Bandwidth adjustment, and the Mastering version that includes 16 steps of easily recallable Bandwidth selections. Perfect for subtle or broad strokes to individual instruments or whole mixes, you can add presence and sizzle without harshness to drums and vocals, or add weight and heft to an entire mix without muddying the bottom end.

Massive Passive interface

Massive Passive Mastering interface

Unusual EQ Conventions

The Massive Passive has design and operation characteristics that make it unique in the EQ world. Some of these factors mean the "Massivo" may not respond in a manner that you would expect from typical EQs. Keeping these points in mind may help you obtain more satisfactory results. See Notes from Manley Laboratories for more tips.

Passive EQ

No active components are used in the EQ circuits, just like revered vintage EQs. This can make some adjustments respond in more subtle ways.

Parallel Topology

The EQ bands are routed in parallel instead of serially, so gain values for the bands don't "add up" like most EQs. For example, if two bands in the same channel are boosted 20 dB at 2.7 kHz, you'll get much less than 40 dB of boost at 2.7 kHz.

Unique Shelves

Most EQs offer a shelving mode for the edge bands only. Massive Passive offers the shelving option on all bands for expanded sonic possibilities, such as "staircase" EQ curves.

No negative feedback loops

One result of not using negative feedback loops in the design is that the gain control for a band cannot have a "bipolar" boost and cut control. Only band gain is available; how that band gain is applied, either as a boost or as a cut, is specified with a separate toggle switch.

Control Interaction

Due in large part to the above points, the Massive Passive controls are much more interactive with, and interdependent upon, each other. We encourage experimentation with an open mind, without expectations of what a visual interpretation of what control settings "should" do.

The Massive Passive utilizes older parallel concepts rather than non-interactive series designs as defined by George Massenburg's original parametric EQ. The Frequency controls intentionally interact with one another, as do the Gain and Bandwidth controls. While this may result in the appearance of some unorthodox knob positions, it is specifically these band interdependencies between all bell, shelf and cut filters that allow for the Massive Passive's natural and organic sound.

Massive Passive Mastering EQ

Manley Labs developed the Massive Passive Mastering EQ to better address the specific needs of mastering engineers. Your Massive Passive license includes both the standard and mastering versions, available as two individual plug-ins.

The Massive Passive Mastering has nearly the same features and control set (plus all the musicality of) the standard version with a few tweaks that offer more practical functionality for program material. The Mastering version features include:

- Stepped channel gain, band gain, and bandwidth controls for repeatability.
- Channel gain and band gain ranges are reduced for finer resolution.
- Low/high pass filter frequencies and slopes are optimized for mastering.

The Mastering Massive Passive is identified by the all-black “flat top” band gain and bandwidth control knobs and the word MASTERING near the center of the interface.

Standard vs. Mastering Versions

The layout and function of the Massive Passive controls are essentially identical for both the Standard and Mastering versions. The exact control differences between the controls are detailed in the table below.

	Standard	Mastering
Channel Gain Range	-6 dB to +4 dB	±2.5 dB (0.5 dB steps)
Band Gain Range	±20 dB	±11dB (16 steps)
High Pass Filter Values (Hz)	22, 39, 68, 120, 220	12, 16, 23, 30, 39
Low Pass Filter Values (kHz)	6, 7.5, 9, 12, 18	15, 20, 27, 40, 52*
Low Pass Filter Slope	18 dB/oct (6K, 7K5, 9K) 30 dB/oct (12K) Modified Elliptical (18K)	18 dB per octave* (*30 dB/oct @ 52K)
Channel Gain, Band Gain, Bandwidth	Continuous	Stepped

Control differences between Massive Passive versions

Massive Passive Band Controls

Massive Passive has two identical channels (left and right). Each channel has four EQ bands, with five controls in each band.

Because both Massive Passive plug-ins operate the same way (and the bands of each channel are identical), the control descriptions for each band are only detailed once.

> ***Important:*** *See Standard vs. Mastering Versions for the exact differences between the Massive Passive parameters.*

Boost/Cut/Out

This three-position toggle switch determines whether the frequency band will be boosted, cut, or disabled altogether. The amount of boost or cut to be applied to the band is determined by the See Band Gain control.

When Boost or Cut is selected, its label illuminates (green for Boost, red for Cut). When the switch is in the OUT position, the band is disabled.

> ***Note:*** *When set to OUT, the other band controls have no effect.*

Shelf/Bell

The Shelf/Bell toggle switch defines the shape of the filter band. A unique aspect of this control is that unlike other EQs where only the edge frequencies offer a shelving mode, with Massive Passive all bands can be used in either mode for expanded sonic possibilities.

> ***Note:*** *The Bandwidth control affects the slope of the band filters in both Shelf and Bell modes.*

Shelf

The two lowest (leftmost) bands can each be in Low Shelf mode; the two highest (rightmost) bands can each be in High Shelf mode. Shelf slopes generally boost or cut towards the highs or lows (thus the high shelves and low shelves). The two middle shelves are almost the same as the outer ones but just have other (interleaved) frequency choices.

Bell

Bell curves focus their boost and cut at a given frequency, and the further away the signal is from that frequency, the less boost or cut is applied.

Band Gain

This control determines the amount of EQ gain to be applied to the band. The range is from zero gain (flat) at the fully counter-clockwise position, to the maximum value at the fully clockwise position. Whether the gain is applied as a boost or cut is defined by the Boost/Cut/Out switch.

The range for the standard version is continuously variable at up to ±20 dB; the range for the Mastering version is up to ±11 dB in 16 steps (in both versions the maximum value depends on the Bandwidth control).

> ***Important:*** *When Gain for the band is set to zero, the other band controls have no effect.*

Unlike most EQs, this control is not flat at the center position with the gain cut or boosted by moving the control to left or right of center. This design allows the band gain to operate at twice the knob resolution as that of a "conventional" dual-purposed control, as well as facilitating a quicker and more accurate return to zero.

Gain has a fair amount of interaction with the Bandwidth control. The maximum band gain is available in Shelf mode when Bandwidth is fully counter-clockwise; less band gain is available in Shelf mode as the Bandwidth is decreased (rotated clockwise). Conversely, the maximum gain is available in Bell mode when Bandwidth is fully clockwise; in Bell mode less band gain is available as Bandwidth is decreased (rotated counter-clockwise).

Due to the parallel EQ topology, the four band Gain controls also interact with each other unlike typical EQs. For example, if two bands in the same channel are boosted 20 dB at 2.7 kHz, you'll get much less than 40 dB of boost at 2.7 kHz. This also implies that if you first boost one band, that the next three will not seem to do anything if they are at similar frequencies and bandwidths.

Bandwidth

Bandwidth adjusts the slope or "Q" of the band filter in both Bell and Shelf modes. Bandwidth does not have a lot of range and it also affects the maximum boost and cut (like a Pultec).

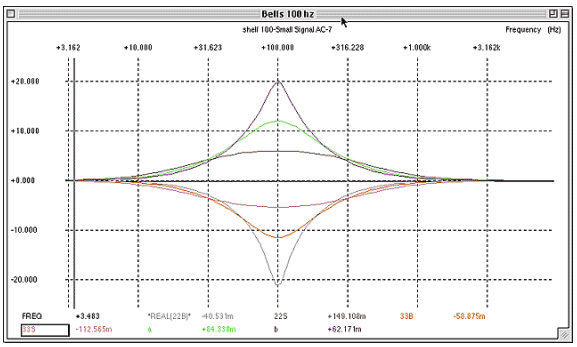
The widest Q (which is obtained at maximum boost or cut) is approximately 1 for the 22-1K (leftmost) band, and 1.5 for the other three bands. The narrowest Q is approximately 2.5 to 3 for all of the bands.

Bandwidth in Bell Mode

In Bell mode, rotating the control counter-clockwise increases the bandwidth (lowers the Q) of the band and a broader range frequencies is affected. As Bandwidth is rotated clockwise, bandwidth is decreased (Q is increased) and a narrower range of frequencies is affected.

At the narrowest settings (Bandwidth fully clockwise), the maximum boost/cut gain of 20 dB is available. As Bandwidth is broadened, the available band gain is decreased, down to about 6 dB of boost/cut at the widest (fully counter-clockwise) settings.

The effect of the Bandwidth control on the response curve in Bell mode is shown in the filter plot below.

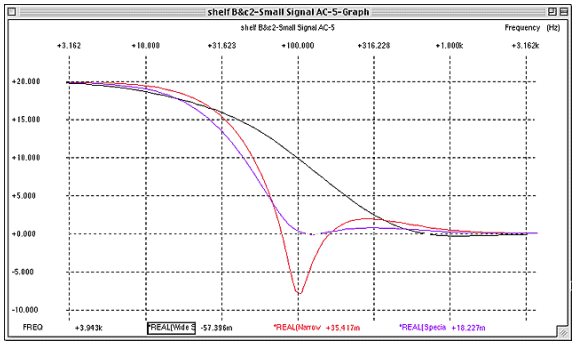


Bandwidth in Shelf Mode

In Shelf mode, rotating Bandwidth counter-clockwise decreases the slope of the shelf and Gain adjustments are more gentle. As Bandwidth is rotated clockwise, the shelf slope steepens, and Gain changes will be more obvious.

As Bandwidth is increased in Shelf mode, a bell curve begins to be introduced in the opposite direction (i.e., overshoot). For example, if the Shelf is boosted, a dip is created at higher Bandwidth values. At maximum Bandwidth, this overshoot curve is pronounced.

The effect of the Bandwidth control on the response curve in Shelf mode is shown in the filter plot below.



Band Frequency

This control defines the center frequency (Bell mode) or edge frequency (Shelf mode) for the band. Each band provides a wide range of specially tuned overlapping and interleaving frequency choices. The available frequencies for each band are listed in the table below.

Available Band Frequencies

Massive Passive Band	Selectable Frequencies (Hz)
Low	22, 33, 47, 68, 100, 150, 220, 330, 470, 680, 1K
Low Mid	82, 120, 180, 270, 390, 560, 820, 1.2K, 1.8K, 2.7K, 3.0K
High Mid	220, 330, 470, 680, 1K, 1.5K, 2.2K, 3.3K, 4.7K, 6.8K, 10K
High	560, 820, 1.2K, 1.8K, 2.7K, 3.9K, 5.6K, 8.2K, 12K, 16K, 27K

Channel Controls

The controls for the two identical channels (left and right) are detailed below. Because both Massive Passive plug-ins operate the same way (and the controls for each channel are identical), the control descriptions for each channel are only detailed once.

> ***Note:*** *See Standard vs. Mastering Versions for the exact differences between the Massive Passive parameters.*

EQ In

The EQ In pushbutton switch enables the channel. When the button illuminates in a brighter blue, the channel is active and the other channel controls will affect the signal. When this control is disabled, all the desirable low-level system filtering and coloration is retained in the channel, just like the original hardware.

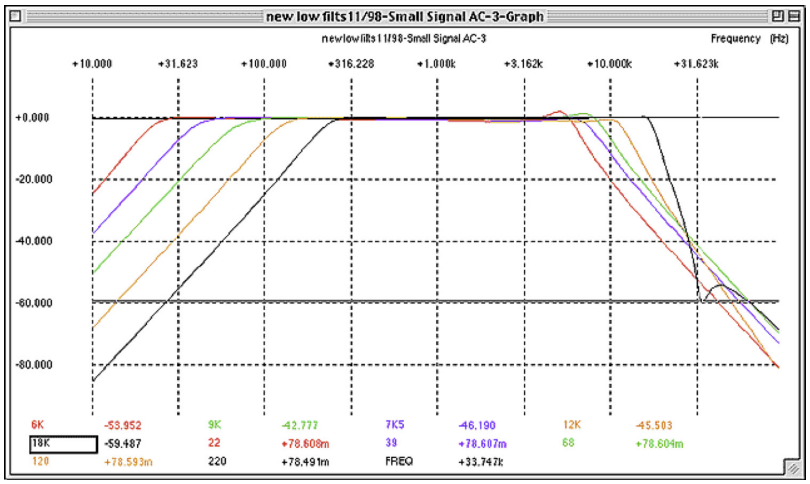
Channel Gain

This knob sets the overall gain for the channel. The range for the standard version is continuously variable from -6 dB to +4 dB. The range for the Mastering version is ±2.5 dB, in 0.5 dB steps.

The Channel Gain controls are intended to help match levels between Bypass and EQ enabled modes so that the EQ effect can be more accurately judged. With drastic EQ there may not be enough range to match levels, but with drastic EQ this kind of comparison is of little use. The range is small to allow easier and finer adjustments.

Filters

Low Pass and High Pass filters are available for both channels. The response curves of the filters are shown below. See Available Band Frequencies for the available values for each version.



High Pass and Low Pass filter response curves (standard version)

Low Pass

The Low Pass filter allows the channel's lower frequencies to pass while attenuating higher frequencies. The slope of the Low Pass filter depends on the value set for the filter. At 6K, 7K5, and 9K values, the filter slope is 18 dB/octave. At these values, a small (1.5 to 2 dB) bump occurs in the response before the curve drops off. At 12K, the slope is 30 dB/octave. At 18K, a modified elliptical filter is used.

In the mastering version, when Low Pass is set to 27kHz the frequency response is down by about 0.6 dB at 20kHz. When the control is set to 52kHz, there is actually a boost of about 0.4 dB at 20kHz; the filter is slightly resonant at this setting so there is a slight boost before the filter starts rolling off.

High Pass

The High Pass filter allows the channel's higher frequencies to pass while attenuating lower frequencies. The slope of the High Pass filter is 18 dB/octave.

Mastering Filters

The Low Pass/High Pass filter frequencies in the mastering version are tuned specifically for mastering, and the slopes are flatter until the knee. The slopes are 18 dB per octave on the mastering filters except for the highest value (52K) which is 30 dB/octave.

Other Controls

The Power and Link controls are global to both channels.

Power

Power is a two-state knob that determines whether the plug-in is active. When the knob is in the Off (counter-clockwise) position, all LED elements are unlit, plug-in processing is disabled, and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Link

The Link switch is a software-only addition that allows the two sets of controls for each channel to be linked for ease of operation when both channels require the same values, or unlinked when dual-mono operation is desired. The Link parameter is stored within presets and can be accessed via automation.

> ***Important:*** *When unlink is switched to link, channel 1 controls are copied to channel 2. Control offsets between channels are lost in this case.*

When set to Link (up position), modifying any channel one or channel two control causes its adjacent stereo counterpart control to snap to the same position (channel 1 & 2 controls are ganged together in Link mode).

When Link is active, automation data is written and read for channel one only. In this case, the automation data for channel one will control both channels.

> ***Note:*** *When Link is active, changing channel two parameters from a control surface or when in "controls only" (non-GUI) mode will have no effect.*

When set to unlink (down position), the controls for channels one and two are completely independent. Unlink is generally used in mono mode. When unlinked, automation data is written and read by each channel separately.

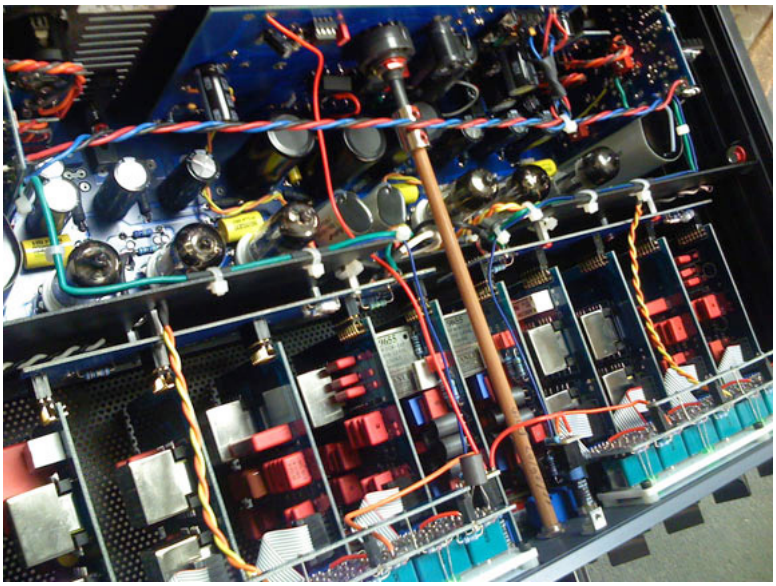
> ***Note:*** *If disparate values are set under the unlinked state, the left channel will override the right channel when Link is activated.*

Notes from Manley Laboratories

- Do not assume the knob settings "mean" what you expect they should mean. Part of this is due to the interaction of the controls. Part is due to the new shelf slopes and part due to a lack of standards regarding shelf specification.
- You may find yourself leaning towards shelf frequencies closer to the mids than you are used to and the "action" seems closer to the edges of the spectrum than your other EQs. Same reasons as above.
- You may also find yourself getting away with what seems like massive amounts of boost. Where the knobs end up, may seem scary particularly for mastering. Keep in mind that, even at maximum boost, a wide bell might only max out at 6 dB of boost (less for the lowest band) and only reaches 20 dB at the narrowest bandwidth. On the other hand, because of how transparent this EQ is, you might actually be EQing more than you could with a different unit. Taste rules, test benches don't make hit records, believe your ears.
- Sometimes the shelves will sound pretty weird, especially (only) at the narrow bandwidth settings. They might seem to be having a complex effect and not only at the "dialed in" frequency. This is certainly possible. Try wider bandwidths at first.
- If you seem to be boosting all 4 bands at widely separated frequencies and not hearing much "EQ" as you might expect (except for level) this is a side-effect of a passive EQ and probably a good thing. To get drastic sounding EQ you should try boosting a few bands and cutting a few bands. In fact, it is usually best to start with cutting rather than boosting.
- A reasonable starting point for the Bandwidth for shelves is straight up or between 11:00 and 1:00. It was designed this way and is roughly where the maximum flatness around the "knee" is, combined with a well defined steep slope.
- The Massive Passive may sound remarkably different from other high end EQs and completely different from the console EQs. Yes, this is quite deliberate. Hopefully it sounds better, sweeter, more musical and it complements your console EQs. We saw little need for yet another variation of the standard parametric with only subtle sonic differences. We suggest using the Massive Passive before tape, for the bulk of the EQ tasks and then using the console EQs for some fine tweaking and where narrow Q touch-ups like notches are needed. The Massive Passive is equally at home doing big, powerful EQ tasks such as is sometimes required for tracking drums, bass and guitars, or for doing those demanding jobs where subtlety is required like vocals and mastering.

Additional Information

The original (and rather lengthy) user manual written by Manley Labs for the hardware unit contains a wealth of great information about the philosophy, design decisions, and use of the Massive Passive EQ. It is highly recommended reading for those interested in technical details. The manual can be found on their website, along with info about their other great products: www.manley.com/manuals.php



The Massive Passive EQ hardware interior

All visual and aural references to the Massive Passive EQ and all use of MANLEY's trademarks are being made with written permission from MANLEY LABORATORIES INCORPORATED. Special thanks to EveAnna Manley.

Manley Stereo Variable Mu Limiter Compressor

Tube compression royalty for your mixes

As Manley Labs' flagship compressor since 1994, the Variable Mu is a tube and transformer-driven classic that exudes hand-made craftsmanship. A gold standard among mixing and mastering engineers, the Variable Mu adds clarity and cohesion to stereo buses or your entire mix.

Developed under Manley Labs' rigorous scrutiny, the Manley Variable Mu Limiter Compressor plug-in is a thorough emulation of this legendary tube limiter, and is based on the coveted "6BA6 T-BAR Tube Mod" unit. Now, its famed sound is available exclusively for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Add definition and fidelity to individual tracks, stereo buses, or an entire mix
- Glue together difficult mixes with signature Manley tube compression
- Link channels for a precise, perfectly matched stereo image
- Select from Left/Right or Mid/Side operation for precise control of stereo imaging
- Use the plug-in-only Dry/Wet Mix control to easily dial-in parallel compression

Manley Variable Mu® Under the Hood

While the Manley Variable Mu uses the remote cut-off style gain reduction found in the Fairchild and other classic limiters, it has a sound and character all its own. Its classic dual-triode gain reduction design is constantly re-biased by the sidechain control voltages, creating a unique variable gain compressor with stunning transparency. This lets you treat source material with velvety-smooth gain reduction, while infusing warm harmonic content, free of audible compression artifacts.

King of the 2-Bus

The Manley Variable Mu Limiter Compressor plug-in can be used on single instruments such as bass or a lead vocal, or on subgroups like strings or horns. But its raison d'être is on the mix bus, where its expert features can unify your mixes with a rich, hi-fi fit and finish.

Powerful Controls

Parameter linking allows simultaneous adjustment of both channels with stereo signals. When unlinked, the plug-in's digital implementation of Mid/Side processing is actually improved over the hardware, providing phase accurate stereo imaging.

The High Pass Sidechain filter prevents compression response to frequencies lower than 100 Hz — letting you compress overheads, for example, while retaining powerful, punchy bottom-end.

Plug-in-only controls such as Dry/Wet Mix and Headroom give you more colors with which to paint your mixes. Dry/Wet Mix offers easy parallel compression — perfect for quickly polishing background vocals or a drum bus. Finally, the Headroom control lets you optimize the Variable Mu's overall level to your playback system.

Manley Stereo Variable Mu Limiter Compressor interface

Variable Mu Overview

The Manley Stereo Variable Mu Limiter Compressor is a highly flexible two-channel processor for adding transparent dynamics control and tube warmth to mix and master buses or individual tracks.

While the Manley Variable Mu uses the remote cut-off style gain reduction found in the Fairchild and other classic limiters, it has a sound and character all its own. Incorporating a traditional dual-triode gain reduction design which is constantly re-biased by the sidechain control voltages, the Variable Mu combines Manley's hand-selected tubes and in-house transformer manufacturing to create a unique variable gain compressor design with stunning transparency. This lets you treat source material with velvety-smooth gain reduction, while infusing warm harmonic content, free of audible compression artifacts.

Dual Mono/Stereo Processing

The Manley Variable Mu can operate in stereo or as a dual-mono device.

Dual Mono

When set to Left-Right (versus Mid-Side) and the sidechain is unlinked, the processor operates as a dual mono device. Except for the ganged Dual Input control, the left and right channels are completely independent, and each channel can have unique settings.

Stereo

When set to Left-Right and the sidechain is linked, the plug-in is operating as a stereo device. The left signal is fed to the left channel compressor, and the right signal is fed to the right channel compressor. The two compressors are constrained so that they both compress the same amount at any instant, preventing transients that appear only on one channel from shifting the stereo image of the output (any big transient on either channel will cause both channels to compress). The amount of compression will be similar to the amount of compression for a transient which appears on both channels at the same time.

In stereo operation, the controls for the left and right channels can be unlinked so they are independent and can be adjusted separately. Threshold, attack, and recovery can be set independently to cause the compressor to be more sensitive to instruments which are panned to one side or the other. Output controls can be set separately in order to correct an overall image shift at the output.

Mid-Side Processing

The Manley Variable Mu can perform dynamics processing on the middle and side components of stereo signals independently. In other words, the monophonic (middle, or sum) and/or stereo (side, or difference) components of a stereo source signal can be processed separately from the other component.

Mid-Side processing is accomplished by first routing the stereo source signal through a sum/difference matrix on input which separates a stereo source signal into its mono and stereo signal components. The mid-side components are then compressed or limited independently. Finally, the mid-side components are recombined into a normal stereo signal via another sum/difference matrix on output.

In the Variable Mu, the left+right (sum) middle signals are routed to the left channel, and the left-right (difference) side signals are routed to the right channel. The two channels can work independently of each other, or the dynamics sidechain control signal can be optionally linked for creative uses.

The Variable Mu has separate Mid-Side switches for input and output. The M-S IN switch activates the sum/difference matrix on input (encode) and the M-S OUT switch activates the sum/difference matrix on output (decode). The separate matrices allow for using only "half" of a full encode/decode circuit on input or output (but not both) when a full encode/decode process is not desired. For example, this feature can be used to decode stereo tracks recorded with the mid-side microphone technique back into a standard left/right stereo signal.

> ***Note:*** *Each sum/difference matrix simply inverts the stereo signal type from left-right to mid-side, or from mid-side to left-right. They don't distinguish between the original signal type, so they can be used to convert either type to the other type.*

Variable Mu Modes

There are two independent processors within the Variable Mu. Depending on the state of the two Left-Right/Mid-Side switches (one for input and one for output) and the Sidechain Link switch, numerous operating modes are possible.

The switch positions required for various operating modes are shown in the table below, followed by descriptions of the modes.

Variable Mu Modes Table

Input Matrix	Output Matrix	Sidechain Link	Operating Mode
L-R	L-R	Unlinked	Dual Mono
L-R	L-R	Linked	Stereo Left/Right
M-S	M-S	Unlinked	Stereo Mid/Side (encode+decode)
M-S	L-R	Unlinked	Stereo Mid/Side (input matrix only)
L-R	M-S	Unlinked	Stereo Mid/Side (output matrix only)

Mode Descriptions

Dual Mono

In dual mono mode, the Variable Mu operates as two separate monophonic dynamic processors with independent control of the left and right channel signals. There is no interaction between the two processors.

Stereo Left/Right

In this mode, the Variable Mu operates as a typical stereo dynamics processor. The dynamics control signal sidechain of the two compressors are linked so that they both compress the same amount at any instant, preventing transients which appear on only one channel from shifting the stereo imaging of the output.

Dual Mid/Side (encode+decode)

In this mode the Variable Mu operates as two monophonic processors with independent control of the middle and side components of the two input signals. The input signals are encoded by the mid/side (sum/difference) matrix before processing and there is no interaction between the two processors. The left channel processes the mid component, the right channel processes the side component, and the mid/side components are decoded back into a normal stereo signal at the outputs.

Dual Mid/Side (input matrix only)

This mode is the same as Dual Mid/Side, except the signal components are not routed through the output matrix.

Dual Mid/Side (output matrix only)

This mode is the same as Dual Mid/Side, except the signal components are not routed through the input matrix.

Operating Headroom

The Headroom control, which is a UAD-only feature not found in the original hardware, enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the Manley Variable Mu. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor. By fine-tuning Headroom, the non-linear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels.

By increasing the Headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise), signals at the input can be pushed higher before they compress. For complete details about this feature, see Headroom.

Unmarked Controls

Some continuous controls (Dual Input, Threshold, Attack, Output) have a range of zero to ten when viewed in controls mode (if supported by the DAW). As with the original hardware, these controls are not marked with absolute values and are designed to be set "by ear" instead of by selecting pre-defined values.

Artist Presets

The Manley Variable Mu includes artist presets from prominent Variable Mu users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the DAW application's preset menu. The artist presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Manley Variable Mu Controls

Dual Input

This continuously variable control determines the signal input level (gain) for both channels of the processor. Higher levels result in a more colored signal. Lower levels result in a more transparent or natural sound.

Threshold

This continuously variable control determines the amount of compression to be applied to the channel. Rotate Threshold towards MIN (counter-clockwise) to lower the threshold and increase compression.

> ***Tip:*** *Signals below the threshold are not compressed.*

Input Gain versus Threshold

The amount of signal compression is determined by both the Dual Input and Threshold controls. If one is increased and the other decreased, the compression characteristics won't change much, but the color characteristics will.

> ***Tip:*** *For less color with the same amount of compression, lower the input gain and lower the threshold control.*

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches the Threshold level before compression is applied. The faster the Attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold.

The Attack range is continuously variable from 70 milliseconds (when set to SLOW) to 25 milliseconds (when set to FAST).

Recovery

The Recovery (release) knob sets the time it takes for processing to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. The available values are shown in the table below. The default setting is Medium Fast.

Recovery Knob Values

Knob Value	Time (seconds)
Slow	8
Medium Slow	4
Medium	0.6
Medium Fast	0.4
Fast	0.2

Output

Output provides continuous attenuation of the Variable Mu's signal level at the output of the plug-in. Note that output adjustment is only possible when the In/Bypass switch is set to In.

Note: *This control has no effect on the dry signal component.*

Compress/Limit

The Compress/Limit switch sets the channel to function as a limiter or a compressor.

Tip: *For limiting or compression to occur, signal levels must exceed the Threshold value.*

Limit

When set to Limit, the ratio starts at 4:1 and moves up to 20:1 when limiting exceeds 12 dB. The limiter provides a sharper knee to catch peaks, but actually softens as more limiting is used.

Compress

When set to Compress, the ratio is set to 1.5:1 with a soft-knee characteristic. Soft-knee provides a more subtle compression resulting in a natural, less compressed sound.

Note: *As with the original hardware, the Variable Mu plug-in can never achieve greater than -10 dB of gain reduction.*

Sidechain Filter

When set to HP SC, this switch rolls off low frequencies in the dynamics control sidechain. The signal is attenuated by -3 dB at 100 Hz with a slope of 6 dB per octave. When set to FLAT, the sidechain is unfiltered. The default setting is FLAT.

Removing low-frequency content from the sidechain by engaging the filter can reduce excessive gain reduction and/or "pumping" on bass-heavy audio signals without reducing bass content of the audio signal itself.

Bypass

The Bypass switch determines whether or not the incoming signal is processed by the plug-in. When set to Bypass, the source signal is unaffected.

Mid-Side/Left-Right

Note: *For an overview of this feature, see Mid-Side Processing.*

These two switches enable the sum/difference matrix for the input and/or the output. The switch on the left (labeled IN) enables the processor input matrix, and the switch on the right (labeled OUT) enables the processor output matrix.

- For mid/side compression on a standard stereo left-right signal, set both IN and OUT switches to M-S.
- For single-ended processing (for example, to process a stereo track recorded with a mid/side microphone technique), set only one switch to M-S.
- Sidechain Link should generally be disabled for traditional mid-side processing. Of course, the sidechains can be linked for creative purposes.

IN

When the M-S switch labeled IN is set to L-R, incoming stereo signals are passed directly into the compressor inputs, bypassing the input sum/difference matrix.

When set to M-S, incoming stereo signals are passed through the sum/difference matrix, converting one signal type (left/right or mid/side) to the other type before compression.

OUT

When the M-S switch labeled OUT is set to L-R, outgoing (post-compression) stereo signals are passed directly to the outputs, bypassing the output sum/difference matrix.

When set to M-S, outgoing stereo signals are passed through the sum/difference matrix after compression, converting one signal type (left/right or mid/side) to the other type before being output.

Sidechain Link

When this control is set to Link, it causes the two channels of the compressor to compress in equal amounts. This does not mean that the compressor will be equally sensitive to either channel however; that depends on the settings of the other controls.

When Sidechain is set to LINK but Controls Link is off, the Threshold controls can be set independently to cause the compressor to be more sensitive to instruments which are panned to one side or the other. Output controls can be set separately in order to correct an overall image shift at the output.

Controls Link

This switch links the controls for the left and right channels of the processor. When set to LINK, adjusting the left channel controls will force the equivalent right channel controls to move to the same position.

To read and write automation data for both channels independently when in dual-mono mode, Controls Link must be disabled.

> ***Important:*** *When unlink is switched to link, the left channel values are copied to the right channel, and any control offsets between channels are lost.*

Mix

The output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the Mix control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

When set to DRY, only the unprocessed source signal is output. When set to WET (the default value), only the processed signal is output. When set to the center position (50%), an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable throughout the control range.

Note that the dry signal is unaffected by the Variable Mu's Output control.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "MIX" text label to set the control to the 50% position. Click the "DRY" text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the "WET" text label to set the control to the maximum position.*

Headroom

The Headroom control is provided to allow best practice operating levels and accommodate applications where high amounts of gain reduction are not desired. Headroom simply changes the internal operating level so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much.

> ***Note:*** *There is only one headroom parameter. Although the Headroom control appears twice in the Variable Mu window, they are permanently linked.*

Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw "dot" is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is increased as the dB value decreases.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "HEADROOM" text label to return the control to the default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals will push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion color) more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less gain reduction and less color is desired.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

Keep in mind there are no hard and fast headroom rules. Feel free to experiment with the various positions of the Headroom control regardless of the audio source. If it sounds good, use it!

On/Off

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. When set to the Off position, the VU meters go dark to indicate signal processing has ceased. In this state, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Gain Reduction Meters

Dual VU meters display the amount of gain reduction in decibels. In typical use, adjusting Threshold towards MIN (counter-clockwise) results in the VU meters displaying higher amounts of reduction.

Additional Information

The original user manual written by Manley Labs for the hardware unit contains a wealth of great information about the philosophy, design decisions, and use of the Massive Variable Mu. It is highly recommended reading for those interested in technical details. The manual can be found on their website, along with info about their other great products: http://www.manley.com/manuals.php

The Manley Stereo Variable Mu Limiter Compressor original hardware

MANLEY
LABORATORIES, INC.

All visual and aural references to the Variable Mu and all use of MANLEY's trademarks are being made with written permission from MANLEY LABORATORIES INCORPORATED. Special thanks to EveAnna Manley and Dave Collins.

Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip

Track in real time with the ultimate all-tube vocal processor

The human voice is the first, most natural musical instrument. It's also the most expressive. Like the voice itself, Manley's VOXBOX channel strip is a beautiful and evolved system — a high-end blend of tube-driven preamp, dynamics and EQ circuits, designed specifically for your all-important vocals.

Featuring UA's groundbreaking Unison™ technology, the Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip plug-in for Apollo and UAD-2 hardware is a stunningly faithful emulation of this premium vocal channel strip. One listen and you'll hear why it's the vocal choice of Beck, Rick Rubin, U2 and more.

Now You Can:

- Track rich, luxurious vocals in real time through Manley's high-fidelity, Class A tube mic preamp
- Easily sculpt vocals with Manley's Pultec-style passive EQ with 33 selectable frequencies
- Expertly dial-in signals with transparent optical compressor with 25 Attack and Release combinations
- Harness Class A EQ and compression for bass, acoustic guitars, vocals, voiceovers, and more
- Organically tame sibilance with unmatched de-esser section
- Control Apollo interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the VOXBOX plug-in with Unison™ technology

Under the Hood

Introduced in 1997, the Manley VOXBOX combines the best of Manley's audio designs, including their high-fidelity tube mic preamp, vactrol optical compressor, Pultec-style passive EQ, and de-esser/limiter into a formidable 3U package. Featuring Manley's legendary boutique build quality, including in-house wound transformers, the VOXBOX stands alone as a premium tube-driven toolbox for outstanding vocal tracks.

Track Vocals through a Coveted Mic Preamp — with Unison™ Technology

Chock full of Class A vacuum tube tone, the Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip plug-in expertly emulates the hardware's rich, feedback-style mic preamp. Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the VOXBOX plug-in perfectly captures the impedance, gain staging, and the circuit behaviors that have made the hardware famous. The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication — from the plug-in to the digitally controlled mic preamps in Apollo audio interfaces.

Compress Sources Before the Preamp

Just like the hardware, the Manley VOXBOX plug-in lets you tame transients before the preamp with its flexible optical compressor. This innovative topology, as well as the compressor's 25 interactive Attack and Release combinations, assure exceptionally clean, smooth-sounding tracks.

Unmatched Passive EQ Sculpting

The Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip plug-in's three-band, passive EQ is based on the classic Pultec MEQ-5. With two peak bands, one dip band, and greatly expanded and overlapping frequency selections, this broad-stroke EQ keeps the top end sweet, and the lows defined, yet natural sounding — even with extreme boosts and cuts.

Ultra Transparent De-Essing and More

The Manley VOXBOX plug-in expertly models the hardware's "secret sauce," its sublime, natural sounding de-esser. With two knobs, you're afforded complete control of not only vocals, but shrill electric guitars, or overly bright overheads. You can also turn off the VOXBOX Channel Strip plug-in's de-esser frequency control and use this section as an aggressive and colorful limiter.

Not Just for Vocals

For years, the Manley VOXBOX has been a secret weapon for bassists looking to harness its high-end tube signal path and slick EQ and compression appointments. Engineers have also called on the Manley VOXBOX for clean electric guitars, strings, and drums as its always-musical results can elevate any source way beyond the ordinary.

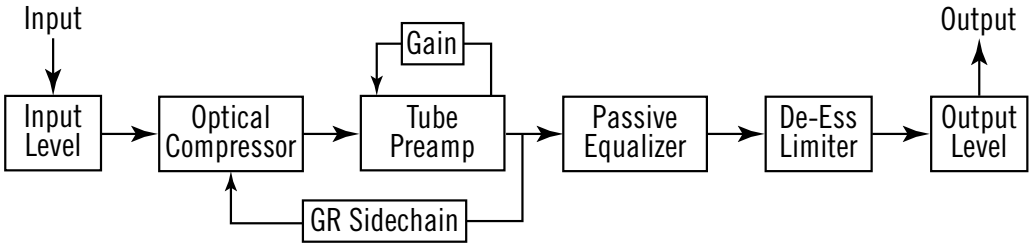
Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip interface

Operational Overview

This section provides a general overview of VOXBOX operational concepts. For specific details about individual controls, see Manley VOXBOX Controls later in this chapter.

Signal Flow

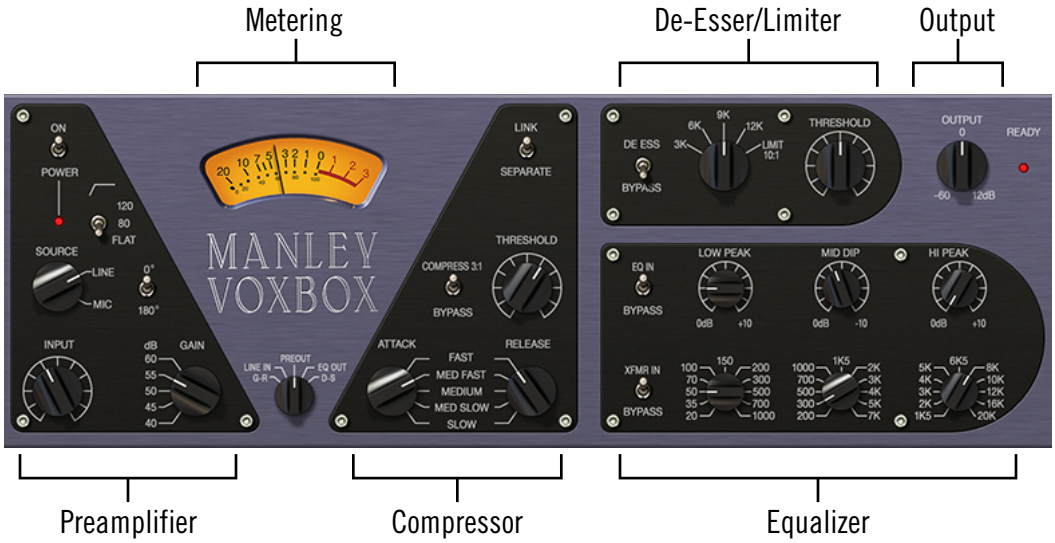
A simplified version of the signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below. Understanding this signal flow can help you obtain a more predictable result. Note that unlike most channel strips, the compressor circuit is located before the preamplifier, even though the compressor controls are located to the right of the preamp controls in the interface.



Signal flow within VOXBOX

Control Groupings

Associated controls are grouped by processor function, as illustrated below. A notable exception is the transformer output option (XFMR switch). Although the transformer option switch is in the EQ control section, within the circuit itself the transformer is located after all other circuitry.



Control groups in the VOXBOX interface

Compressor

The VOXBOX compressor is based on a passive opto-isolator circuit with minimal components. Opto-isolators offer dynamic response characteristics that are musically pleasing when used with audio signals (Universal Audio's popular LA-2A compressor is based on an opto-isolator).

The opto-isolator adds no measurable distortion or noise and only 0.1 dB of insertion loss. Manley's all-passive circuitry and placement of the compressor before the preamplifier circuit allows for extremely low noise even when the signal is compressed.

The compression ratio is somewhat program dependent and non-linear, but it is generally similar to 3:1 ratios when compared to VCA-based compressors. Because this compressor is before the preamp, it does not have a conventional makeup gain control. The INPUT, GAIN THRESHOLD, and OUTPUT controls can be adjusted to compensate.

The amount of gain reduction occurring in the compressor can be displayed in the VU meter.

Preamplifier

The VOXBOX preamp uses an all-tube amplifier circuit for gain. Note that the INPUT control is the primary "clean" input level control. The stepped GAIN control doesn't simply adjust the amount of amplification; instead it adjusts negative feedback within the preamp circuit.

In addition to gain, negative feedback also affects transient response, harmonic structure, clipping, and other sonic characteristics. As such, GAIN is typically used as a color control and the INPUT and/or OUTPUT controls can then be used to normalize signal levels.

Equalizer

The VOXBOX EQ is based on the Pultec MEQ-5 midrange equalizer. Manley has extended the MEQ-5's capabilities with additional frequency bands for full-range sonic control.

Three EQ bands are available, each with 11 selectable center frequencies. The Low and High bands offer up to 10 dB of boost, while the Midrange band offers up to 10 dB of cut.

The EQ circuitry is 100% passive. Each EQ frequency band contains only one capacitor, one inductor, a conductive plastic pot, and a gold contact switch in the audio path for pristine signal quality. There are no tubes, transistors, or other active components in the EQ circuit.

De-Esser / Limiter

A second opto-isolator limiter is located after the EQ circuit. A passive notch filter can be applied to the limiter's dynamic control sidechain, which enables de-ess functionality for sibilance control.

Four sibilant frequencies can be selected for the sidechain's notch filter. Sidechain filtering can be disabled to repurpose the de-esser as a secondary limiter. THRESHOLD controls the amount of de-essing or limiting.

The limiter has a compression ratio of 10:1 (the ratio is somewhat program dependent) and up to 20 dB of limiting is available. The amount of gain reduction occurring in the de-esser can be displayed in the VU meter.

Unmarked Controls

Some controls are continuous and have a range of zero to ten when viewed in controls mode (if supported by the DAW). As with the original hardware, these controls are not marked with absolute values and are designed to be set by ear instead of by selecting pre-defined values.

Artist Presets

The plug-in includes artist presets from prominent VOXBOX users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank; they can be accessed via the host application's preset menu. They are also installed to disk so they can be so they can be accessed via the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual) or via Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip Controls

Preamplifier Controls

SOURCE

The SOURCE rotary switch provides an attenuation pad for the input signal. When set to MIC, the input signal is not attenuated. When set to LINE, the input signal is attenuated by approximately 4 dB.

Tip: *Click the LINE or MIC text labels to select the source value.*

Apollo Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application, the following behaviors apply:

- SOURCE switches between the MIC and LINE hardware inputs of the Apollo preamp channel, and Apollo's hardware input switch can also be used to perform the same function.
- When Apollo's Hi-Z input is connected, SOURCE is automatically overridden and the switch has no effect.

LOW CUT

The Low Cut (high pass) filter for the Mic, Line, and Hi-Z inputs is available via this three position switch. Available filter cutoff values are 120 Hz (up position) and 80 Hz (middle position). When set to FLAT (down position), the filter is bypassed.

The Low Cut filter has a gentle slope of 6 dB per octave with minimal phase shift. Low Cut is typically used to eliminate rumble and/or other unwanted low frequencies from the input signal.

Tip: *Click the 120/80/FLAT text labels to select a filter value.*

Apollo Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application, the following behaviors apply:

- Apollo's hardware filter switch can be used to toggle this parameter.
- When toggling the Low Cut filter state with Apollo's hardware switch, the frequency previously set in the plug-in is used.

POLARITY

The Polarity switch affects the Mic, Line, and Hi-Z inputs. When in the 0° (up) position, the input signal polarity is normal. When in the 180° (down) position, the polarity of the input channel's signal is inverted.

Polarity inversion can help reduce phase cancellations when more than one microphone is used to record a single source.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired setting.*

Apollo Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application, the following behavior applies:

- Apollo's hardware polarity switch can be used to toggle this parameter.

INPUT

INPUT is the main level control at the input to the plug-in. It attenuates the signal before the compressor and preamplifier.

The available range is 0 to 10 but values are arbitrary. Rotate the knob counter-clockwise to decrease the signal level.

Apollo Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application, the following behaviors apply:

- Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust this parameter.
- When Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, an orange dot is overlaid on this parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

GAIN

This five-position switch sets the amount of negative feedback in the mic preamp (it is not a pad or simple gain control). Negative feedback affects the transient response, harmonic structure, clipping, and other sonic characteristics. of the preamp. As such, it is typically used as a tone control.

GAIN values of 40, 45, 50, 55, and 60 dB are available.

Tip: *Click the GAIN text labels to select the value.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application and Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, an amber dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

Compressor Controls

Note: *Unlike most channel strips, the compressor circuit is located before the preamp circuit.*

SIDECHAIN LINK

When the plug-in is used in a stereo-in configuration, this switch allows the dynamics processors of both channels (left & right) to always be compressed in equal amounts or completely independently. When used in a mono-in configuration, this switch is locked in the LINK position.

Tip: *Click a text label to select the desired setting.*

Note: *This function applies to both the main compressor circuit and the de-esser/limiter circuit.*

LINK

When set to LINK, the amount of compression is always the same for both channels. Stereo imaging at the input is maintained by preventing left-right shifting at the output when one channel has higher signal peaks compared to the other channel.

SEPARATE

When set to SEPARATE, the amount of compression occurring is completely independent in both channels.

Note: *If one channel has higher signal peaks than the other channel, the left-right imaging may shift at the output.*

COMPRESSOR BYPASS

When this switch is in the COMPRESS 3:1 (up) position, the passive opto-isolator compressor circuit is engaged. When in the BYPASS (down) position, the circuit is disabled and the other compressor controls have no effect.

Tip: *Click a text label to select the desired setting.*

UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the compressor circuit is bypassed if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

THRESHOLD

This continuously variable control, which is located after the INPUT control in the circuit, determines the amount of compression to be applied to the input signal. Rotate THRESHOLD clockwise to lower the threshold and increase compression. Signals below the threshold are not compressed.

ATTACK

ATTACK sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal reaches the THRESHOLD level before compression is applied. Five rates are available: Slow, Medium Slow, Medium, Medium Fast, and Fast.

Tip: *Click near the left of the value label to select the value.*

The faster the attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold. Slower attacks allow a signal's attack transients (for example, the pluck of a string) to pass without compression, which can produce a punchier sound.

Unlike typical compressors, slower RELEASE settings with VOXBOX will make ATTACK changes more obvious. VOXBOX is noted for the unusual way the attack 'rides' above the reduction set by the release.

RELEASE

RELEASE sets the amount of time that must elapse after the input signal drops below the THRESHOLD before compression processing is ceased. The release time slows as gain reduction approaches 0 dB; this behavior is a function of the opto-isolator.

Note that due to interactivity in the passive circuitry, RELEASE has some effect on attack rates.

Tip: *Click near the right of the value label to select the value.*

Five rates are available: Slow, Medium Slow, Medium, Medium Fast, and Fast. Each release setting is carefully tuned for specific time constants, as described in the table below.

Rate Setting	Time(seconds)	Notes
Slow	5.0	Very slow release for the most inaudible compression
Medium Slow	2.0	Typical choices for vocals
Medium	1.0	Much like old LA-2A's but also tuned for drums and bass. Works well with dynamic broadcast audio. Pumps a bit when Attack is set to Slow.
Medium Fast	0.5	
Fast	0.3	Mimics the Manley Electro-Optical Limiter and works best in the range of 3 to 8 dB of compression

Compressor release times

Equalizer Controls

EQ BYPASS

When this switch is in the EQ IN (up) position, the passive equalizer circuit is engaged. When in the BYPASS (down) position, the circuit is disabled and the other EQ controls have no effect.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired setting.*

UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the EQ circuit is bypassed if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

LOW PEAK

This continuous knob sets the amount of low EQ band gain applied to the LOW FREQUENCY value. The available range is 0 to 10 dB.

LOW FREQUENCY

This rotary switch determines the frequency of the equalizer's low band. Eleven values are available (Hz): 0, 35, 50, 70, 100, 150, 200, 300, 500, 700, and 1000.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired frequency.*

Note: *This switch has no effect when LOW PEAK is set to 0 dB.*

MID DIP

This continuous knob sets the amount of mid EQ band cut applied to the MID FREQUENCY value. The available range is 0 to -10 dB.

MID FREQUENCY

This rotary switch determines the frequency of the equalizer's mid band. Eleven values are available (Hz, kHz): 200, 300, 500, 700, 1.5K, 2K, 3K, 4K, 5K, and 7K.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired frequency.*

Note: *This switch has no effect when MID DIP is set to 0 dB.*

HI PEAK

This continuous knob sets the amount of low EQ band gain applied to the HIGH FREQUENCY value. The available range is 0 to 10 dB.

HIGH FREQUENCY

This rotary switch determines the frequency of the equalizer's high band. Eleven values are available (kHz): 1.5K, 2K, 3K, 4K, 5K, 6.4K, 8K, 10K, 12K, 16K, and 20K.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired frequency.*

Note: *This switch has no effect when HI PEAK is set to 0 dB.*

De-Esser / Limiter Controls

DE-ESS BYPASS

When this switch is in the DE ESS (up) position, the de-esser/limiter circuit is engaged. When in the BYPASS (down) position, the circuit is disabled and the other de-esser/limiter controls have no effect.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired setting.*

UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the de-esser/limiter circuit is bypassed if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

DE-ESS SELECT

This rotary switch defines the center frequency of the dynamic control sidechain notch filter. Four sibilant frequencies are available (kHz): 3K, 6K, 9K, and 12K. The value is typically set to the center of the undesirable frequency range to be reduced.

When set to LIMIT 10:1, the sidechain notch filter is bypassed and the circuit behaves as an electro-optical limiter.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired value.*

DE-ESS / LIMITER THRESHOLD

THRESHOLD controls the amount of de-essing or limiting by defining the signal level at which gain reduction is activated. Rotate the knob clockwise to lower the threshold and increase de-essing/limiting.

Global Controls

VU METER

The VU Meter displays average signal levels at several key points in the circuitry as well as gain reduction amounts in the main compressor and de-esser/limiter circuits. The displayed signal level is set with the METER SWITCH.

Note: *The VU Meter displays average loudness and does not display signal peaks.*

METER SWITCH

This switch determines which signal is displayed in the VU Meter.

Tip: *Click the text label to select the desired value.*

G-R (default setting)

Displays the amount of gain reduction occurring in the main compressor circuit.

LINE IN

Displays average loudness at the input to the plug-in when SOURCE is set to LINE.

PREOUT

Displays average loudness at the output of the preamplifier circuit.

Note: *The VU Meter does not display levels at the output of the plug-in.*

EQ OUT

Displays average loudness at the output of the equalizer circuit.

D-S

Displays average loudness at the output of the de-esser/limiter.

TRANSFORMER BYPASS

When this switch is in the XFMR IN (up) position, the output signal is routed through the output transformer and the signal is slightly colored. When in the BYPASS (down) position, the transformer is bypassed and the signal is routed directly to the output.

In the original hardware unit, the transformer is in the balanced output circuit connection and the unbalanced output connection bypasses the transformer. In the digital realm, this switch conveniently provides both options.

Tip: *Click a text label to select the desired setting.*

UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the transformer is bypassed if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

OUTPUT

OUTPUT is a clean digital gain control that adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -60 dB to +12.0 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the value to 0 dB.*

This control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maintain unity gain and/or maximize color of the overall signal. For example, compression and EQ can be adjusted to taste, while using OUTPUT to normalize levels.

Apollo Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for the preamp channel within Apollo's Console application and Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, a green dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

POWER

The is the plug-in's overall bypass control for comparing the processed and unprocessed signal. In the ON (up) position, signal processing is active. In the down position, the unprocessed signal is heard.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the POWER is off if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.*

READY LED

The READY LED, located below the POWER switch, illuminates three seconds after powering on. In the original hardware, the LED indicates the unit is ready for use. In the plug-in, this behavior is a cosmetic emulation only. The plug-in is fully functional when it is instantiated and/or enabled.

Additional Information

The original user manual written by Manley Labs for the hardware unit contains a wealth of great information about the philosophy, design decisions, and use of the VOXBOX. It is highly recommended reading for those interested in technical details. The manual can be found on their website, along with info about their other great products:

- www.manley.com/manuals.php

Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip original hardware

All visual and aural references to the VOXBOX and all use of MANLEY's trademarks are being made with written permission from MANLEY LABORATORIES INCORPORATED. Special thanks to EveAnna Manley and Chuck Zwicky.

Moog Multimode Filter Collection

A Brave New World: The Ultimate Moog Filter and Sequencer

Moog analog filters have long reigned supreme as the most musical audio filtering circuits ever devised. With its incredibly rich sounds — ranging from buzz-saw to syrupy — and built in sequencing capabilities, the new UAD Moog Multimode Filter Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces represents a major advancement for all of filter kind.

Built for modern sequencer-based song production, the new Moog Multimode Filter XL plug-in — a one year effort between Moog Music and UA — borrows from various incarnations of Moog designs, nailing the essential Moog filter character unlike any software emulation in history. Prepare for a brave new world.

Now You Can:

- Add subtle to extreme textures to synths, drums, and other sources with legendary Moog ladder filters, Envelope, Drive, and Boost circuitry
- Sequence your filter sounds with an intuitive, infinitely variable four-lane step sequencer
- Explore wild sounds with Moog's signature self-oscillation and extreme resonance
- Radically shift the stereo image of your source with independent LFOs
- Use Apollo to track in real time with any instrument using classic Moog filters for phase, wah, and tremolo effects
- Mix with presets from electronic music artists The Glitch Mob, The Crystal Method, Benno de Goeij, Christoffer Berg, and more

A Moog Filter with More Modes, Slopes, and Range

Borrowed from the amazing Sub 37, the Moog Multimode XL plug-in offers four distinct filter slopes and full-range 20 Hz to 20 kHz operation for massive filter flexibility — from gentle frequency shaping to tortuously squelched self-oscillation and phase effects. Equally useful as an EQ or sub-harmonic enhancer, the Multimode XL Filter plug-in can be used to blow out drums and percussion, or inject subtle edge and depth to synth and guitar tracks. Use the Resonance control for dynamic speech-like timbres and accentuate specific frequencies for truly unique sounds.

Built-In Four Lane Filter Sequencing

The Moog Multimode Filter XL plug-in features an intuitive, full-featured, four-lane 16-step sequencer, pushing this virtual desktop filter set to near-instrument status. Discover unlimited creative potential, from melodic and polyrhythmic pattern programing to random chaos and cacophony with Sequence Length, Amount, Glide, plus global Direction, Sync, and Swing controls.

The Envelopes, Please

Featuring independent Attack and Release from The Ladder 500, plus four assignable Envelope destination selections for Filter Cutoff or Resonance, Modulation Amount or Rate — or any combination — the Moog Multimode Filter XL allows boundless sonic explorations. Conjure delicate Morse-code percussive transients, squirty funk bass, or engage in total deconstruction. The Spacing control detunes two separate hard-panned filters, letting you radically shift the stereo image of source material or create a subtle beating effect between filters.

Endless Dual LFO Modulation Effects

Borrowed from the Sonic Six, the Moog Multimode XL's LFO Modulation section features two fully independent, tap tempo controlled LFO Rate controls, allowing musical, polyrhythmic phrases. And with seven LFO Wave selections including Slewed Random — a nod to the legendary Moog Sub 37 synth — and positive or negative wave LFO Reset, you can sculpt rich automated sweeps.

The Moog Multimode Filter Collection also includes the Multimode Filter and DSP-lite Multimode Filter SE plug-ins and is a must-have for any dance and electronic producer/engineer.

Moog Multimode Filter XL interface

Moog Multimode Filter Family

The Moog Multimode Filter Collection is comprised of three plug-ins: Moog Multimode Filter XL, Moog Multimode Filter, and Moog Multimode Filter SE.

Moog Multimode Filter XL

Designed in collaboration with Moog Music Chief Scientist Cyril Lance, Moog Multimode Filter XL begins where UA's original Moog Multimode Filter left off. The filter emulation has been revamped, bringing a new level of analog realism. Selectable filter slopes, a wider range of cutoff frequencies, and a new notch filter mode add tonal flexibility. The envelope follower circuit boasts a new array of shaping parameters and control destinations.

Combining this with greatly expanded modulation capabilities and a inspiring four-lane parameter sequencer, Moog Multimode Filter XL is the stuff filter lovers' dreams are made of.

Moog Multimode Filter XL is a true stereo processor, with separate filters for the left and right channels. The dual filters share the same controls, but can be modulated separately.

Moog Multimode Filter

As Universal Audio's first foray into Moog filter emulation, the legacy Moog Multimode Filter (previously named (Moog Filter) was the first truly accurate software representation of this classic filter. While it does not offer all of the modulation and processing functions available in Moog Multimode Filter XL version, its concise control set and modest DSP footprint make Moog Multimode Filter as useful today as it was upon its release.

Moog Multimode Filter SE

Moog Multimode Filter SE (previously named Moog Filter SE) is derived from Moog Multimode Filter. Its algorithm has been simplified (primarily the elimination of the Drive circuit) to provide sonic characteristics very similar to Moog Multimode Filter but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow Moog Multimode Filter benefits when DSP resources are limited. Moog Multimode Filter SE sounds great even without Drive, and is suitable in many situations.

Moog Multimode Filter XL Operational Overview

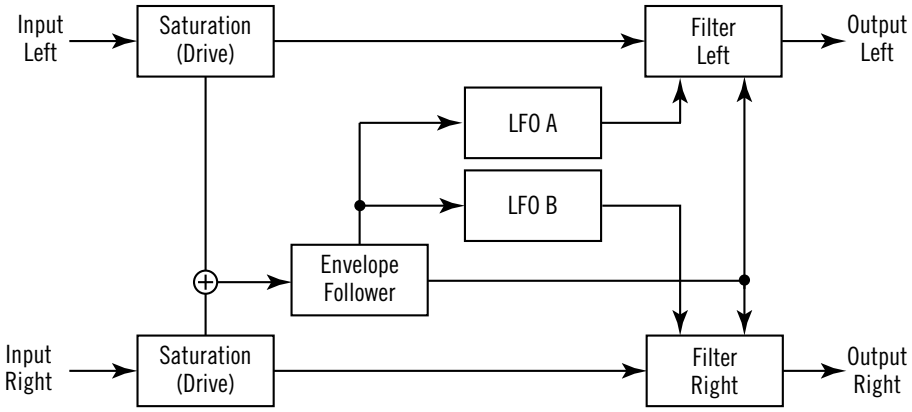
Warning: *As with most resonant filters, plug-ins in the Moog Multimode Filter Collection have the potential to create unpredictable sonic results that can result in unexpected jumps in output amplitude. Depending on the source material, input levels, and parameter values, the filter output can suddenly get extremely loud, with the potential to damage speakers and/or hearing. This condition is particularly susceptible when the simultaneous conditions of high gain, low filter cutoff, and high resonance values are applied, and/or when the LFO sweeps into these conditions. Use caution and/or low monitoring levels when dialing in extreme parameter values to avoid speaker and/or hearing damage!*

This section provides a general overview of operational concepts for Moog Multimode Filter XL. For specific details about individual controls, see "Moog Multimode Filter XL Controls" later in this chapter.

For in-depth information and controls for Moog Multimode Filter and Moog Multimode Filter SE, see "Moog Multimode Filter Controls" later in this chapter.

Signal Flow

A simplified version of the audio and control voltage signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below. Understanding this signal flow can help you better understand the behavior of the plug-in, and get you to your desired result more quickly.



Signal flow within Moog Multimode Filter XL

Control Groupings

Associated controls are grouped by their function within the interface. An overview of the control groups is provided below. For detailed parameter descriptions, see the control details later in this chapter.

Input

The Input controls affect input gain/drive to the filter circuits, as well as plug-in bypass and power states.

Envelope

The modulation circuit or filter cutoff frequency of Moog Multimode Filter XL can be modulated by the amplitude of the signal coming into the plug-in. This function is typically called an "envelope follower" because it "follows" the input level of the signal. The Envelope section contains the controls for the envelope follower.

Modulation

The Modulation section features two independent LFOs (low frequency oscillators), labeled A and B, which can be used to modulate the filter cutoff frequency. Each LFO can be set to a distinct rate and wave shape for complex interactions.

Filter

The Filter section controls the sound, shape, and behavior of the filters. Controls for filter cutoff and resonance are found here, as well as filter mode, slope, control smoothing, and left/right filter frequency spacing.

Output

The Output section controls the final output volume, wet/dry mix, stereo/mono operation, and left/right balance.

Sequencer

The sequencer is one of the most powerful features of Moog Multimode Filter XL, providing four lanes of flexible 16-step sequencing. Each lane can control a wide range of parameters such as filter cutoff, LFO speed, or envelope amount. The sequencer can be synchronized to the DAW clock for rhythmic tempo effects.

Artist Presets

Moog Multimode Filter XL includes artist presets from prominent users. Some of the artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. Additional artist presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer. The additional presets can be loaded via the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual) or via Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

The Moog Multimode Filter XL presets are categorized. Each preset has a prefix to indicate its typical application:

FLTR – Filter, saturator, or envelope effect

MIX – Mix effect useful for enhancing the input audio

LFO – Primarily LFO driven effect

SEQ – Primarily sequencer driven effect

FX – Melodic or synthesized special effect (audio input typically not required)

Moog Multimode Filter XL Controls

Note: *Some knob settings, when compared to the graphical user interface silkscreen numbers, may not match the actual parameter values. When the plug-in is viewed in parameter list mode within a DAW, the actual parameter values are displayed.*

Input Controls

Drive

Drive controls the amount of saturation gain before the filter. Drive is where much of the sonic "juice" in the Moog Filter originates. Drive can change the signal from clean to slightly overdriven to extremely distorted, particularly when used in conjunction with the Boost switch.

The range of Drive is 0 to +40 dB of gain. Drive affects both wet and dry signals, so the control is heard even when Mix is set to zero or Bypass is engaged. This gain range closely mimics the external input section of the Minimoog.

Drive LED

The Drive tri-color LED indicates the plug-in signal level just after the Drive/Boost controls. The Drive LED operates when the plug-in is in Bypass mode, but not when Power is off. When signal levels are low, the LED is unlit. As signal level increases, the LED illuminates and progresses from green, to yellow, to red. When the LED is red, signal level is at 0 dBFS.

Boost (+20)

Enabling Boost (+20) increases the gain range of the Drive circuit by 20 dB. Boost (+20) affects both the dry and the processed signal paths. Boost is useful for increasing levels when the input signal is low and/or introducing additional distortion and saturation.

Boost is engaged when the +20 button is illuminated.

Bypass

When Bypass is enabled, filter processing is inactive. The Input and Output sections continue to operate in Bypass mode. Enabling Bypass has the same effect as setting Mix to zero.

Bypass is engaged when the button is illuminated.

Power

Power disables the plug-in altogether and disables DSP processing. Power is engaged when the button is illuminated.

Envelope Controls

Sensitivity

Sensitivity sets the level of the input signal as it passes into the envelope follower. It controls the degree to which the input signal's amplitude envelope is used to modulate the envelope's Destination parameter. Set this control to suit the loudness and dynamics of the input signal.

Tip: *The Sensitivity and Amount controls are highly interactive.*

Envelope LED

This LED indicates the relative peaks of the control envelope. The envelope LED does not illuminate when the plug-in is in Bypass mode or when Power is off.

Amount

Envelope Amount sets the degree to which the envelope destination is affected by the dynamics of the input signal. Positive and negative values are available.

Note: *To hear Envelope modulations, Amount must be set to a non-zero value.*

Positive values increase the envelope destination as the input amplitude increases (e.g., the filter opens as the signal gets louder). Negative values decrease the envelope destination as the input amplitude increases (e.g., the filter closes as the signal gets louder). The greater the value (either positive or negative), the greater the amount of filter or LFO modulation.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the value to zero.*

Attack

Attack specifies the amount of time it takes for the envelope follower to reach its peak value once triggered by incoming audio. The available range is 250 microseconds to 2 seconds.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for the envelope follower to return to its lowest value when input volume drops, such as at the end of a transient signal. The available range is 150 milliseconds to 2 seconds.

Note: *Attack and Release ranges are from Moog's The Ladder 500 Series Module.*

Envelope Destination

Destination selects the parameter that is controlled by the envelope generator. Up to four simultaneous parameter destinations are possible.

The following parameters are available as envelope control destinations. The envelope destination is active when its LED is illuminated.

Modulation Amount	Filter Cutoff
Modulation Rate	Filter Resonance

To change the envelope destination, do any of the following:

- Click the Destination button to cycle through the available destinations (shift+click to cycle in reverse)
- Click an individual destination LED or text to directly select that destination
- Shift+click multiple destinations to route the envelope signal to multiple controls.

Modulation Controls

Moog Multimode Filter XL features two independent LFOs that can be used to modulate the cutoff frequency of the filter. Each LFO, labeled A and B, has its own identical set of controls and indicators that work independently, along with a central set of controls that affect both LFOs.

LFO Rate

LFO Rate sets the frequency at which the LFO oscillates. When the Hi and Sync options are disabled, the available range is 0.01 to 50 Hz. When Sync is enabled, the rate is synchronized to the tempo of the DAW.

> ***Tip:*** *When Sync is disabled, the Rate Display can also be used to change the LFO rate using text entry.*

Rate LED

The LFO Rate LED illuminates once per LFO cycle.

HI

Enabling HI for an LFO shifts the LFO rate range upwards, allowing for modulation in the audio band. When HI is enabled, the available LFO range is 0.5 to 1000 Hz. The HI button illuminates when this option is engaged.

> ***Note:*** *HI can only be enabled when SYNC is disabled.*

LFO Sync

Enabling Sync locks the speed of the LFO to the DAW tempo. When engaged, the LFO Rate control sets the rhythmic value (relative to DAW tempo) at which the LFO cycles. The available beat values range from 16/1 (one cycle every 16 bars) to 1/64 (one cycle per 64th note). The SYNC button illuminates when this option is engaged.

> ***Note:*** *Sync is disabled whenever HI is enabled.*

Rate Display

The current LFO rate is displayed here. The type of value that is displayed (Hz or beat value) depends on the status of the Sync function.

> ***Tip:*** *When Sync is disabled, the Rate Display can be used to set the LFO rate (in addition to the LFO Rate knob) using text entry.*

Sync Off

When Sync is disabled, the current LFO rate is displayed in Hertz.

> ***Tip:*** *To change the LFO rate when Sync is off, the Rate Display can be clicked to enter a new value directly.*

Sync On

When Sync is enabled, the current beat value is displayed. The beat value is displayed as either a division or multiple of the beat.

> ***Tip:*** *To change the LFO rate when Sync is on, the rate display can be clicked to view a drop menu with all available beat values, then a new value can be selected from the menu.*

LFO Tap

Press the Tap Tempo button repeatedly to set the LFO Rate. After two or more presses, LFO Rate is set to match the time between taps. After the first click, the TAP button remains softly lit, going dark after the fourth click, or after four seconds have elapsed since the first click.

> ***Note:*** *Tap is unavailable when HI is enabled.*

LFO Wave

The LFO Wave knob selects the waveshape of the LFO. Seven waveshapes are available: Sine, Triangle, Sawtooth Down, Sawtooth Up, Square, Random, and Slewed Random.

> ***Tip:*** *Click any waveshape icon to jump directly to that waveshape.*

LFO Amount

LFO Amount sets the degree to which filter cutoff is affected by the combined value of the two LFOs. Positive and negative values are possible, with a range of ±5.0 octaves.

Positive values increase the filter cutoff as the LFO amplitude increases. Negative values decrease the filter cutoff as LFO amplitude increases. The greater the value (either positive or negative), the greater the amount of filter modulation.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the value to zero.*

LFO Balance

LFO Balance sets the blend between the control voltage waveforms generated by LFO A and B. When at its center setting, the two LFOs affect filter cutoff in equal proportions. This feature is from the modulation architecture of the Moog Sonic Six synthesizer.

Rotating Balance counter-clockwise increases the effect of LFO A while simultaneously decreasing the effect of LFO B. At the fully counter-clockwise position, LFO B has no effect.

Rotating Balance clockwise increases the effect of LFO B while simultaneously decreasing the effect of LFO A. At the fully clockwise position, LFO A has no effect.

Tip: *Click the "A+B" text label to return the value to perfectly balanced LFOs.*

LFO Width

Width is an LFO cross-feed control that continuously blends or separates the LFO control signals before they are routed into the stereo filter. By separating LFO modulations for each filter channel, dynamic stereo filtering effects can be achieved.

Note: *Width settings are only heard when Modulation Amount is set to a non-zero value and LFOs A and B have different settings.*

When Width is set to zero (the default center position), both LFO control signals are blended in equal amounts before being routed into the stereo filter — both channels of the filter are modulated by both LFOs. At this setting, because the stereo filter's LFO control signals are the same for both filter channels, filter modulations are heard in the center of the stereo panorama.

As Width is increased, LFO A modulates the left filter channel more than the right filter channel, and LFO B modulates the right filter channel more than the left filter channel. At the fully clockwise position (+10), only LFO A modulates the left filter channel, and only LFO B modulates the right filter channel.

With negative (counter-clockwise) values, the converse applies. LFO A controls the right filter channel more than the left filter channel. At the -10 position, only LFO A controls the right filter channel, and only LFO B controls the left filter channel.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the value to zero.*

LFO Reset (- and +)

The LFO Reset buttons reset both LFOs to their zero crossing when pressed. The "-" button causes the LFOs to begin their cycle by moving downward from zero. The "+" button causes them to start their cycles by moving upward from zero.

Normally the LFOs are free running when not in Sync mode, but this behavior is not always desirable. For example, if using LFO filter modulation, you may want playback to always sound exactly the same when bouncing or mixing. To accomplish this, the LFOs must be started at the same place (zero crossing) of their waveforms. Automating the LFO Reset buttons enables this sonic consistency when using the LFO.

> ***Note:*** *When the LFO Reset buttons are automated within a DAW, the +/- buttons are illuminated until automation data for the parameters is no longer received.*

Filter Controls

Cutoff

This control sets the cutoff frequency of both filter channels in all modes (lowpass, bandpass, highpass, notch). The available range is 20 Hz to 20 kHz.

In lowpass mode, frequencies above the cutoff are attenuated. In highpass mode, frequencies below the cutoff are attenuated. In bandpass mode, the cutoff value is the center frequency, and attenuation occurs above and below the cutoff value. In notch mode, a narrow band of frequencies centered at the cutoff value are attenuated.

Resonance

Resonance determines the amount of filter feedback, which accentuates the harmonic content at the cutoff frequency. Higher values can produce a "whistling" quality to the filter, and at very high values the filter will self-oscillate.

Resonance works the same way in all four filter modes.

> ***Tip:*** *Resonance is typically easier to hear at lower filter cutoff values.*

Slope

Slope determines the shape and severity of attenuation applied by the filters to frequencies above (lowpass), below (highpass), around (bandpass), or centered on (notch) the cutoff frequency. This setting expressed in number of filter "poles." The greater the number of poles, the "steeper" the filter response.

Click the Slope button to increment through the available filter slopes (shift+click to decrement) or click an individual slope setting to choose it directly. The current setting is indicated by its illuminated LED.

1-Pole – The filter has a cutoff frequency of 6 dB per octave. For example, in lowpass mode frequencies that are double the cutoff frequency (an octave) are attenuated by 6 dB. This setting is the least steep of the modes and is useful for subtle tone shaping.

Note: *When Mode is set to Bandpass or Notch and 1-Pole is selected, the filter slope is 12 dB per octave (2-pole).*

2-Pole – The filter has a slope of 12 dB per octave. For example, in lowpass mode frequencies that are double the cutoff frequency (an octave) are attenuated by 12 dB.

3-Pole – The filter has a slope of 18 dB per octave. For example, in lowpass mode frequencies that are double the cutoff frequency (an octave) are attenuated by 18 dB.

4-Pole – The filter has the steepest slope of 24 dB per octave. This is the "classic" (and luscious) Moog filter response that has been employed in just about every Moog product from the Modular to the Minimoog to the Voyager.

Mode

This rotary control switches between the available filter types. Unlike Moog highpass and bandpass filters of the past, UA's design presents Moog's signature self-oscillation in all four filter modes.

Tip: *Click any Mode icon to select the mode.*

Lowpass – Frequencies above the cutoff value are filtered.

Bandpass – Frequencies above and below the cutoff value are filtered.

Highpass – Frequencies below the cutoff value are filtered.

Notch – A narrow band of frequencies are attenuated, centered at the cutoff value.

Smooth

When enabled (the default value), this option smooths the motion of filter cutoff, resulting in fluid, analog-style shifts between frequencies. At times, such as when sudden cutoff changes are automated, this smoothing may be undesirable and the option can be disabled. Smooth is enabled when its button is illuminated.

Spacing

Spacing inversely offsets the filter cutoff values for the left and right channels. In other words, positive values increase the right channel cutoff while lowering the left channel cutoff, and vice versa.

Spacing is borrowed from Bob Moog's Voyager instrument, and separates the hard-panned filters by up to three octaves. Unlike the original however, both filters move away from each other in pitch, rather than one fixed filter plus one adjustable filter pitch. Positive or negative values enable positioning the detuned filters from left to right, low to high, or high to low.

Spacing can create great stereo spatial effects. When the filter is in Mono mode, both filters are still heard.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the value to zero.*

Output Controls

Volume

The Volume control changes the gain of both wet and dry signals at the output of the plug-in. The available range is ±30 dB.

Volume LED

This tri-color LED gives a visual indication of the plug-in output level. The Output LED is active when Bypass is enabled, but not when Power is off. When the LED is red, the output is 0 dBFS.

Mix

Mix varies the amount of filtering that is occurring. It is not a true dry/wet control; it mimics the mix function of the MF-101 Moogerfooger. When Mix is at zero, the Drive control is still active and audible.

Tip: *Setting Mix to zero is the same as enabling Bypass.*

Mono

The left and right channel filters are always independent. However, when Mono is enabled, the left and right output channels are summed to mono. Mono is active when the button is illuminated.

Balance

Balance controls the relative volumes of the left and right channel signals. When set to zero (center position), the left and right channels are at equal volume levels. As the knob is rotated counter-clockwise, the right channel is attenuated. When rotated clockwise, the left channel is attenuated.

When MONO is enabled (and the plug-in is running in stereo), this is a pan control for the mono-summed signal.

When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is locked in the center position.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the value to zero.*

Sequencer Section

The Edit button in the main interface opens the sequencer interface. All sequencer controls are detailed in following sections.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the Edit button, the word "SEQUENCER" (at top of interface), or anywhere in the Sequence Step LED area (to the left of the Moog logo) to toggle display of the sequencer control interface.*

Sequencer Overview

Filters are often most useful and have the largest impact when they are set into motion. The envelope generator and LFOs in Moog Multimode Filter XL go a long way towards adding animation and movement to the action of the filters. However, for precise control of a wide variety of parameters over time, there's just no substitute for a good step sequencer.

Moog Multimode Filter XL features a flexible 16-step multi-lane step sequencer for modulating the plug-in's control parameter values over time. The sequencer can be synchronized to the DAW (or Apollo's Console) for powerful sonic manipulation of any sound source.

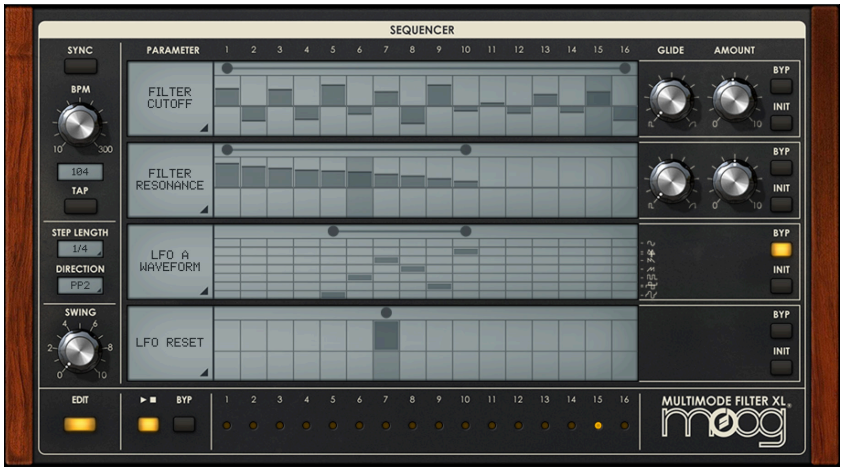
Parameter modulations generated by the sequencer are offsets to the current parameter values (destinations) that are set in the main filter plug-in interface. The offset amounts are adjustable on a per-lane and per-step basis. Parameter destinations can be continuous or switched controls.

Four lanes are available and each lane has independent controls. Each lane can be assigned to modulate a unique parameter, or multiple lanes can modulate the same parameter. Lanes can be set to different cycle lengths for generating complex polyrhythmic interactions.

Each lane has 16 steps. Each step can modulate the destination parameter value with bipolar (positive or negative) offsets. For stepped (switch) destinations, each step can be a different switch setting.

The sequencer also features global step length multipliers, a swing control, and the ability to run in a variety of directions.

> ***Note:*** *Due to technical synchronization limitations when the plug-in is used within a DAW, sequencer operations and bounced results may behave unexpectedly with offline processing modes (for example, Pro Tools AudioSuite).*



Sequencer interface within Moog Multimode Filter XL

Sequencer Controls

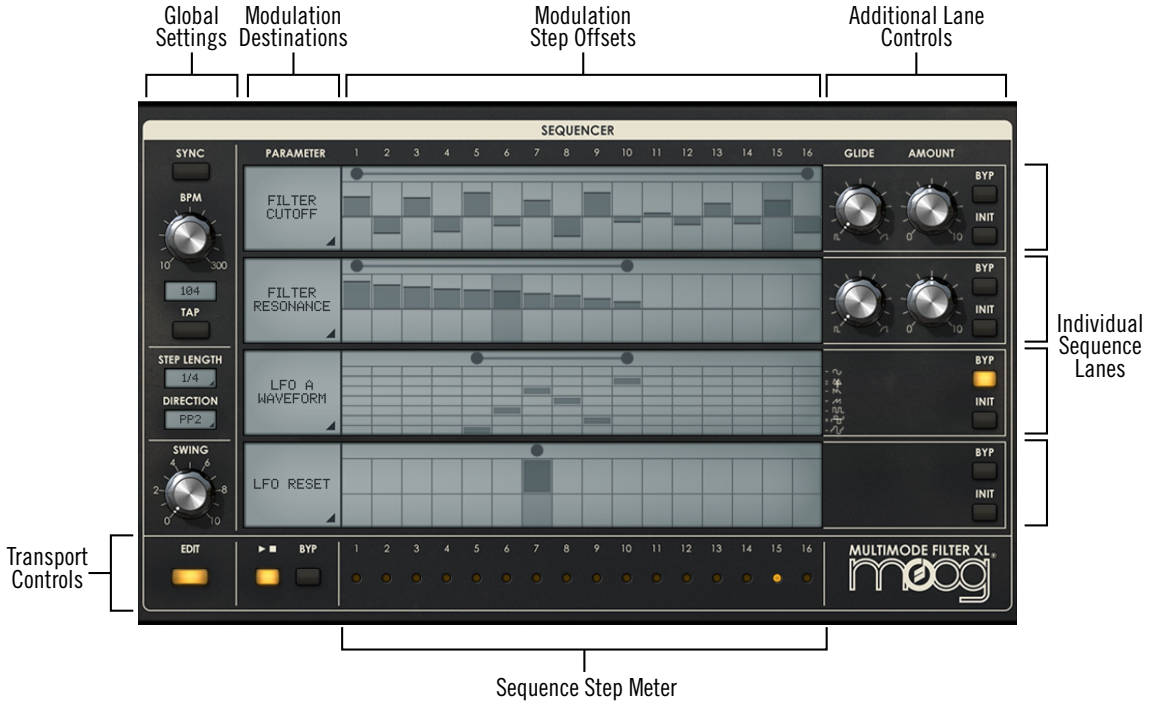
Note: *To adjust the sequence lane step values, the plug-in must not be bypassed. If the sequence lanes are blank and cannot be adjusted, return to normal view and disable the BYPASS button in the input control section.*

Edit View

Pressing the Edit button in the lower left corner of the plug-in window toggles the Sequencer Edit View, giving access to the sequencer settings when the button is illuminated. When in Sequencer Edit View, press the Edit button to return to normal view (button unlit).

Tip: *Click the Edit button, the word "SEQUENCER" or anywhere in the Sequence Step LED area (to the left of the Moog logo) to toggle display of the sequencer control interface.*

Control groupings within the sequencer interface are illustrated below.



Sequencer control groupings

Sequence Step Meter

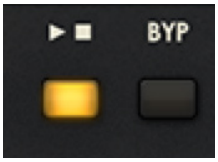
The row of LEDs at the bottom of the sequencer interface, labeled 1 – 16, indicate the current sequence step when the sequencer is active. The current step's LED is illuminated. The Sequencer Step Meter is also displayed in normal view.

Tip: *Click anywhere in the Sequence Step Meter to toggle Sequencer Edit View.*

Global Sequencer Controls

Note: *The global sequencer controls affect all lanes in the sequencer.*

Transport



The Transport button controls the play/stop state of the sequencer. Its behavior depends on whether or not sequencer Sync is enabled.

In contrast with the Bypass control (which disables the entire sequencer), when the sequencer is stopped using the Transport button, the parameter offset in the current step of each sequencer lane remains active.

SYNC Off – When Sync is disabled (SYNC button unlit) and the Transport button is pressed, the sequencer begins playing at step 1, at the tempo specified by the BPM control. Pressing the Transport button a second time stops the sequencer. In this mode, sequencer tempo and play/stop state are independent from the DAW.

SYNC On – When Sync is enabled (SYNC button illuminated) and the Transport button is pressed (or automated), the button lights to indicate that the sequencer is ready to play in sync with the DAW. When the DAW transport is started and stopped, the sequencer follows, matching its tempo and rhythmic phase. Pressing Transport a second time deactivates synchronous play and stops the sequencer. When the DAW transport is in play, the Transport button can pressed at any time to start or stop the sequence.

Note: *When the plug-in is used in Apollo's Console and Sync is enabled, the sequencer is synchronized to the Console tempo instead of the DAW tempo. Because Console does not have transport controls, the sequencer always runs when the play button is illuminated in Sync mode.*

Bypass (BYP)

Pressing Bypass stops the sequencer and removes any influence it has on associated parameters. When Bypass is enabled (BYP button illuminated), the sequencer lanes temporarily return to their default state, indicating that the sequencer is disabled.

Beats Per Minute (BPM)

When Sync is disabled, this knob sets the tempo of the sequencer. The available range is 10 to 300 BPM. When Sync is enabled, the knob is locked.

Tip: *The tempo can also be changed via the Tempo Display.*

Tempo Display

The Tempo Display shows the current BPM value.

Tip: *Click the Tempo Display to enter a new value using text entry.*

Tap

Press the Tap Tempo button repeatedly to set the BPM in quarter-note intervals. After two or more presses, the tempo is set to match the time between taps. TAP is disabled when sequencer SYNC is enabled.

Sync

Sync locks the sequencer tempo to the current DAW tempo. Sync is active when the button is illuminated.

Step Length

The Step Length drop menu sets the length of each sequencer step, expressed as rhythmic values relative to the BPM setting.

Direction

The Direction drop menu determines the direction of movement through the steps of the sequencer as it runs. Note that the last step is always the step set by the Length control.

The following directions are available:

Forward (FWD) – Each lane runs from step 1 to its last designated step.

Reverse (REV) – Each lane runs from its last designated step to step 1.

Ping Pong 1 (PP1) – Each lane runs from step 1 to its last designated step, then runs in reverse.

Ping Pong 2 (PP2) – Each lane runs from step 1 to its last designated step, then runs in reverse; step one and the last step are repeated so the lane can remain synchronized by maintaining the same number of steps in both directions.

Random 1 (RAND1) – Sequence steps are fired in a random order, and all lanes fire in the same order.

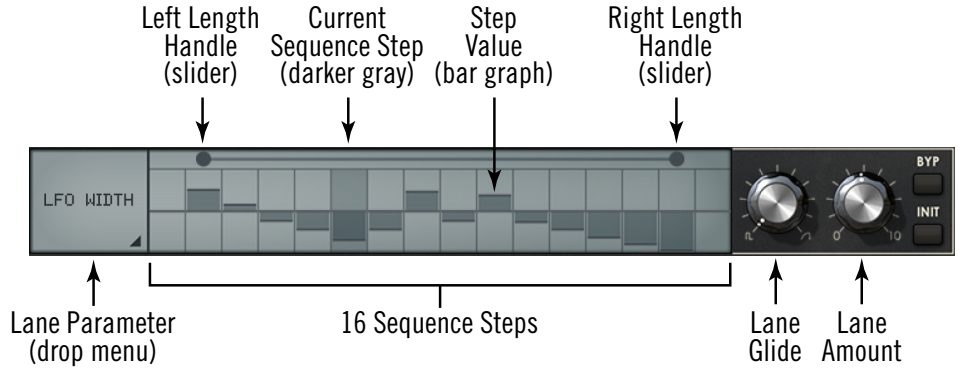
Random 2 (RAND2) – Sequence steps are fired in a random order, and all lanes fire in a random order.

Swing

Swing sets the amount of rhythmic offset to be applied to every other step in the sequence, creating a variety of shuffled rhythms. In a sequence with an even number of steps, this means that the "upbeat" steps are swung. At zero, no swing is applied. In the middle, swing ranges from moderate to severe, and near the top of the range, extreme "flamming" rhythms are created.

Lane Controls

The lane controls are independent for each sequencer lane. All lane controls are detailed in this section.



Elements within an individual sequencer lane

Lane Parameter

Each lane of the sequencer can modulate a different destination parameter. To select a lane parameter, click the lane parameter name to display a drop menu, then select a parameter from the menu.

Some parameters (such as Cutoff) are continuous destinations that are variable throughout their control range, while switched destinations (such as Mode) are individual settings that are restricted to the number of settings available in the control.

Continuous Destinations

Each lane can be assigned to the following continuously variable control destinations:

Input Drive	Envelope Amount	LFO Width	LFO Reset
Filter Cutoff	Envelope Sensitivity	LFO A Rate	Output Volume
Filter Resonance	LFO Amount	LFO B Rate	Output Mix
Filter Spacing	LFO Balance	LFO A+B Rate*	Output Balance

***Tip:** Unlike all other lane destinations, the LFO A+B Rate parameter is unavailable in the LFO controls section of the main interface. With this destination, both LFO rates can be controlled by a single lane.*

Switched Destinations

Each lane can be assigned to the following stepped control destinations:

Filter Mode	LFO A Waveform	LFO A HI	LFO Reset
Filter Slope	LFO B Waveform	LFO B HI	Output Mono

Step Values

Each of the 16 steps in a lane represents an offset to the current control value for the assigned lane parameter (the current parameter value that is set when *not* in sequencer edit view).

> ***Note:*** *To adjust the sequence lane step values, the plug-in must not be bypassed. If the sequence lanes are blank and cannot be adjusted, return to normal view and disable the BYPASS button in the input control section.*

Step values are a special type of control. The following constraints apply to this parameter:

- When the plug-in is used in a DAW, step values are stored within the DAW session. However, changes to the offsets cannot be automated.
- When the plug-in is used within Apollo's Console, undo/redo is not available for changes to the step values.

The behavior and appearance of the step values depend on whether the Lane Parameter destination is a continuous control or a switched (stepped) control, as described below.

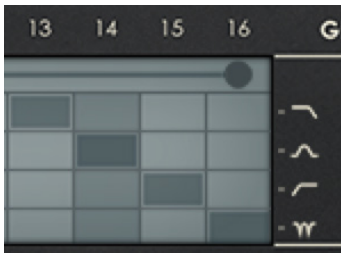
> ***Tip:*** *Option-click (Mac) or ctrl-click (Windows) a step to return to its default value.*

Continuous Values

When the lane parameter is a continuous control (such as Filter Resonance), each step is an offset to the original control value that is represented by a shaded bar graph. Continuous step values are bipolar — offsets above the center line are added to the lane parameter value, while offsets below the center line are subtracted from the lane parameter value.

To set continuous step offset values, click or click+drag anywhere in the step, or click+drag across multiple steps to draw a pattern.

Switch Values



When the lane parameter is a stepped or toggled control (such as Filter Mode), the lane is displayed as a grid. The available switch values are displayed to the right of the lane steps, and each switch value has its own row within the lane.

When the sequence reaches the step, the parameter is switched to the row value if the cell is selected (gray). If a cell in a step is not selected (its initial state), the switch value is unchanged.

To set stepped or toggled values, click a step cell to highlight the cell, or click+drag across multiple lane steps to draw a pattern.

Ganged Values

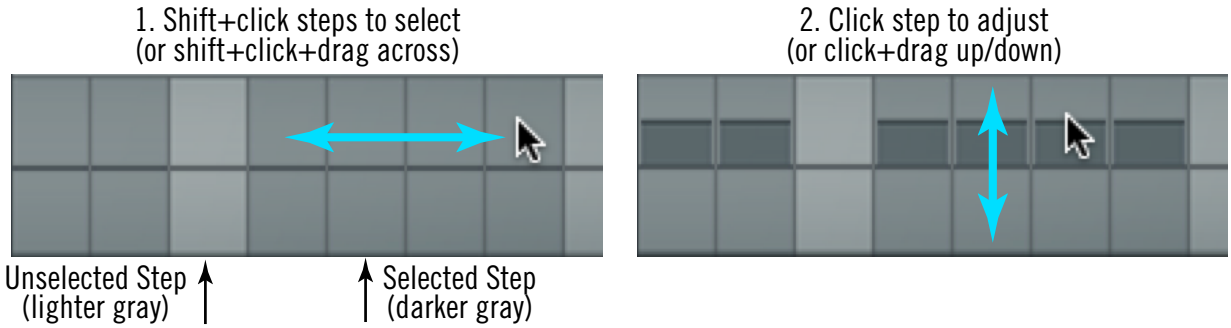
Multiple step values can be adjusted simultaneously by ganging steps before they are adjusted. Ganging step values is a two step process, as illustrated below:

1. **Select two more more steps for adjustment.** Shift+click any step to select it, then shift+click any other steps in the lane to add to the current step selection. Steps appear as a darker gray when selected.

   Tip: *Shift+click+hold then drag horizontally to quickly select multiple steps.*

2. **Set the step value.** Click anywhere in a selected step to set the value, or click+hold then drag vertically in any selected step to adjust all selected steps simultaneously. When the mouse is released, all selected steps in the lane are deselected.

   Tip: *Option+click any ganged step to return all ganged steps to their default values.*



Selecting and adjusting ganged step values

Lane Length Handles

By default, each lane in the sequencer plays all 16 steps before restarting its cycle. However, lanes can be set to cycle with fewer than 16 steps. By setting lanes to different lengths, complex polyrhythms can be achieved.

At the top of each lane are two length handles (black circles), which mark the first and final steps. Slide the length handles horizontally to designate the first and last sequence steps for the lane.

To set a lane's length to a single step, drag one of the lane's length handles onto the other length handle. When set to a single step, only one lane length handle is visible. To return the lane length to multiple steps, simply drag the single length handle in either direction.

Lane Glide

Glide is available when a lane is addressing a continuously variable parameter (such as Drive). Glide sets the speed at which the parameter changes between steps.

At zero, each step instantly changes the assigned control by the value of the step. As Glide is increased, the motion between steps is smoothed and slowed, making parameter movements more fluid.

Lane Amount

When a Lane Parameter is a continuously variable destination (such as Filter Cutoff), the Amount knob is available. Amount adjusts the overall range of all step values within the lane.

As Amount is increased, the step value offsets to the lane parameter destination become more pronounced. At the zero position (fully counter-clockwise), the lane parameter destination is not modulated.

> ***Note:*** *When Amount is set high for a given sequencer lane, the control signal sent by that lane may dip below or above the limits of the assigned control. When this occurs, the control signal is "clipped" at that limit, and the assigned control stays at its extreme setting until the control signal moves back into a value that falls within the travel of the control.*

Lane Bypass (BYP)

Pressing the Bypass button temporarily stops the lane's step value processing. When bypassed, all lane controls can be modified. A lane is bypassed when this button is illuminated.

Lane Initialize (INIT)

Pressing the Initialize button returns the lane's step offsets to their default values. The Length, Glide, and Amount settings are unaffected.

When a lane is assigned to a continuously variable control, Initialize flattens the step offset values to zero. When a lane is assigned to a stepped control, Initialize clears all lane steps.

Moog Multimode Filter Controls

Moog Multimode Filter is true stereo, with separate filters for the left and right channels. The dual filters share the same controls. The only time the left and right filters diverge is when Filter Spacing or LFO Offset are not zero.

Moog Multimode Filter interface

Drive/Gain

The knob at the upper left of the interface has a different label and function depending on if the plug-in is the full version or the SE version. The non-linear modeling of Drive characteristics is extremely DSP-intensive. For this reason, Drive is not available on Moog Multimode Filter SE. In Moog Multimode Filter SE, the parameter is named Gain instead of Drive, and is a straight (non-modeled) input gain control.

The range of Drive/Gain is 0 to +40 dB of gain. Drive/Gain affects both the wet and dry signals (the control is heard when Mix is zero and/or when Bypass is engaged). This gain range closely mimics the external input section of the Minimoog.

> ***Warning:*** *Due to these differences in input structure, cut and pasting of Legacy-to-SE and SE-to-Legacy presets may cause noticeable differences in gain. Keep hold of the master fader!*

Drive (Moog Multimode Legacy only)

Drive controls the amount of saturation gain before the filter. Drive is where much of the sonic "juice" in Moog Multimode Filter originates. Drive can change the signal from clean to slightly overdriven to extremely distorted, particularly when used in conjunction with the Boost switch.

Gain (SE version only)

Gain a clean (non-modeled) input gain control.

Drive/Gain LED

The Drive/Gain multicolor LED indicates the plug-in signal level just after the Drive/Gain control. The Drive/Gain LED operates when the plug-in is in Bypass mode, but not when Power is off.

Envelope

The Envelope controls (Envelope knob, Smooth/Fast switch) closely mimic the controls of the MF-101 Moogerfooger. However, UA has broadened the sonic palette with a negative range allowing unique negative envelope effects.

The cutoff frequency of Moog Multimode Filter can be modulated by the amplitude of the signal coming into the plug-in. This function is typically called an "envelope follower" or "auto wah" because the cutoff frequency "follows" the signal input level. The amount and speed of the envelope response can be adjusted.

The envelope knob determines how much the filter cutoff frequency is affected by the signal input level. Positive and negative values are possible. Positive values increase the filter cutoff as the input amplitude increases (the filter opens as the signal gets louder). Negative values decrease the filter cutoff as input amplitude increases (the filter closes as the signal gets louder).

The greater the value (either positive or negative), the greater the amount of filter modulation (the cutoff frequency range is increased with greater values).

Tip: *Click the knob label ("ENVELOPE") to return the value to zero.*

Envelope LED

This LED indicates the relative peaks of the control envelope. The envelope LED does not illuminate when the plug-in is in Bypass mode or when Power is off.

Smooth/Fast

This toggle switch determines the release time of the control envelope. In Smooth mode, the release time is 200 milliseconds. In Fast mode, the release time is 40 milliseconds. In both modes, the attack time is 25 milliseconds.

In typical applications, Fast mode is useful on percussive sounds, while Smooth mode is better suited to sounds with longer and/or uneven decays.

Cutoff

This parameter defines the cutoff frequency of both filter channels in all modes (lowpass, bandpass, highpass). UA has expanded the available frequency range of 20 Hz to 12 kHz on the MF-101 Moogerfooger to the broader available range of 12 Hz to 12 kHz on the Moog Mulitmode Filter Legacy.

In lowpass mode, frequencies above the cutoff are attenuated. In highpass mode, frequencies below the cutoff are attenuated. In bandpass mode, the cutoff value is the center frequency; attenuation occurs above and below the cutoff value in this mode.

Resonance

Resonance determines the amount of filter feedback, which accentuates the harmonic content at the cutoff frequency. Higher values can produce a "whistling" quality to the filter, and at very high values the filter may self-oscillate.

Resonance works the same way in all three filter modes.

Pole (Slope)

The filter slope is determined by this switch. The slope defines how "steep" the frequencies above the cutoff in lowpass mode (or below the cutoff in highpass mode) are rolled off.

2-Pole

In 2-pole mode, the filter has a slope of 12 dB per octave. For example, in lowpass mode frequencies that are double the cutoff frequency (an octave) are attenuated by 12 dB. 2-pole filtering is less aggressive than 4-pole mode, but has its own unique sound that you may find is better suited for certain types of signals.

4-Pole

4-Pole mode has a steeper slope (24 dB per octave), so the filtering is more obvious. This is the "classic" (and luscious) Moog Multimode Filter, in all its glory, that has been employed on just about every Moog product, from the Modular to the Minimoog to the Voyager.

Step/Track

This switch is a smoothing control for the filter cutoff frequency parameter. Smoothing is most obvious on continuous filter sweeps when varying the cutoff rapidly with the knob or automation. Step mode can be desirable when sudden cutoff changes are automated and other creative purposes.

Smoothing is on in the Track position, and off in the Step position.

> ***Note:*** *When set to Track, the plug-in does not "track" the input signal frequency like a synthesizer filter.*

Mode

This control is the heart of Moog Multimode Filter, combining Moog's classic lowpass filter with highpass and bandpass in one control. Unlike Moog highpass and bandpass filters of the past, UA's design presents Moog's signature self-oscillation in all three modes, bringing a new level of sophistication to Moog Multimode Filter designs of the past. The knob switches between the available filter types.

Lowpass

Frequencies above the cutoff value are filtered.

Bandpass

Frequencies above and below the cutoff value are filtered.

Highpass

Frequencies below the cutoff value are filtered.

Spacing

Spacing inversely offsets the filter cutoff values for the left and right channels. In other words, positive Spacing values increase the right channel cutoff while lowering the left channel cutoff, and vice versa.

Spacing is borrowed from Bob Moog's Voyager instrument, and separates the hard-panned filters by up to three octaves. Unlike the original however, both filters are moving away from each other in pitch, rather than one fixed filter plus one adjustable filter pitch. Positive or negative values enable positioning the de-tuned filters from left to right, low to high, or high to low.

Spacing can create great stereo spacial effects. When the filter is in Mono mode, both filters are still heard.

Tip: *Click the knob label ("SPACING") to return the value to zero.*

LFO

The LFO (low frequency oscillator) modulates the filter cutoff frequency. Several waveform shapes are available. The LFO can be synchronized to the tempo of the host (see Free/Sync below).

Amount

Amount controls the depth of the LFO filter cutoff modulation. A higher value will have a broader filter sweep.

Rate

Rate controls the speed of the LFO. The available range is from 0.03 Hz to 25 Hz in Free mode, or 16/1 to 1/64 to in Sync mode.

Rate LED

The LFO Rate LED illuminates in conjunction with the LFO rate, once per LFO cycle. Clicking this LED resets the LFO cycle.

LFO Reset

The LFO is reset to its zero crossing by clicking the LFO Rate LED. This parameter can be automated for mixing or bouncing.

Normally the LFO is "free running" but this behavior is not always desirable. For example, if you are using LFO filter modulation, you may want playback to always sound exactly the same when bouncing or mixing. To accomplish this, the LFO must be started at the same place (zero crossing) of the LFO waveform. Reset enables this sonic consistency when using the LFO.

Free/Sync

This switch defines whether the LFO is synchronized to the tempo of the host application (if this feature is supported by the host).

> ***Note:*** *See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.*

To ensure the LFO phase is consistent when in Sync mode, automate the LFO Reset parameter.

Value

The Value display depends upon the setting of the Free/Sync switch. Value displays the LFO frequency in Free mode, and the tempo sync note value in Sync mode.

Wave

This control determines the waveform shape used by the LFO. Six waveshapes are available: Sine, Triangle, Sawtooth-Up, Sawtooth-Down, Square, and Random.

Offset

Offset adjusts the polarity between LFO signals for the left and right channels. The available range is ±180 degrees.

Offset can create great stereo spacial effects. When the filter is in Mono mode, both filters are still heard.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the knob label ("OFFSET") to return the value to zero.*

Mix

Mix varies the amount of filtering that is occurring. It is not a true dry/wet control; it mimics the mix function on the MF-101 Moogerfooger. When Mix is at zero, the Drive/Gain control (and Boost on non-SE version) are still active and audible.

Setting Mix at zero is the same as setting the Effect/Bypass switch to Bypass.

Stereo/Mono

The left and right channel filters are always independent in Moog Multimode Filter. However, when this switch is set to Mono, the left and right output channels are summed. In Stereo mode, the left/right separation is retained.

Output

The Output control changes the gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is ±20 dB.

Output LED

This LED gives a visual indication of the plug-in output level. The Output LED is active when Bypass is enabled, but not when Power is off. When the LED is red, the output is 0 dBfs.

Effect/Bypass

When Bypass is enabled, filter processing is inactive. Drive/Gain and Output still operate in Bypass mode. Enabling Bypass has the same effect as setting Mix to zero.

If the Free/Sync switch is set to Free, the LFO phase is reset to zero when Bypass is switched to Effect.

Boost

Boost shifts the "Drive" gain range up a full 20 dB. This mimics the behavior of the external input on the Minimoog.

Note: *This control is not available on the SE version.*

Power

Power disables the plug-in altogether and disables DSP processing. When off, the background will "dim" much in the same way the Voyager's panel does when powered off.

Moog Multimode Filter SE

Moog Multimode Filter SE is derived from Moog Multimode Filter. Its algorithm has been revised (primarily the elimination of the Drive circuit) in order to provide sonic characteristics very similar to Moog Multimode Filter but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow Moog Multimode Filter benefits when DSP resources are limited. Moog Multimode Filter SE sounds great even without Drive, and is very usable in many situations.

The Moog Multimode Filter SE interface can be differentiated from Moog Multimode Filter by color and the module name. Moog Multimode Filter SE is uses the "Luna" background and maple sides borrowed from the Voyager "Select Series." Moog Multimode Filter uses the Voyager's "electric blue" backlighting and mahogany sides."

Moog Multimode Filter SE interface

Moog Multimode Filter SE Controls

The Moog Multimode Filter SE controls are nearly the same as Moog Multimode Filter. The exceptions are the Drive related controls (Drive and Boost) are unavailable on the SE model, and the Drive control is replaced with a straight (non-modeled) Gain control.

> ***Note:*** *When preset settings are copied from Moog Multimode Filter to the SE version, the Boost (+20) switch value is retained, even though the parameter is not available for SE. If you subsequently copy from SE back to Moog Multimode Filter, the original Boost value is pasted.*

Moog Multimode Filter Collection FAQ

What makes Moog Multimode Filter XL different from Moog Multimode Filter?

While some features are on par with the original Moog Multimode Filter plug-in, Moog Multimode Filter XL provides a hugely expanded sound creation and creative effect palette. UA improved the analog behaviors of the modeled Moog ladder filter, including expanded non-linear behaviors of the original, complete with self oscillation and saturation.

The Filter section now offers 1, 2, 3, or 4 pole operational Slopes, 20 Hz to 20 kHz Cutoff Frequency range, and added Notch filtering to the existing filter operations.

The Envelope circuit is now independent from the Drive circuit, providing fine precision in dialing in envelope effects. The Envelope section adds Sensitivity, Attack, Release, and expanded Envelope Destination selections of Filter Cutoff or Resonance, Modulation Amount, Rate, or any combination thereof.

The expanded Dual LFO Modulation section provides independent LFO Rate and Waveform selections including the new Slewed Random, audio rate LFO speeds, Balance, and Width controls.

Finally, a full-featured, four-lane, 16-step sequencer unleashes unlimited creativity from melodic and polyrhythmic pattern programming to utter chaos and cacophony.

Is Moog Multimode Filter XL a virtual instrument?

Moog Multimode Filter XL has no VCOs or standard MIDI control, therefore its design stops short of a complete instrument — it is designed to complement or enhance existing instruments or other tracks. However, Moog Multimode Filter XL's depth and breadth of features make it very "instrument-like" and a fantastic processor for real time performance with synthesizers, analog keyboards, guitars, basses, drums, and more.

When would using the original Moog Multimode Filter plug-in be effective?

Moog Multimode Filter may be ideal for simpler workflows or treatments, or where very low DSP loads are desirable. The collection also includes the linear Moog Multimode Filter SE, which may be useful when an "idealized" non-clipping filter sound is desirable.

What lengths did UA go to create Moog Multimode Filter XL plug-in?

UA's Moog Multimode Filter Collection represents the only Moog endorsed and authenticated third-party design. Bringing forth features from Moog products both old and new, the new Moog Multimode Filter XL is a one year effort between Moog Music and Universal Audio.

Conceived in collaboration with Moog's Chief Scientist Cyril Lance, the UAD Multimode Multimode Filter XL brings forth an amalgam desktop filter set "dream" product that could only exist in the digital space. It combines the best of Moog's classic instrument designs with select features from the Minimoog, Voyager, Sub 37, Sonic Six, Moogerfooger series, and The Ladder 500.

(continued)

The circuit designs, analog sounds and behaviors of these target devices were studied at length by UA's algorithm team, while a curated who's who list of electronic music artists were consulted for design feedback for the four-lane, sixteen step sequencer, pushing this virtual desktop filter set to near-instrument status.

My analog Moog Filters only self-oscillate in low pass mode. Why do the other filter modes self-oscillate with the plug-ins in the Moog Multimode Filter Collection?

The Moog Multimode Filter Collection's plug-ins go "beyond reality" in this manner, allowing for creative use of self-oscillation not possible under the analog equivalent.

The venerable Dr. Robert Arthur Moog

Moog® is a registered trademark used under license with kind permission from Moog Music, Inc. Special thanks to Cyril Lance, Amos Gaynes, and Trent Thompson of Moog Music, Gary Hull, and Universal Audio artists for their generous contributions.

MXR Flanger/Doubler

Unmistakable Bucket-Brigade Flanging and Doubling

For more than 30 years, musicians and engineers have relied upon the MXR Flanger/Doubler as one of best-sounding bucket-brigade flanging effects ever made. Through its signature flanging, doubling, and delay effects, the MXR Flanger/Doubler imprints a unique stamp on guitars, bass, keys, drums, or just about any source needing movement and depth. Developed in close collaboration with Dunlop Manufacturing, the MXR Flanger/Doubler plug-in for the UAD-2 platform replicates the legendary sound of this classic studio and stage effect with unparalleled accuracy.

The MXR Flanger/Doubler plug-in for UAD-2 is perfect for adding that "special something" to your tracks, and getting the creative juices and sound-shaping possibilities flowing. This plug-in models the original hardware unit in meticulous detail, and makes all its chewy analog goodness available for the first time in plug-in form. From guitars and basses to drum breaks, the MXR Flanger/Doubler plug-in will get your tracks moving.

History

Flanging originated as a tape effect where two tape machines are playing two identical and synchronized signals, and one is gradually delayed to create unique comb filtering effects. In the late 70's, MXR introduced the famed Flanger/Doubler unit which, unlike tape flanging, recreated this effect electronically via "bucket brigade" design.

Bucket-Brigade Technology

A bucket-brigade device (BBD) is an analog circuit that produces a delay by storing the signal in a series of capacitors, passing the stored signal from one capacitor to the next with each clock cycle. Because the signal is degraded with each pass, audio delay lines using BBDs tend to significantly color the signal.

The name is derived from human bucket brigades, whereby a line of many people remain stationary while passing many buckets from one person to the next. Bucket brigades were commonly used by firefighters to deliver water to a fire more efficiently than would be possible if each person were to carry a single bucket from the water source to the destination.

Operational Overview

Model 126

The MXR Model 126 Flanger/Doubler is an analog delay processor that uses "bucket-brigade" technology to create short signal delays. The delay time can be modulated manually, or automatically with a low frequency oscillator (LFO). The delayed signal can be mixed with itself in a feedback loop ("regenerated"), and its polarity can be inverted. The amount of processed signal relative to the original signal is adjustable.

All sonics and control behaviors are authentically modeled, including the inherent aliasing characteristics and dry signal path coloration.

Modes

Flanger

The flanging effect in MXR Flanger/Doubler is generated by using very short delay times whereby the delayed (wet) signal is not heard as separate from the original (dry) signal. When this delayed signal is combined with the dry signal, the comb filtering that is the essence of the flanging effect is generated. By modulating ("sweeping") the delay time, the response of the comb filtering is modified, and the characteristic "swoosh" is produced. Additional sonic options are possible by increasing the delayed signal feedback ("regeneration") to produce a deeper and more resonant effect, and/or reversing the polarity ("invert") to give the sound a more "hollow" character.

Doubler

When in Doubler mode, all controls have the exact same functionality as Flanger mode; the only difference is that the available delay times are longer in this mode. The delayed signal produces a very short echo, hence a "double" of the original signal is heard.

Software-Only Features

The MXR Flanger/Doubler plug-in has some features not included in the original hardware. The LFO rate can be synchronized to the tempo of the DAW session; the LFO can be reset; Stereo mode can apply processing to both sides of a stereo signal; and stereo output can be summed to mono.

Stereo Functionality

The original hardware is monophonic. To accommodate modern applications, the plug-in can be used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations. Two different stereo modes are available, and the stereo output can be summed to mono if desired. See for details.

In Use

The MXR Flanger/Doubler is well suited for sound-shaping, recording, and mixing, and even for adding some post-production flavor. Flanging is particularly popular as an individual effect on a wide range of musical sources — including guitar, bass, drums, keyboards, full source material, and more. Another common use for the MXR Flanger/Doubler is as a group effect, where effecting more than one signal is desired. Try applying the MXR Flanger/Doubler to drum buses or even the entire mix, most often for a brief period in the song, such as a break or bridge. In addition to Flanging, the Flanger/Doubler excels as a short-range delay/doubler.

MXR Flanger/Doubler Controls

Buttons

The buttons on MXR Flanger/Doubler are two-state switches. The buttons are ON when they are in the "DOWN" position. When ON/DOWN, they are gray with a darker "shadow." When OFF/UP, they are white.

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. Power is ON when the LED is red. When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, the LEDs are dimmed, and DSP usage is reduced (if DSP LoadLock is inactive).

Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

Effect

This button switches between Flanger and Doubler modes. It defines the range of signal delay available for the mode. The function of all the other controls is the same in both modes.

See Modes for additional details about the two effects.

Flanger

When in the "down" (gray) position, Flanger mode is active. This is the default setting.

Doubler

Doubler mode is active when the button is in the "up" (white) position.

Stereo Mode

This software-only switch modifies the processed signals at the outputs when used in a stereo-output configuration.

The control does not switch the processor between mono and stereo modes; both modes are true stereo (when configured for stereo output).

In both stereo modes (Single and Dual), stereo separation of the dry signals is maintained, and the stereo signal is not mixed to mono before processing is applied.

> ***Note:*** *This function is only available when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/stereo-out or stereo-in/stereo-out configuration. When used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the switch has no effect.*

Single

When in the "up" (white) position, Single mode is active. This is the default setting.

In Single mode, the left and right signals are processed identically and the Sweep LFO for both channels are in phase.

Dual

When in the "down" (gray) position, Dual mode is active.

When Dual mode is enabled in a stereo-out configuration, the processing is applied to both the left and right channels. In this mode, the settings are the same for both processors, but a phase difference of 180° (antiphase) is applied between the Sweep LFO of the two channels. When Sweep Width is above 0% in Dual mode, this phase offset produces a swirling effect that pans back-and-forth.

Manual

This continuous control determines the delay time of the processor. The delay time is modulated by the Sweep LFO when the Width value is higher than 0%.

The available range of the control depends on the setting of the Effect button. In Flanger mode, the available delay time range is 4.9 milliseconds to 0.33 milliseconds. In Doubler mode, the available delay time range is 66 milliseconds to 18.5 milliseconds.

Sweep

The Sweep parameters (Width and Speed) control the LFO (Low Frequency Oscillator) that modulates the delay time of the processor.

Width

Sweep Width controls the amount of modulation applied to the delay time LFO. The available range is 0 - 100%.

At 0%, no modulation occurs and delay time is determined by the Manual setting. As Width is increased, the amount of modulation becomes "wider" (a broader sweep). At 100%, the delay time sweeps throughout its entire range, automatically creating the same sound as moving the Manual control repeatedly back and forth from minimum to maximum.

Speed

Sweep Speed controls the rate of modulation applied to the delay time LFO. The available range is 0.02 Hz to 15.96 Hz (this is the actual range of the original hardware; the knob text on the hardware panel doesn't match exactly). The current speed is indicated by the Sweep LEDs and also shown in the Rate Display.

The Sweep Speed can be synchronized to the tempo of the host application by engaging the Sync function.

Mix

This continuous control adjusts the blend between the original dry signal and the processed wet signal(s). The available range is 0 - 100%.

When set to minimum, only the dry signal is heard. When set to maximum, the signal is almost entirely wet, however a small amount of dry signal is present (like the original hardware).

When Mix is set to the minimum/dry position, the input signal is colored by the electronics of the unit (like the original hardware).

Regeneration

This is a feedback control for the delay processor. The available range is 0 - 100%.

When set above its minimum value, the output of the effect is routed back to its input. As the value increases, a more resonant signal is produced. Regeneration has a governor that prevents feedback "runaway" (overload) even when set to the maximum value of 100%.

Mono

This switch sums the stereo output of the dry and wet signals to mono when the plug-in used in a stereo-output configuration. This function is useful for creative purposes or checking phase relationships. The output is stereo when the switch is in the "up" (white) position, and mono when the switch in the "down" (gray) position.

Mono is only available when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/stereo-out or stereo-in/stereo-out configuration. When used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the switch is locked in the Mono position.

Note: *See Stereo Mode for additional details about stereo output.*

Invert

This switch inverts the polarity ("phase") of the processed signal. The wet signal polarity is normal when in the "up" (white) position, and inverted when in the "down" (gray) position.

When the processed signal is inverted and combined with the dry signal, the resultant comb filtering has a different timbre than when polarity is normal. This is particularly evident in Flanger mode, which often sounds more "hollow" when polarity is inverted.

Sync

The speed of the Sweep LFO can be synchronized to the tempo of the host application by engaging the Sync button. Tempo Sync is engaged when the button is in the "down" (gray) position and the LED above the button is illuminated.

See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for detailed information about tempo synchronization.

Rate Display

The rate of the Sweep LFO is displayed here. When Sync is inactive, the LFO speed is displayed in Hertz. When Sync is active, the LFO speed is shown as a beat division (or multiplier). The Rate Display is unique to the plug-in; the original hardware does not have this feature.

Sweep LEDs

The Sweep LEDs, located above the Manual knob, perform two functions: LFO rate indication and LFO reset.

Rate

The Sweep LEDs illuminate in tandem with the current Sweep Speed, providing a visual indication of the LFO rate. The Width amount must be higher than 0% for the LEDs to blink. As Width increases, the blinking is more obvious.

The manner in which the LED response manifests depends on the state of the Manual, Width, and Speed controls; their quirky behavior is the same as the original hardware.

Reset

The LEDs provide a mechanism to reset the Sweep LFO so the sweep cycle can be consistently controlled. The LFO cycle is reset to begin sweeping "downwards" in pitch (negative sweep) by clicking either LED. This function, which is not available on the hardware unit, can be automated for mixing or bouncing.

Normally the Sweep LFO is "free running" but this behavior is not always desirable. For example, you may want playback to always sound exactly the same when bouncing or mixing. To accomplish this sonic consistency, the Sweep LFO must be started at a specific place in the LFO cycle by using the Reset function.

The MXR Model 126 Flanger/Doubler hardware unit

Neve 88RS Channel Strip Collection

Neve's premier analog console emulation - featuring Unison™ mic preamp modeling

The Neve 88 Series is a paragon of large-format analog console design. Introduced in 2001, the 88 Series is renowned for its startling depth, airiness, and clarity — deftly encompassing the best of all Neve designs that came before it. Not surprisingly, Neve 88 Series consoles are found in some of the world's finest recording studios and scoring stages, including Skywalker Ranch, Capitol, Abbey Road, and United/Ocean Way recording.

Now for the first time, you can track through an authentic emulation of this modern masterpiece — complete with its famous mic/line preamp, cut filters, dynamics, four-band EQ, plus post-fader output amplifier — exclusively for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces.

Now you can:

- Sculpt your mix with Neve's premium large-format analog console sound
- Get the clarity and openness of Neve's famous 88RS transformer-based mic preamp
- Shape your signals with legendary Neve 88RS Formant Spectrum EQ and Dynamics sections
- Control Apollo interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the plug-in via Unison™ technology
- Mix with artist presets from Jimmy Douglass, Andrew Dawson, Joey Waronker, and Ryan West
- Create a modern Neve analog console in your DAW

The only end-to-end Neve 88RS Channel Strip Circuit Emulation

Universal Audio's all-new Neve 88RS Channel Strip for Apollo and UAD-2 precisely emulates the unique circuit behaviors of Neve's flagship large-format mixer. Modeling the mic/line preamp, cut filters, dynamics, four-band EQ, plus post-fader output amplifier with fanatical detail, the Neve 88RS Channel Strip plug-in replicates the luxurious sonics and high-fidelity sound of Neve's ultimate mixing console.

Unison Technology for Apollo Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Neve 88RS Channel Strip Collection gives you all of the 88RS mic/line preamp's impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors that have made it the modern benchmark in analog preamp design. The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the Neve 88RS plug-in to the physical mic preamps in Apollo. And the results are nothing short of spectacular.

Sculpt with Neve's Formant Spectrum EQ

The 88RS is outfitted with broad range, minimum-phase 12 dB high and low cut filters to shape any signal during tracking or mixdown. In addition, Neve's famed Formant Spectrum four-band EQ, perfect for ambitious tonal strokes or precise surgery, offers classic Neve color on any source.

Crush or Expand with Neve 88RS Dynamics

With versatile and musical VCA-type limit/compress and gate/expand modules, the 88RS' dynamics sections can precisely tailor any source; transparently smoothing a lead vocal, bringing excitement and immediacy to a percussion bus, or even providing frequency-dependent gain reduction for de-essing.

Add Depth and Openness with any UAD-2 hardware

Of course, the Neve 88RS Channel Strip Collection isn't just for Apollo owners. UAD-2 owners can use the Neve 88RS Channel Strip for amplification, EQ tone shaping, dynamics control, or adding the Neve sheen to any source, without going outside the box.

With the Neve 88RS Channel Strip's complete console channel emulation, plus the included DSP-lite Neve 88RS Channel Strip Legacy, you can craft your projects with the stunning analog clarity the 88RS is famous for.

The Neve 88RS Plug-Ins

The Neve 88RS Channel Strip Collection is comprised of the UAD Neve 88RS and UAD Neve 88RS Legacy plug-ins. The plug-ins are based on a “golden unit” channel strip from an original Neve 88RS large-format console, including the original P&G output attenuating fader.

Neve 88RS

The UAD Neve 88RS Channel Strip provides the only authentic, end-to-end circuit model of the 88RS channel strip. An extremely detailed model was made of the 88RS, starting with the input transformer, and real physical impedance switching when used with Apollo’s Unison technology.

The four-band, active EQ’s filter interactions and internal amp clipping behaviors are also modeled along with the cut filters. The plug-in also captures the non-linear behaviors of the 88RS’s post-fader output amplifier, the output transformer, and much more.

Neve 88RS Channel Strip interface

Neve 88RS Legacy

When physical amplification is not required or circuit non-linearities are not desirable (when a very clean sound is wanted), the Neve 88RS Legacy channel strip provides a spot-on linear emulation of the 88RS.

Because the Neve 88RS Legacy does not include nonlinearities of the EQ or dynamics, nor modeling of the input and output stages, it uses significantly less UAD DSP resources than the newer Neve 88RS.

Neve 88RS Legacy interface

Unison™ Integration

The Neve 88RS features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the Neve 88RS hardware preamp.

Note: *Unison is active only when the Neve 88RS is inserted in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of Neve 88RS plug-in settings using Apollo's digitally-controlled panel hardware and/or the plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity) are mirrored and bi-directional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the Neve 88RS hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Apollo mic preamps feature variable input impedance in analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Apollo's preamps to physically match the emulated unit's input impedance, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original target hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Note: *Unison technology is not available with Neve 88RS Legacy.*

Artist Presets

The Neve 88RS includes artist presets from prominent Neve 88RS users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also placed by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual).

Operational Overview

With a rich palette of modern sound-sculpting tools, the Neve 88RS Channel Strip captures the essence of Neve's flagship console. The console controls are comprised of the mic/line preamp, 12 dB per octave high and low cut filters, four-band EQ, and dynamics processors for limiting, compression, gate, and expansion.

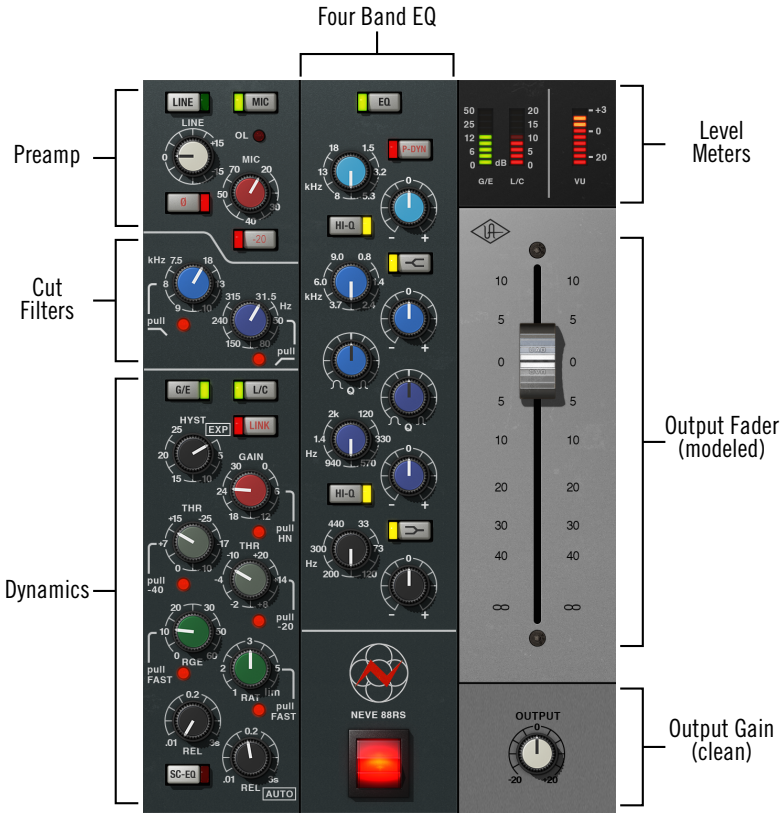
The middle EQ bands are fully parametric, while the flexible high and low bands provide two fixed-Q types and the ability to switch to shelving EQ.

The limiter/compressor VCA provides a 0.01s to 3s release, auto release, and a continuously variable ratio control with a fixed fast or slow attack time. The gate/expander provides 0.01 to 3s release times, fast or slow attack times plus threshold, range, and hysteresis controls for tailoring the gate or expansion processors to the perfect response for any source signals.

With the sidechain EQ (SC-EQ) feature, frequency-dependent dynamics processing is available for tasks such as de-essing.

Modules

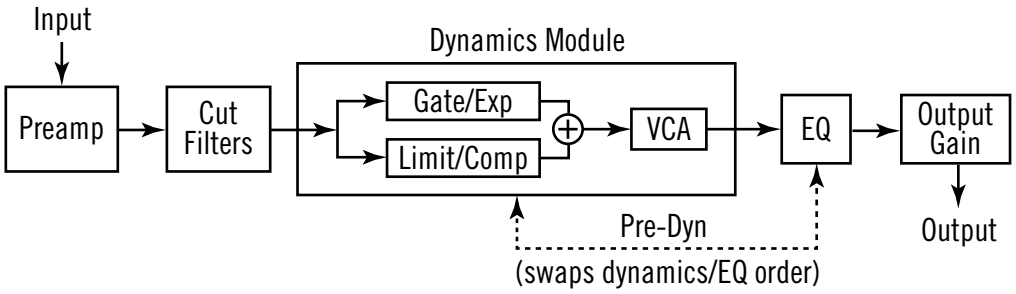
The Neve 88RS and Neve 88RS Legacy controls are grouped within modules. Both plug-ins contain dynamics, EQ, and cut filter modules. The Neve 88RS includes a preamp module that is unavailable with Neve 88RS Legacy.



The Neve 88RS modules

Signal Flow

The output of the cut filters is routed to the input of the dynamics module or the EQ module, depending on the state of the Pre-Dyn switch, as shown in the signal flow diagram below. By default, dynamics is before EQ. Engaging Pre-Dyn routes EQ before dynamics.



Simplified signal flow within Neve 88RS

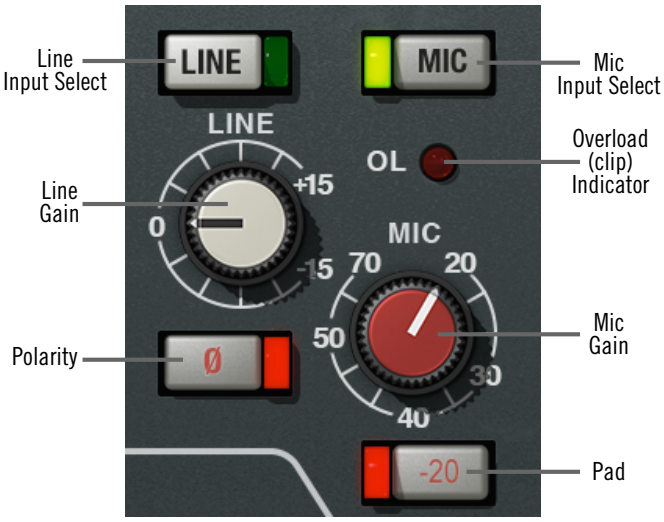
Neve 88RS Controls

The module controls for the Neve 88RS and Neve 88RS Legacy plug-ins are essentially identical. Any control differences are individually noted.

Preamp Module

The Neve 88RS contains complete modeling of the original console's preamplifier module. Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.

Note: *Neve 88RS Legacy does not include the preamp module.*



The Neve 88RS preamp elements

Input Select

The input select switches determine which input gain knob (LINE or MIC) is active. The input is selected when the indicator LED on the LINE or MIC switch is illuminated.

Like the hardware, the Neve 88RS plug-in easily facilitates sending line level signals through the "virtual" mic input, which allows creative use of distortion to color signals. This is the equivalent of routing a line level signal into a mic level input, so a large jump in gain is expected.

Note: *Use caution when switching to Mic from Line, as output levels can increase significantly (as they would with any hardware preamp).*

When Neve 88RS is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's MIC/LINE buttons, or with Apollo's hardware buttons (MIC/LINE on Apollo, or INPUT on Apollo Twin).

Note: *If the Hi-Z input is connected with Unison, the MIC input is automatically selected.*

Line Gain

Line Gain has a range of ±15 dB. To increase the line input gain, rotate the knob clockwise.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to 0 dB.*

Mic Gain

Mic Gain has a range of +20 dB to +70 dB. To increase the mic input gain, rotate the knob clockwise.

Tip: *Click the "MIC" text label to return the control to 40 dB.*

Unison Impedance

When Neve 88RS is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, the hardware input impedance of the Apollo mic preamp is switched to match the value in the plug-in for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction.

Matching the microphone to the closest impedance value is generally recommended, but this parameter can be used creatively and will not harm equipment connected to the Apollo mic preamp.

Overload

The Overload LED indicates when signal clipping is occurring at the modeled preamp input stage. The indicator remains illuminated for one second after a clip is detected.

Note: *Overload does not indicate A/D converter clipping when the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application.*

Ø (Polarity)

The Ø (polarity) switch inverts the polarity of the input signal. When the switch's red indicator LED is illuminated, the input polarity is inverted. Leave the switch disengaged (LED off) for normal polarity.

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of polarity is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with Apollo's hardware polarity button.

Control Location

With Neve 88RS, the Polarity switch is located within the preamp module, below the line gain knob. With Neve 88RS Legacy, the switch is located within the global controls section.

-20 (Pad)

When the -20 switch is enabled, the signal level at the mic input is attenuated (lowered) by -20 dB. The pad is active when the indicator LED on the -20 switch is illuminated.

Pad can be used to reduce signal levels when undesirable overload distortion is present at low preamp gain levels.

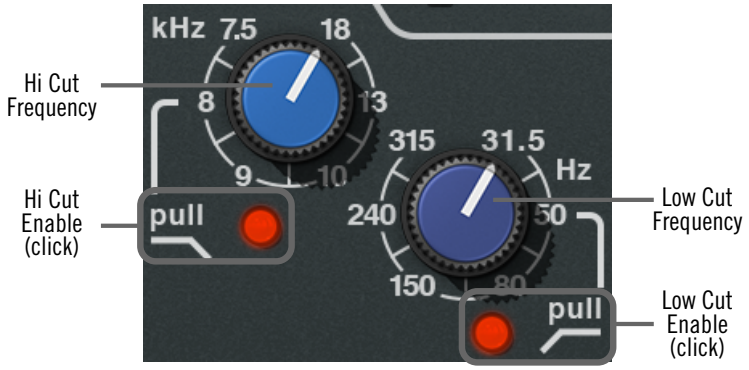
> ***Note:*** *Pad is not available for line input, or when used with Apollo's Hi-Z input in Unison mode. In these cases, the control cannot be switched.*

When Neve 88RS is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of the pad is mirrored. Pad can be switched with the -20 button in the plug-in interface, with Console's PAD button, or with Apollo's hardware PAD button.

Cut Filters Module

Neve 88RS offers two cut filters, one each for low and high frequencies. The slope of the cut filters is 12 dB per octave. Each cut filter has two controls: Enable and Frequency.

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Neve 88RS cut filters

Low Cut with Unison

When toggling the filter enable state with the hardware button on Apollo, the last set frequency value is toggled.

Cut Controls Location

With Neve 88RS, the cut filters are located between the preamp and dynamics modules in the left column of the plug-in. With Neve 88RS Legacy, the filters are located above the global controls section.

Cut Enable

Each cut filter is active when its dedicated enable switch is engaged. The appearance of these switches vary according to the plug-in, as detailed below.

Note: *UAD DSP load is not reduced when the cut filters are disabled.*

Neve 88RS

To activate a cut filter, click the "pull" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Cut Frequency control. The cut filter is active when its red indicator is illuminated.

Neve 88RS Legacy

To activate a cut filter, click the enable switch just below the Cut Frequency control. The cut filter is active when its red indicator is illuminated.

Cut Frequency

The frequency knobs determine the cutoff frequency for the cut filter.

High Cut

The available range is 7.5 kHz to 18 kHz for the high cut filter (lighter blue control).

Low Cut

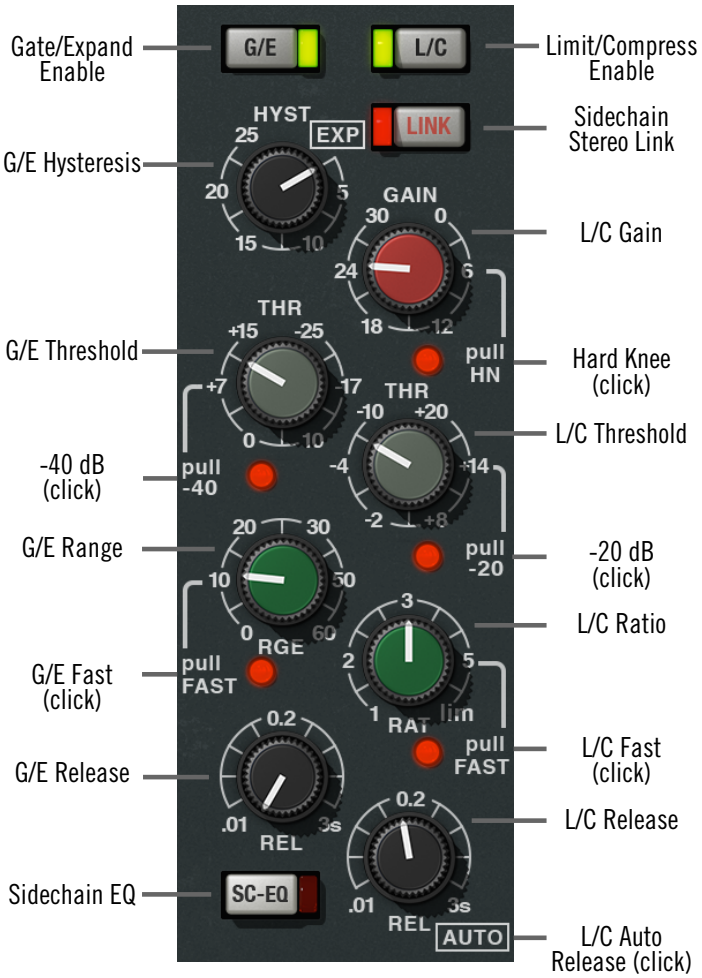
The available range is 31.5 Hz to 315 Hz for the low cut filter (darker blue control).

Dynamics Module

The dynamics section consists of a gate/expander and a limiter/compressor. The controls for each of these two dynamics processors are arranged in vertical columns, with the gate/expander controls in the left column, and the limiter/compressor controls in the right column. Both processors can be individually activated or disabled. The activity of the dynamics processor are displayed in the Meters.

The settings of the gate do not affect operation of the compressor, and vice versa. The same sidechain signal (EQ'd or not, depending on the SC-EQ switch) is sent to both the gate and compressor. The gains for both the gate and compressor are computed based on that same signal, then both the gate and compressor gains are applied in the same place, by a single gain-reduction VCA (see Simplified signal flow within Neve 88RS).

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Neve 88RS dynamic processing elements

Sidechain Link

When Neve 88RS is used in a stereo-in/stereo-out configuration and LINK is enabled (when the LINK switch LED is illuminated), it causes the two channels of the compressor to compress in equal amounts.

Linking the sidechains simply means that the instantaneous amount of compression for the two channels will always be the same, thereby preventing left-right image shifting at the output.

> ***Note:*** *This control is unavailable on the Neve 88RS Legacy. The Neve 88RS Legacy sidechain is always linked when used in a stereo or mono-in/stereo-out configuration.*

Sidechain EQ (SC-EQ)

This control enables the Neve 88RS sidechain function. When sidechain is active, signal output from the EQ module is removed from the audio path and is instead routed to control the dynamics module. Sidechain EQ is active when the button's red indicator LED is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *The EQ module and at least one dynamics module must be active in conjunction with SC-EQ for the sidechain to function (see EQ Enable (EQ)). SC-EQ overrides P-DYN if both functions are enabled.*

Sidechaining is typically used for de-essing and similar frequency-conscious techniques. To listen to the sidechain key, simply disengage SC-EQ to hear the EQ'd signal.

> ***Note:*** *The sidechain dynamics/EQ implementations are true stereo when used in a stereo-in/stereo-out configuration.*

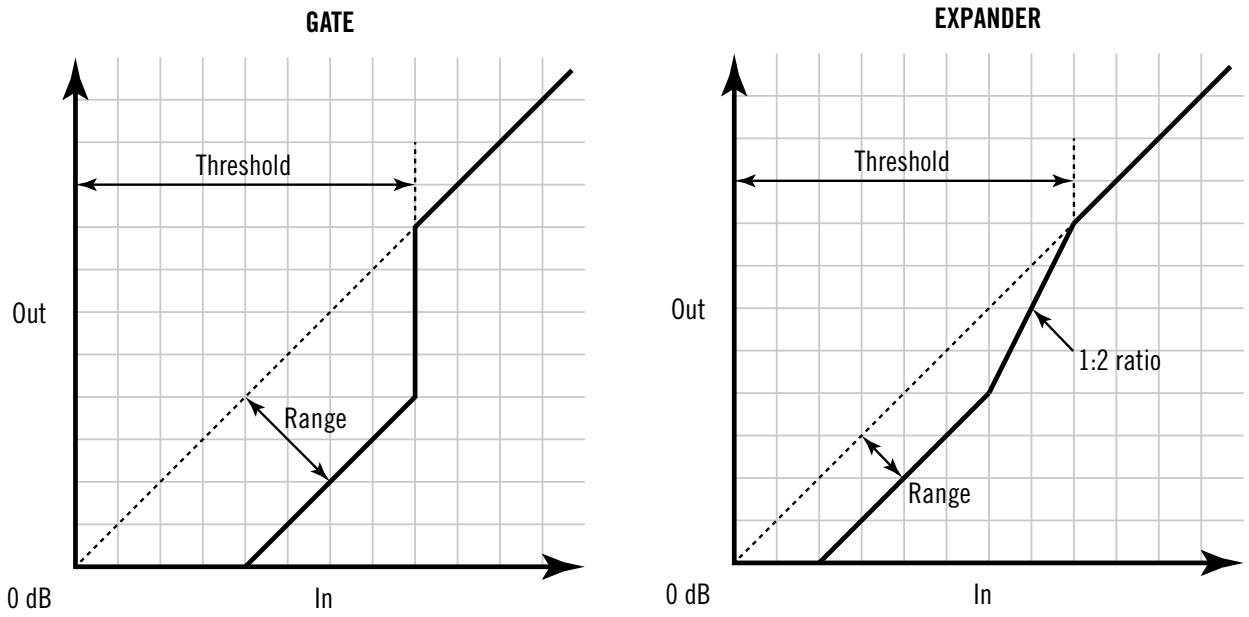
Control Location

With Neve 88RS, the Sidechain EQ switch is located within the dynamics module, at the lower left of the interface. With Neve 88RS Legacy, the switch is located within the global controls section.

Gate/Expander

The gate/expander module operates in either gate or expansion mode. In gate mode, signals below the threshold are attenuated by the range (RGE) amount (see Gate/Expander diagrams), and hysteresis is available (see Hysteresis in the Neve 88RS Gate).

Expansion mode is enabled by rotating the hysteresis (HYST) control fully counter-clockwise (or clicking the EXP label). In expansion mode, the gate applies downwards expansion at a fixed 1:2 ratio, with the amount of gain reduction determined by the range control. Two attack speeds and a continuously variable release time are available in both modes.



Gate/Expander diagrams

Gate/Exp Enable (G/E)

This button activates the gate/expander module. The module is active when the green indicator LED is illuminated.

This button can be used to compare the gate/expander settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the module altogether. UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

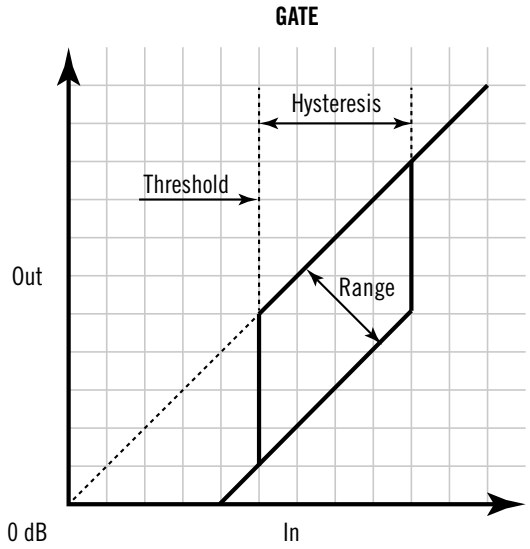
Gate/Exp Hysteresis (HYST)

The Hysteresis knob sets the difference in threshold for signals that are either rising or falling in level. Signals that are rising in level are passed when the level reaches the threshold value plus the hysteresis value. Signals that are falling in level are not passed at the lower threshold level. Up to 25 dB of hysteresis is available. See Hysteresis in the Neve 88RS Gate.

Hysteresis makes the gate less susceptible to "stuttering" by making the threshold value dependent upon whether the gate is off or on. Raising the threshold for rising signal levels prevents noise from activating the gate, while allowing a lower threshold for falling levels. This prevents reverb tails from being prematurely gated. For example, if the threshold is set at -50 and the hysteresis is set at 10, the level would have to rise above -40 dB before the signals pass, and the gate would remain open until the level falls below -50 dB.

This control also activates expander mode. Rotating Hysteresis fully counter-clockwise disables the gate and activates the 1:2 downward expander.

> ***Note:*** *Expander mode can also be activated by clicking the EXP label text near the knob. When EXP is clicked again, the knob returns to the previous value in gate mode.*



Hysteresis in the Neve 88RS Gate

Gate/Exp Threshold (THR)

Threshold defines the input level at which expansion or gating occurs. Any signals below this level are processed. Signals above the threshold are unaffected.

The available range is -25 dB to +15 dB. A range of -25 dB to -65 dB is available when the Gate/Exp Threshold -40 dB switch is engaged.

In typical use it's best to set the threshold value to just above the noise floor of the desired signal (so the noise doesn't pass when the desired signal is not present), but below the desired signal level (so the signal passes when present).

Gate/Exp Threshold -40 dB

The -40 dB switch increases the sensitivity of the gate and expander by lowering the range of the available threshold values. When -40 dB mode is active, the threshold range is -25 dB to -65 dB. When -40 is inactive, the threshold range is -25 dB to +15 dB.

To activate -40 dB mode, click the "pull -40" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Threshold control. -40 dB mode is active when the red indicator is illuminated.

Gate/Exp Range (RGE)

Range (RGE) controls the difference in gain between the gated/expanded and non-gated/expanded signal. Higher values increase the attenuation of signals below the threshold. When set to zero, no gating or expansion occurs. The available range is 0 dB to -60 dB.

Gate/Exp Fast

The Fast mode switch defines the gate/expander attack time, which is the duration between the input signal reaching the threshold and processing being applied. Two times are available: 500 microseconds (when Fast is off) and 50 microseconds (when Fast is active).

To activate Fast mode, click the "pull FAST" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Range (RGE) control. Fast mode is active when the red indicator is illuminated.

Gate/Exp Release (REL)

Release sets the amount of time it takes for processing to disengage once the input signal drops below the threshold level. The available range is 10 milliseconds to 3 seconds.

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks.

> ***Note:*** *Fast release times are typically only suitable for certain types of percussion and other instruments with very fast decays. Using fast settings on other sources may produce undesirable results.*

Gate/Exp Meter

The G/E meter (see Meters) displays the amount of gain attenuation (downward expansion) occurring in the gate/expander module.

Limiter/Compressor

The limiter/compressor module (see Neve 88RS dynamic processing elements) offers a continuously variable ratio between 1:1 (no compression) and infinity:1 (limiting). Signals above the threshold are attenuated according to the ratio (RAT) value. Two attack speeds and continuously variable release times are available, along with a pleasing automatic triple time-constant program-dependent release mode (auto mode has a three-stage release). A makeup gain control and a hard/soft knee setting are also available in the module.

From the AMS-Neve 88RS User Manual:

"Anti pumping and breathing circuitry allows the unit to operate on the source musically whilst retaining absolute control over the dynamic range."

The 88RS compressor has another nifty property: Two thresholds. When the signal falls below the threshold, the compressor is releasing. But, if the signal falls below a second (non-adjustable) threshold, which is roughly 40 dB below the adjustable threshold value, then the release slows down drastically. This acts as a "silence detector." The concept is that if there is a quiet signal, then the compressor should release to reduce the dynamic range. But if there is a sudden onset of silence, it is likely that, when the signal returns, it will be at about the same level as the region before the silence. So in that case, the compressor doesn't release quickly.

An example: When compressing a snare track with a standard compressor, if the snare hits are sparse, the compressor will release between each hit, so that each hit has a squashed sound. With the 88R compressor, distortion will be reduced, because the compressor will not come out of compression as much between the snare hits. The compressor will still release somewhat during the snare hits, however.

L/C Enable (L/C)

This button activates the limiter/compressor module. The module is active when the green indicator LED is illuminated.

This button can be used to compare the limiter/compressor settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the module altogether. UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

L/C Gain

The Gain control adjusts the output level of the limiter/compressor module. The available range is 0 dB to 30 dB.

Generally speaking, adjust this makeup gain control after the desired amount of processing is achieved with the Threshold control. The Gain control does not affect the amount of processing.

L/C Hard Knee (HN)

Normally, the limiter and compressor operate with soft knee characteristics. This switch gives the limiter and compressor a hard knee instead.

To activate Hard Knee mode, click the "pull HN" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Gain control. Hard Knee mode is active when the red indicator is illuminated.

L/C Threshold

Threshold defines the input level at which limiting or compression begins. Signals that exceed this level are processed. Signals below the threshold are unaffected.

The available range is +20 dB to -10 dB. A range of 0 dB to -30 dB is available when the L/C Threshold -20 dB switch is engaged.

> ***Tip:*** *As threshold is increased and more processing occurs, the output level is typically reduced. Adjust the L/C Gain control to increase the output of the module to compensate if desired.*

L/C Threshold -20 dB

The -20 dB switch increases the sensitivity of the limiter/compressor by lowering the range of the available threshold values. When -20 dB mode is active, the threshold range is 0 dB to -30 dB. When -20 is inactive, the threshold range is +20 dB to -10 dB.

To activate -20 dB mode, click the "pull -20" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Threshold control. -20 dB mode is active when the red indicator is illuminated.

L/C Ratio (RAT)

Ratio defines the amount of gain reduction to be processed by the module. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB.

A value of 1 yields no gain reduction. When the control is at maximum ("lim"), the ratio is effectively infinity to one, yielding the limiting effect. The available range is 1 to infinity.

L/C Fast

The Fast mode switch defines the attack time (the duration between the input signal reaching the threshold and processing being applied) of the limiter and compressor.

Attack time is program dependent. Two ranges are available: 3 milliseconds to 7 milliseconds (Fast off) and 1 millisecond to 7 milliseconds (Fast active).

To activate Fast mode, click the "pull FAST" label text or the red indicator LED just below the Ratio (RAT) control. Fast mode is active when the red indicator is illuminated.

L/C Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for processing to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. The available range is 10 milliseconds to 3 seconds, and automatic.

Automatic triple time-constant program dependent release time is activated by turning the release control fully clockwise (to 3s) or by clicking the "AUTO" label text.

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if the release is too long, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to sections of audio with lower signals.

> ***Note:*** *Fast release times are typically only suitable for certain types of percussion and other instruments with very fast decays. Using fast settings on other sources may produce undesirable results.*

L/C Meter

The L/C meter (see Meters) displays the amount of gain attenuation occurring in the limiter/compressor module.

EQ Module

From the AMS-Neve 88RS manual:

"The unique sound of AMS-Neve EQ is the result of years of research and extensive studio experience."

The Neve 88RS "Formant Spectrum EQ" (AMS-Neve's descriptor) is divided into four frequency bands: High Frequency (HF), High Midrange Frequency (HMF), Low Midrange Frequency (LMF), and Low Frequency (LF). The high and low bands can be switched into shelving and/or High-Q modes. The two midrange bands are fully parametric. The EQ module can be disabled altogether.

When the high frequency (HF) and/or low frequency (LF) band is in shelf mode, the band gain affects the band frequency. As gain is increased, the shelf frequency more closely matches the knob value. As gain is reduced however, the low shelving frequency moves higher, and the high shelving frequency moves lower.

With the Neve 88RS EQ, the Q value and range is dependent on the gain setting of the band. With any non-zero gain setting, the Q will be calculated in real-time for that band. But if the band gain is zero, Q will always display zero.

Pre-Dynamics (P-DYN)

By default, the audio signal is routed from the dynamics module into the EQ module (the EQ is post-dynamics). The signal can be routed so the EQ is pre-dynamics using the P-DYN switch. When the switch is enabled (when the button's red indicator LED is illuminated), the EQ module precedes the dynamics module (see Simplified signal flow within Neve 88RS).

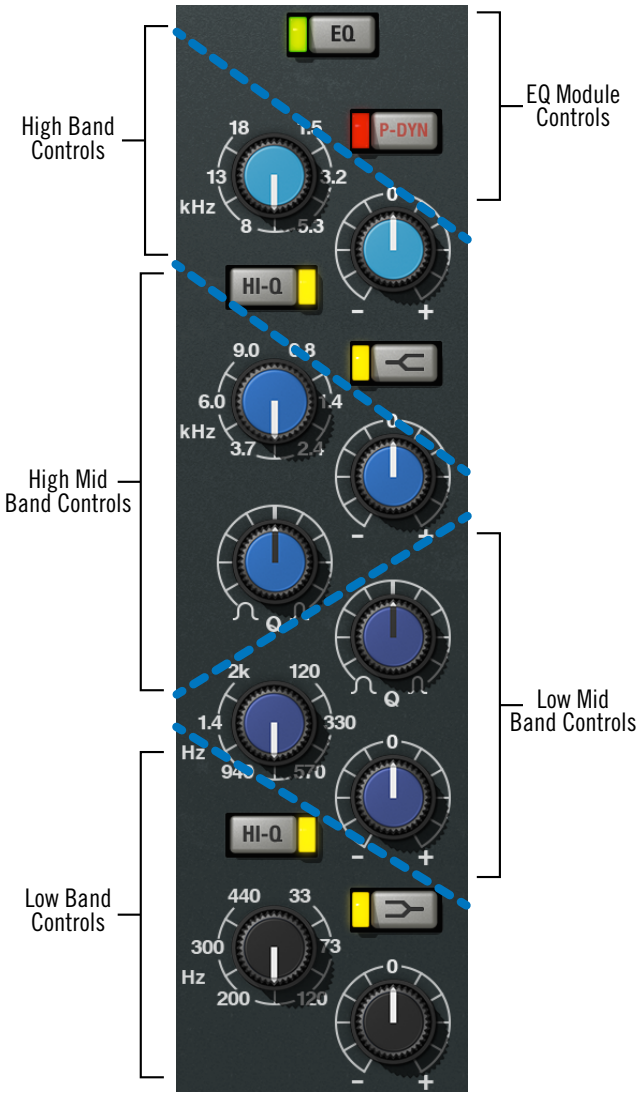
> ***Note:*** *Pre-dynamics can only be engaged if the EQ module and at least one dynamics module is active.*

Control Location

With Neve 88RS, the Pre-Dynamics switch is located within the EQ module, near the high frequency controls. With Neve 88RS Legacy, the switch is located within the global controls section.

88RS EQ Band Layout

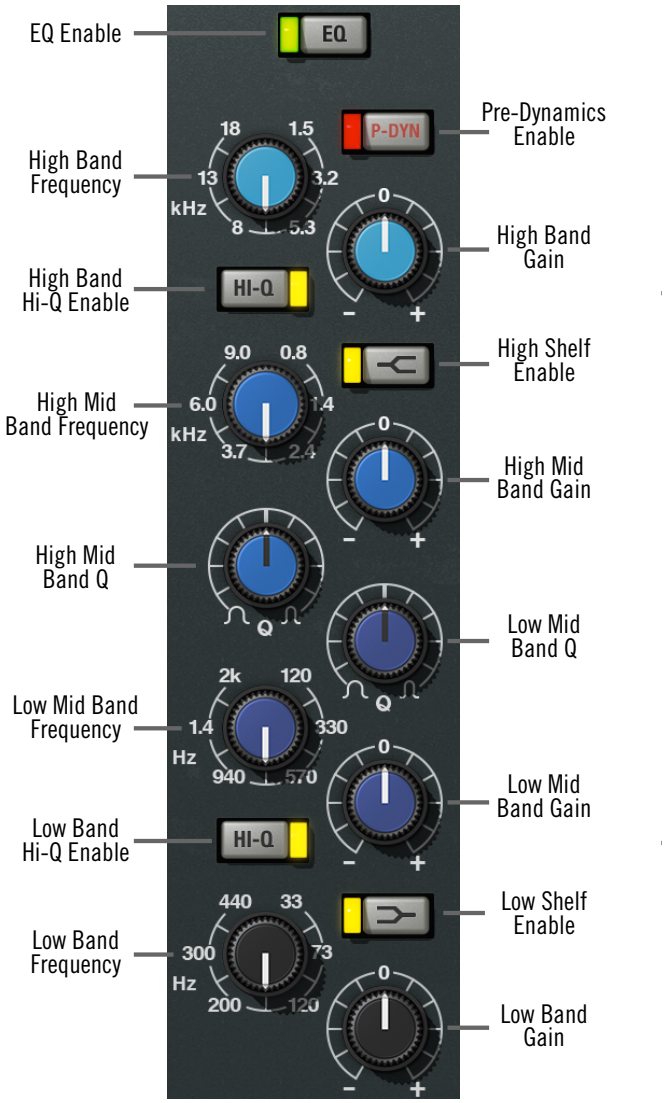
The grouping of band controls within the EQ module is shown in the illustration below. Note that the knobs within each band are the same color.



Neve 88RS EQ control groups

EQ Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Neve 88RS EQ controls

EQ Enable (EQ)

This button activates the equalizer module. The module is active when the green indicator is illuminated.

This button can be used to compare the equalized signal to the original signal or bypass the EQ altogether. UAD DSP load is reduced when this module is inactive (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

High Band

HF Freq

This parameter determines the HF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 1.5 kHz to 18 kHz.

HF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the HF band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±20 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to 0 dB.*

HF Hi-Q Enable

The filter slope of the HF band can be changed with this control. When Hi-Q is off, the Q is 0.7. When Hi-Q is active, the Q is 2. Higher Q values mean the peak (or trough) has steeper slopes.

Hi-Q is active when the yellow indicator LED is illuminated. Hi-Q is off by default.

Note: *Hi-Q has no effect when the band is in shelf mode.*

HF Shelf Enable

The HF band can be switched from bell mode to shelving mode by clicking the shelf enable button. Shelf mode is active when the yellow indicator LED is illuminated. Shelf is off by default.

High Mid Band

HMF Freq

This control determines the HMF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the HMF Gain setting. The available range is 800 Hz to 9 kHz.

HMF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the HMF band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±20 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to 0 dB.*

HMF Q

The Q (bandwidth) control defines the proportion of frequencies surrounding the HMF band center frequency to be affected by the band gain control. The filter slopes get steeper (narrower) as the control is rotated clockwise. The available range is 0.4 to 10.

Low Mid Band

LMF Freq

This control determines the LMF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the LMF Gain setting. The available range is 120 Hz to 2 kHz.

LMF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the LMF band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±20 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to 0 dB.*

LMF Q

The Q (bandwidth) control defines the proportion of frequencies surrounding the LMF band center frequency to be affected by the band gain control. The filter slopes get steeper (narrower) as the control is rotated clockwise. The available range is 0.4 to 10.

Low Band

LF Freq

This parameter determines the LF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting. The available range is 33 Hz to 440 kHz.

LF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the LF band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±20 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to 0 dB.*

LF Shelf Enable

The LF band can be switched from bell mode to shelving mode by clicking the shelf enable button. Shelf mode is active when the button is gray and the yellow indicator illuminates. Shelf is off by default.

LF Hi-Q Enable

The filter slope of the LF band can be switched with this control. When Hi-Q is off, the Q is 0.7. When Hi-Q is active, the Q is 2. Higher Q values mean the peak/trough has steeper slopes.

Hi-Q is active when the button is gray and the yellow indicator illuminates. Hi-Q is off by default.

Note: *Hi-Q has no effect when the band is in shelf mode.*

Global Controls

Meters

G/E

Displays the amount of dynamics processing occurring in the gate/expand module.

L/C

Displays the amount of dynamics processing occurring in the limit/compress module.

VU

Displays the signal level at the output stage of the plug-in.

Note: *Neve 88RS Legacy does not have VU meter.*

Level Fader

Level boosts or attenuates the signal level at the final output amplifier stage of the channel strip. The circuitry of an original Neve88RS console fader was modeled for this control; higher levels can clip the output just as the original hardware can.

The available range is from -∞ dB (off) to +10 dB. Unity gain is at the zero position.

Tip: *Click the "0" text labels to return Level to 0 dB.*

Output

Output adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in without effecting the sonic character of the signal. The available range is ±20 dB.

This control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maximize color of the overall signal. For example, Gain and Level can be cranked for more distortion, while lowering Output to normalize levels.

Power

The red Power switch (beneath the AMS-Neve logo) determines whether the plug-in is active. It can be used to compare the processed settings to the original signal and/or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Toggle the switch to change the Power state; the switch is illuminated in red when the plug-in is active.

Note: *Click-hold the power switch then drag it like a slider to quickly compare the enabled/disabled state.*

The Neve 88RS Analogue Console

All visual and aural references to the Neve® 1073, 1081, 31102, 88RS, and 33609 products and all use of AMS-NEVE's trademarks are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve Limited.

Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ Collection

The authentic Neve preamp sound – captured as a plug-in featuring Unison technology

The Neve 1073 Channel Amplifier is easily the most revered preamp and EQ circuit ever designed. Introduced in 1970, this hallowed class-A, transistor mic/line amp with EQ epitomizes the beautiful "Neve sound," with unparalleled clarity, sheen, and bite.

Now for the first time, you can track through the only authentic end-to-end circuit emulation of this legendary piece of audio history, with the Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ Plug-In Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Get the world's only authentic and licensed plug-in emulation of the classic Neve 1073 Channel Amplifier
- Color and EQ your mix with Neve tone, including all 10 distinct clipping points from the vintage 1970's era hardware
- Record "through" the 1073 preamp in real time using Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD interfaces
- Control Apollo interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the 1073 plug-in with Unison™ technology
- Mix with artist presets from Ed Cherney, Joe Chiccarelli, Jaquire King, Ryan Hewitt, David Isaac, Ryan West, and more
- Get the flagship Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ plug-in, plus the Legacy 1073 EQ and 1073SE ("DSP-Lite") EQ plug-ins

The Only End-to-End Neve 1073 Circuit Emulation

Universal Audio's all-new Neve 1073 plug-in for Apollo and UAD-2 provides all the features, unique circuit behaviors, and coveted sound of Neve's original hardware design. By modeling the dual-stage "Red Knob" preamp, revered three-band EQ, and post-fader output amplifier with obsessive detail, the Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ replicates the experience of the original 1970s hardware with stunning accuracy. Like the hardware, the new Neve 1073 plug-in incorporates all 10 clipping points from the preamp and EQ circuitry, delivering trademark clarity, grit, and harmonically rich class-A saturation.

Unison Technology for UA Audio Interface Preamps

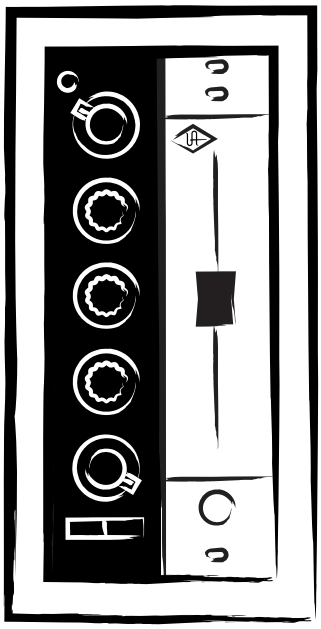
Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the Neve 1073 plug-in blurs the lines between analog and digital, giving you all of the 1073 preamp's impedance, gain staging "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors that have made it legendary among the audio faithful.

The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the 1073 plug-in to the digitally controlled mic preamps in Apollo and Arrow interfaces. With Unison, the hardware preamp changes to the Neve 1073's physical input impedance, allowing both Lo (300 Ω) and Hi (1200 Ω) impedance setting options. This provides the 1073's full gain and tonal range to your favorite studio mics.

Add Clarity and Color to any Source

Of course, the Neve Preamp & EQ Plug-In Collection isn't just for Apollo owners. UAD-2 hardware owners can employ the Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ Collection for mixing, tone shaping, or simply adding sheen and bite to vocals, guitars, drums and more — without ever leaving the box. To get you started, there are artist presets from renowned 1073 users such as Ed Cherney, Joe Chiccarelli, Jaquire King, Ryan Hewitt, David Isaac, Ryan West, and more.

UAD-2 power users can place Neve 1073 instances across multiple channels, turning their favorite DAW into a classic Neve console.

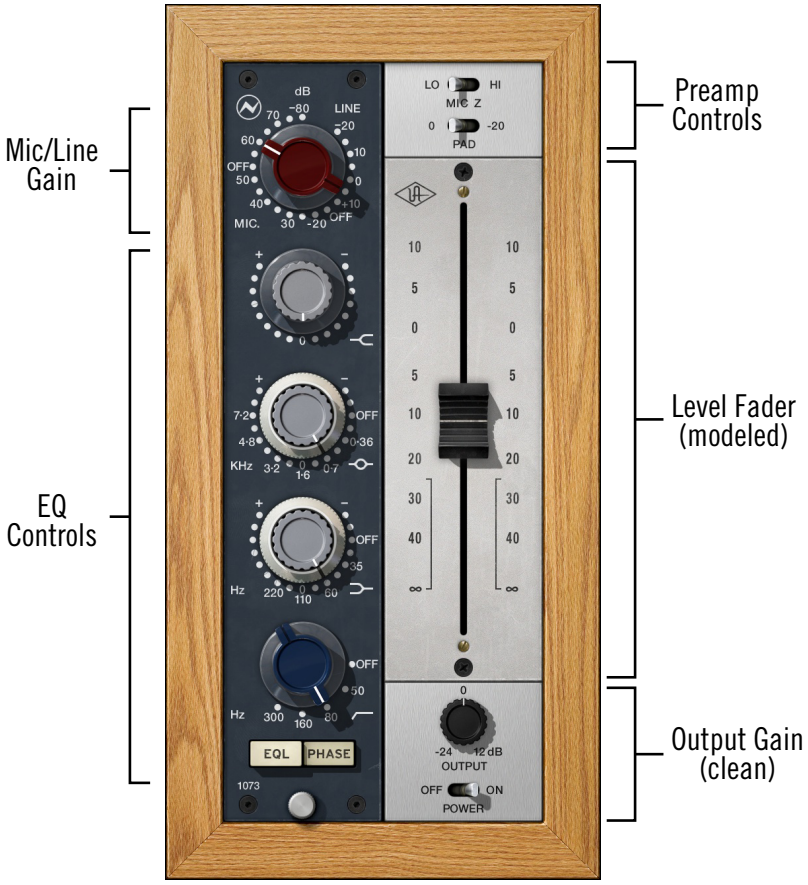


The Neve 1073 Plug-Ins

The Neve 1073 Preamp and EQ Collection is comprised of three distinct plug-ins. Although the controls are nearly identical, each plug-in has its own features and benefits.

Neve 1073

The Neve 1073 is based on a vintage “golden unit” channel module pulled from an original Neve 8014 console, including the original P&G output attenuating fader.



Neve 1073 interface

UA’s Neve 1073 provides the only authentic, end-to-end circuit model of the class-A preamp and EQ circuit. An extremely detailed model was made of the 1073, starting with a Marinar input transformer model (and real physical impedance switching when used with Apollo’s Unison technology). The transformer stage is followed by the Neve dual-transistor preamp (AKA “Red Knob”) model with non-clipped and clipped nonlinear behaviors, such as characteristic asymmetric and dynamic duty-cycle clipping.

The three-band active EQ’s filter interactions and internal amp clipping behaviors are also modeled, along with the passive low cut filter and the EQ’s loading of the preamp output. The plug-in also captures the non-linear behaviors of the 1073’s post-fader output amplifier, the output transformer, and much more. There are a total of ten different areas where the circuit can clip.

Neve 1073 Legacy

When physical amplification is not required or circuit non-linearites are not desirable, the 1073 Legacy EQ provides a spot-on linear emulation of the 1073's three-band EQ and passive cut filter, complete with modeled filter interaction.

Because the Neve 1073 Legacy does not include nonlinearities of the EQ, nor modeling of the input and output stages, it uses significantly less UAD DSP resources than the newer Neve 1073. The Neve 1073 Legacy can be even more desirable than the Neve 1073 when a very clean sound is desired.

Neve 1073SE Legacy

The Neve 1073SE Legacy is nearly identical to the Neve 1073 Legacy but because this plug-in is not upsampled, it provides excellent UAD DSP efficiency.

The Neve 1073SE Legacy interface is differentiated from the Neve 1073 Legacy by color and the module name. The 1073SE is black instead of the 1073's dark blue, and the module name on the lower right of the interface panel includes the SE suffix after 1073.

Control Differences

The following parameters are unique to Neve 1073 and unavailable with Neve 1073 Legacy and Neve 1073SE Legacy:

- Unison Technology
- Mic/Line Input Select
- Mic Gain
- Impedance
- Pad
- Level
- Output

Unison™ Integration

The Neve 1073 features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the Neve 1073 hardware preamp.

Note: *Unison is active only when the Neve 1073 is inserted in the unique INPUT insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of Neve 1073 plug-in settings using Apollo's digitally-controlled panel hardware and/or the plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity) are mirrored and bi-directional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the Neve 1073 hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Apollo mic preamps feature variable input impedance in analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Apollo's preamps to physically match the emulated unit's input impedance, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original target hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Note: *Unison technology is not available with Neve 1073 Legacy or Neve 1073SE Legacy.*

Artist Presets

The Neve 1073 includes artist presets from prominent Neve 1073 users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also placed by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded within a DAW using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

This plug-in includes additional artist presets that are not available in the internal factory bank. These additional presets can also be accessed using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Neve 1073 Controls

All control descriptions apply to Neve 1073, Neve 1073 Legacy, and Neve 1073SE Legacy unless specifically noted otherwise.

Input Knob Overview

The Input knob operates differently with the Neve 1073 which features full input stage modeling, and the Neve 1073/1073SE Legacy plug-ins which do not model the input stage.

Neve 1073

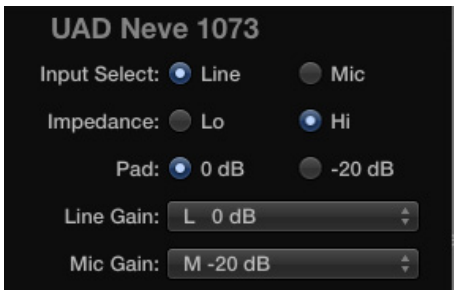
The Input Gain control (aka the "Red Knob") adjusts the input gain for both the mic preamp input and the line input. The gain parameter being controlled (mic or line) is switched by clicking the MIC or LINE text buttons, or by clicking the desired value in the opposite gain range.

When the MIC/LINE input is switched, the knob position changes to the gain range for the input, as shown in Neve 1073 Mic/Line input select buttons and gain knob control ranges below.

Neve 1073 Mic/Line input select buttons and gain knob control ranges

> ***Tip:*** *The unusual "negative value" numbering originally used by Neve are based on sensitivity instead of gain. For example, if an input has a sensitivity of -80 dB, the input sensitivity knob on the 1073 would be set to -80 dB to match.*

The mic input gain and line input gain are actually two separate parameters, as shown in controls view below. Unlike the original hardware, the knob is constrained to control only one gain parameter without switching to the other input type.



Neve 1073 in controls view showing the separate Mic and Line parameters

Neve 1073 Legacy and Neve 1073SE Legacy

The Input Gain control sets the level at the input of these plug-ins. Separate Mic/Line gain controls are unavailable because these plug-ins do not feature input stage modeling.

Input Select

Input Select determines which input (mic or line) is being controlled with the Gain knob. To change the input gain being controlled, click the MIC or LINE text to switch to that input.

> ***Tip:*** *Input Select can also be switched by clicking any of the "dots" or gain value labels in the range for the input type.*

When Input Select is changed, the Gain knob changes to use only the range for that input type (as shown in Neve 1073 Mic/Line input select buttons and gain knob control ranges).

Like the hardware, the Neve 1073 plug-in easily facilitates sending Line level signal through the "virtual" Mic input, which allows creative use of distortion to color signals. This is the equivalent of routing a line level signal into a mic level input, so a large jump in gain is expected.

> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching to Mic from Line, as output levels can increase significantly (as they would with any hardware preamp).*

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's MIC/LINE buttons, or with Apollo's hardware buttons (MIC/LINE on Apollo, or INPUT on Apollo Twin).

> ***Note:*** *Input Select is unavailable with the Legacy 1073/1073SE.*

Line Gain

Neve 1073

Line Gain has a range of 30 dB, available in 5 dB increments. Line Gain can only be adjusted when Input Select is set to LINE mode.

Like the original hardware, gain is increased as the knob is rotated counter-clockwise in the plug-in interface. However:

- In Unison mode, Line Gain is increased by turning Apollo's preamp level knob clockwise.
- In Controls View mode, Line Gain is increased by moving the control slider from left to right.

> ***Note:*** *When Line Gain is set to the OFF position, UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 LoadLock is enabled).*

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application and Line Gain is set to the OFF position, the signal is muted. This is how the original hardware behaves. UAD DSP usage is not reduced in the OFF position in Unison mode.

Neve 1073 Legacy and Neve 1073SE Legacy

Line Gain control on 1073 Legacy plug-ins

This control sets the level at the input of these plug-ins. The available continuous gain range is -20 dB to 10 dB.

Separate Mic/Line gain controls are unavailable because these plug-ins do not feature input stage modeling.

When the knob is in the OFF position, all plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the OFF screen label toggles between OFF and the previously set Input Gain value. You can also click the Neve logo to toggle between OFF and the previous state.*

Mic Gain

Mic Gain has a range of 60 dB, available in 5 dB increments. To increase the mic input gain, rotate the knob clockwise. Mic Gain can only be adjusted when Input Select is set to MIC mode.

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application and Mic Gain is set to the OFF position, the signal is muted. This is how the original hardware behaves. UAD DSP usage is not reduced in the OFF position in Unison mode.

> ***Note:*** *Mic Gain is unavailable with the Legacy 1073/1073SE.*

Mic Z (Impedance)

The impedance of the mic input is set with the Mic Z switch. The modeled input impedances have subtle effects on the signal color and response (even when not used in Unison mode).

Note: *Mic Z is unavailable with the Legacy 1073/1073SE.*

LO

When set to LO, the mic input impedance is 300 Ohms.

HI

When set to HI, the mic input impedance depends on the Gain setting. Mic input impedance is 1.2K Ohms when Gain is set between -20 and -50, or to 600 Ohms when Gain is between -55 and -80.

Note: *Mic Z is not available for line input, or when used with Apollo's Hi-Z input in Unison mode. In these cases, the control cannot be switched.*

With the original hardware, most studios leave this control in the HI position (the default value in the plug-in). If an engineer chooses to access the LO setting on the hardware for a low output microphone (such as a ribbon mic), they need to crawl under the console to access the control on the back of the module.

Unison Impedance

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, the hardware input impedance of the Apollo mic preamp is switched to match the value in the plug-in for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction.

Matching the microphone to the closest impedance value is generally recommended, but this parameter can be used creatively and will not harm equipment connected to the Apollo mic preamp.

Pad

When enabled, the mic input signal level is attenuated (lowered) by -20 dB. Pad can be used to reduce signal levels when undesirable overload distortion is present at low preamp gain levels.

Note: *Pad is not available for line input, or when used with Apollo's Hi-Z input in Unison mode. In these cases, the control cannot be switched.*

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of PAD is mirrored. Pad can be switched within the plug-in interface, with Console's PAD button, or with Apollo's hardware PAD button.

High Shelf

The High Shelf knob offers approximately ±18 dB of smooth fixed frequency shelving equalization at 12 kHz.

Rotate the control clockwise to add the famous high-end Neve sheen, or counter-clockwise to reduce the treble response.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

Midrange Band

The midrange band is controlled by dual-concentric knobs, delivering smooth semi-parametric midrange equalization.

The response for this band has a dependence on the bandwidth as the gain is adjusted. At higher center frequencies, the Q goes up, for a more focused peak.

The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable. These two controls are detailed below.

Midrange Gain

The equalization gain for the midrange band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±18 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

Midrange Frequency

The Mid frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the text labels to specify a frequency or disable the Mid band.

Tip: *Click the midrange symbol (at lower right of knob) or "KHz" label (at lower left of knob) to cycle through the available values. Shift + click to step back one frequency.*

The available midrange center frequencies are 360 Hz, 700 Hz, 1.6 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 4.8 kHz, 7.2 kHz, and OFF. When set to OFF, the band is disabled.

Low Band

The low frequency band is controlled by dual-concentric knobs, delivering smooth shelving equalization.

The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable. These two controls are detailed below.

Low Gain

The equalization gain for the low band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±15 dB.

Rotate the control clockwise to boost the selected low band frequency, or counter-clockwise to reduce the bass response.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control to the zero position.*

Low Frequency

The Low frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the "silkscreen" text to specify a frequency or disable the Low band.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the low shelf symbol (at lower right of knob) or "Hz" label (at lower left of knob) to cycle through the available values. Shift + click to step back one frequency.*

The available low band center frequencies are 35 Hz, 60 Hz, 110 Hz, 220 Hz, and OFF. When set to OFF, the band is disabled.

High Pass

This knob specifies the fixed frequency of the high pass (low cut) filter. This filter has an 18 dB per octave slope.

The available frequencies are 50 Hz, 80 Hz, 160 Hz, 300 Hz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the high pass filter is disabled.

> ***Note:*** *Click the high pass symbol (at lower right of knob) or "Hz" label (at lower left of knob) to cycle through the available values. Shift + click to step back one frequency.*

When Neve 1073 is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, the following high pass filter behaviors apply:

- The filter is always in circuit, even when the EQL switch is disabled.
- In Gain Stage Mode, the Apollo/Arrow hardware filter switch toggles between OFF and the last Hz value that was set within the plug-in.

Phase

The PHASE button inverts the polarity of the signal. When the switch is engaged (the darker "in" position), the phase is inverted. Leave the switch in the disengaged (the lighter "out" position) for normal phase.

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of PHASE is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with Apollo's hardware polarity button.

EQL

The equalizer is engaged when the EQL switch is engaged (the darker "in" position). To disable the EQ, disengage the switch (the lighter "out" position).

The default position is disabled. Click the button to toggle the state.

UAD DSP usage is reduced when the EQ is bypassed with this control (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

In the hardware 1073, the audio is still slightly colored even when the EQL switch is disengaged and the EQ settings are in their "flat" positions. This is due to the fact that the signal is still passing through its circuitry.

More notably, all of the filter bands (except High Pass) can have an effect on the clipping behaviors of the Neve 1073 (except Legacy versions), even when EQL is disengaged. Therefore, the EQ values can have a significant effect on the signal when the EQ is "disabled" via the EQL switch.

If a true bypass is desired, use the OFF position of the Power switch (Neve 1073) or the OFF position of the Line Gain control (Neve 1073/1073SE Legacy).

Level

Level controls the signal level at the output stage of the module. The circuitry of an original Neve console fader was modeled for this control.

The available range is from -∞ dB (off) to +10 dB. Unity gain is at the zero position. Raising Level above 0 dB can cause output amplifier clipping.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text labels to return Level to 0 dB.*

Output

Output adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in without effecting the sonic character of the signal. The available range is ±24 dB.

This control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maximize color of the overall signal. For example, Gain and Level can be cranked for more distortion, while lowering Output to normalize levels.

> ***Note:*** *If comparing the Neve 1073 plug-in (when it is not in Unison mode) with the original hardware, set Output to +10.8 dB so software and hardware levels will match.*

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled and DSP usage is reduced (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive).

Neve Wessex console with 1073 modules

All visual and aural references to the Neve® 1073, 1081, 31102, 88RS, and 33609 products and all use of AMS-Neve's trademarks are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve Limited.

Neve 1081 Equalizer

4-Band EQ & High & Low Cut Filters From Prized Neve 8048 Console

First produced in 1972 by Neve, the 1081 channel module was found in consoles such as the 8048. In fact, vintage 8048 consoles, with 1081 modules, are still in wide use today at classic facilities such as The Village in Los Angeles, and have been chosen by artists ranging from The Rolling Stones to The Red Hot Chili Peppers. UA's Neve 1081 EQ plug-in is an exacting emulation of the channel module's four-band EQ with high and low cut filters featuring two parametric midrange bands and "Hi-Q" selections for tighter boosts or cuts.

The 1081 EQ license also includes the DSP-optimized 1081SE EQ plug-in for higher instance counts.

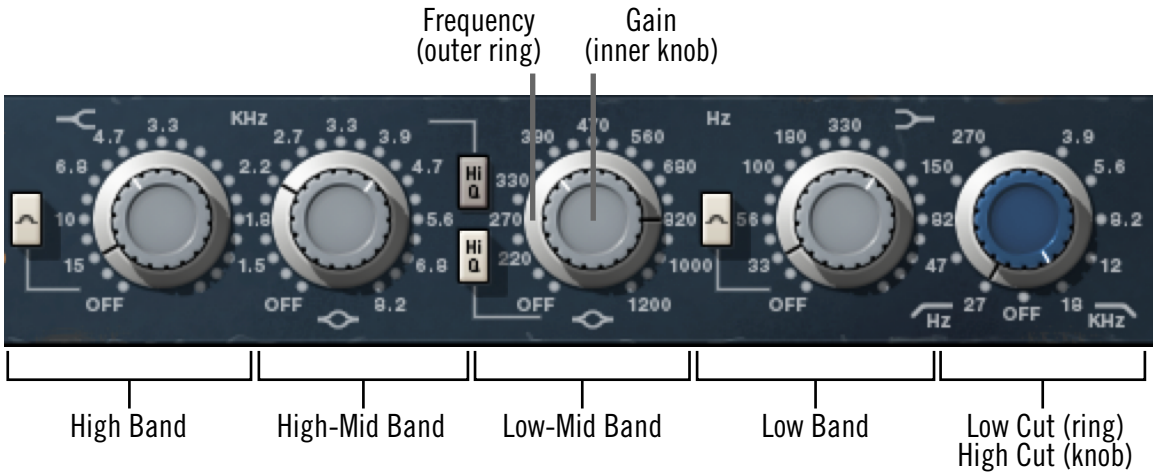
Neve 1081 interface

Neve 1081 Controls

The Neve 1081 channel module is a four-band EQ with high and low cut filters. The 1081 features two parametric midrange bands, with “Hi-Q” selections for tighter boosts or cuts. Both the high and low shelf filters have selectable frequencies and may be switched to bell filters. Other features include a -20 to +10 dB input gain control, phase reverse, and EQ bypass.

The bands are arranged and grouped as shown below. The bands feature dual-concentric controls. For each of the main bands, the inner knob controls the gain while the outer ring controls the frequency. The low and high cut filters are grouped as one knob/ring set, but they are actually two independent filters.

Band Layout



Neve 1081 band layout

Input Gain

The Input Gain control sets the level at the input of the plug-in. The range is from -20 dB to +10 dB.

When the Input Gain knob "snaps" to the OFF position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OFF screen label or the Neve logo to toggle between OFF and the previously set Input Gain value.*

High Band

The high band delivers smooth high frequency shelving or peak equalization. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

High Gain

The equalization gain for the high band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. Rotate the control clockwise to add the famous high-end Neve sheen, or counter-clockwise to reduce the treble response. The available range is approximately ±18 dB.

High Frequency

The high band frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the "silkscreen" text to specify a frequency or disable the band.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the shelving symbol above the knob to cycle through the available values. Shift-click to step back one frequency.*

The available high band center frequencies are 3.3 kHz, 4.7 kHz, 6.8 kHz, 10 kHz, 15 kHz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the band is disabled. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when the band is OFF.

High Peak Select

The High Peak button switches the high band from a shelving EQ to a peaking EQ. The band is in shelf mode by default; it is in peak mode when the button is "down" (darker).

High-Mid Band

The high-midrange band delivers smooth high-mid frequency peak equalization with a choice of two bandwidths. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

High-Mid Gain

The equalization gain for the high-midrange band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±18 dB.

High-Mid Frequency

The high-midrange band frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the "silkscreen" text to specify a frequency or disable the band.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the midrange symbol below the knob to cycle through the available values. Shift-click to step back one frequency.*

The available high-mid band center frequencies are 1.5 kHz, 1.8 kHz, 2.2 kHz, 2.7 kHz, 3.3 kHz, 3.9 kHz, 4.7 kHz, 5.6 kHz, 6.8 kHz, 8.2 kHz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the band is disabled. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when the band is OFF.

High-Mid Q Select

The High Q button switches the response of the high-mid band from normal to a narrower bandwidth for a sharper EQ curve. The band is in normal mode by default; it's in high Q mode when the button is "down" (darker).

Low-Mid Band

The low-midrange band delivers smooth low-mid frequency peak equalization with a choice of two bandwidths. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

Low-Mid Gain

The equalization gain for the low-midrange band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±18 dB.

Low-Mid Frequency

The low-midrange band frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the silkscreen text to specify a frequency or disable the band.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the midrange symbol below the knob to cycle through the available values. Shift-click to step back one frequency.*

The available low-mid band center frequencies are 220 Hz, 270 Hz, 330 Hz, 390 Hz, 470 Hz, 560 Hz, 680 Hz, 820 Hz, 1000 Hz,1200 Hz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the band is disabled. UAD CPU usage is not reduced when the band is OFF.

Low-Mid Q Select

The High Q button switches the response of the low-mid band from “normal” to a narrower bandwidth for a sharper EQ curve. The band is in normal mode by default; it’s in high Q mode when the button is “down” (darker).

Low Band

The low band delivers smooth low frequency shelving or peak equalization. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

Low Gain

The equalization gain for the low band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±18 dB.

Low Frequency

The low band frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring control can be dragged with the mouse, or click directly on the silkscreen text to specify a frequency or disable the band.

The available low band center frequencies are 33Hz, 56 Hz, 100 Hz, 180 Hz, 330 Hz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the band is disabled. UAD CPU usage is not reduced when the band is OFF.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the shelving symbol above the knob to cycle through the available values. Shift + click to step back one frequency.*

Low Peak Select

The Low Peak button switches the low band from a shelving EQ to a peaking EQ. The band is in shelf mode by default; it is in peak mode when the button is "down" (darker).

Cut Filters

The independent low and high cut filters are controlled by the dual-concentric knobs to the right of the low band (see Band Layout). The controls specify the fixed frequency of the cut filter. The cut filters have an 18 dB per octave slope.

Click+drag the control to change the value, or click the silkscreen frequency values.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the high cut/low cut symbols below the knob to cycle through the available values. Shift-click to step back one frequency.*

High Cut

The inner (blue) dual-concentric knob controls the high cut filter. The available frequencies for the high cut filter are 18 kHz, 12 kHz, 8.2 kHz, 5.6 kHz, 3.9 kHz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the high cut filter is disabled. UAD CPU usage is not reduced when OFF.

Low Cut

The outer (silver) dual-concentric ring controls the low cut filter. The available frequencies for the low cut filter are 27 Hz, 47 Hz, 82 Hz, 150 Hz, 270 Hz, and OFF. When OFF is specified, the low cut filter is disabled. UAD CPU usage is not reduced when OFF.

Phase

The Phase (PH) button inverts the polarity of the signal. When the switch is in the “In” (lit) position, the phase is reversed. Leave the switch in the “Out” (unlit) position for normal phase.

EQ Enable

The equalizer is engaged when the EQ switch is in the “In” (lit) position. To disable the EQ, put the switch in the “Out” (unlit) position. Click the button to toggle the state.

In the hardware 1081, the audio is still slightly colored even when the EQ switch is in the Out position. This is due to the fact that the signal is still passing through its circuitry. Therefore, the signal will be slightly colored when this switch is in the Out position.

UAD DSP usage is reduced when the EQ is bypassed with this control (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). If a true bypass is desired, use the OFF position of the Input Gain control.

Neve 1081SE

Neve 1081SE interface

The Neve 1081SE is derived from the UAD Neve 1081. Its algorithm has been revised in order to provide sonic characteristics very similar to the 1081 but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow 1081-like sound when DSP resources are limited.

The 1081SE interface can be differentiated from the 1081 by color and the module name. The 1081SE is black instead of the 1081’s dark blue, and the module name on the lower right of the interface panel includes “SE”.

> ***Note:*** *All Neve 1081SE controls and operations are identical to the non-SE version.*

All visual and aural references to the Neve® 1073, 1081, 31102, 88RS, and 33609 products and all use of AMS-Neve’s trademarks are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve Limited.

Neve 31102 Console EQ

3-Band Active EQ & High/Low Filters From Legendary Neve 8068 Console

Originally featured in the Neve 8068 console, the 31102 EQ was used to mix one of the best-selling debut albums of all time, *Appetite For Destruction* by Guns-N-Roses. With its distinct filter shaping and familiar Neve sheen and bite, the Neve 31102/SE EQ Powered Plug-In provides another step in the evolution of classic Neve EQs. Artists ranging from Primus and Metallica to My Morning Jacket and The Red Hot Chili Peppers have also called on the distinct tone of the 31102 EQ in the studio. UA's Powered Plug-In Neve 31102 EQ delivers the same sonic experience as its analog cousin with exacting detail.

Three-band active EQ and High/Low filters offer enhanced tone-shaping possibilities and a feature complexity that sits squarely between its legendary cousins, the 1073 and the 1081.

The 31102 Console EQ license also includes the DSP-optimized 31102SE Console EQ plug-in for higher instance counts.

Neve 31102 interface

Neve 31102 Controls

Input Gain

The Input Gain control sets the level at the input of the plug-in, and doubles as a plug-in bypass control. The range is from -20 dB to +10 dB, and off.

When the Input Gain knob "snaps" to the off position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "off" screen label or the Neve logo to toggle between off and the previously set Input Gain value.*

High Shelf

The high shelf delivers smooth high frequency shelving equalization, controlled by dual-concentric knobs. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

High Shelving Gain

The gain for the high band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. Rotate the control clockwise to add the famous high-end Neve sheen, or counter-clockwise to reduce the treble response.

The available range is approximately ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the knob position indicator is pointing straight down.

High Shelving Frequency

The high shelving frequency is specified with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob. The ring knob pointer can be dragged with the mouse, or click the shelving symbol above the knob to cycle through the available frequencies (shift+click to step back one frequency).

The available high shelving frequencies are 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 10 kHz, and off. When off is specified, the high shelf band is disabled. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when the band is off.

Midrange Band

The midrange band is controlled by dual-concentric knobs, delivering smooth semi-parametric midrange equalization with a choice of two bandwidths. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

Midrange Gain

The equalization gain for the midrange band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the knob position indicator is pointing straight down.

Midrange Frequency

The midrange frequency is specified with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring knob pointer can be dragged with the mouse, or click the peak/dip symbol above the knob to cycle through the available frequencies (shift+click to step back one frequency).

The available midrange center frequencies are 7.2 kHz, 4.8 kHz, 3.2 kHz, 1.6 kHz, 0.7 kHz, 0.35 kHz, and off. When off is specified, the band is disabled. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when the band is off.

High Q Select

The High Q button switches the response of the midrange band from "normal" to a narrower bandwidth for a sharper EQ curve. The band is in normal mode by default; it's in high Q mode when the button is "down" (darker).

Low Shelf

The low band is controlled by dual-concentric knobs, delivering smooth shelving equalization. The inner knob controls the band gain, and the outer ring selects the frequency or band disable.

Low Gain

The equalization gain for the low band is selected with the inner knob of the dual-concentric control. The available range is approximately ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the knob position indicator is pointing straight down.

Rotate the control clockwise to boost the selected low band frequency, or counter-clockwise to reduce the bass response.

Low Frequency

The low frequency is selected with the outer ring of the dual-concentric knob controls. The ring knob pointer can be dragged with the mouse, or click the shelving symbol above the knob to cycle through the available frequencies (shift+click to step back one frequency).

The available low band center frequencies are 35 Hz, 60 Hz, 110 Hz, 220 Hz, and off. When off is specified, the band is disabled. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when off.

Cut Filters

The independent low and high cut filters are controlled by the dual-concentric knobs to the right of the low band. The controls specify the fixed frequency of each cut filter.

The knob pointers can be dragged with the mouse, or click the respective cut symbols above the knob (left symbol for low cut, right symbol for high cut) to cycle through the available frequencies (shift+click to step back one frequency).

High Cut

The inner (blue) dual-concentric knob controls the high cut filter. The available frequencies for the high cut filter are 18 kHz, 14 kHz, 10 kHz, 8 kHz, 6 kHz, and off. When off is specified, the high cut filter is disabled.

Low Cut

The outer dual-concentric ring controls the low cut filter. The available frequencies for the low cut filter are 45 Hz, 70 Hz, 160 Hz, 360 Hz,and off. When OFF is specified, the low cut filter is disabled.

> ***Note:*** *Each cut filter is disabled when its respective knob position indicator is pointing straight down. UAD DSP usage is not reduced when the cut filters are off.*

Phase

The Phase (Ø) button inverts the polarity of the signal. The signal is inverted when the button is engaged (darker). Leave the button inactive (lighter) for normal phase.

EQL

The equalizer is engaged when the EQL switch is in the “In” (darker) position. To disable the EQ, put the switch in the “Out” (lighter) position. Click the button to toggle the state.

In the hardware 31102, the audio is still slightly colored even when the EQL switch is in the Out position. This is due to the fact that the signal is still passing through its circuitry. Therefore, the signal will be slightly colored when this switch is in the Out position. UAD DSP usage is reduced when the EQ is bypassed with this control (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *If a true bypass is desired, use the OFF position of the Input Gain control.*

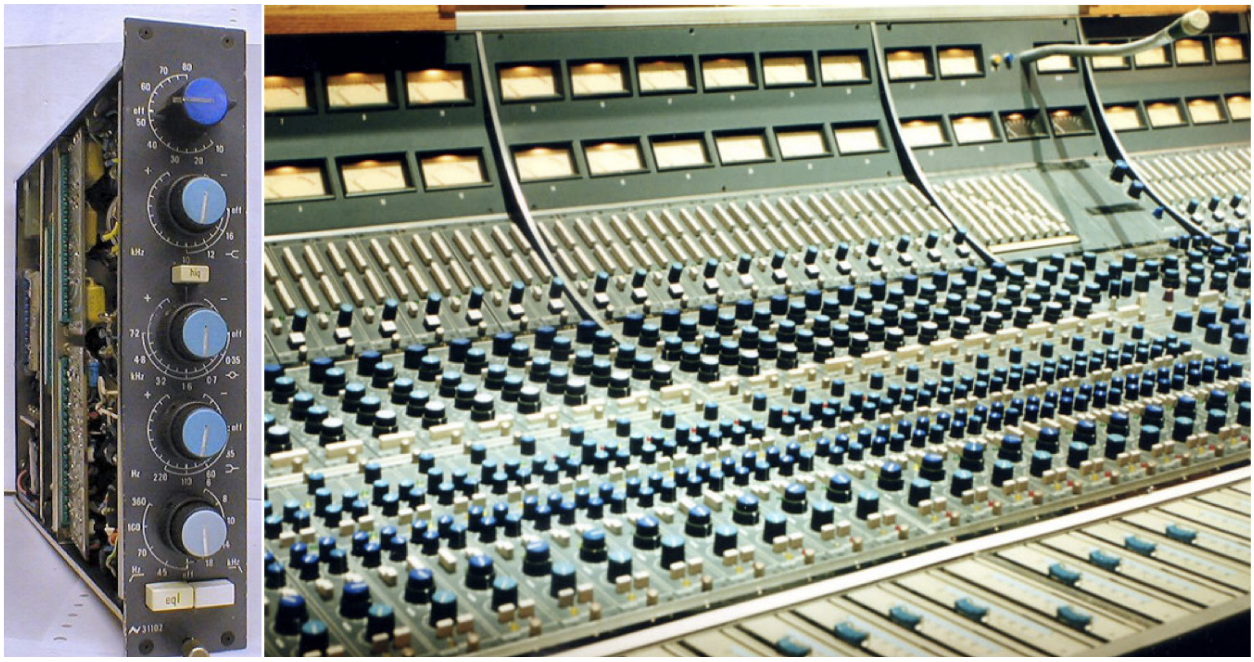
Neve 31102SE

Neve 31102SE interface

The Neve 33102SE is derived from the UAD Neve 31102. Its algorithm has been revised in order to provide sonic characteristics very similar to the 31102 but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow 31102-like sound when DSP resources are limited.

The 31102 interface can be differentiated from the 31102 by color and the module name. The 31102SE background is black instead of the 31102's dark blue, and the module name on the lower right of the interface panel includes "SE".

Note: *The Neve 31102SE controls are exactly the same as the Neve 31102.*



One Neve 31102 EQ hardware module (left) and 31102s installed in a Neve 8068 console

All visual and aural references to the Neve® 1073, 1081, 31102, 88RS, and 33609 products and all use of AMS-NEVE's trademarks are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve Limited.

Neve 33609 Compressor

Stereo/Mono Compressor With Separate Limiter & Compression Sections

Derived from the original Neve 2254 compressor, circa 1969, the 33609 stereo bus compressor/limiter utilizes a bridged-diode gain reduction circuit and many custom transformers. The uniquely musical character of this circuit made the 33609 a studio standard since its release. The UAD Neve 33609 is the only Neve-sanctioned software recreation of the Neve 33609 (revision C). Every detail of the original unit is captured, and matches its hardware counterpart with absolute precision. The 33609 plug-in includes a DSP-optimized 33609SE which allows for higher instance counts.

The completely step-controlled 33609 is made up of separate compression and limiter sections, each with their own threshold, recovery and bypass controls. Two of the recovery selections for each section are dedicated to a program dependent auto release. The compressor section also offers five ratio selections and 20 dB make-up gain, while the limiter offers a fast or slow attack. The mono/stereo switch couples and decouples the left and right gain reduction elements.

The UAD Powered Plug-In version of the Neve 33609 adds a few control enhancements not found on the hardware: An additional stepped output control with 20 dB of gain, a link switch allowing ganged left/right control of all parameters, and a headroom switch, which allows the DAW user to take advantage of the full range of 33609 gain coloration.

Neve 33609 interface

Technical Article

The webzine article “Ask the Doctors: Modeling of the Neve 33609 compressor/limiter” contains interesting technical details about the 33609. It is available online:

- www.uaudio.com/webzine/2006/august/index2.html

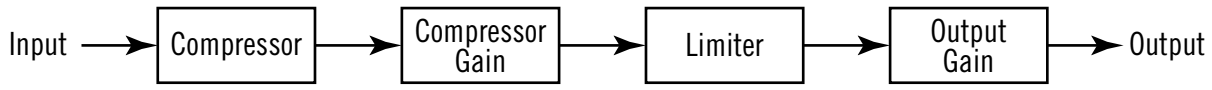
Operation

The Neve 33609 is a two-channel device capable of running in stereo or dual-mono modes. The active mode is determined by the Mono/Stereo switch. When the 33609 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the channel 2 controls are disabled.

Each channel consists of a compressor and a limiter. Each of these functions has its own separate group of controls. Since the controls for each of the two channels are identical, they are detailed only once.

Signal Flow

In the 33609, the output of the compressor is fed to the input of the limiter, as shown below. Like the original hardware, the signal does *not* flow "from the left to the right" of the interface. Understanding this signal flow will help you obtain a more predictable result.



Neve 33609 signal flow

Modeling

The Neve 33609 models all aspects of the original 33609 hardware, including the desirable harmonic distortion characteristics. These qualities are more prominent at higher input levels (see Headroom for more info).

When the compressor and limiter are both disabled, some (good) coloration of the signal occurs, just like the hardware. If a true bypass is desired, use the Power switch to disable the plug-in.

Neve 33609 Controls

Limiter

Controls in this section only function when the limiter is enabled with the “limit In” switch (the Power switch must also be on).

Note: *The compressor is before the limiter (see Signal Flow).*

Limiter Threshold

Threshold determines how much limiting will occur. When the input signal exceeds the threshold level, the signal above the threshold is limited. A smaller value results in more limiting. The available range is from +4 dB to +15 dB, in 0.5 dB increments.

If the compressor is enabled, the Compressor Gain in the compressor section will effect the input level into the limiter. In this case, the compressor gain can affect the limiter threshold response.

Limiter Recovery

Recovery (release) is the time it takes for the limiter to stop processing after the signal drops below the threshold value. The available values (in milliseconds) are 50, 100, 200, 800, a1, and a2.

The automatic settings (a1 and a2) are program dependant. The value for a1 can be as fast as 40 ms, but after a sustained period of high signal level, the period is 1500 ms. The value for a2 can be as fast as 150 ms, but after a sustained period of high signal level, the period is 3000 ms.

Limiter In

This toggle switch enables the limiter portion of the plug-in. The limiter has no effect unless this switch is in the “In” (down) position.

Attack

Attack determines how fast limiting will engage when the signal exceeds the limiter threshold. The Fast setting is 2 milliseconds, and the Slow setting is 4 milliseconds.

Compressor

Controls in this section only function when the compressor is enabled with the "compress In" switch (the Power switch must also be on).

Note: *The compressor is before the limiter (see Signal Flow).*

Compressor Threshold

Threshold determines how much compression will occur. When the input signal exceeds the threshold level, the compressor engages. A smaller value results in more compression. The available range is from -20 dB to +10 dB, in 2 dB increments.

Compressor Recovery

Recovery (release) is the time it takes for the compressor to stop processing after the signal drops below the threshold value. The available values (in milliseconds) are 100, 400, 800, 1500, a1, and a2.

The automatic settings (a1 and a2) are program dependant. The value for a1 can be as fast as 40ms, but after a sustained period of high signal level, the period is 800 ms. The value for a2 can be as fast as 150 ms, but after a sustained period of high signal level, the period is 1500 ms.

Compressor Gain

This makeup gain control increases the signal level out of the compressor to compensate for reduced levels as a result of compression. The available range is 0 to +20 dB, in 2 dB increments.

Make sure to adjust the Gain control after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Threshold control. The Gain control does not affect the amount of compression.

Note: *If the limiter is also enabled, this gain is applied before the limiter stage.*

Ratio

This control determines the compressor ratio. The available values are 1.5:1, 2:1, 3:1, 4:1, and 6:1, selectable in discrete increments.

Compressor In

This toggle switch enables the compressor portion of the plug-in. The compressor has no effect unless this switch is in the "In" (down) position.

Other Controls

The interface elements that are not directly contained within the compressor or limiter are detailed below.

Output Gain

This control is a software-only addition not found on the original hardware. It is an overall makeup gain stage at the output of the plug-in to compensate for reduced levels as a result of compression and/or limiting. The available range is -2 to +20 in 1 dB increments.

Gain Reduction Meters

The Gain Reduction Meters indicate the amount of gain reduction that is occurring in dB. There is one meter for each channel. The gain reduction displayed is the total reduction of the limiter plus the compressor.

> ***Note:*** *The meter indicator moves farther to the right as more gain reduction is occurring. This meter behavior is opposite that of many compressors.*

Link

This switch is a software-only addition that allows the two sets of controls for each channel to be linked for ease of operation when both channels require the same values, or unlinked when dual-mono operation is desired. The Link parameter is stored within presets and can be accessed via automation.

Unlink

When set to unlink (up position), the controls for channels one and two are completely independent. Unlink is generally used in mono mode. When unlinked, automation data is written and read by each channel separately.

> ***Note:*** *When unlink is switched to link, channel 1 controls are copied to channel 2. Control offsets between channels are lost in this case.*

Link

When set to link (down position), modifying any channel one or channel two control causes its adjacent stereo counterpart control to snap to the same position (channel 1 & 2 controls are ganged together in link mode).

> ***Note:*** *When link is active, automation data is written and read for channel one only. In this case, the automation data for channel one will control both channels.*

When link is active, changing channel two parameters from a control surface or when in “controls only” (non-GUI) mode will have no effect.

Mono/Stereo

The Neve 33609 can operate in true stereo or dual-mono mode. This switch determines the active mode.

Mono

In mono mode, channels 1 and 2 are completely independent and the 33609 functions as a dual-mono device, each channel with its own compressor and limiter.

> ***Note:*** *To read and write automation data for both channels independently when in mono mode, link mode must be disabled.*

Stereo

In stereo mode, the left channel is fed to the channel one compressor, and the right channel is fed to the channel two compressor. The two compressors are constrained so that they both compress the same amount at any instant. This prevents transients which appear only on one channel from shifting the image of the output. Any big transient on either channel will cause both channels to compress. The amount of compression will be similar to the amount of compression for a transient which appears on both channels at the same time.

In stereo operation the controls for channels 1 and 2 are independent and can be set separately. Generally, the channel with the "most processing occurring" controls the processing for the other channel. For example, if the same signal is fed to both channels in stereo mode and channel 1 has a lower threshold setting than channel 2, the channel 1 threshold value is used for both channels. Similarly, if channel 1 were disabled (using "In" switches), channel 2 settings would be used because "more processing" occurs with the channel 2 settings. It's not always so simple though, as in the following cases:

- If you feed the same signal into both channels, you can have a lower threshold with a lower ratio on one channel, and a higher threshold with a higher ratio on the other channel. In this case, you will get a double knee, with the lower ratio being used between the knees, and the higher ratio above both knees.
- If you feed the same signal into both channels, you can have a lower threshold with a faster release on one channel, and a higher threshold with a slower release in the other channel. In this case, you will get a two-stage release after a transient, with the first channel releasing at the fast rate until you get down to where the other one is; then the release will continue at the slower rate.

Expert Question

Is there any reason I would want to use stereo mode and still have the settings for the two channels different?

Yes. Linking the sidechains simply prevents left-right image shifting. Threshold, attack, and recovery can be set independently to cause the compressor to be more sensitive to instruments which are panned to one side or the other. Output controls can be set separately in order to correct an overall image shift at the output.

Headroom

The hardware Neve 33609 can accept an analog signal level of approximately +26 dBu before undesirable signal clipping occurs. As the signal increases up to this point however, desirable audio-path nonlinearities and "good" harmonic distortion characteristics occur. This musically pleasing "warmth" at higher levels is what gives the unit much of its revered sonic character. Because analog mixing consoles can typically output high signal levels, audio engineers often take advantage of the ability to "push" the hardware 33609 into the colorful arena.

This complete pallet of sonic nuance, including the dynamic input response, is captured in the Neve 33609 model. The plug-in is calibrated internally so that 0 dBFS at its input is equivalent to an input level of approximately +26 dBu on the 33609 hardware, where the coloring is more prominent. The result is that a typical signal within a DAW will drive the UAD Neve 33609 into these "virtual" higher levels, resulting in fairly high amounts gain reduction.

Headroom Switch

The Headroom switch is provided to accommodate applications where high amounts of gain reduction are not desired. Headroom simply lowers the internal operating level so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much.

Headroom can be set to 22 dB, 18 dB, or 14 dB. At 22 dB, signals will push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion) more easily. Set the switch to a lower value when less gain reduction and color is desired.

The numbers on the switch indicate where 0 dBFS falls relative to nominal +4 dBu. For example, with 22 dB of headroom, 0 dBFS corresponds to +4 dBu + 22 dB = 26 dBu. With 18 dB of headroom, 0 dBFS corresponds to +4 dBu + 18 dB = 22 dBu. The headroom selected will cause the plug-in to behave as though it were a hardware 33609 connected to a nominal +4 dBu interface with the selected amount of headroom. Industry standards for most DAW interfaces are +14 dB and +18 dB headroom. The +22 dB setting approximates some analog mixing environments, and allows the entire useful dynamic range of the 33609 to be exercised.

The following settings are application guidelines for the Headroom switch:

22 dB

Typical starting point for individual track inserts where maximum gain reduction is desired.This setting is equivalent to having a real hardware 33609 connected to a +4 interface with +22 dB headroom.

18 dB

Typical starting point when used on a bus or group where nominal gain reduction is desired.This setting is equivalent to having a real hardware 33609 connected to a +4 interface with +18 dB headroom.

14 dB

Typical starting point for mastering where minimal gain reduction is desired. This setting is equivalent to having a real hardware 33609 connected to a +4 interface with +14 dB headroom.

> ***Note:*** *Keep in mind there are no hard and fast rules. Use the above recommendations as guidelines and feel free to experiment with the various positions of the headroom switch regardless of the audio source. If it sounds good, use it!*

Factory Presets

The Neve 33609/33609SE includes a bank of factory presets. These presets can be useful starting points for your particular source audio.

The factory preset names begin with MSTR, BUSS, or TRAK. These names indicate the setting of the headroom parameter. (14 dB, 18 dB, and 22 dB respectively).

- Mastering (MSTR) presets are optimized for mixed program material that is already at a relatively high level.
- Bus/group (BUSS) presets are optimized for subgroups of audio, such as a drum group or vocal group. This type of application often has lower levels than full mixes, but higher levels than a track insert.
- Track (TRAK) presets are optimized for track inserts where signal levels typically aren't as hot as groups or outputs.

The preset names are guidelines and not rules. In many cases, you can use any preset on any source with good results. You will probably need to adjust the threshold and/or gain controls to obtain the optimum results with your particular source audio.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). Toggle the switch to change the Power state; the switch is illuminated in red when the plug-in is active.

> ***Note:*** *You can click-hold the power switch then drag it like a slider to quickly compare the enabled/disabled state.*

Neve 33609SE

Neve 33609SE interface

The Neve 33609SE is derived from the UAD Neve 33609. Its algorithm has been revised in order to provide sonic characteristics very similar to the 33609 but with significantly less DSP usage. It is provided to allow 33609-like sound when DSP resources are limited.

The 33609SE interface can be differentiated from the 33609 by color and the module name. The 33609SE background is black instead of the 33609's blue/grey, and the module name below the link switch includes "SE".

Note: *The Neve 33609SE controls are exactly the same as the Neve 33609.*

The original Neve 33609 hardware unit

All visual and aural references to the Neve® 1073, 1081, 31102, 88RS, and 33609 products and all use of AMS-NEVE's trademarks are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve Limited.

Neve Preamp

The authentic Neve preamp sound, right at your fingertips.

The Neve mic preamp is an undisputed audio masterpiece, adding genuine Neve sheen, richness, and thick musical detail to any signal that passes through it. The pinnacle of Neve preamp design is the classic 1073 module with EQ, but Neve also briefly produced the 1290 module — a rare, preamp-only version of the 1073.

Now, you can get the clarity, grit, and harmonically complex class-A saturation of this amazing mic preamplifier in a simple two-knob plug-in that's perfect for UA Audio Interface owners.

Now You Can:

- Get the world's only authentic plug-in emulation of the legendary class-A, Neve mic preamp
- Record "through" the iconic Neve preamp in real time using UA Audio Interfaces, with low DSP use
- Color your tracks with musical saturation and complex nonlinear circuit behaviors
- Control UA Audio Interface mic preamp gain staging and impedance directly from the Neve Preamp plug-in via Unison™ technology

The Ultimate Neve Preamp Plug-In

The Neve Preamp plug-in combines sonic attributes of both the 1073 and 1290 designs and provides all the bandwidth and attitude of Neve's original hardware, as heard on countless classic recordings. By thoroughly modeling the dual-stage "Red Knob" preamp and output amplifier with obsessive detail, the Neve Preamp plug-in replicates the sound and behavior of the original preamp with stunning accuracy.

Give Your Tracks the Sound of Your Favorite Albums

Like the original hardware, the Neve Preamp plug-in adds characteristic color and grit. Just drop it into the Unison slot of your UA Audio Interface's Console software to add instant character to vocals and acoustic guitars, or treat synths, drums, and bass with the complex, dynamic clipping behavior that can only come from Neve.

Unison Technology for UA Audio Interfaces

Harnessing UA's Unison technology, the Neve Preamp plug-in blurs the lines between analog and digital, giving you all of the legendary hardware's impedance, gain staging "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors. The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the Neve Preamp plug-in to the digitally controlled mic preamps in UA Audio Interfaces.

Add Clarity and Color to any Source

Of course, the Neve Preamp plug-in isn't just for UA Audio Interface owners. UAD-2 hardware owners can employ the Neve Preamp plug-in for mixing and tone shaping — without ever leaving the box. Thanks to its lower DSP usage, you can easily place Neve Preamp plug-in instances across multiple channels, turning your favorite DAW into a classic Neve console.

Key Features

- Exclusively Neve licensed plug-in emulation of the world's favorite mic preamp
- Combines sonic attributes and features of both the coveted 1073 and 1290 designs
- Models entire Neve class-A transformer/transistor circuit path, including preamp, output amplifier, nonlinearities, and clipping
- Variable, physical input impedance and front panel control of gain staging and other preamp parameters via Unison™ mic preamp technology

Neve Preamp interface

Technical Overview

Neve Preamp emulates the standalone Neve 1290 microphone preamplifier module, combined with attributes of the Neve 1073 console modules. The goal of Neve Preamp is simple: Provide an easy to use, low-DSP preamp-only tool for Unison recording and mixing. Until recently, the 1290 was the only standalone mic preamp developed by Neve that was identical in design to those found on the original class-A modules. The 1290 was developed for and limited to the Australian broadcast market, so few were made.

Unlike the mic and line gain system in the 1073, the original 1290 only has a microphone input. However, when mounted in custom racks for aftermarket use, line input functionality is often provided by adding a pad to the mic input. This arrangement is emulated in the Neve Preamp plug-in. Neve Preamp borrows the same 80 Hz cut filter that is offered as an option on the 1073. Neve Preamp also "locks down" the switchable impedance to the most commonly used "Hi" value, which means the -80 to -55 "single amp" range adopts a 600 ohm impedance, while the -50 to -20 range adopts a 1200 ohm "dual amp" range, just like on both the 1290 and 1073.

Furthermore, the nonlinear behaviors in Neve Preamp differ slightly from the 1073 due to the absence of the EQ and it's electronic loading between the input and output amps, but the overall linear system filtering is maintained from the 1073. For these reasons, you'll see the the name on the GUI is "1290A" which indicates UA made a "digital amalgam" that didn't exist before, in hardware.

Unison Integration

Neve Preamp features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces. With Unison interfaces, the ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the modeled Neve hardware preamp.

> ***Note:*** *Unison is active only when Neve Preamp is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

With Unison, the hardware preamp adapts to the modeled preamp's physical input impedance. Combined with UA's transparent analog amplification, this provides the Neve Preamp's full gain and tone range from clean to clipped — with broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of Neve Preamp plug-in settings using both the digitally-controlled panel hardware on the UA audio interface and the UAD plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, cut filter, polarity) are mirrored and bidirectional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the Neve hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Unison mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Unison preamps to match the input impedance of the emulated hardware, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

The hardware preamp knob on the UA audio interface can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via the interface hardware, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Neve Preamp Controls

Input Select

The Input Select switch determines which input (mic or line) is being controlled by the Gain knob.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the text labels to jump between Input Select modes.*
>
> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching from LINE to MIC, as output levels can increase significantly (as they would with any hardware preamp).*

MIC

When set to MIC, the preamp is in mic input mode. Like the hardware, the Neve Preamp plug-in easily facilitates sending line level signal through the "virtual" mic input, which allows creative use of distortion to color signals.

LINE

When set to LINE, the preamp is in line input mode. Unlike the 1073, the 1290 has only mic preamp inputs by design. This mode utilizes the same circuitry as the mic input (including transformer emulation), but applies 30.7 dB of attenuation to compensate for the greater amplitude of line-level signals.

Unison Interaction

When Neve Preamp is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's MIC/LINE switches, or with the hardware buttons on the UA audio interface. When an Apollo/Arrow Hi-Z input is connected, MIC mode is automatically selected and the LINE/MIC switch is disabled.

Gain

The Gain switch specifies the level of gain applied by the preamp. It offers settings from -20 dB to -80 dB, in 5 dB increments.

Note: *The unusual "negative value" numbering originally used by Neve are based on sensitivity instead of gain. For example, if an input has a sensitivity of -80 dB, the input sensitivity knob on the 1073 would be set to -80 dB to match.*

Tip: *Input Select can also be switched by clicking any of the "dots" or gain value labels in the range for the input type.*

Unison Interactions

Input Impedance

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel, the preamp sets its mic input impedance to 1200 Ohms when Gain is set between -20 and -50, or to 600 Ohms when Gain is between -55 and -80.

Gain Stage Mode

When the plug-in is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the PREAMP knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, an orange dot is overlaid on this parameter, indicating it is available for hardware control.

Tip: *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Phase (Ø)

The Phase button inverts the polarity of the signal. When the button is engaged, the signal is inverted.

Unison Interaction

When Neve Preamp is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Phase is mirrored. Phase can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with the hardware polarity button on the UA audio interface.

High Pass Filter (HPF)

The High Pass Filter button controls an 18 dB per octave high-pass filter with a cutoff frequency of 80 Hz. When the button is engaged, the filter is applied. This filter is equivalent to the 80 Hz HPF setting in the Neve 1073 plug-in.

Unison Interaction

When Neve Preamp is used in a Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of the High-pass Filter is mirrored. The filter can be enabled or disabled within the plug-in interface, with Console's HPF button, or with the hardware HPF button on the UA audio interface.

OUTPUT

The OUTPUT control sets the final output level of the plug-in. Up to 24 dB of attenuation or 12 dB of boost are available. As the last component in the signal path, OUTPUT offers clean, uncolored level changes.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the OUTPUT control to its unity gain position.*

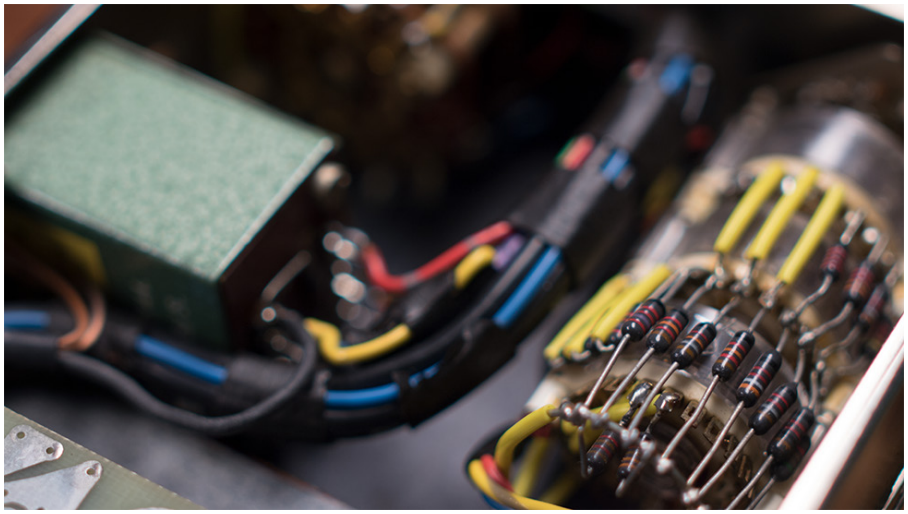
Unison Interaction

When Neve Preamp is placed in a Unison insert on a preamp channel within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the PREAMP knob on the UA audio interface can be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, a green dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control.

Tip: *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

PWR (Power)

The PWR button bypasses the plug-in, which is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. When the button is engaged, emulation processing is disabled and DSP usage is reduced.



Neve 1290 preamp module

All visual and aural references to the Neve Preamp are being made with written permission from AMS-Neve. Special thanks to David Walton at AMS-Neve.

Ocean Way Studios

The World's First Dynamic Room Modeling Plug-In

Developed by Universal Audio and Allen Sides, the Ocean Way Studios plug-in rewrites the book on what's possible with acoustic space emulation. By combining elements of room, microphone, and source modeling, Ocean Way Studios moves far beyond standard impulse response players and reverbs — giving you an authentic replication of one of the world's most famous recording studios.

Now You Can:

- Record live or mix through Ocean Way Recording's legendary Studio A and Studio B
- Use "best of the best" vintage microphones from Allen Sides' world-renowned collection
- Choose among Allen Sides' favorite room positions with eight source types, providing stunningly accurate sound dispersion behaviors
- Position, blend, and process three mic pairs (Near, Mid, Far) in real time
- Retain mic bleed, proximity, and other naturally occurring behaviors for realism far beyond other reverb/ambience plug-ins

The Legendary Rooms of Ocean Way

From the opening of Bill Putnam's United Recording in 1957, to the annexing of neighboring Western Studio in 1961, to their reinvention as Ocean Way Recording under Allen Sides — the famed "Studio A" and "Studio B" at Ocean Way Studios have shaped the sound of countless classic records. From Ray Charles and the Beach Boys, to the Rolling Stones, and Radiohead, music creators have sought out the sound of these beautifully balanced rooms for more than five decades.

Dynamic Room Modeling — an Audio Processing Breakthrough

Ocean Way Studios reinvents ambience processing with UA's proprietary Dynamic Room Modeling technology, an exclusive combination of signal processing and advanced measurement techniques. Eclipsing standard convolution reverbs — which can only provide a sonic snapshot — Dynamic Room Modeling opens up the full spectrum of a studio's ambience possibilities.

Specifically, Dynamic Room Modeling provides the unique dispersion properties of various sources, as recorded through a selection of vintage microphones that can be positioned in each room — in real time — via a simple click-and-drag interface. This technology, with the guidance of Allen Sides, gives the Ocean Way Studios plug-in a shocking level of sonic realism.

An Unrivaled Microphone Collection Under Your Control

With virtual access to $250,000 of hand-picked, vintage microphones, Ocean Way's microphone setups and Distance controls are the centerpiece of the plug-in. The setups capture the ideal microphone selections and placements for each room and source type — exactly as used to record some of the biggest acts of all time. Up to three vintage microphones pairs (Near, Mid, Far) are available in each setup, allowing for creative sonic blending. Click-and-drag the microphones to position them in the room, then EQ and filter their sound as desired — complete with mic bleed and proximity effects.

Transform Tones With Reverb and Re-Mic Modes

Ocean Way Studios offers two modes of operation: Reverb mode, using send/return paths to mix wet and dry signals; or Re-Mic mode, to fully immerse the original source audio within Ocean Way's rooms. Re-Mic mode is by nature "fully wet," and can be used to entirely replace your original room and microphone sounds with the fabled sound of Ocean Way.

Ocean Way Studios interface

What Is Ocean Way Studios?

Ocean Way Studios is a dynamically adjustable room emulator for adding the ambience of Ocean Way Recording's acclaimed studios A or B to audio signals.

Interior photos of Room A (left) and Room B (right) at Ocean Way Recording

Ocean Way Studios offers two modes of operation. It can be used as a traditional reverb using send/return paths mixed with dry signals, or as a "Re-Mic" processor when full immersion of the original source audio within Ocean Way's studio spaces is desired.

Re-Mic mode is by nature "fully wet" and includes the impulse response's "direct" signal. Re-Mic can be used to entirely replace previous rooms and microphones, or create new complimentary room sounds.

Allen Sides

Ocean Way Studios was collaboratively developed under the creative direction of renowned producer/engineer Allen Sides. As the owner/operator of Ocean Way Recording for more than 30 years (see The History of Ocean Way Recording), his knowledge of how to record various sources within these studios is integral to the high quality results that can be achieved with Ocean Way Studios.

Microphones

Allen Sides is not only known for his audio engineering expertise, but also for his collection of prized microphones. The specific microphones that were used to develop Ocean Way Studios, and their placement positions on a variety of sources, were selected by Mr. Sides himself.

Hybrid Technology

Ocean Way Studios is not a general impulse response (IR) convolution reverb nor a typical algorithmic reverb. Instead, Ocean Way Studios utilizes breakthrough hybrid technologies, combining expertly sampled impulse responses with advanced algorithmic DSP techniques.

Concise Modeling

Ocean Way Studios focuses on a limited set of studio spaces and exhaustively models numerous room positions, microphones, and sound source dispersion patterns — which all combine to provide the ultimate in acoustic realism. Ocean Way Studios is sonically superior in terms of overall model accuracy and dynamic customization.

Presets

The factory presets are of particular importance with the Ocean Way Studios plug-in, because they are designed by Allen Sides and they capture his ideal microphone selections and placement positions for each studio and source. 32 presets are available in the internal factory bank, providing optimum control settings in both Re-Mic and Reverb modes. 10 additional presets that use the guitar cabinets as source can be accessed via the UAD Toolbar.

Choosing presets differs from simply choosing different Studio, Source, and Microphone selections. Because with Ocean Way Studios it's possible to select a variety of microphones and place the microphones in positions that don't sound optimum (just like in the physical realm), the presets provide excellent starting points for customizations and an easy way to quickly return to a great sound.

The factory presets have only one microphone pair enabled to ensure there are no undesirable phase interactions. Of course, more than one microphone pair can be used for sonic variety and/or to enable creative applications. See Phase Considerations for related information.

> ***Note:*** *Switching through presets is not instantaneous and sonic artifacts can occur while the presets are loading. See Load Time for related information.*

Operational Overviews

Overviews of important underlying concepts are presented below. For details about how to operate the specific controls, see Ocean Way Studios Controls.

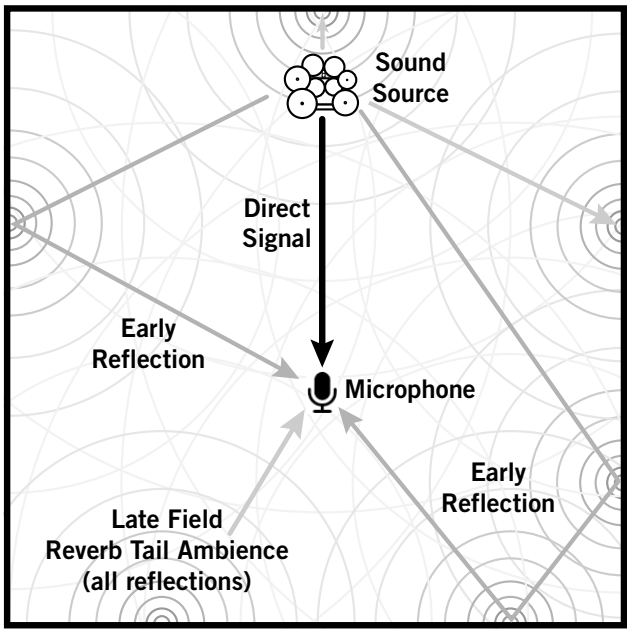
Modes Overview

Ocean Way Studios offers two modes of operation: Re-Mic and Reverb. These modes process signals in fundamentally different ways.

Recorded Sound Components

Whenever a sound source is recorded in a naturally reverberant space, there are three primary sound components (shown below) that are captured by the microphone:

1. The direct signal. This is the sound path that travels directly between the source and the microphone, without any reflected sounds from the walls, floor, ceiling, and objects.
2. The early reflections. These are the still-distinct individual reflections that are reflected off the walls, floor, ceiling, and objects before reaching the microphone.
3. The late field (aka reverb tail or ambience). This is the indistinct "wash" that decays over time, comprised of all reflections in the room. The tail is usually considered the main component of reverb.



The main signal components in an acoustically recorded sound

It's important to note that the recorded direct signal component (#1 on previous page) is different than pre-existing dry (unprocessed) acoustic recordings in a DAW. This is because within a DAW, the dry audio was already recorded - so it already contains the direct signal component (along with all the other components) that was captured by the microphone originally used. This distinction is fundamental to the Re-Mic process.

Re-Mic Processing

Re-Mic mode is a tool for "replacing" the original dry audio signal.

When Ocean Way Studios is in Re-Mic mode, the original dry signal is not mixed back in with the wet processed signal. Instead, the dry signal is processed to sound as if it were recorded inside the studio space itself, by emulating the direct signal component. This processed source signal thus inherits the sonic characteristics of the studio acoustics, source dispersion patterns, and microphones with more accuracy and realism than is possible with reverb processing.

The concept is similar to that of guitar "re-amping" whereby previously recorded guitar tracks are routed out of the DAW, into a guitar amplifier, then re-recorded using a microphone to replace the original guitar track with a new track that inherits the sonic characteristics of the amp. This technique is also used in studios to great effect by "re-micing" any pre-existing audio to inherit the sonic characteristics of the recording room.

In the same way, with Ocean Way Studios, any track or bus can be routed into the plug-in to "re-record" the original source so it inherits the sonic characteristics of the Ocean Way studio acoustics, source dispersion patterns, and microphones.

Reverb Processing

In artificial reverb processors, the direct signal component is not actually part of the processed signal. Instead, the original dry signal is simply mixed back in with the reverb ambience (the wet signal). Although great results can be obtained with this method, it is only an approximation of what really happens in the physical realm.

When Ocean Way Studios is in Reverb mode, the plug-in behaves like most artificial reverb processors. The direct signal component is not in the processed signal. Instead, the original dry signal is mixed back in with the wet reverb ambience.

For additional details about Reverb and Re-Mic modes, see Using Ocean Way Studios.

Microphones Overview

In addition to the studio room acoustics, the microphones used in the development of Ocean Way Studios are a significant contributor to the tonality and fidelity of the plug-in.

Microphone Selections

Ocean Way Studios contains 11 different microphone pairs. Additionally, some of these microphone pairs are available with cardioid and omnidirectional polar frequency response patterns. The microphones that are available, along with their descriptions, are listed in the table below.

Available microphones in Ocean Way Studios

Microphone	Description
C12	Allen's incredibly clear and present C12s, these large diaphragm tube condenser mics use a dual backplate design providing great off-axis frequency response.
C12A	The next-generation, multi-pattern tube condenser mic provides excellent close mic response and consistent low frequency response at further distances.
M50	Noted for its far distance placement consistency, the response of this medium diaphragm omnidirectional mic becomes more cardioid above 800 Hz. Allen Sides' favorite microphone.
KM54	The studio standard KM54 is a nickel capsule, medium diaphragm, pressure gradient cardioid condenser tube mic, providing maximum on-axis sensitivity.
MKH20	The secret weapon omni MKH20 provides rise in directionality at high frequencies. OWR B Far Strings, Horns and Vocal Group has Allen placing the MHK20s at the walls. Distance is unavailable when this mic is used for the OWR B Far selection.
U67	A multi-pattern dual diaphragm tube condenser mic with a distinct sonic signature. This "best of the best" set was picked by Allen from his collection.
U47	One of the most recognizable mics in recording, this multi-pattern tube condenser is prized for its amazing realism and clarity.
KU3A	Only about a hundred of these amazing cardioid ribbon mics were ever made, providing an "impressionistic" sound useful within a multi-pair setup.
44	The iconic American figure-8 ribbon velocity mic used for broadcast, studio, and live sound is noted for its strong off-axis rejection and smooth tone.
SM57	No mic locker is complete without this cardioid pattern, high rejection dynamic studio workhorse, which features a familiar bass roll-off and mid-range presence.
4006	A razor-flat small diaphragm omni reference grade mic found in OWR B's loft as a permanent installation. Distance is unavailable when this mic is used for Far selection.

*Microphone names are all trademarks of their respective owners, which are in no way associated or affiliated with Universal Audio or Ocean Way Recording. These microphone names, descriptions and images are provided for the sole purpose of identifying the specific microphones studied during Universal Audio's sound model development and to describe certain microphone sound qualities and performance characteristics. Ocean Way Studios is a trademark used under license by Ocean Way Recording Inc.

Polar Patterns

All microphone selections are denoted with O, C, or 8 after their name. Microphones with “O” after the name indicates the polar frequency response pattern of the mic is omnidirectional. Microphones with “C” after the name indicates the polar pattern of the mic is cardioid. Microphones with “8” after the name indicates the mic has a “figure 8” polar pattern.

In simplistic terms, omni microphones are equally sensitive to sound pressure levels from all directions, while cardioid microphones are more sensitive to sound from the front of the mic and less sensitive from the rear of the mic. Figure 8 microphones are equally sensitive at the front and rear of the mic, but less sensitive at the sides.

Near/Mid/Far

Up to three microphones pairs (Near, Mid, Far) are available. Each microphone pair can be active simultaneously for creative sonic blending.

Independent Controls

Each microphone pair has its own set of controls that can be independently adjusted. The individual microphone controls are Selection, Distance, High Cut Filter, Low Cut Filter, Polarity Invert, Mute, Balance, and Level. For details about how to operate these controls, see Mic Selection.

Generally speaking, the closer a microphone pair is to the source, the less room ambience is captured by the microphones, so a Far microphone pair will tend to have more ambience (more “live”) than a Near microphone pair.

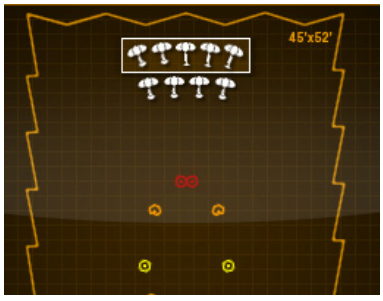
> ***Note:*** *Just as in the physical realm, there can be signal phase interactions when using more than one microphone simultaneously. For details, see Phase Considerations.*

Mic Positions

The microphone placement positions within the studio rooms are specified by Allen Sides based on his expertise of which microphone positions produce great results for a given studio and source. Although these pre-defined microphone positions cannot be moved from side-to-side, they can be moved closer or farther with the Distance control.

Distance

The distance from the microphone pair to the source can be dynamically adjusted using the Distance control. Just as when recording with microphones in the physical realm, the mic-to-source distance can have a significant impact on the sound that is captured.



The room will sound tighter and more present the closer the mics are to the source; conversely, the room gets "bigger" when the mics are farther away from the source. The Ocean Way Studios modeling includes the proximity gain that occurs in the physical realm; the signal can be notably louder as microphones are positioned closer to the source.

Stereo Separation

The separation between a stereo microphone pair varies depending on the microphone pair selected and its Distance setting. With most settings, the separation increases incrementally as the distance from the source increases.

Fixed Distance Microphones

When Studio is set to OWR B and Source is set to Strings, Horns, or Vocal Group, the 4006 and MKH20 selections for the Far microphone cannot be repositioned with the Distance control.

With the Far MKH20, this is a specialized setup whereby Mr. Sides chose to set the microphones near the walls for the best sound. With the Far 4006, this is because these mics are fixed installations in the studio loft (they cannot be adjusted in the real studio either).

Distance Delay (Aligned) Overview

When recording a sound source with a microphone, there is an inherent delay between the source and the microphone. This delay is the time it takes for the sound waves to physically travel from the source to the mic (see Recorded Sound Components). The farther the distance is from the source to the mic, the longer the delay time.

When a microphone pair in Ocean Way Studios is set to "aligned" by clicking its Distance knob, this inherent mic delay is artificially removed so the sound source "reaches" the mic instantaneously. The setting is useful when the source audio signals need to remain time-aligned, or simply for its own physically-impossible sonic effect.

Removing this inherent delay can be especially useful in these scenarios:

- If a source is recorded with a distant room mic, it will play back later in relation to sources that are close-miced. Typically, this delay can be compensated in the DAW by manually shifting the track forward in time so it aligns with the other instruments. With Ocean Way Studios, removing the microphone delay will align the distant mics automatically.
- When the microphone pair is distant from the source, the additional microphone delay can be problematic for performers tracking in realtime while monitoring through the plug-in. Setting the microphone pairs to aligned reduces realtime latency.

Tip: *The most realistic acoustic emulations are recreated when the distance delay is retained (aligned off). This is because the inherent source-to-mic delays provide subtle yet important auditory cues that our brains use to interpret the acoustic space.*

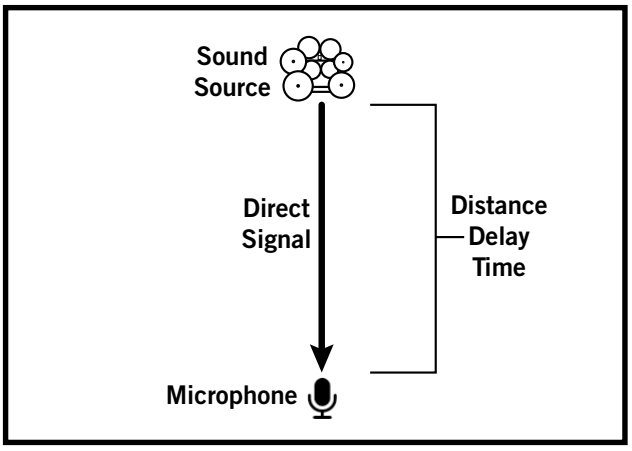
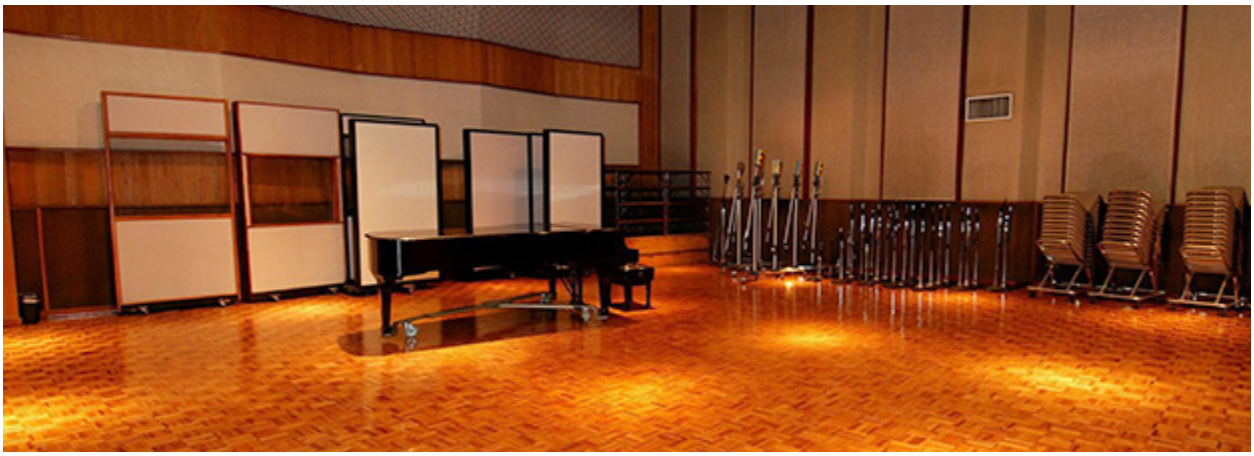


Illustration of Distance Delay. When set to aligned, this "extra time" is eliminated

Acoustic Balancing

All rooms have frequency-dependent resonances that impact the loudness and sonic balances within the room. Furthermore, microphone selections and their placement within the room, as well as the audio source itself, all impact the relative levels and timbres that are captured in a recording.

Although the studios at Ocean Way are beautifully designed and tuned, they are naturally subject to the same acoustic principles. Because the plug-in accurately models the ingredient interdependencies, certain combinations of studios, sources, mic selections, and mic placements may cause the level balances to seem too quiet or too loud, or the balance may not be perfectly centered. Microphone Gain and Balance controls are provided to compensate for these imbalances, providing ample practical and creative flexibility to achieve the desired results.



Using Ocean Way Studios

For details about how to operate the specific controls, see Ocean Way Studios Controls.

Best On Dry Sources

Ocean Way Studios does not remove already-recorded ambience from existing audio signals. For optimum ambience control when using the plug-in, the source audio should be as dry as possible. However, Ocean Way Studios is very forgiving, and great results can be obtained even if the original source has existing ambience.

> ***Tip:*** *Using ambience reduction tools prior to processing with Ocean Way Studios can yield improved results with particularly ambient audio.*

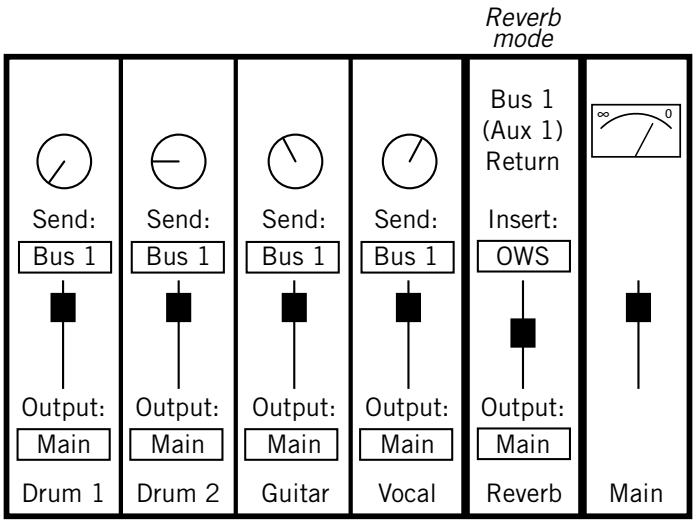
Which Mode?

When to use Reverb mode

Use Reverb mode to add Ocean Way Studios ambience to existing sources just as you would with other reverb processors and methodologies. See Reverb Processing for an overview of Reverb mode.

The illustration below shows a traditional auxiliary effect bus send/return configuration in a DAW. In this example, Ocean Way Studios is inserted on the effects bus, the plug-in is in Reverb mode, and its Wet Solo control is enabled (100% wet). Individual reverb amounts are set with the send control for each individual channel, and the overall reverb amount is set with the bus return fader.

> ***Tip:*** *This configuration conserves UAD DSP resources when the same effect settings are desired for multiple channels (instead of using the plug-in on individual channels).*



DAW signal routing in Reverb mode using a traditional effect send/return configuration

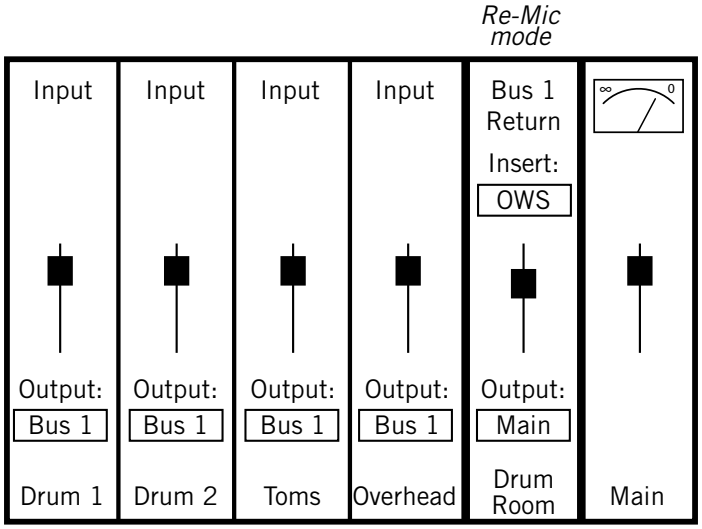
When to use Re-Mic Mode

Use Re-Mic mode to "replace" existing audio with new audio that inherits the sonic characteristics of Ocean Way Studios. The original dry signal component is removed and completely immersed with Ocean Way room sound. See Re-Mic Processing for an overview of Re-Mic mode.

The illustration below shows how to configure the Re-mic workflow in a DAW. In this example, all the drums are routed to a submix bus instead of the main outputs. Ocean Way Studios is inserted on the submix bus return, and the plug-in is in Re-Mic mode. Note that the effect sends are not used in this configuration.

In Re-Mic mode, the Dry/Wet (mix) control is automatically fixed at 100% wet so the original dry signal does not stack or "phase" against the modeled direct component signal. Instead of an effect bus return (or mix control), the desired ambience is adjusted with the studio, source, and microphone selections, along with microphone placements and their relative levels.

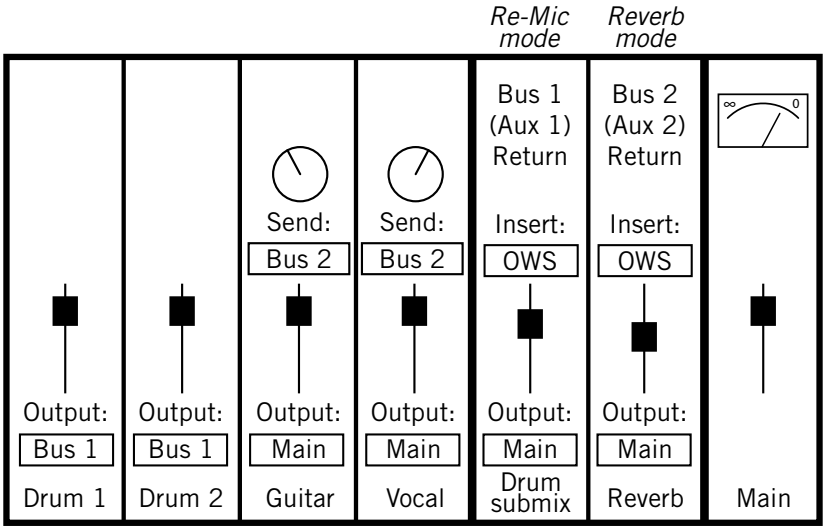
> ***Note:*** *Because Re-Mic mode includes the direct signal path component in addition to the reverb components, the plug-in output is inherently louder in Re-Mic mode.*



DAW signal routing with OWS in Re-Mic mode on a drum submix

Dual-Mode Example

The illustration below shows how to use both Re-Mic and Reverb modes with two instances of the plug-in, combining the workflows of the two previous examples. The illustration combines a drum submix being used for Re-Mic mode, while a send/return routing is being used for guitar and vocals in Reverb mode.



DAW signal routing in a workflow with two Ocean Way Studios plug-in instances. One uses Re-Mic mode for the drum submix, and the other uses Reverb mode for the guitar and vocals.

Phase Considerations

When recording in the physical world, it is possible for phase issues to manifest when more than one microphone is used on a source. The sonic characteristic of "phasing" (more accurately called comb filtering) results when frequencies that are being captured by more than one microphone are emphasized because they are summed (signals in phase) or de-emphasized because they are canceled (signals out of phase).

Phase issues resulting from the use of multiple microphones can usually be diminished by simply adjusting the placement position(s) of the microphone(s), or switching its signal polarity.

Phasing with Ocean Way Studios

Phasing is intrinsic when recording with multiple microphones. Because Ocean Way Studios accurately models the acoustic space and the microphones within the space, it is possible for the plug-in to sound "phasey" due to phase issues if the controls are not properly set, especially in Re-Mic mode (phasing is generally not an issue in Reverb mode).

Whenever more than one microphone pair is simultaneously enabled, careful attention should be paid to the Distance (position) and Polarity Invert parameters to avoid potential phase issues. Just as with moving microphones around and changing signal polarity when recording acoustically, changes to Distance and Polarity Invert can have a dramatic effect on the sound. Note that sometimes phasing can sound just fine, and can be useful for creative purposes.

Ocean Way Studios sounds amazing when set properly. If using more than one microphone and the plug-in doesn't seem to sound right, adjust the Distance and/or Polarity parameters on one (or more) of the microphones to taste until phasing is minimized.

Don't Include Original Dry Signal in Re-Mic Mode

Because Re-Mic mode includes the direct signal component, if the original dry signal is mixed with the processed signal when Ocean Way Studios is in Re-Mic mode, phasing is likely to occur in this configuration (for example, if the plug-in is in Re-Mic mode when used in a traditional effects bus send/return configuration). For illustrations of proper DAW routing in Re-Mic mode, see When to use Re-Mic Mode and Dual-Mode Example.

> ***Important:*** *For the intended design results and to minimize phasing when Ocean Way Studios is in Re-Mic mode, exercise caution to ensure the original dry signal is not mixed with Ocean Way Studio's processed output.*

Latency

Due to its unique design requirements, Ocean Way Studios is subject to increased latency versus other UAD plug-ins.

The increased latency may be objectionable when tracking through Ocean Way Studios if the plug-in is in Re-Mic mode and/or on individual inserts in Reverb mode. This impediment also applies with Apollo/Arrow when using the Console application for Realtime UAD Processing. The latency is typically not an issue when used in a typical effect send/return configuration in Reverb mode, nor during mixdown when latency is not a concern.

Therefore, when tracking live performances and the performer is monitoring through Ocean Way Studios, we generally recommend using it in Reverb mode using a typical effect send/return configuration where latency with time-based effects does not affect the monitored performance.

> ***Tip:*** *Latency can be reduced further with Distance Delay.*

The latency of Ocean Way Studios depends on the sample rate. The exact latency values are provided in the table below.

Latency in Ocean Way Studios

Sample Rate (kHz)	Latency (samples)	Latency (time)	Sample Rate (kHz)	Latency (samples)	Latency (time)
44.1	192	4.3 ms	96	688	7.1 ms
48	192	4.0 ms	176.4	1568	8.9 ms
88.1	688	7.8 ms	192	1568	8.2 ms

Note: *As with all UAD plug-ins, the latency of Ocean Way Studios is automatically compensated by the DAW.*

Load Time

When certain Ocean Way Studios controls are modified (items in the two left-most columns in Parameter Automation Recommendations, the impulse response engine is updated and/or microphone recalculations are performed by the plug-in.

These IR updates and recalculations are not instantaneous; there is a time lag before the new control values are heard. Additionally, sonic artifacts and/or host CPU increases can occur while these recalculations are performed if audio is currently being processed by the plug-in.

Because there are extensive interdependencies within the plug-in, the specific load time depends on the control(s) being modified, the current sample rate, and the DAW buffer size. The Load Progress LED is a status indicator that flashes during the reload.

Automation Limitations

The load time can be an impediment if the specific controls are modified with automation during a mix.

We recommend against changing specific controls with automation to avoid sonic artifacts and/or host CPU increases. If automation must be used on these controls, only snapshot automation should be used (instead of continuous automation), and only when the signal being processed is not audible (for example, between musical phrases). Parameter automation recommendations are listed in the table below.

Parameter Automation Recommendations

Not Recommended	May Cause Zippering Artifacts*	Continuous Automation OK
Studio: Select	Microphone: Distance	Mode (Re-Mic/Reverb)
Source: Select	Microphone: Delay	Master: EQ Low Frequency
Microphone: Select	Microphone: High Cut	Master: EQ Low Gain
	Microphone: Low Cut	Master: EQ High Frequency
	Microphone: Polarity	Master: EQ high Gain
	Microphone: Mute	Master: L/R Swap
	Microphone: Gain	Master: Mono Sum
	Microphone: Gain	Master: Wet Solo
	Master: Predelay	Master: Dry/Wet Mix
		Master: Output Level
		Master: Bypass
**Snapshot (static) automation between audio passages is recommended if automation is used*		

Ocean Way Studios Controls

Mode

Ocean Way Studios offers two modes of operation: Re-Mic and Reverb. Click a mode control to activate the mode. The button of the current mode is illuminated.

For details about the differences between these two modes, see Modes Overview.

Re-Mic

In Re-Mic mode, the dry signal path is eliminated and the audio is processed as if it was recorded inside Ocean Way Recording.

> ***Important:*** *For the intended design results and to minimize phasing when Ocean Way Studios is in Re-Mic mode, exercise caution to ensure the original dry signal is not mixed with Ocean Way Studio's processed output.*

Reverb

In Reverb mode, the plug-in behaves like most reverb plug-ins; the modeled direct signal component is not included. Due to inherent nature of the Ocean Way Studios design, changes to the microphone Distance and Gain settings are less audible in Reverb mode than Re-Mic mode.

Studio

Ocean Way Studios contains meticulous models of rooms A and B at Ocean Way Recording. Each room has unique sonic characteristics.

Interior photos of Room A (left) and Room B (right) at Ocean Way Recording

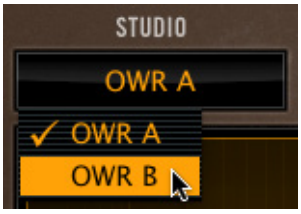
OWR A

Ocean Way Recording A is Ocean Way's most spacious studio (45' x 52'), suitable for four-piece bands to full orchestras. With a rich sound, exceptionally clear low end, and super smooth decay, OWR A is a study in classic studio design. Associated artists include John Mayer and Whitney Houston, to classics like Frank Sinatra and Count Basie.

OWR B

Ocean Way Recording B is M.T. "Bill" Putnam's crowning achievement in studio design. This flawless miniature concert hall (35' x 45') makes recordings bigger than life. The separate isolation room (18' x 45') is a second studio ideal for guitars, providing an amazing response for distance micing. Radiohead and Green Day to Ray Charles and Duke Ellington have all made Room B their home.

Studio Menu



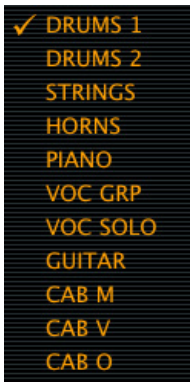
The Studio menu selects between the two recording rooms at Ocean Way Recording: OWR A and OWR B. To change the active studio, click the current studio name then select the desired room from the drop menu.

> ***Tip:*** *To change the studio room without altering the current microphone selections, press Shift on the computer keyboard while changing the studio selection.*

Studio Defaults

When the studio is changed, the default settings for mic selections and distances are loaded for the near, mid, and far microphones. This menu does not change the mic filter, polarity, mute, balance, or level settings.

Source



A variety of audio sources (dispersion patterns) were modeled for Ocean Way Studios. The Source menu sets the optimum placement of the source within the room, as determined by the expertise of Allen Sides.

Because an audio source's placement within a room determines the dispersion pattern of sound waves throughout the room, the active source can have a significant impact on the sound in the room.

> ***Note:*** *Although the source placements are optimized for the source in the title (drums, strings, etc), any type of audio source can be used with any Source selection. Experimentation is encouraged.*

Source Menu

To change the active source, click the current source name then select the desired source from the drop menu. The current source is displayed in the menu and as an icon in the Position display panel.

The modeled sources (dispersion patterns) that are available in Ocean Way Studios are shown at right. "Cab" is short for electric guitar amplifier speaker cabinet. The letter is a brand name indicator.

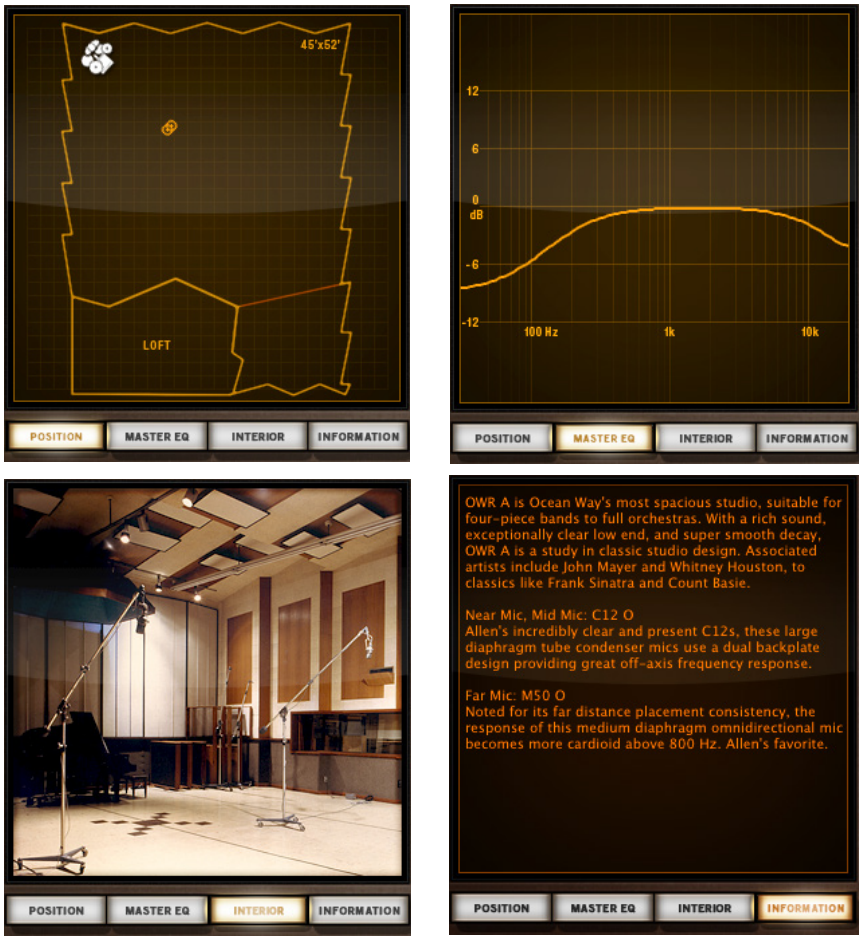
> ***Note:*** *Cab O is available as a source only when Room B is active.*

When the source is changed, the default source settings for mic selections and distances are loaded for the Near, Mid, and Far microphones. This menu does not change the microphone's Filter, Polarity, Mute, Balance, or Level settings.

Display Panels

The Display Panels show helpful information about the current state of the plug-in. The four available panels are shown below. Click the buttons beneath the Display Panels to choose one. The button of the currently active panel is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *The Display Panels are for informational purposes only. There are no parameter controls within any of the Display Panels, and the Panel selection controls cannot be automated.*



The Display Panels

Position

The Position panel shows an overhead representation of the current studio room. The relative positions of the source and active microphone(s) are displayed within the room.

The locations of the source and microphones within the room are determined by the Source and Distance parameters.

> ***Note:*** *Microphones that are muted are not shown in the Position Display Panel.*

Master EQ

The Master EQ panel displays the state of the Master EQ settings. When the Master EQ is disabled (or when both Master EQ Gain values are zero), the frequency spectrum is flat.

Interior

The Interior panel displays a photograph of the currently selected studio. This panel is a helpful static background when visual feedback is undesirable.

Information

This panel displays information about the currently selected studio and microphone(s). General information is displayed initially; when the studio or microphones are changed, text in the panel is updated with information about the selection.

Load Progress LED

The Load Progress LED is located between the Studio Menu and the Source Menu.

Load Progress LED

The Load Progress LED flashes when the plug-in is updating the impulse response, which is triggered whenever the Studio, Source, Mic Select, or Mic Filter controls are modified. The new control settings are not heard until the LED stops flashing. Sonic artifacts and/or host CPU increases may occur during IR updating. See Load Time for related information.

Note that studio and source changes take longer than microphone changes, because these changes update all three microphone pairs, while microphone changes update only one microphone pair.

Microphones

The Near, Mid, and Far microphone pairs each have their own set of controls. The control set for each mic is identical. See Microphones Overview for related information.

Mic Selection

The microphones used in the room are selected with this menu. To change the active microphone, click the current microphone name then select the desired mic from the drop menu, or click the microphone image to cycle through the available microphones.

> ***Tip:*** *To maintain the current Distance value for the selection when changing microphones, press Shift on the computer keyboard when making the mic selection.*

Not all microphones are available for all sources. For a list of available microphones and their descriptions, see Available microphones in Ocean Way Studios.

Distance

Distance varies the length between the microphone pair and the source. The available ranges and default values for Distance depend on the Studio and Source settings. Some microphones have fixed positions. See Fixed Distance Microphones for details.

> ***Note:*** *The colored rings around the encoders match the color of the microphone pair icons in the Position display panel for visual feedback.*

> ***Tip:*** *To return to the default value for the current microphone pair, click the DISTANCE text label.*

> ***Note:*** *Because these knobs are continuous "encoders" (they don't have end stops), mouse control is always linear even if controls mode is set to circular or relative circular.*

Distance Delay

When a Distance encoder is clicked, the colored ring around the encoder changes to black and "aligned" is displayed as the value. When microphone pairs are aligned, the sonic character of their placement in the room is maintained, but the time delay between the source and the microphone that occurs in the physical realm is eliminated. Click the encoder a second time to return to normal Distance mode.

For additional details about this feature, see Distance Delay (Aligned) Overview. For related information, see Latency.

Cut Filters

Independent High Cut and Low Cut filters can be enabled on each microphone. Click the switch to toggle the filter state. The filter is active when the switch is illuminated. The cutoff frequency and filter slope varies for each of the microphones, as shown in the table below.

High Cut Filter (6 dB/Octave)		Low Cut Filter (12 db/Octave)	
Near	10 kHz	Near	50 Hz
Mid	8 kHz	Mid	75 Hz
Far	6 kHz	Far	150 Hz

Microphone Cut Filter values

Polarity Invert

This switch inverts the polarity ("phase") of the microphone. The signal polarity is inverted when the switch is illuminated.

Polarity is especially useful when more than one microphone pair is enabled. See Phase Considerations for related information.

Mute

Mute turns off the microphone pair so it is no longer heard. Click the switch to toggle the mute state. When mute is active, the switch is illuminated, and the mic placement indicators are hidden from the Position Display.

> ***Tip:*** *To quickly solo any microphone pair, shift-click any Mute switch. When a Mute switch is shift-clicked, that mic is un-muted and the other mics are muted.*

Balance

Balance sets the position in the stereo panorama. When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is locked in the center position.

> ***Tip:*** *To quickly return to the center position, click the BALANCE text label.*

Gain

This fader controls the volume level of the microphone. Gain has a logarithmic taper for a more musical response. The gain range is off to +12 dB. Gain is at unity when set to the zero position.

> ***Tip:*** *To quickly return to the 0 dB (unity) position, click the associated NEAR/MID/FAR text label beneath the fader, or the associated "0" text label at the fader's unity gain position.*

Master Controls

Predelay

The amount of time between the dry signal and the onset of the reverb is controlled with this knob. The range is from 0 to 125 milliseconds. Predelay is cumulative with the inherent microphone delays.

> ***Note:*** *Predelay is unavailable in Re-Mic mode.*

Bypass

Bypass disables the plug-in. The button glows red when Ocean Way Studios is disabled. Bypass can be used to compare the processed and original signals.

> ***Note:*** *The UAD DSP load is not reduced when bypassed with this switch. To reduce UAD DSP usage when bypassed, use the host's bypass switch instead.*

L/R Swap

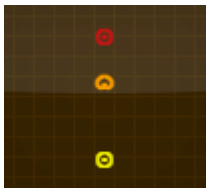
This switch reverses the left and right channels at the output of the plug-in. L/R Swap is useful for changing the listener perspective from the audience position to the performer position. When the switch is not illuminated (the default), output is from the audience position.

Mono

Ocean Way Studios can be used in a mono-in/mono-out, mono-in/stereo out, or stereo-in/stereo-out configuration. The left/right stereo outputs are summed to mono when the Mono switch is engaged. When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is always engaged and the left/right output channels are summed.

Mono Output

When the plug-in has monophonic output (when in a mono-out configuration or set to mono with the Mono switch), the microphone icon(s) in the Position panel shows a single icon for each active microphone, as shown at right. This is a convenient visual reminder that the plug-in output is monophonic.



Stereo Output

When the plug-in has stereo output, the microphone icon(s) in the Position panel shows dual icons representing the matched stereo set for each active microphone pair, as shown at right. Each microphone signal is routed to the left and right plug-in channel outputs respectively.

> ***Tip:*** *The color of the microphone icons matches the color of the ring around each Distance knob for visual feedback.*

Dry/Wet

When the plug-in is used in Reverb mode in a track insert (versus effect send/return) configuration, Dry/Wet determines the balance between the original dry signal and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry, unprocessed) to 100% (wet, processed signal only).

Dry/Wet is used to set the amount of ambience when the plug-in is used in a track insert (versus aux send/return) configuration.

Note: *If Wet Solo is enabled, this control is unavailable.*

Wet Solo

Wet Solo puts Ocean Way Studios into 100% wet mode. When Wet Solo is on, it is the equivalent of setting the Dry/Wet knob value to 100%.

Wet Solo defaults to On, which is optimal when using Ocean Way Studios in Reverb mode in the "traditional" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When Ocean Way Studios is used on a channel insert in Reverb mode, this control should be deactivated so the Dry/Wet mix can be adjusted.

Wet Solo is fixed in the enabled position in Re-Mic mode so the original dry signal cannot be mixed with the modeled direct signal component within the plug-in.

This control uses a logarithmic taper to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is in the 12 o'clock position, the value is approximately 15%.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control.*

Master Level

This fader controls the volume level at the output of the plug-in. It has a logarithmic taper for a more musical response. The gain range is from off to +12 dB. Gain is at unity when set to the zero position.

Tip: *To quickly return to the 0 dB (unity) position, click the MASTER text label beneath the fader, or the "0" text label at the fader's unity gain position.*

Master EQ

This group of parameters contains the controls for Ocean Way Studio's master equalizer. It is a two band (low and high) shelving EQ that uses analog-sounding algorithms for great tonal shaping options. The slope of both filters is 12 dB per octave.

The Master EQ section is independent from the reverb algorithms. A graph of the current curve is displayed in the Master EQ Display Panels.

> ***Tip:*** *To quickly return to the 0 dB position for either of the Master EQ Gain controls, click the GAIN text label above the knob.*

Master EQ In/Out

The Master EQ is enabled with this switch. The equalizer is active when the button is illuminated.

Low Shelf Frequency

This parameter specifies the low shelving band transition frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the low shelf Gain setting. The range is from 20 Hz to 2 kHz.

Because this is a shelving EQ, all frequencies below this setting will be effected by the low shelf Gain value.

Low Shelf Gain

This parameter determines the amount by which the transition frequency setting for the low band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±12 dB.

High Shelf Frequency

This parameter determines the high shelving band transition frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the high shelf Gain setting. The range is from 200 Hz to 20 kHz.

Because this is a shelving EQ, all frequencies above this setting will be affected by the high shelf Gain value.

High Shelf Gain

This parameter determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the high band is boosted or attenuated. The available range is ±12 dB.

The History of Ocean Way Recording

Ocean Way Recording in Hollywood California is the world's most awarded studio complex. Albums recorded at the studio have sold over 1 billion units. Generations of music icons, from Frank Sinatra, Nat King Cole, Ray Charles to The Rolling Stones, Eric Clapton, and Michael Jackson, all the way to contemporary artists like Green Day, Dr. Dre, Radiohead, Kanye West, and The Red Hot Chili Peppers, all choose Ocean Way for its phenomenal sounding rooms, customized equipment, impeccable electronic maintenance, and access to the music industry's most famous collection of vintage tube microphones.

In 1972, Allen Sides began building custom loudspeakers and leased a garage in Santa Monica, California as a hi-fi demo room. This garage was within steps of the Pacific Ocean and was situated on a street appropriately named - Ocean Way. Since he knew exactly what kinds of sounds were most impressive on his speakers, Sides did limited live to two-track recordings as demo material. During these demos, listeners became as interested in the recordings as the speakers and before long, they were asking Allen to make their recordings. In order to service those clients, Ocean Way Recording was born. Five Grammys and a thousand albums later Allen is still rolling.

Putnam moves to Los Angeles

In order to be a proper studio, Sides needed a recording console. This is where the story of Ocean Way truly begins; How Sides ended up purchasing Western Recorders' original tube console and came face to face with M.T. "Bill" Putnam. Putnam was a true renaissance man in the world of sound and music. His combined skills as a record producer, audio engineer, songwriter, singer, electrical engineer, inventor, studio owner and businessman are unparalleled to this day. Putnam owned and operated the largest independent recording facility in the country, Universal Recording in Chicago. But with a large chunk of his business moving west, clients like Frank Sinatra and Bing Crosby urged him to open a Los Angeles facility. Finally in 1957, Bill moved to 6050 Sunset Blvd. in Hollywood and started constructing brand new studios for his newly named studio enterprise, United Recording Corporation. The ultimate result was in 1961, when he purchased the neighboring Western Studio at 6000 Sunset, creating the United/ Western Recorders studio complex.

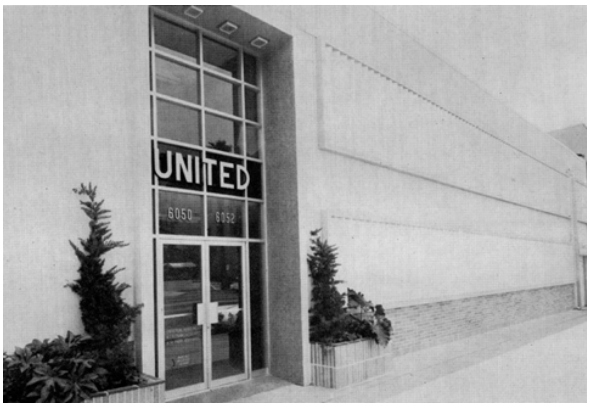
Get This Stuff Out of Here

So how was it that Allen Sides and Bill Putnam come together at this key moment? Sides explains, "I needed a console. I heard that Bill's factory manager Ray Combs needed to clear some space-much of it occupied by all the old tube equipment from United/ Western Studios". Allen was a runner at United/Western in the late 60's and knew everyone, but had never met Bill. "I knew Bill was out of town, so I went to Ray and said, `How about I give you $6,000 for all this junk including the trailer in the back with the old Western console in it.' He said, `I'll take it; get this stuff out of here.'"

"One man's junk is another man's treasure; and in this case, I was able to acquire some old Fairchild limiters, UA tube limiters, Macintosh tube amps, and enough equipment to completely fill my garage studio. It was the deal that really put me in business. However, there was a slight problem. I didn't actually have the 6 grand, so I wrote a check, picked up the stuff, and within six hours had sold enough gear to cover my check." When Putnam returned and found that his manager had been snookered into selling all this equipment for $6,000, he wanted to meet him. As Sides explains, "There was no way to ever anticipate what would take place. When I walked into Bill's office, he gave me a long, stern look. That look eventually turned into a smile, and he proceeded to offer me a partnership which involved buying out studios all over the United States. Bill and I just clicked immediately and we became very good friends and business partners in the following years."

By 1976, things were going well at the Ocean Way garage, with sessions around the clock. Bill was a frequent guest and loved listening to the tri-amplified front loaded theater horns in Allen's control room. Unfortunately, trying to keep a low profile while running a commercial studio in a quiet residential neighborhood proved to be much more tricky.

The Opportunity of a Lifetime



As fate would have it, a lease was about to expire for Studio B in the United building. When Sides approached his friend about leasing the studio, Bill offered him a "sweetheart deal" on the space. Sides quickly redesigned and rebuilt the Studio B control room, and moved all his equipment in. Studio B was an astounding acoustic space and Sides was thrilled. Bill felt that of all the rooms he had designed and built, this was his favorite and he was very pleased that his protégé would carry on the tradition.

Early sessions ranged from Neil Diamond, Chick Corea, Bette Midler, and all the way to Frank Zappa. In 1982 towards the end of his career, Bill also leased Studio A to Allen. Sides made a few control room changes, and Studio A immediately became one of the most popular rooms in town again. One of the first projects was Lionel Ritchie's "Can't Slow Down," which sold 25 million records and Michael Jackson's Thriller. Lionel and Michael became two of Allen's best long term clients. A couple years later, Bill sold United/Western to Allen, at which time United Recorders then became Ocean Way Recording. It was also during this time Sides began buying close to a thousand tube microphones from overseas: The European studios and broadcasters were dumping loads of "antiquated" tube mics for brand new phantom-powered transistor mics. He carefully went through every mic, picking the absolutely best of the best and selling off the rest. This is how, along with mics from previous studio buyouts with Putnam, Ocean Way amassed one of the largest collection of tube mics in the world.

A New Era

Now the Hollywood Studio has changed hands again after nearly 30 years. Neighboring Sunset/Gower Soundstage now has purchased the studios and equipment from Allen and entered into a licensing agreement to keep Ocean Way and its staff in place, acquiring the studios to form a "strategic alliance" between their 100-year-old film and TV studios and soundstages and the neighboring music recording studios, creating one unified production complex. Allen Sides continues to consult and work at the studios on all his recording projects.

The original control rooms and recording spaces have always stayed true to Putnam's designs, and those rooms will remain untouched under the new ownership - with top staff and equipment in place. According to Ocean Way's new day-to-day manager Robin Godchild, the studios are still very much available for commercial bookings, and clients can expect to see some improvements and additions in the coming months.

Ocean Way Recording is now captured as a tool developed by Universal Audio and Allen Sides. The Ocean Way Studios plug-in rewrites the book on what's possible with acoustic space emulation.

Oxide Tape Recorder

The Oxide Tape Recorder plug-in provides UA's revolutionary tape emulation technology in a simple, affordable package — with all of the essential features.

By harnessing the musical, mixable sound of tape, Oxide Tape Recorder plug-in imparts essential "sounds like a record" clarity, punch, and warmth to every track.

Now You Can:

- Easily inject the warm color and punchy low-end response of large format analog tape to your tracks
- Apply tape saturation and circuit overdrive via simple Input/Output controls
- Use presets designed by Engineer/Producer John Paterno guiding you to great sound
- Experience in-the-box recording "through" tape in real time using Apollo interfaces
- Load Oxide on 24 tracks with single UAD-2 QUAD DSP Accelerator
- Choose among 7.5 and 15 IPS Tape Speeds and various emphasis curves for colorful tape textures

Groundbreaking Tape Emulation Technology

The Oxide Tape Recorder plug-in was designed by the same team behind the industry-leading UAD Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Machine and Studer A800 Multichannel Tape Machine plug-ins. Designed in conjunction with AES magnetic recording expert Jay McKnight, Oxide gives your tracks and mixes the warmth, presence, and vibe of professional analog tape.

Easy to Use

Whether you're tracking in real time using an Apollo interface, or mixing in your DAW, Oxide's intuitive controls deliver musical results for beginners and pros alike. And when you purchase Oxide, you're eligible for a discount toward UA's deeper-featured Studer and Ampex Magnetic Tape Bundle that may be used at any time. By emulating fat tape compression and colorful circuit behaviors, Oxide gives your tracks and mixes a cohesive glue that only analog tape can.

Operational Overview

Oxide provides all of a magnetic tape recorder's desirable analog sweetness. As with magnetic tape, a clean sound, or just the right amount of harmonic saturation, can be dialed in using the Input and Output controls. Tape transport speeds of 7.5 and 15 IPS (Inches Per Second) are available, each having a distinct frequency shift, "head bump" (low frequency rise), and distortion characteristics. The EQ (emphasis) control allows selection between the American (NAB) and European (CCIR) standardized EQs, providing regional pre-emphasis/de-emphasis filtering at 7.5 and 15 IPS, each with its own sonic qualities. All options operate at a tape/fluxivity calibration level of +6 dB.

Oxide Tape Recorder interface

Two monitoring paths are available. Input provides the sound of the machine electronics only (without magnetic tape), while Repro provides complete sonics of the machine electronics with playback of the recorded tape signal. The NR (Noise Reduction) switch can be used to remove the not-always-desirable tape hiss and electronics hum which is inherent in analog tape systems, from the processed signal.

General Operation

The main point to understand about Oxide operation is that the Input control adjusts the signal level recorded to tape, and is therefore the primary color parameter. As with hardware tape recorders, lower VU levels result in a cleaner, warmer sound with more headroom, while increasing VU levels results in more tape saturation, compression, `and bite.

After adjusting the Input control to taste, the Output control can be adjusted to compensate for resulting level changes. For example, if Input is reduced for low VU levels, the Output control can be increased for unity gain with the original input signal.

All controls are interactive and it's normal for zeroed and/or reciprocal I/O gains to not always achieve perfect unity gain.

Using Oxide During Mixdown

The primary purpose of Oxide is to obtain multichannel tape sonics within the DAW environment. To obtain the classic cumulative "cohesive" multitrack tape sound on mixdown, the plug-in should be placed as the first insert on individual tracks, before other processing is applied.

Creative "non-standard" results can be obtained by placing Oxide in subsequent inserts after other processors, on sub-mix buses, or aux buses in a send/return configuration. Mixdown to a two-track tape recorder can be emulated by placing the plug-in on the stereo output bus.

If the mix is already begun, be sure to bypass all other plug-ins initially. You may find, for example, that far less compression and EQ is needed and the mix "glues together" more easily. Of course, Oxide can sound incredible on the mix bus as well.

Realtime UAD Processing with Apollo Inputs

To enable near-zero latency while recording or monitoring with Apollo through Oxide, simply assign the plug-in to the desired insert slot within Apollo's Console application. To replicate a traditional analog signal chain while recording on Apollo, first assign one of Apollo's Unison plug-ins (preamp or channel strip emulations such as UA 610-B) in the mic preamp channel's dedicated Unison insert, then place Oxide in the first standard insert slot in the channel. If the session was already recorded through Apollo with Oxide, the mix session may benefit from a "second pass" through Oxide as well.

Artist Presets

Oxide includes a bank of custom presets designed by engineer/producer John Paterno. These factory presets are provided as guides to help you achieve a great tape sound.

About Oxide Artist Preset Names

Each Oxide preset name includes two descriptors: Either Warm or Drive, plus a target VU value (+3VU, 0VU, etc). The preset names provide important guidance for achieving the desired sound.

The Warm presets are designed for a more pure analog tape sweetening, while the Drive presets are designed for a more saturated/compressed/colored tape sound.

The target VU value is the signal level to send into the recorder via the Input control, so the tape calibration levels are the same as the preset designer's levels.

How To Use Oxide Artist Presets

1. Select a sonic quality

Based on the sonic result you want to achieve, choose either a Warm preset or a Drive preset from the Oxide preset bank.

2. Adjust Input to target the preset's VU value

While the source signal is active in the plug-in (during input or playback), adjust Oxide's Input control so the signal peaks in the VU Meter reach the preset's target VU value in the preset name.

This step calibrates your input signals to the same reference levels as the preset designer, so the sonic results will be as intended. Without this adjustment, there would be no way to match how "hot" the recording levels are.

3. Adjust Output to taste

After adjusting Input, the processed signal may be quieter or louder than the original source signal. If desired, adjust the Output control to return to unity gain.

Oxide Tape Controls

Reels Animation

By default, the tape reels in Oxide are spinning. The reel animation can be stopped and started by clicking anywhere on either tape reel.

> ***Note:*** *Reel animation does not effect signal processing. The plug-in sound (if enabled) is still active when the reels are not spinning.*

VU Meter

The VU Meter (read-only) provides a visual representation of the signal levels after the virtual tape, but before the Output control. The Input control affects how "hot" the VU Meter signal is.

Higher VU levels typically indicate more harmonic saturation, coloration, and/or distortion. However, these characteristics depend on the other control values as well.

The plug-in operates at an internal level of -12 dBFS. Therefore a digital signal with a level of -12 dB below full scale digital (0 dBFS) at the plug-in input will equate to 0 dB on the plug-in meters.

Input Level

Input acts as an outside gain control (as with an external console fader), and adjusts the signal level going into the tape circuitry. The available range is -12 dB to +24 dB. The default value is 0 dB (unity gain).

As with real magnetic tape, lower Input levels will have a cleaner sound, while higher levels result in more harmonic saturation and coloration.

Higher (clockwise) Input levels will also increase the output level from the plug-in. The Output control can be lowered (counter clockwise) to compensate.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" control label text to return to the value to 0.*

Output Level

Output acts as an outside gain control (as with an external console fader) and adjusts the gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB. The default value is 0 dB (unity gain).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" control label text to return to the value to 0.*

Path Select

The Path Select buttons specify which of the two possible signal paths is active in Oxide. The mode is active when its button is lit.

Input

Input mode emulates the sound of the circuit through the machine electronics only, without tape sonics. This is the scenario when the machine is in live monitoring mode but the tape transport is not running.

Repro

Repro mode models the complete sound of the signal being recorded to tape through the record head and being played back through the reproduction head, plus all corresponding machine electronics.

IPS (Tape Speed)

The IPS (Inches Per Second) control determines the speed of the tape transport and the associated "head bump." Head bump is the bass frequency build-up that occurs with magnetic tape; the dominant frequencies shift according to transport speed. A faster tape speed results in a lower noise floor, greater fidelity, and flatter frequency response.

15 IPS

15 IPS is considered the favorite for rock and acoustic music due to its low frequency "head bump" and warmer sound.

7.5 IPS

7.5 IPS has a more colored experience, with even greater frequency shift versus the 15 IPS setting.

EQ (emphasis)

This switch determines the active emphasis EQ values and the frequency of the hum noise.

Tape Speed and emphasis EQ were originally practical controls for record duration versus noise and local standards. Historically, the origin of the tape machine (US or European) dictated the built-in EQ emphasis, but later machines had both circuits available.

NAB

When EQ is set to NAB, the hum noise frequency is 60 Hz (the United States standard). NAB (also referred to as IEC2) was the American standard with its own unique sound.

CCIR

When EQ set to CCIR (also known as IEC), the hum noise frequency is 50 Hz (the standard in Europe and other regions).

CCIR (also known as IEC) is the EQ pre-emphasis made famous on British records and is considered the technically superior EQ; many say this EQ was part of the "British Sound" during tape's heyday.

NR (Noise Reduction)

Magnetic tape recorders have tape hiss and hum noise. These noise elements, which are inherent in the analog machines, can be removed from the signal with this control.

While noise is historically considered a negative, and was the attribute that pushed the technical envelope for better machines and formulas, noise is still an ever-present component of the sound of using analog recorders with magnetic tape.

> ***Note:*** *The amount of tape hiss and hum noise that is present depends on other control settings.*

Power

The OFF position is a bypass control. OFF is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the UA logo to toggle the Power setting.*

When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, the VU Meter and control LEDs are dimmed, and DSP usage is reduced.

DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel application. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), selecting OFF will not reduce DSP usage.

Precision Buss Compressor

Original UA Design Dual-VCA-Type Dynamic Processor for Transparent Gain Reduction

The Precision Buss Compressor is a dual-VCA-type dynamic processor that yields modern, transparent gain reduction characteristics. It is specifically designed to "glue" mix elements together for that cohesive and polished sound typical of master section console compressors. A flexible and intuitive tool, the Precision Buss Compressor is intended primarily for controlling the final output of your mix, but can be usefully applied to a variety of sources from drum busses or overheads to vocal groups, or even as a channel compressor on individual track inserts.

The Precision Buss Compressor's control set features Threshold, Ratio, Attack and Release, with all parameters specifically tailored to buss compressor usage. The Release control includes a multi-stage Auto Release also designed for a wide variety of program material. Input and Output Gain control is offered with metering for input, output and gain reduction. A high pass Filter is offered for the internal control signal sidechain to reduce the sensitivity of the compression to lower frequencies while retaining them in the output signal. An automatic Fade feature is included, which allows the user to set a custom fade-out or fade-in of the mix between 1 and 60 seconds long. Rounding out the feature set is a Mix control that allows the user to achieve "parallel" style dynamics control, without the need for a second buss or channel.

Precision Buss Compressor interface

Precision Buss Compressor Controls

Control knobs for the Precision Buss Compressor behave the same way as with all UAD plug-ins. Parameters with text values can be modified with text entry.

Filter

Filter regulates the cutoff frequency of the filter on the compressor's control signal sidechain. Removing low-frequency content from the sidechain can reduce excessive gain reduction and/or "pumping" on bass-heavy audio signals without reducing bass content of the audio signal itself.

The filter is an 18 dB per octave, coincident-pole high-pass filter. The available range is 20 Hz-500 Hz and Off.

> ***Note:*** *The Filter parameter affects the control signal (sidechain) of the compressor only. It does not filter the audio signal.*

Threshold

This parameter determines the threshold level for the onset of compression. Incoming signals that exceed this level are compressed. Signals below the level are unaffected.

The available threshold range depends on ratio setting. At higher Ratio values, more headroom is available. Since the plug-in is designed primarily as a buss compressor, where signal levels typically run hotter than individual tracks, this feature increases the control resolution for fine-tuning these higher levels.

When Ratio is changed, the Threshold value is updated accordingly:

- When Ratio is set to 2:1, the Threshold range is -55 dB to 0 dB.
- When Ratio is set to 4:1, the Threshold range is -45 dB to +10 dB.
- When Ratio is set to 10:1, the Threshold range is -40 dB to +15 dB.

> ***Note:*** *When Ratio is changed, Threshold numerical values are updated but the Threshold knob position does not move.*

As the Threshold control is decreased and more compression occurs, output level is typically reduced. Adjust the Gain control to modify the output to compensate if desired.

Ratio

Ratio determines the amount of gain reduction for the compressor. For example, a 2:1 ratio reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB.

The available Ratio values are 2:1 (default), 4:1, and 10:1.

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches the Threshold level before compression is applied. The faster the Attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold.

The Attack range is from 0.10 milliseconds to 32 milliseconds. The availability of relatively slow attack times (as compared to other compressors) is one factor that can provide the in-your-face-pumping quality that is so popular with large console VCA-style compressors.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for compression to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level.

The available range is from 0.10 seconds to 1.20 seconds, with Automatic release available at the full-clockwise position.

The Auto release characteristic for Precision Buss Compressor has a unique quality that is optimized for program material.

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if you set too large of a Release time, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to lengthy sections of audio with lower signals.

Fade

The Precision Buss Compressor provides a Fade function that, upon activation, automatically reduces the plug-in output to minimum within a specified time period. This function enables extremely smooth-sounding fade outs (and fade ins), plus it can be automated as well. The Fade function processes the signal at the output of the compressor.

Fade Set

Fade Set determines the amount of time that will pass between the Fade button being activated and the plug-in output level being reduced to minimum (or being raised to 0 dB in the case of a fade in). The available range is from 1.0 second to 60 seconds.

Fade times immediately reflect the current Fade Set value. Therefore a fade out that has already been initiated can be accelerated by changing Fade Set during the fade out. Conversely, a fade in can be accelerated by changing Fade Set during the fade in.

Note that although the Fade Set control itself has linear taper, the fade signal level that is output has an exponential curve.

Fade Switch

Activating the Fade switch initiates a fade out. The fade out time is determined by the Fade Set parameter.

The Fade switch flashes red when a fade out is in progress, and glows solid red when the fade out is complete (when the Fade Set time has elapsed).

Deactivating Fade initiates a fade in. During a fade in, the signal level is increased from the current level of attenuation to 0 dB of attenuation. The Fade switch flashes blue when a fade in is in progress, and is no longer illuminated when the fade in is complete (when the Fade Set time has elapsed).

Toggling the Fade switch causes an already active fade to reverse direction, without a jump in output level. The Fade Set rate is constant even if an active fade is interrupted. For example: If the Fade Set value is 30 seconds and a fade out is initiated, then Fade is clicked again after 20 seconds, it will take 20 seconds to fade back in.

> ***Note:*** *Shift+click the Fade button to instantly return the level back to 0 dB (this feature cannot be automated).*

Input Level

Input controls the signal level that is input to the plug-in. Increasing the input may result in more compression, depending on the values of the Threshold and Ratio parameters.

The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB.

Mix

The Mix control determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry unprocessed signal only) to 100% (wet processed signal only).

The default value is 100%.

Output Level

Output controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB.

Output controls both the dry unprocessed and wet processed signals (as determined by the Mix control).

Generally speaking, adjust the Output control after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Threshold and Ratio controls. Output does not affect the amount of compression.

Level Meters

The stereo peak/hold Input and Output Meters display the signal level at the input and output of the plug-in.

The range is from -30 dB to 0 dB. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

Gain Reduction Meter

The Gain Reduction meter displays the amount of gain reduction occurring within the compressor. More blue bars moving to the left indicate more gain reduction is occurring.

The meter range is from -16 dB to 0 dB. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. Click the toggle button or the UA logo to change the state.

When the Power switch is in the Off position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). When the plug-in is bypassed with this switch (but not by the host bypass), the I/O meters and the Input Level knob remain active.

Precision Channel Strip

Five-Band Equalizer and Dynamics

Precision Channel Strip is a modern, five-band EQ module combined with a clean compressor/limiter module for flexible dynamics processing.

The Precision Channel Strip's EQ section offers up to five bands of powerful tone shaping, with filter switching among cut, shelf, and fully parametric EQ. Each band is capable of frequency overlap with a full 20 Hz to 20 kHz range, and the EQ can be easily routed before or after the dynamics section, giving you more sonic flexibility.

A versatile and easy to use design, Precision Channel Strip's dynamics section offers a continuously adjustable ratio with a broad range of attack and release options from slow and transparent, to snappy, over-the-top smack and aggression. Use the Auto Gain feature for quick, on-the-fly adjustments, or bypass it for fine-tuned manual control of your sources.

Features

- Musical and flexible EQ with lattice filter design
- Five overlapping bands with cut, peak, or shelf filtering
- Natural-to-aggressive dynamics control — from soft compression to hard limiting
- Optional dynamics auto-makeup gain and dynamics/EQ routing swap

Precision Mix Rack Collection

Precision Channel Strip is part of the Precision Mix Rack Collection, which provides modern, high-quality production tools for tracking and mixing. The Precision Mix Rack Collection includes the following UAD plug-ins:

- Precision Channel Strip
  Five-band EQ plus dynamics processing
- Precision Delay Mod
  High fidelity stereo delay processor with modulation
- Precision Delay Mod Long
  Same as Precision Delay Mod with longer delay times
- Precision Reflection Engine
  Small room ambience simulator

Operational Overview

The Precision Channel Strip is comprised of EQ, Dynamics, and Output sections, as illustrated below.

Equalizer

The equalizer module is designed for a clean, high-fidelity sound. The EQ is comprised of five fully-parametric lattice filter bands, each with its own set of controls. All bands have a full 20 Hz to 20 kHz frequency range so they can be overlapped for complex response curves. The first two bands can function as a low-shelf or high-pass filter. Similarly, the last two bands can function as either a high-shelf or low-pass filter.

Dynamics

The dynamics section offers high fidelity compression and limiting with continuous controls and a peak/hold gain reduction meter. The algorithm has a unique minimum distortion design that smooths the attack-to-release transition, minimizing compression artifacts.

Continuously adjustable compression ratios from 1:1 to Infinity:1 are available, with a broad range of attack and release times. Automatic makeup gain can be enabled or disabled.

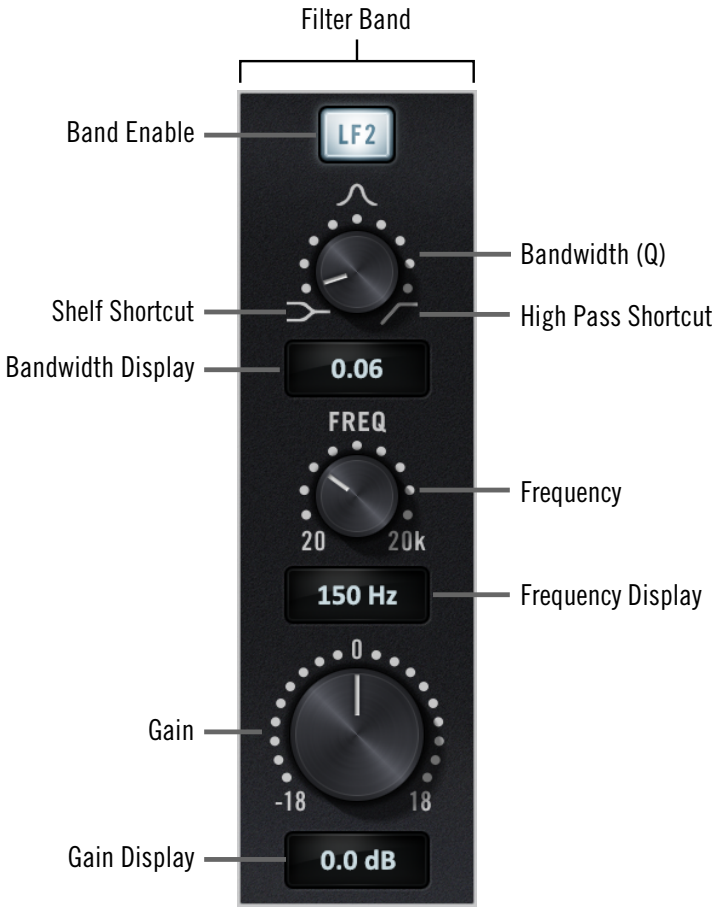
The equalizer module is normally routed into the dynamics module, but this routing can be optionally reversed to place the dynamics processor before the EQ.

Output

Separate gain controls are available for the equalizer and dynamics modules. Accurate peak/hold stereo meters can be switched to display plug-in input or output levels.

Equalizer Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Band Enable

Each of the five individual filter bands can be individually enabled or disabled with these buttons. A filter band is enabled when its button is lit. When disabled, the band's value displays are dimmed. By default, all bands are enabled.

Bandwidth (Q)

These continuous knobs determine the proportion of frequencies surrounding the center frequency to be affected by band. Higher values generate narrower/sharper bands; lower values generate broader/wider bands. The available range is 0.03 - 32 for all five bands.

LF1, LF2

In both low frequency bands (LF1 and LF2), when Bandwidth is set to its minimum value, the band becomes a low-shelf filter. When set to its maximum value, the band becomes a high-pass filter.

Tip: *Click the filter or shelf symbols to quickly select the function.*

Note: *When set to HI PASS, the band's Gain control is disabled.*

HF1, HF2

In both high frequency bands (HF1 and HF2), when Bandwidth is set to its minimum value, the band becomes a high-shelf filter. When set to its maximum value, the band becomes a low-pass filter.

Note: *When set to LO PASS, the band's Gain control is disabled.*

Frequency

These continuous knobs define each band's center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band's Gain setting. The available range is 20 Hz to 20 kHz for all bands.

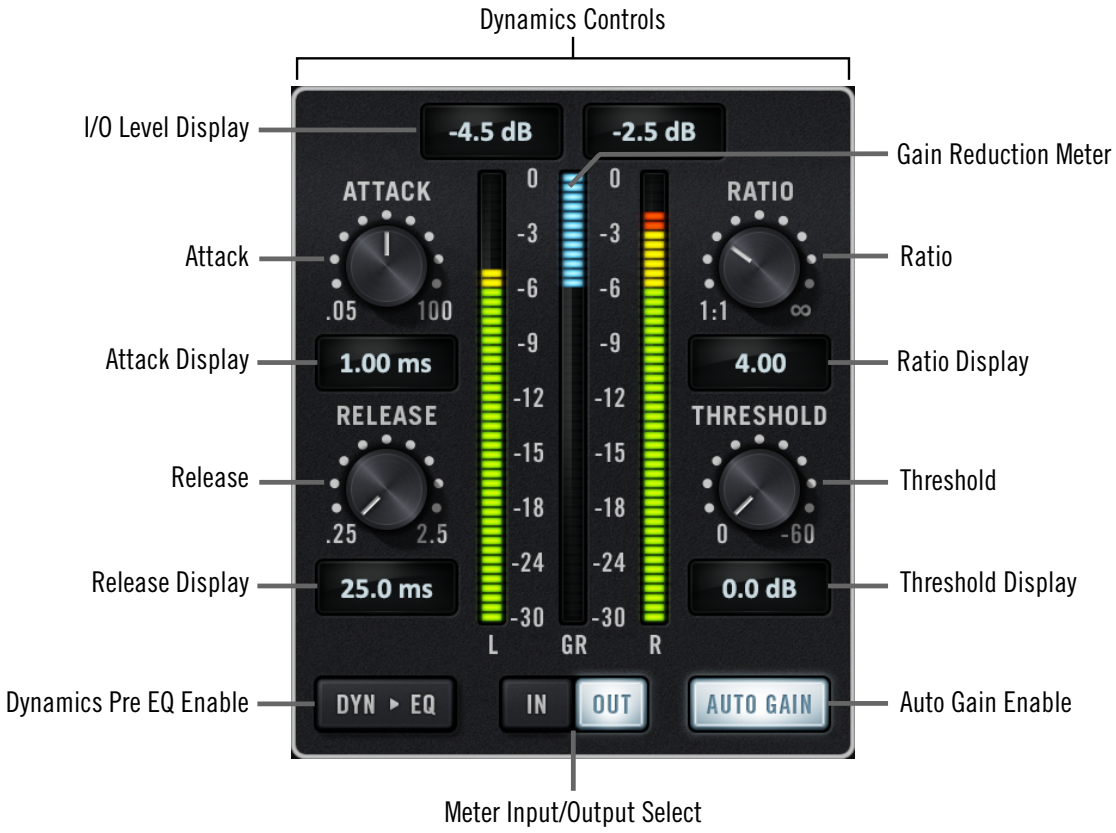
Gain

The Gain control determines the amount by which the frequency setting is boosted or attenuated for the band. The available range is ±18 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to quickly set the value to 0 dB.*

Dynamics Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse, after the input signal reaches the Threshold level, before compression will occur.

The minimum available attack time is sample rate dependent. At sample rates of 44.1 kHz and 48 kHz, the minimum attack time is 0.05 milliseconds. At 88.2 kHz and 96 kHz, the minimum attack is 0.03 milliseconds. At 176.4 kHz and 196 kHz, the minimum attack is 0.02 milliseconds. The maximum available attack time is 100 milliseconds at all sample rates.

The faster the attack time, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the Threshold. Slower attack times allow signal attack transients to pass through without compression, which can facilitate a more “punchy” sound.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for compression to cease once the input signal drops below the Threshold level. The available range is 25 milliseconds to 2500 milliseconds (2.5 seconds).

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if the release setting is too long, compression for audio sections with loud signals may extend to audio sections with lower signals.

Ratio

Ratio determines the amount of gain reduction applied by the dynamics processor. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB.

A value of 1 yields no compression. Values beyond 10 yield a limiting effect. The range is 1 to infinity (INF).

Threshold

Sets the threshold level for dynamics processing. Any signals that exceed this level are compressed. Signals below the level are unaffected. A Threshold of 0 dB yields no compression. The range is 0 dB to -60 dB.

> ***Note:*** *As with many analog compressors, gain reduction can be triggered even if Threshold is set to 0 dB.*

Auto Gain

Auto Gain is enabled when the button is lit. The default state is enabled.

As Threshold is increased and more compression occurs, the output level is inherently reduced by the gain reduction process. Auto Gain automatically compensates for this level reduction by reciprocally increasing the output gain as the compressor's output level is reduced.

Dynamics Pre EQ

By default, the input signal is routed into the EQ module, and the output of the EQ is routed into the dynamics module.

By enabling Dynamics Pre EQ, this signal routing is swapped. When the "DYN > EQ" button is lit, the input signal is routed into the dynamics module, and the output of the compressor is routed into the EQ module.

Gain Reduction Meter

The single Gain Reduction Meter (labeled “GR”) is located between the main left/right stereo I/O meters. This peak/hold meter displays (in blue) the amount of gain reduction occurring in the dynamics module. Maximum GR peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

I/O Meters

The stereo peak/hold meters (labeled L and R, respectively) display the signal level at the input or output of the plug-in, depending on the Meter Input/Output buttons.

The meter range is from -30 dB to 0 dBFS. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

> ***Note:*** *The I/O meters remain active even if either or both the EQ and dynamics modules are disabled (all meters are inactive when the plug-in is disabled).*

Meter Input/Output

These buttons determine whether the stereo I/O Meters display plug-in input levels or output levels. The IN or OUT button is lit when the meters are displaying input or output levels respectively.

Output Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.

EQ Enable

This button globally enables/disables the entire EQ module. The module is enabled when the EQ button is lit. When disabled, all EQ bands are dimmed. The EQ module is enabled by default.

EQ Enable is convenient for comparing levels of the original and equalized signals.

> ***Note:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the EQ module is disabled (if DSP LoadLock is not active).*

EQ Level

This knob adjusts the output level of the EQ module. The available range is -25 dB to +15 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click "0" to quickly set the value to 0 dB.*

Dynamics Enable

This button globally enables/disables the entire dynamics module. The module is enabled when the DYNAMICS button is lit. When disabled, all dynamics parameters and display fields are dimmed. The dynamics module is enabled by default.

Dynamics Enable is convenient for comparing levels of the original and compressed signals.

> ***Note:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the dynamics module is disabled (if DSP LoadLock is not active).*

Dynamics Level

This knob adjusts the output level of the dynamics module. The available range is -25 dB to +15 dB.

> ***Note:*** *Click "0" to quickly set the value to 0 dB.*

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, all parameter and meter values are no longer visible, and the UA logo is dimmed.

> ***Tip:*** *Power can also be toggled by clicking the UA diamond logo.*

If DSP LoadLock is disabled, UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the plug-in is bypassed. The DSP LoadLock setting is in the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.

Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. Unlike the host application's plug-in disable switch, which can cause audio artifacts, the Power switch offers glitch-free bypass.

EX-1 Migration

As of UAD v8.2, Precision Channel Strip replaces the original EX-1 plug-in. When a session containing EX-1 is opened in UAD v8.2 and later, EX-1 plug-in instances, settings, and presets are automatically migrated to the newer Precision Channel Strip.

For additional information about how EX-1 migration is handled, see Migrating Prior Sessions in the CS-1 chapter.

Precision De-Esser

Specialized Tool for Transparent Compression of the Sibilant Range

The Precision De-Esser seamlessly and accurately removes sibilance from individual audio tracks or even composite mixes via its intuitive interface and sophisticated yet transparent filter processing.

The Threshold knob dials in the amount of sibilance reduction, while the two-position "Speed" button gives control over the envelope (attack and release) of the detector. The Frequency knob sweeps a continuous target frequency range from 2-16 kHz, allowing repairs on a large range of voices (or even overheads and hi-hats), while the Solo button allows the user to isolate and monitor the target sibilant frequencies. The Width control offers a variable 1/6 to 1 2/3 octave bandpass filter that is perfect for complex program material, adapting technology from the TEC-nominated Precision Multiband. The Width control also switches into a more traditional highpass filter more commonly employed when tailoring individual voices. For even greater transparency, the Split feature gives the user the option to compress only the sibilant range, or may be turned off to compress the entire spectrum for more traditional de-essing.

Precision De-Esser interface

Precision De-Esser Controls

Control knobs for the Precision De-Esser behave the same way as all UAD plug-ins. Threshold, Frequency, and Width values can be modified with text entry.

Threshold

Threshold controls the amount of de-essing by defining the signal level at which the processor is activated. Rotate Threshold counter-clockwise for more de-essing.

Signals peaks as determined by Frequency and Width that exceed the Threshold level are compressed by a ratio of 7:1.

The available range is -40 dB to 0 dB.

Speed

Speed determines the response of the sibilance detector. Fast mode will usually make sibilance reduction more obvious. In Slow mode the effect is usually more subtle but can produce a more natural-sounding result. The actual times of the two modes are as follows:

- Fast: Attack = 0.5ms, Release = 30ms.
- Slow: Attack = 2.0ms, Release = 120ms.

Click the Speed button to change the mode. Alternately, you can click+hold the LED area and drag like a slider to change the value.

Frequency

This control defines the center frequency of the de-esser when in bandpass mode, or the cutoff frequency of the de-esser when in highpass mode. For bandpass use, the value is set to the center of the undesirable frequency range that is to be reduced. For highpass use, the value is set below the frequency range that is to be reduced. Used in conjunction with the Width control, a broad range of de-essing is possible.

The available range is 2 kHz - 16 kHz.

Solo

The Solo button isolates the de-essing sidechain (the signal defined by the Frequency and Width controls). Solo makes it easier to hear the problem frequencies to be attenuated.

Click the button to active Solo mode. The button is red when Solo is active.

> ***Note:*** *When Solo is active, changes to the Threshold and Split controls cannot be heard.*

Width

Width controls the bandwidth of the de-essing sidechain when in bandpass mode. Bandpass mode is active when the control is in any position except fully clockwise.

Smaller values have a narrower bandwidth, causing a tighter, more focused de-essing effect. Higher values have wider bandwidth, for de-essing when undesirable frequency ranges are broader.

When Width is rotated fully clockwise, High Pass mode is activated. In High Pass mode, Frequency defines the cutoff frequency of the high pass filter (instead of the center frequency of the bandpass filter). High Pass mode is useful when you want to attenuate all frequencies above the cutoff frequency.

The available range is 0.15 (about 1/6 octave) to 1.61 (about 1 2/3 octaves), plus High Pass mode.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP usage is slightly decreased when Precision De-Esser is in High Pass mode versus bandpass mode (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).*

Split

Split determines if attenuation (compression) is applied to the sidechain signal only, or to the entire audio signal.

In normal use Split should be enabled, causing only the “ess” spectrum as defined by Frequency and Width (i.e., the sidechain), to be attenuated. This provides the most precise de-essing control.

Split can be disabled, which causes the entire input signal to be attenuated (instead of just the “ess” sidechain) which results in more traditional compression. However, the sidechain still controls attenuation when Split is off.

Click the Split button to change the mode. Alternately, you can click+hold the LED area and drag like a slider to change the value.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP usage is slightly decreased when Split is disabled (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).*

Gain Reduction

The Gain Reduction meter provides a visual indication of how much attenuation (compression) is occurring. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

When Split is on, the amount of sidechain attenuation is displayed. When Split is off, it displays the attenuation of the entire signal.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal or bypassing the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Toggle the switch to change the Power state; the UA logo is illuminated in blue when the plug-in is active.

> ***Note:*** *You can click-hold the power switch then drag it like a slider to quickly compare the enabled/disabled state.*

Operating Tips

- For taming sibilance for a full mix/mastering, best results will usually be obtained by enabling Highpass and Split modes.
- Generally, female “ess” and “shh” sounds vary more in frequency than those of males. Due to this situation, you may find that using the sidechain filter in High-pass mode (or Bandpass mode with a large width) may be more responsive.
- Over de-essing can degrade the natural sound of a vocal.

Precision Delay Modulation

Flexible Stereo Delay with Modulation

Precision Delay Modulation is a high fidelity stereo delay processor with modulation capabilities. With five modes available for chorus, flanger, and three distinct delay types, Precision Delay Mod and Delay Mod L (Long) provide a huge palette of creative movement and shimmer for any source that needs some added excitement.

Features

- Dual delay processors with five operating modes
- Six LFO modulation options
- Tempo synchronization for delay times and modulation rates
- Precision Delay Mod L — long version for extended delay times

Precision Mix Rack Collection

Precision Delay Modulation is part of the Precision Mix Rack Collection, which provides modern, high-quality production tools for tracking and mixing. The Precision Mix Rack Collection includes the following UAD plug-ins:

- Precision Channel Strip
  Five-band EQ plus dynamics processing
- Precision Delay Mod
  High fidelity stereo delay processor with modulation
- Precision Delay Mod Long
  Same as Precision Delay Mod with longer delay times
- Precision Reflection Engine
  Small room ambience simulator

Precision Delay Modulation interface

Operational Overview

Precision Delay Modulation Plug-Ins

Precision Delay Mod and Precision Delay Mod L (Long) are two separate plug-ins. However, they have the exact same control set and are operated identically.

The only difference between the two plug-ins is Precision Delay Mod L has longer available delay times for extended echo effects. These longer delay times require more UAD-2 memory resources. Precision Delay Mod L may be used when delay times longer than one second are desired.

> ***Note:*** *All control references in this chapter refer to both the Precision Delay Mod and Precision Delay Mod Long plug-ins unless specifically noted otherwise.*

The Precision Delay Modulation controls layout is illustrated below.

Delay Topology

Precision Delay Mod has two delay processors, labeled A and B. These delay lines are configured as five distinct modes: Dual, Crossover, Ping Pong, Chorus, and Flanger.

Each delay line has independent delay times, and available delay time ranges depend on the active mode. The single set of filter (high-pass/low-pass) and recirculation (feedback) controls are shared by both delays. Delay times can be synchronized to the tempo of the host application.

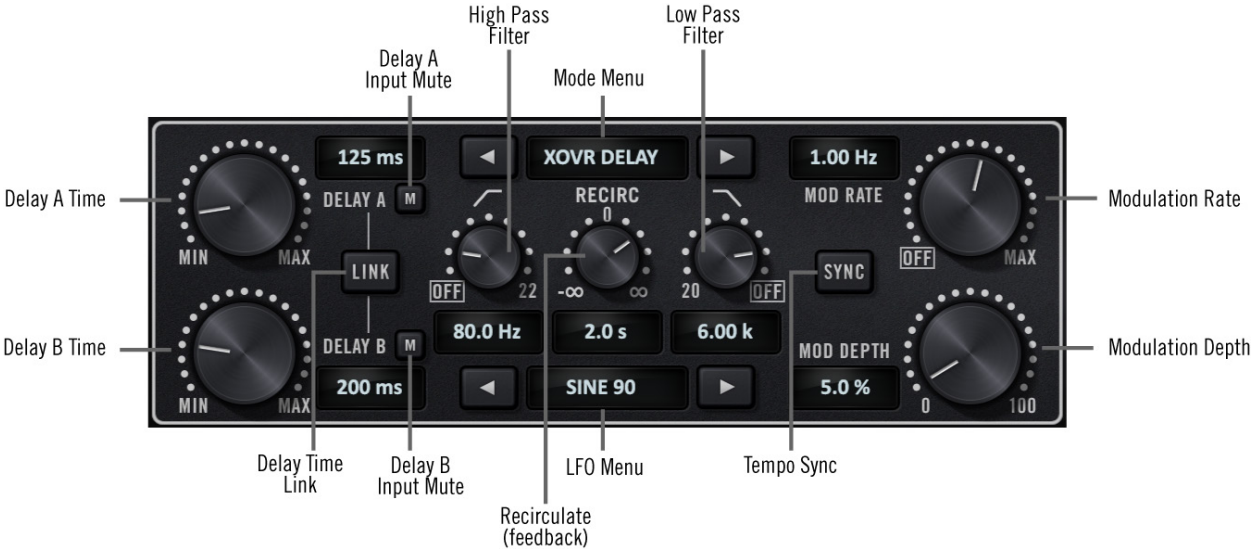
When used in a stereo-out configuration, the output of delays A and B can be independently panned in the stereo field. When used in a mono-out configuration, delays A and B have independent output level controls.

Modulation Topology

Each delay line has an LFO (low frequency oscillator) for modulating its delay time. The single set of modulation controls are shared by both delay lines. Sine and triangle LFO waveshapes are available, and the phase offset between the two LFOs can be changed for a variety of modulation effects. Modulation times can be synchronized to the tempo the host application.

Precision Delay Modulation Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.



Mode

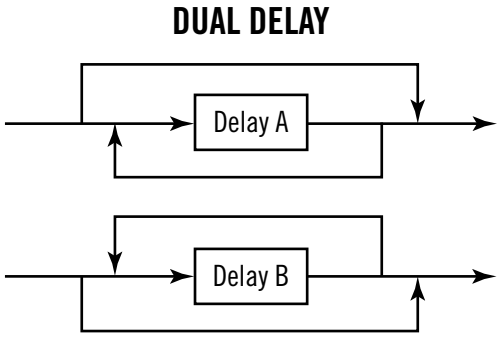
Mode defines the underlying topology of the plug-in and available delay time ranges. The mode can be changed using either of these methods:

- Click the selection arrows on each side of the mode display, or
- Click the mode display and choose a mode from the drop menu.

Five modes are available; each is described below.

Dual Delay

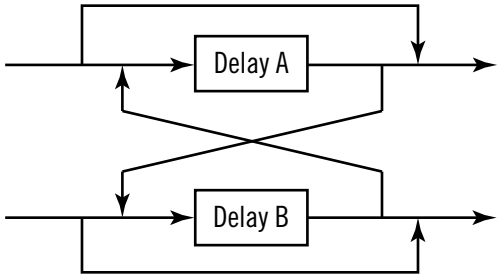
In DUAL DELAY mode, the recirculated signal is routed from the output of the delay line to the input of the same delay line.



Crossover (XOVR) Delay

In XOVR DELAY mode, the recirculated signal is routed from the output of the delay line to the input of the opposite delay line.

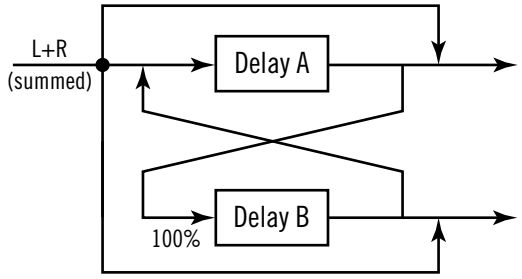
XOVR DELAY



Ping Pong Delay

In PING PONG mode, the input is routed to Delay A only, and the output of Delay A is routed to the input of Delay B. Recirculate adjusts the feedback level from Delay B into Delay A.

PING PONG



Chorus

Chorus has the same topology as Dual Delay, with short delay time ranges that are more suitable for the chorus effect.

Flanger

Flanger has the same topology as Dual Delay, with very short delay time ranges that are suitable for the flanging effect.

Mute A, B

These buttons mute the signal at the input to the delay line. The delay's input is muted when its "M" button is lit.

By muting one or both delay inputs (either manually or via automation), creative effects can be "triggered" to apply only to specific musical or percussive passages.

Delay A, B

This control sets the delay time for the processor. Delay lines A and B can each have unique values.

The minimum available delay value is 0.14 milliseconds. The maximum available delay value depends on the plug-in and its current Mode. Maximum delay values for all modes and both plug-ins are in the table below.

> ***Note:*** *When switching Modes, if the new mode has a shorter maximum delay time than the current Delay value, the prior Delay value is lost.*

Maximum Available Delay Times

Mode	Precision Delay Mod	Precision Delay Mod L
Dual Delay	1 second	3 seconds
Crossover Delay	1 second	3 seconds
Ping Pong	1 second	3 seconds
Chorus	125 milliseconds	
Flanger	45 milliseconds	

Link

The Link button gangs the Delay A, B time knobs and the Mute A, B buttons. Link is engaged when the button is lit.

When linked, as one delay time knob is changed, the other delay time knob follows. Any offset between the two values is maintained.

Rate

This knob sets the modulation rate for the delayed signals. The available range is from 0 to 30 Hz. Rate is synchronized to the tempo of the host application when SYNC is engaged.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "OFF" label to quickly disable modulation.*

Depth

This knob sets the modulation depth for the delayed signals. The available range is 0 - 100%.

> ***Note:*** *Depth is only audible when Rate is set to a non-zero value.*

LFO

This menu defines the LFO (low frequency oscillator) waveshape and phase used to modulate the delayed signals. The LFO can be changed using either of these methods:

- Click the selection arrows on each side of the LFO display, or
- Click the LFO display and choose a mode from the drop menu.

The waveshape can be set to triangle or sine, each with a phase value of 0, 90, or 180 degrees.

Sync

When Sync is enabled, delay times and modulation rates are synchronized to the host's tempo. Sync is active when the button is lit. Sync is disabled by default.

When Sync is off, delay times are in milliseconds, and modulation rates are in Hertz. When Sync is on, delay times and modulation rates are displayed as fractional beat/bar values.

> ***Note:*** *For complete details about this feature, see the "Tempo Synchronization" chapter in the UAD System Manual.*

Recirculation

Recirculation (feedback) controls the amount of delayed signal routed back to its input. Higher values increase the number of delays and intensity of the processed signal.

Recirculation allows both positive and negative values. With positive values, the polarity of the feedback signal is in phase with the original source signal. With negative values, the polarity of the feedback signal is inverted.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" label to quickly disable recirculation.*

In Dual Delay, Crossover Delay, and Ping Pong modes, recirculation values are displayed as T60 time (the time before the signal drops 60 dB). In Chorus and Flanger modes, values are displayed as a percentage.

High Pass

The 12 dB per octave high pass (low cut) filter reduces low frequencies at the input to the delays. The filter affects the delayed (wet) signals only. The available frequency range is from 20 Hz to 22 kHz.

Rotate the knob clockwise to reduce low frequencies in the delay lines. The filter is disabled when rotated to the fully counter-clockwise position.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "OFF" label to quickly disable the filter. Click again to return to the previous value.*

Low Pass

The 6 dB per octave low pass (high cut) damping filter reduces high frequencies at the input to the delays. The filter affects the delayed (wet) signals only. The available frequency range is from 20 Hz to 22 kHz.

Rotate the knob counter-clockwise to reduce high frequencies in the delay lines. The filter is disabled when rotated to the fully clockwise position.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "OFF" label to quickly disable the filter. Click again to return to the previous value.*

Output Controls

Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.

Mix

Mix controls the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry, unprocessed) to 100% (wet, processed signal only).

Tip: *Click the "0" label to quickly set the value to 0.*

Mix allows both positive and negative values. With positive values, the polarity of the processed signal is in phase with the original source signal. With negative values, the polarity of the processed signal is inverted.

Note: *When Wet Solo is enabled, the Mix value is ignored.*

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo button puts the plug-in into "100% Wet" mode. When Wet Solo is enabled (when the "S" button is lit), it is the equivalent of setting the Mix control to 100% wet. The Mix value is ignored when Wet Solo is enabled.

Wet Solo is typically used when the plug-in is implemented in the "classic" delay configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When the plug-in is used directly within a signal chain (such as in a channel insert), this control is typically deactivated.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control.*

Pan A, B

When the plug-in is used in a stereo-out configuration, these knobs are labeled "PAN" and determine the placement of the individual delay line's output in the stereo panoramic field.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to quickly center the signal in the stereo field.*

Pan Link

When Pan Link is engaged (when the "L" button is lit), the Pan A and Pan B knobs are ganged, facilitating the ability to quickly narrow or spread the placement of the delay line outputs in the stereo panoramic field.

Note: *When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration, this button is disabled.*

Gain A, B

When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration, these knobs are labeled "GAIN" and determine the output level of the individual delay line.

Note: *The Gain A, B controls cannot be linked.*

The automation labels are "Pan" for these controls, even when used in a mono-out configuration.

Level

This knob adjusts the output level of the plug-in. The available range is -25 dB to +15 dB.

Tip: *Click "0" to quickly set the value to 0 dB.*

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, all parameter and meter values are no longer visible, and the UA logo is dimmed.

Tip: *Power can also be toggled by clicking the UA diamond logo.*

Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. Unlike the host application's plug-in disable switch, which can cause audio artifacts, the Power switch offers glitch-free bypass.

DM-1/DM-1L Migration

As of UAD v8.2, Precision Delay Modulation replaces the original DM-1 and DM-1L plug-ins. When a session containing DM-1/DM-1L is opened in UAD v8.2 and later, DM-1/DM-1L plug-in instances and settings are automatically migrated to the newer Precision Delay Modulation.

For additional information about how DM-1/DM-1L migration is handled, see Migrating Prior Sessions in the CS-1 chapter.

Precision Enhancer Hz

Specialized Tool for Enhancing Bass Perception

The Precision Enhancer Hz allows the user to selectively add upper harmonics to bass fundamentals, sometimes referred to as “phantom bass.” This significantly enhances the perception of low-end energy beyond the conventional frequency response of small speakers. These harmonics stimulate a psychoacoustic bass-enhancing effect in the listener, giving even the smallest speakers greater translation of low frequency sources. Universal Audio’s unique approach to this common problem combines a simple control set that yields exacting results with minimal adjustment and allows the widest range of tonality available in its class, from subtle to decidedly audible.

The Hz Frequency control sets the corner frequency of the bass-isolation low pass filter, while Effect blends the generated signal into the original signal. Four effect slopes are available for variations in harmonic density, while five modes present various internal control configurations to support the widest array of source material. Finally, the Precision Enhancer Hz includes control over the final output with metering to compensate for gain changes created by the effect.

Precision Enhancer Hz does for low frequencies what Precision Enhancer kHz does for the highs. Together, they are a great complementary pair.

Precision Enhancer Hz interface

Precision Enhancer Hz Controls

Control knobs for the Precision Enhancer Hz behave the same way as with all UAD plug-ins. Effect, Hz Frequency, and Output values can be modified with text entry.

Effect Knob

The Effect Knob controls the amount of processing that occurs in the plug-in. The available range is from 0.00 to 100.0%.

Technically speaking, Effect scales the input to the enhancer. Increasing this parameter makes the enhancer have a higher amplitude output for a given input level. Increasing Effect increases the overall enhancement effect.

> ***Note:*** *The signal level at the plug-in input will interact with the Effect control.*

Effect Meter

The Effect Meter indicates the amount of signal processing that is occurring. More illuminated blue segments indicate more signal enhancement.

Effect Solo

Effect Solo isolates the generated signal and is affected by Effect level. Effect Solo is active when the button is red.

The Effect Solo signal is "pure" and contains no added original or filtered bass signal. Therefore the soloed signal may not sound "pleasant" when heard by itself. When Effect Solo is used in conjunction with Hz Solo, the complete "mixed" effect is heard.

Mode

The five Modes (A, B, C, D, and "All") optimize the plug-in internally to support the widest array of source material. The Mode control determines the type of enhancement that will be applied to the signal.

> ***Tip:*** *The active Mode can be selected by clicking the Mode button repeatedly to rotate through the Modes, or by clicking each Mode letter or LED.*

Mode A (Bass 1)

Mode A is tuned for both acoustic and electric bass instruments. Adds low frequency emphasis when set to low frequency value, mid to high frequencies aid in phantom bass generation for smaller sound systems.

Mode B (Bass 2)

Mode B is primarily for electric and DI bass with balanced mid range harmonics to help the bass stick out of the mix.

Mode C (Synth)

Mode C is tuned specifically for synth bass and other full-range material. It produces a wider range of harmonics than the Bass modes A and B. Mode C also works well on sub-mixes and program material. Moderate compression is applied to the harmonics signal, increasing the amplitude of the harmonics and altering their timbre.

Mode D (Kick)

Mode D has a short decay, which makes this setting ideal for kick drum sounds and other percussive instruments. Moderate compression is applied to the harmonics signal, increasing the amplitude of the harmonics and altering their timbre.

All Mode

All mode offers a more exaggerated and audible effect for creative purposes or when less subtle results are desired. Compression is applied to the harmonics signal, increasing the amplitude of the harmonics and altering their timbre. The frequency range is similar to Mode A.

> ***Tip:*** *All mode can be selected by shift+clicking Mode letters or LEDs.*

Slope

Slope changes the shape of the high pass filter that is applied to the effect signal. The high pass filter helps eliminate rumble/muddiness in the signal.

Slope can be set to 6, 12, 24, or 36 dB per octave. The active Slope can be selected by clicking the Slope button repeatedly to rotate through the values, or by clicking each Slope value or LED.

> ***Note:*** *When the Hz Frequency is set to a low value, Slope may have little or no audible effect.*

Hz Frequency

Through filter isolation of the original bass content, the Hz Frequency parameter defines the cutoff frequency for the enhancement process. Frequencies below this value are enhanced by the processor. The available range is 16 Hz to 320 Hz.

Hz Solo

Hz Solo isolates the original bass signal and can be combined with Effect Solo. Hz Solo is active when the button is red.

Output

Output controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The available range is -20 dB to 0 dB.

Generally speaking, adjust the Output control after the desired amount of processing is achieved with the Effect and Hz Frequency controls. Output does not affect the amount of enhancement processing, nor does it have any effect when the plug-in is disabled.

Output Meter

The stereo Output Meter displays the signal level at the output of the plug-in.

When the plug-in is disabled with the plug-in Power switch (but not the host plug-in enable switch), the output meters still function.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal or bypassing the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Toggle the switch or click the UA logo to change the Power state. The UA logo is illuminated in blue when the plug-in is active.

Operating Tips

- The Precision Enhancer Hz effect can serve multiple purposes. When the frequency control is set low, the effect extends into the audible low end. Lower frequencies work well for adding a low end thump or beefing up percussive bass/kicks, but be careful not to overdo it. With the frequency control set to mid to higher frequencies, the effect is designed to add bass tone that would ordinarily disappear on smaller speakers.
- For the most predictable results, it is recommended to audition the mix on both full range systems with a subwoofer, as well as small consumer systems such as a boombox or computer speakers.
- A different effect response will be achieved when the plug-in is used pre-compression. It is recommended to experiment with processing order as results can vary substantially.

Precision Enhancer kHz

Specialized Tool Designed to Enhance High Frequencies and Breathe New Life into Dull Tracks

The Precision Enhancer kHz is a sophisticated tool with a simple control set, primarily designed to bring dull or poorly recorded tracks to life. However, with five distinct Enhancement "Modes", the Precision Enhancer kHz will find uses on virtually any source. It can be used to minimally massage the middle and upper frequencies of a mix, or drastically alter the presence or dynamics of individual tracks or groups; Unlike other enhancers that function by frequency delay or filtered clipping, the Precision Enhancer kHz works on specialized techniques of equalization and dynamic expansion that can be used as a highly versatile effect.

The five Modes (A, B, C, D and the shift-clickable "All") present various control configurations to support the widest array of source material. With Modes A and B, the filtered audio is mixed in with the dry signal according to the Effect control. For Modes C, D and All, audio is passed through a unique upwards expander where the expanded audio is then filtered before being mixed with the dry signal. For these modes, Effect is used as a fader on the way into the expander. The release can be adjusted to either Fast or Slow via the Speed button, giving a greater range of dynamic/frequency enhancement. For Mode C, the sweepable filter applied to the expander's output is identical to the filter used with Mode A. For Mode D and All, the expander's output is passed to a set of filters in parallel. Finally, the Precision Enhancer kHz includes control over the final Output level metering to compensate for gain changes created by the effect.

Precision Enhancer kHz interface

Precision Enhancer kHz Controls

Effect Knob

The Effect Knob controls the amount of processing that occurs in the plug-in. The available range is from 0.00 to 100.0%.

Technically speaking, Effect scales the input to the enhancer. Increasing this parameter makes the enhancer have a higher amplitude output for a given input level. Increasing Effect increases the overall enhancement effect.

Note: *The signal level at the plug-in input will interact with the Effect control.*

Effect Meter

The Effect Meter indicates the amount of signal processing that is occurring. More illuminated blue segments indicate more signal enhancement.

Mode

The Mode control determines the type of enhancement that will be applied to the signal. The active Mode can be selected by clicking the Mode button repeatedly to rotate through the Modes, or by clicking each Mode letter or LED. "All" mode is selected by shift+clicking Mode letters or LEDs.

Mode A

Mode A enhances the high frequency content statically. Input dynamics do not affect on the enhancement process.

Mode B

Mode B is optimized for vocal range content. The kHz Frequency parameter is disabled in this mode.

Mode C

Mode C dynamically enhances the high frequency content. The enhancement amount is increased as the input signal level increases.

Mode D

Mode D dynamically enhances both high and low frequency content. The enhancement amount is increased as the input signal level increases. The kHz Frequency parameter is disabled in this mode.

All Mode

"All" mode is selected by shift+clicking Mode letters or LEDs. All Mode expands all frequencies of the input signal. The enhancement amount is increased as the input signal level increases. The kHz Frequency parameter is disabled in this mode.

Speed

The Speed parameter defines the attack and release characteristic of the enhancement process.

Fast

In Fast mode, the enhancement processor has a quick response time of 30 ms, which yields a more percussive “bite” and/or a more aggressive sound.

Slow

Slow mode has a slower response time of 180 ms which can deliver a smoother sound overall.

kHz Frequency

The kHz Frequency parameter defines the cutoff frequency for the enhancement process in Mode A and Mode C. Frequencies above this value are enhanced by the processor. The available range is 1.00 kHz to 10.0 kHz.

Note: *kHz Frequency is disabled in Modes B, D, and All.*

Output

Output controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The available range is -20 dB to 0 dB.

Generally speaking, adjust the Output control after the desired amount of processing is achieved with the Effect and kHz Frequency controls. Output does not affect the amount of enhancement processing, nor does it have any effect when the plug-in is disabled.

Output Meter

The Output Meter displays the signal level at the output of the plug-in.

When the plug-in is disabled with the plug-in Power switch (but not the host plug-in enable switch), the output meters still function.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal or bypassing the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Toggle the switch or click the UA logo to change the Power state. The UA logo is illuminated in blue when the plug-in is active.

Precision Equalizer

UA's Original Premium Performance EQ Utilizing the Best of Classic Hardware Designs

The Universal Audio Precision Equalizer™ is a stereo or dual-mono four band EQ and high-pass filter designed primarily for mastering program material. The Precision Equalizer may also be used in recording and mixing where the utmost in EQ quality is required. The Precision Equalizer is based on industry standard analog mastering filters, and uses the classic parametric controls arrangement. The Precision Equalizer utilizes the best from those designs while incorporating features convenient to digital mastering. To preserve the greatest sonic detail and ensure a minimum of artifacts in the upper frequency range, the Precision Equalizer is internally upsampled to 192 kHz.

Precision Equalizer interface

Precision Equalizer Controls

The easy to use Precision Equalizer features stepped controls throughout for easy recall. Both the left and right channels feature four bands of EQ, grouped in two overlapping pairs. There are two bands for low frequencies (L1 and L2), and two for highs (H1 and H2). There is also a shelving or peak/notch filter available for each band, along with five peak/notch (Q) responses per band. The high-pass filter is a far-reaching 18 dB per octave, which enables precise filtering of power-robbing sub-harmonic content, or other creative uses.

The Precision Equalizer also features flexibility in auditioning. There are three separate EQ configurations, allowing selection of two complete sets of stereo parameters or the Dual mode when disparate channel adjustments are necessary. In addition, parameter values can be easily transferred between parameter groups using the Copy buttons.

Control Grouping

The L and R equalizer sections are independent groups of parameters, each controlling one side (left or right) of the stereo source signal.

The L and R controls are linked except when in Dual mode. In Dual mode, control groups L and R can be independently adjusted.

Modes

The Mode switches define the operating mode of Precision Equalizer. The currently active mode is indicated by a blue light. Each mode is detailed below.

Stereo Mode

In Stereo mode, the L and R equalizer sections both control one side of the stereo source signal. The L and R controls are linked in stereo mode.

In stereo mode there are two sets of EQ settings (referred to as A and B), with each set containing the full set of L and R parameter values (the high-pass filter value is global per preset). This feature enables easy switching between two EQ settings for comparison purposes. Both the A and B parameter sets are contained within a single Precision Equalizer preset.

Dual Mode

In Dual mode (dual-mono mode), the left and right parameters can be independently adjusted so that each side of the stereo signal can have different EQ settings. Note that this mode is infrequently used during mastering because phase, imaging, and level inconsistencies may be induced in the resulting stereo signal.

Mode Selection

Any of these methods can be used to modify the Mode value:

- Click the Stereo button to cycle through modes A and B
- Click the Dual button to activate dual-mono mode
- Click the indicator light above each mode
- Click+hold+drag the indicator light above each mode

Parameter Copy Buttons

The Parameter Copy buttons provide an easy method for copying parameter values. The behavior of the buttons is determined by the current operating mode of Precision Equalizer.

> ***Important:*** *The values that existed at the destination before copying are overwritten.*

Stereo Mode

When in Stereo mode, clicking A > B copies the left AND right parameter values from parameter set A to parameter set B, and clicking the A < B button copies all the values from parameter set B to parameter set A.

This feature is useful when you want to make an EQ change to a stereo signal while maintaining the original values so the two settings can be easily compared.

> ***Note:*** *The high-pass filter parameter is global per preset and is not effected by this control.*

Parameter Copy in Dual Mode

When in Dual mode, the A and B buttons behave as left and right channel copy buttons. Clicking A > B copies all the values from the left channel parameters to the right channel parameters, and clicking A < B copies all the values from the right channel parameters to the left channel parameters.

Power

The Power Switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Click the rocker switch or the blue UA logo to change the Power state.

Band Controls

Each control set (L and R) has four EQ bands. Two bands are overlapping low frequency bands labeled L1 and L2, and two bands are overlapping high frequency bands labeled H1 and H2.

Each of the four bands has a control for bandwidth, enable, frequency, and gain. All four of the EQ bands can be used in parametric or shelf mode. The controls are exactly the same for each band; only the available frequency values differ.

Bandwidth

The Bandwidth (Q) knob defines the proportion of frequencies surrounding the band center frequency to be affected by the band gain control.

The numbers represent the filter slope in dB per octave. The available selections are 4, 6, 9, 14, 20, and Shelf.

When set to Shelf on the L1 and L2 bands, the band becomes a low shelving filter. When set to Shelf on the H1 and H2 bands, the band becomes a high shelving filter.

Band Enable

Each band can be individually engaged with the Enable button. All bands default to disabled. When a band is enabled, the button glows blue. To enable a band, click the Enable button or move the band Gain knob.

You can use these buttons to compare the band settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass the individual band. UAD DSP usage is slightly decreased when a band is disabled (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Frequency

The Frequency knob determines the center frequency of the filter band to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting.

This knob is stepped with 41 values for easy reproducibility during mastering. The available values for each of the four bands is the same in both parametric and shelf modes, and are listed in the table below.

> ***Tip:*** *Press shift while adjusting the Frequency knob for increased control resolution.*

Band Frequency Ranges

Low Frequencies (L1 and L2)	19 Hz - 572 Hz
High Frequencies (H1 and H2)	617 Hz - 27 kHz

Gain

The Gain knob determines the amount by which the frequency setting for the band is boosted or attenuated. The available Gain values are listed in the table below.

Band Gain Values

0.0 dB	±2.0 dB	±5.0 dB
±0.5 dB	±2.5 dB	±6.0 dB
±1.0 dB	±3.0 dB	±8.0 dB
±1.5 dB	±4.0 dB	

High-Pass Filter

The high-pass filter is useful for reducing low frequency content. This is a global filter; it always affects both left and right channels, regardless of the active mode. The available High-Pass frequencies are listed in the table below.

High-Pass Frequencies

Off (disabled)	40 Hz
10 Hz	60 Hz
20 Hz	80 Hz
30 Hz	100 Hz

Precision K-Stereo Ambience Recovery

Psychoacoustic Ambience Recovery and Stereo Processor
Created by Mastering Engineer Bob Katz

Universal Audio's Precision K-Stereo™ Ambience Recovery plug-in is a psychoacoustic processor conceived and created by famed mastering engineer Bob Katz. Collaborating with Universal Audio to bring this unique, patented process to the UAD platform, Bob Katz's K-Stereo process uses elements of the Haas effect and other psychoacoustic principles to create a transparent, phase-accurate "ambience recovery" and stereo enhancement tool.

Primarily designed for critical 2-track mastering applications, Precision K-Stereo extracts the ambient cues inherent in the source recording and provides features capable of spreading the uncorrelated ambience around the soundstage, enlarging the size of the soundstage both deeper and wider. It also increases the clarity and localization of the source material within its algorithm while increasing the third dimension of the sound. Precision K-Stereo does not have a sound of its own--it transparently enhances the existing ambience and early reflections of your sources to breathe new life into busy or narrow-sounding mixes.

Precision K-Stereo enhances the depth and imaging of the instruments and vocals on your stereo master without adding artificial reverberation, or changing the ratio of center elements to side elements, thus providing a do-no-harm approach to finalizing the stereo image of your critical mix source material.

Precision K-Stereo interface

Operational Overview

Ambience Recovery

The primary function of Precision K-Stereo is for ambience recovery and enhancement. The plug-in doesn't add new ambience or change the balance of the mix. Instead, it extracts, recovers, polishes, and embellishes the ambience that already exists in a source recording.

Precision K-Stereo does not use any comb filters, matrixing, phase processing, or related techniques which are used in typical image processors. Instead, the ambience recovery process is accomplished using established psychoacoustic principles. The result is a smooth, natural, phase-coherent, and mono-compatible sound that meets professional mastering standards.

In addition to ambience level and enhancement adjustments, the ambient portion of the source material can be further equalized using low/high cut filters and a fully parametric bell filter. These ambience filters affect the "wet" signal only and are completely independent from the "dry" portion of the recording.

Primary Application

Precision K-Stereo is designed for use during the mastering process to fine-tune the ambience that exists in previously-mixed stereo program material. Generally speaking, adjusting ambience during multitrack mixdown is best managed within the mix itself because of the higher level of control and detail available at that stage.

Of course, Precision K-Stereo can be used across the stereo bus during mixing and/or in other creative applications as well. However, since the process is optimized for broad spectrum mixes with at least some ambient content, the effect may be extremely subtle on individual tracks, depending on the ambient content in the recording.

Mid/Side Leveling

The Precision K-Stereo processor does not use or require mid/side encoding or decoding techniques to achieve ambience recovery nor enhancement. However, the plug-in has an independent mid/side ratio leveling feature that can be useful during mastering to compensate for overall center-to-side level imbalances within the stereo field.

The ambience recovery feature can then be used to recover ambience and space that is lost when the mid-channel level is increased (such as when raising a center-located vocal or instrument).

Configurations

Precision K-Stereo is optimized for use in stereo-in/stereo-out configurations. However, ambience recovery is possible on monophonic source recordings when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/stereo-out (MISO) configuration. Mono signals are “stereo-ized” in the MISO context.

> ***Note:*** *Due to the inherent stereo nature of the ambience recovery process, Precision K-Stereo is not intended for use in mono-in/mono-out configurations.*

Presets

Precision K-Stereo includes factory presets designed by Bob Katz. A list of these presets and their application notes are at the end of this chapter.

Precision K-Stereo Controls

Control Arrangements

Precision K-Stereo controls are grouped into four sections: Ambience Recovery, Ambience Filters (EQ), Mid/Side Gain, and Left/Right Gain. The detailed control descriptions that follow are similarly grouped.

Control Adjustments

Switches

For the main switches (Recover, M/S Gain, etc.), click the switch to toggle its setting. The switch is engaged when it is illuminated.

Knobs

For the knob controls, values can be adjusted with the mouse or values can be entered directly via text entry. Additionally, when the tickmarks and/or values around the knob are clicked, the knob will jump to that setting.

> ***Tip:*** *The "big knobs" (Ambience Gain, Mid/Side Gain, and L/R Gain) can be returned to the zero value by clicking the zero label above the knobs.*

Ambience Recovery

Ambience Recovery controls

Recover Enable

This switch enables/disables the ambience recovery process. See Ambience Recovery for an overview.

Recover Enable must be engaged for the Ambience Gain, Enhance Deep/Wide, and Ambience Filters controls to have any effect.

> ***Note:*** *This switch does not have any effect on the M/S Gain, L/R Gain, or Power controls.*

Ambience Gain

The Ambience Gain knob controls the level of recovered ambience. The default 0 dB position is defined as the nominal or "typical" setting (ambience recovery is occurring when set to 0 dB).

Increase or decrease Ambience Gain to change the amount of recovered ambience. The range is -20 dB to +9 dB, available in 0.5 dB steps. Click the "0" label to quickly return to 0 dB. To disable ambience recovery, use the Recover Enable switch.

> ***Note:*** *Values below 0 dB do not remove ambience.*

Enhance

The ambience recovery process can be manipulated further with the Deep and Wide switches.

> ***Note:*** *The Enhance functions can only be enabled when the Recover switch is engaged.*

Deep

Provides deeper ambience recovery when the switch engaged.

Wide

Spreads and enhances the stereo image when the switch is engaged.

Ambience Filters

The Ambience Filters (EQ) provide for frequency adjustments to the ambient portion of the signal. These controls do not affect the direct (dry) portion of the signal.

The Ambience Filters consist of one Low Cut filter, one High Cut filter, and a single-band parametric bell filter.

> ***Note:*** *Controls in the Ambience Filters section can only be modified when the Recover Enable switch is engaged.*

Ambience Filters controls

EQ Enable

The EQ switch enables/disables the Ambience Filters. This switch can only be engaged when the Recover Enable switch is engaged.

Cut Filters

The Low Cut and High Cut filters (the left-most and right-most knobs in the Ambience Filters section) have a slope of 12 dB per octave. Each Cut Filter can be independently disabled by setting it to the OFF position (the default value).

> ***Tip:*** *To quickly disable a cut filter, click its OFF text label.*

Low Cut

The available range is 20 Hz to 1 kHz.

High Cut

The available range is 5 kHz to 20 kHz.

Bell Filter

The bell filter is fully parametric, with independent control of frequency, Q (bandwidth), and gain.

Bell Filter controls

Bell Frequency

This control sets the center frequency of the bell filter. The available range is 150 Hz to 10 kHz.

Bell Q

Bell Q determines the bandwidth of the bell filter. The available range is 0.5 to 3. Smaller Q values cause the bell filter to effect a broader portion of the frequency spectrum, while high Q values effect a narrower spectrum.

Bell Gain

Bell Gain determines how much boost or cut is applied to the bell filter. The available range is ±10 dB. To quickly return to the 0 dB setting, click the GAIN text label.

> ***Note:*** *The two other Bell parameters (Frequency and Q) have no effect when Bell Gain is set to 0 dB.*

Mid/Side Controls

The Mid/Side controls allow for level adjustments to the middle (center) and side portions of signals within a stereo field. Mid/Side adjustments can be made when ambience recovery is active or disabled. Note that the ambience recovery process does not use or require mid/side techniques to achieve ambience recovery or enhancement.

> ***Note:*** *The Mid/Side controls are disabled when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.*

Mid/Side controls

M/S Gain Enable

This switch enables/disables the Mid Gain and Side Gain controls.

Mid Gain

Mid Gain adjusts the level of signals in the middle of a stereo signal. The available range is -12 dB to +6 dB, in steps of 0.1 dB. To quickly return to the 0 dB setting, click the MID text label.

Side Gain

Side Gain adjusts the level of signals at the sides of a stereo signal. The available range is -12 dB to +6 dB, in steps of 0.1 dB. To quickly return to the 0 dB setting, click the SIDE text label.

Output Gain Controls

Output Gain controls

L/R Gain Enable

This switch enables/disables the Left/Right Gain and Link controls.

Link

This switch links (gangs) the Left/Right Gain controls for ease of operation when both channels require the same value. Disable Link when independent left/right control is desired.

> ***Note:*** *When Link is inactive and Link is engaged, the left gain value is copied to the right gain. Any offset between the gain values is lost.*

Left/Right Gain

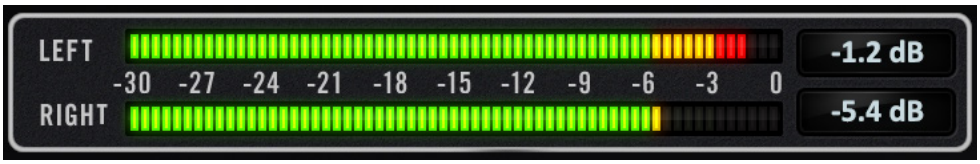
The independent Left and Right Gain have an available range of -24 dB to +12 dB, available in 0.1 dB steps. To quickly return to the 0 dB setting, click the respective LEFT or RIGHT text labels.

> ***Note:*** *The right channel gain control is disabled when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.*

Output Level Meters

The stereo peak/hold meters display the signal level at the output of the plug-in. The meter range is from -30 dB to 0 dBFS. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

> ***Note:*** *Both meters are active and display identical levels when the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.*



Output level meters

Power

When the Power switch is in the OFF position, the interface elements do not illuminate, plug-in processing is disabled, and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 LoadLock is enabled).

Click the switch or the OFF/ON labels to change the setting, or click the UA logo to toggle the setting.

Factory Preset Notes by Bob Katz

Precision K-Stereo includes factory presets designed by Bob Katz for use with his signature plug-in. Descriptions about these presets are listed below.

The Default preset and presets with the "BK" prefix are the settings created by Mr. Katz. Two categories are included: "MIX" presets for use during mixing, and "MSTR" for use during mastering.

Default

When Precision K-Stereo is instantiated, it automatically starts with the Default preset, which sets the Ambience Level to 0 dB (a nominal starting point which works well with a lot of music), engages Wide and Deep, and sets everything else to neutral. Feel free to turn the Ambience Level up or down to taste or to explore the possibilities. The rest of the factory presets are provided to demonstrate possibilities, but since there are very few controls, it's easy to get the Precision K-Stereo working for any situation.

BK-MSTR-Rock Tight Bass

This preset has Ambience Level at 0 dB, Wide and Deep engaged, and the Ambience Low Cut filter set to 125 Hz to maintain a tight bass instrument while increasing the size and depth of the rest of the instruments.

BK-MSTR-Rock Tight Drums

This preset has Ambience Level at 0 dB, Wide and Deep engaged, Ambience Low Cut filter set to 125 Hz, Ambience High Cut Filter set to 10 kHz. This maintains the bass instrument tight (not as affected by the Ambience Level) as well as softens the ambience of the high frequencies to tighten the percussion, but it retains ambience in the midrange to enhance vocals and midrange instruments.

BK-MSTR-String Ensemble

This preset has Ambience Level at +1 dB, Wide is disengaged, Deep is engaged. This is very useful, as the name implies, for enhancing the ambience of a small ensemble or solo instrument without stretching it to the extreme sides, maintaining the ensemble's small size but still help its richness and depth. Try this preset during mixing on a stereo-miked solo guitar (instead of a reverb chamber).

BK-MSTR-Full Orchestra A

This is the same as the default preset. Turn the Ambience Level up or down to taste. Perhaps add some Ambience EQ to warm up the sound, or add some presence to the ambience, depending on the nature of the reverberation in the original recording.

BK-MSTR-Full Orchestra B

Same as Full Orchestra A, but the high cut filter is set to 10 kHz which softens the high frequency ambience to tighten the percussion.

BK-MSTR-Clear Presence

If the hall or chamber in the original recording is missing some presence, here's a suggestion on what to do.

BK-MSTR-Raise Mid Instruments

This preset subtly raises the Mid level 1 dB above the side level and recovers a bit of the spacious ambience which is commonly lost when the mid/side ratio is raised.

BK-MSTR-Warm Ambience

This preset adds overall warmth to the recovery settings.

BK-MIX-Big Steinway

Try this preset on a stereo recording of a piano to enhance the size and body of the instrument without losing its definition. This preset will illustrate how ambience EQ is very different from direct EQ. Here we turn up the bottom end and lower midrange of the ambience channel. It might turn a six-foot Yamaha into a nine-foot Steinway, so be careful, or maybe that's exactly what you want to do!

BK-MIX-Big

This preset turns up the ambience level a bit to quickly show you the possibilities.

BK-MIX-Too Big

This preset turns up the ambience level very far to quickly show you extreme possibilities.

Precision Limiter

Original UA Designed Premium Performance Look-Ahead Brick-Wall Limiter

The Universal Audio Precision Limiter™ is a single-band, look-ahead, brickwall limiter designed primarily for mastering with program material. The easy-to-use Limiter achieves 100% attack within a 1.5ms look-ahead window, which prevents clipping and guarantees zero overshoot performance. Both the attack and release curves are optimized for mastering, which minimizes aliasing.

Since Precision Limiter is a colorless, transparent mastering limiter — no upsampling is used, nor does Precision Limiter pass audio through any filters — audio remains untouched unless the compressor is working, in which case only gain is affected.

To really be considered a professional limiter, the metering needs to be superb. The Precision Limiter features comprehensive, high-resolution metering and conforms to the Bob Katz "K-System" metering specifications. This metering allows the user to see what is happening to audio with a great deal of accuracy, with simultaneous RMS and Peak metering and adjustable Peak Hold. And since we know how valuable good metering is, the plug-in can also be bypassed and used strictly as a high-resolution meter.

Key features include user-adjustable Release or intelligent Auto Release, which allows for fast recovery-minimizing distortion and pumping-and a unique selectable Mode switch, which allows you to delicately tailor the attack shape and control the "presentation" for different material. Mode A is the default shape, suitable for most material, while Mode B can be particularly useful on minimal and/or acoustic program material, yielding a more subtle touch.

Precision Limiter is yet another indispensable UAD tool for your audio arsenal.

Precision Limiter interface

Precision Limiter Controls

Precision Limiter introduced a new control style for UAD plug-ins. For the Mode, Meter, Scale, and Clear parameters, click the parameter label, the value text, or the LED to toggle between available values.

Input

The Input knob controls the signal level that is input into the limiter. Increasing the input will result in more limiting as the input signal exceeds 0 dB.

The default value is 0 dB. The available range is -6 dB to 24 dB.

Output

The Output knob determines the maximum level at the output of the plug-in. This control does not affect the actual limiting.

Precision Limiter always limits the signal to 0 dB internally, and the actual output is set by attenuating this internal level. Likewise, the input control can drive the signal over 0 dB to get more limiting.

If Precision Limiter is the last processor in the signal path when mixing down to disk (bouncing), the Output value will be the level of the highest peak in the resultant audio file.

The default value is -0.10 dB. The available range is from -12 dB to 0 dB. Non-zero values are always negative, therefore during text entry operations positive or negative values may be entered and the result will be negative.

Release

The Release knob sets the value of the limiter release time. The default value is Auto. The available range is from 1 second to 0.01 milliseconds.

Auto Mode

When the Release knob is fully clockwise, Automatic mode is active. In Auto mode, release time is program-dependent. Isolated peaks will have a fast release time, while program material will have a slower release.

Tip: *Type "A" or "a" to enter Auto mode during text entry.*

Mode

The Mode switch affects the attack shape of the limiter. Subtle tonal variations are possible by switching the Mode between A and B.

Mode A is the default shape, suitable for most material, while Mode B can be particularly useful on minimal and/or acoustic program material, yielding a more subtle touch.

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. When the Power switch is in the Off position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

When the plug-in is bypassed with this switch (but not by the host bypass), the VU meter displays the unprocessed input signal level.

Precision Limiter Meters Overview

K-System

Precision Limiter has precise, calibrated stereo metering. It offers the option to use K-System metering, which is a method devised by renown audio engineer Bob Katz. The K-System is essentially a method of integrating metering and monitoring levels to standardize the apparent loudness of audio material while providing useful visual feedback of average and peak levels.

Integrated Meter/Monitor System

The K-System is not just a metering system; it is designed to be integrated with calibrated monitoring system levels. In a full K-System implementation, 0 dB on the level meter yields 83 dB sound pressure level (SPL) per channel in the monitor output level (86 dB running two channels in stereo), when measured with 20-20 kHz pink noise on an SPL meter set to C-weighted slow (i.e. average) response. It is this calibrated meter/monitor relationship that establishes a consistent average "perceived loudness" with reference to 0 dB on the meter.

Sliding Meter Scale

With the K-System, programs with different amounts of dynamic range and headroom can be produced by using a loudness meter with a sliding scale, because the moveable 0 dB point is always tied to the same calibrated monitor SPL. Precision Limiter provides several meter ranges for various types of program material (see Type).

Long Live Dynamic Range!

The K-System can help combat the bane of the "loudness wars" which is all-too common in today's music, whereby material is made to appear louder when compared to other material at the same playback volume, at the expense of dynamic range and fidelity.

Type

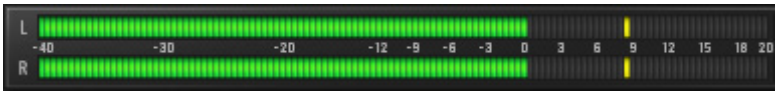
The Type switch defines the 0 dB point in the Sliding Meter Scale. There are three different K-System meter scales, with 0 dB at either 20, 14, or 12 dB below full scale, for typical headroom and SNR requirements of various program materials.

Each of these modes displays the The RMS and instantaneous peak levels, which follow the signal, and the peak-hold level (see Meter Response).

> ***Note:*** *When the meters are in the K-modes, the displayed RMS level is 3.01 dB higher when compared to the same signal level in the Peak-RMS mode. This is done to conform to the AES-17 specification, so that peak and average measurements are referenced to the same decibel value with sine waves.*

K-20

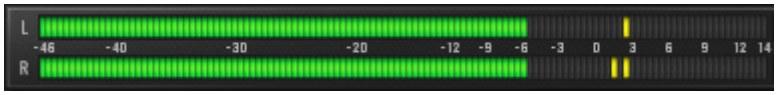
K-20 mode displays 0 dB at -20 dB below full scale. K-20 is intended for material with very wide dynamic range, such as symphonic music and mixing for film for theatre.



K-20 Meter Type

K-14

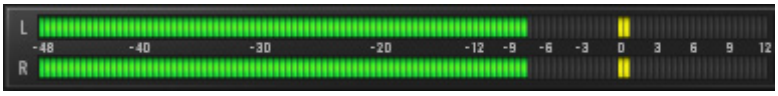
K-14 mode displays 0 dB at -14 dB below full scale. K-14 is intended for the vast majority of moderately-compressed material destined for home listening, such as rock, pop, and folk music.



K-14 Meter Type

K-12

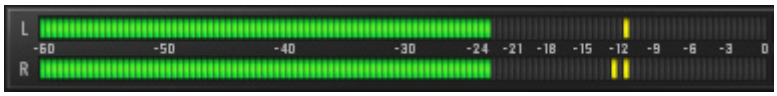
K-12 mode displays 0 dB at -12 dB below full scale. K-12 is recommended for material intended for broadcast.



K-12 Meter Type

Peak-RMS

This is what is often considered a “normal” digital meter, where 0 dB is full-scale digital code.



Peak-RMS Meter Type

Meter Response

The main stereo Input/Output meter actually displays three meters simultaneously: The RMS and instantaneous peak levels, which follow the signal, and the “peak-hold” (also known as global peak) level.

The peak-hold level is the maximum instantaneous peak within the interval set by the Hold button, and is also displayed as text to the right of the meters. To reset the peak hold levels, press the Clear button.

Precision Limiter metering is also active when plug-in processing is deactivated with the Power switch. Metering is disabled when the plug-in is bypassed by the host application.

Gain Reduction Meter

The Gain Reduction meter displays the amount of limiter gain reduction. More green bars moving to the left indicate more gain reduction is occurring.

Gain reduction only occurs when the input signal level exceeds 0 dB. Therefore, increasing the Input knob usually results in more gain reduction.

Meter

The Meter switch specifies the signal source for the main stereo meter, either input or output.

Input

When the Meter switch is in Input mode, the main level meters display the signal level at the input of the plug-in (and is not affected by the Input knob).

Output

When the Meter switch is in Output mode, the main level meters display the level at the output of the plug-in. When the Limiter is enabled, the Output and Input knobs will affect this display.

Scale

The meter Scale switch increases the resolution of the main stereo level meter. The meter range that is displayed in Normal and Zoom modes is dependent upon the meter Type setting.

Precision Limiter meter scale in PK-RMS Zoom mode

The main level meters in Normal mode, and the gain reduction meter in both Normal and Zoom modes, are linear (level differences between LED segments is the same). In PK-RMS and K-20 Zoom modes however, the main level meters use two different linear ranges for increased accuracy.

The ranges and response for each meter type and scale is detailed below.

PK-RMS

In Normal mode, the meter range is -60 dB to 0 dB with a linear response of 0.5 dB per segment. In Zoom mode, the range is -18 dB to 0 dB with two different linear responses: 0.2 dB per segment from -18 to -6 dB, and 0.1 dB per segment from -6 to 0 dB.

K-20

In Normal mode, the meter range is -40 dB to 20 dB with a linear response of 0.5 dB per segment. In Zoom mode, the range is -8 dB to 20 dB with two different linear responses: 0.2 dB per segment from -8 to 15 dB, and 0.1 dB per segment from 15 dB to 20 dB.

K-14

In Normal mode, the meter range is -46 dB to 14 dB with a linear response of 0.5 dB per segment. In Zoom mode, the range is -10 dB to 14 dB, with linear response of 0.2 dB per segment.

K-12

In Normal mode, the meter range is -48 dB to 12 dB with a linear response of 0.5 dB per segment. In Zoom mode, the range is -12 dB to 12 dB, with linear response of 0.2 dB per segment.

Hold

The meter Hold Time switch determines how much time will pass before the peak values for the main meter and the gain reduction meter are reset. It affects both the peak LED's and the peak text display.

Values of 3 seconds, 10 seconds, or Infinite (indicated by the lazy-8 symbol) can be selected.

Clear

The meter Peak Clear switch clears the meter peak value display. It affects both the peak LED's and the peak text display.

Precision Maximizer

UA Original Premium Performance Dynamic Impact Processor for Increasing Perceived Loudness

The Precision Maximizer is a dynamic impact processor that uniquely enhances the apparent loudness, warmth, and presence of individual tracks or program material without appreciably reducing dynamic range or peak level control. Significant audio improvements can be achieved without the fatiguing artifacts typically associated with traditional dynamic processors.

The plug-in uses a proprietary soft-saturation process that maximizes signal energy while minimizing undesirable distortion and aliasing. A wide variety of sounds are available using relatively few controls. The primary sonic parameter is the Shape control, which can range from simply increasing the apparent loudness at lower settings, to dramatically improved clarity, punch, and "musical" tube-like distortion at higher values.

The nature of the source material, as well as the input levels to the processor, also greatly affect the sonic character at the output. The Limit function and 3-band mode enable further manipulation of signal levels for additional creative options.

Note: *See Operating Tips for practical usage information.*

Precision Maximizer interface

Signal Flow

The input signal first passes through the Input control, then the Input Meter, before arriving at the Bands divider. After being optionally divided by the Bands parameter, the signal is then split into the dry path and the wet saturation path. The saturation path is processed by the Shape control, then the wet and dry signals are combined with the Mix control. Finally, the mixed signal is processed by the Limit control before being passed to the Output control and Output Meter.

Precision Maximizer Controls

Control knobs for the Precision Maximizer behave the same way as all UAD plug-ins. Input, Shape, Mix, and Output values can be modified with text entry.

Input Meter

The stereo peak Input Meter displays the signal level at the input of the processor, after the Input control.

0 dB represents digital full scale (0 dBFS). Precision Maximizer can utilize input signals up to +6 dB at the input before input clipping occurs.

The displayed range is from -40 dB to +6 dB.

Input

The Input Level knob controls the signal level that is input to the plug-in. Increasing the input will generally result in more processing (depending on the settings of the other parameters).

By increasing the Input knob, input levels higher than 0 dBFS (up to +6 dBFS) within the plug-in can be processed. This can increase the distortion characteristic at the output, particularly when the Limit function is engaged.

The available range is ±12 dB. A good starting point for sonic experimentation is to set the input level so the input peaks occur around 0 dB, then adjust the other controls to taste.

Shape

The Shape knob is the primary saturation control for the Maximizer effect. It contours the harmonic content and apparent dynamic range of the processor by changing the small-signal gain of the saturator. The available range is 0-100%.

At lower settings, apparent loudness is not as dramatic but harmonic processing still occurs, producing a richer sound with minimal reduction of dynamic range. As Shape is increased, the sound becomes more saturated with “sonically pleasing” distortion and perceived loudness, punch, and clarity.

Shape values between 0-50% will make the effect more subtle, but a richer sound is still obtained. Lower Shape values accentuate louder peaks, which can sound great on percussive instruments. Solo instruments can also benefit from lower Shape values by taming the peaks while maintaining dynamic range.

As Shape is increased beyond 50%, presence, excitement, and harmonic coloration can be dramatic, yet still highly musical and without the dynamic squashing of typical limiters.

The most natural warmth and tube-like distortion is obtained with Shape at 50%. This setting generates the lowest amount of higher order harmonics and most closely emulates characteristic tube qualities.

Bands

Precision Maximizer can operate in one-band or three-band mode. In one-band mode, all frequencies are processed equally. In three-band mode, the frequency spectrum is split into three separate bands before maximizing is applied.

One-band mode is the normal setting for general usage. In this mode, more dramatic results can often be obtained because more saturation effect is possible before the output is clipped. At higher levels of distortion, the phase of the harmonics are also better retained in this mode, which usually produces a more desirable sound quality.

Higher levels of perceived loudness may be obtained in three-band mode, especially if the frequency spectrum of the source material is not balanced. In this mode, certain settings can produce higher output levels than input levels (and potential clipping), so it may be necessary to compensate by reducing the input/output levels, and/or engaging the Limit control.

The crossover frequencies in three-band mode are 200 Hz and 2.45 kHz.

Click the Bands button to change the mode. Alternately, you can click+hold the LED area and drag like a slider to change the value.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP usage is increased when three-band mode is active (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).*

Limit

The Limit function provides a second stage of soft-saturation just before the output control for the plug-in. It prevents digital "overs" by protecting the plug-in output from exceeding 0 dBFS. Limit enters into clipping range gradually instead of hard-clipping at 0 dB.

The Limit function has the same saturation form as the Shape parameter, but the effect is milder. Limit is especially useful for three-band mode, where output peaks over 0 dB (and clipping) can occur. However, great results can also be obtained in one-band mode when Limit is engaged.

If Limit is used to reduce levels by a significant amount, it is usually best to have Mix set to 100% in order to minimize audio artifacts (aliasing).

Click the Limit button to engage Limit. Alternately, you can click+hold the LED area and drag like a slider to change the value.

> ***Note:*** *UAD DSP usage is slightly decreased when Limit mode is inactive (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).*

Mix

This is a mix control for the plug-in. Mix determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (no processing) to 100% (wet, processed signal only).

Note that when Mix is at 0%, the signal is still processed by the Limit control if it is enabled, and by the band splitter when in three-band mode. For a true bypass, the Power switch should be used.

Output

The Output knob controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The available range is -12 dB to 0 dB.

Note that when Limit is not engaged, it is possible for the output level to exceed 0 dB. In this case, Output can be lowered to eliminate any associated clipping.

> ***Tip:*** *When Precision Maximizer is used for CD mastering and it is the last processor in the signal chain, the recommended Output value is -0.10 dB*

Output Meter

The stereo peak Output Meter displays the signal level at the output of the plug-in. The displayed range is from -40 dB to 0 dB.

The very top segment of the Output Meter is a clip LED (one each for the left and right channels) which illuminates when the signal exceeds 0 dB. The clip segments are held for three seconds before resetting.

> ***Note:*** *The Limit function prevents the output signal from exceeding 0 dB. Therefore, the clip LED's will only illuminate if Limit is off.*

Power

The Power switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal or bypassing the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Toggle the switch to change the Power state; the UA logo is illuminated in blue when the plug-in is active.

> ***Note:*** *You can click-hold the power switch then drag it like a slider to quickly compare the enabled/disabled state.*

Operating Tips

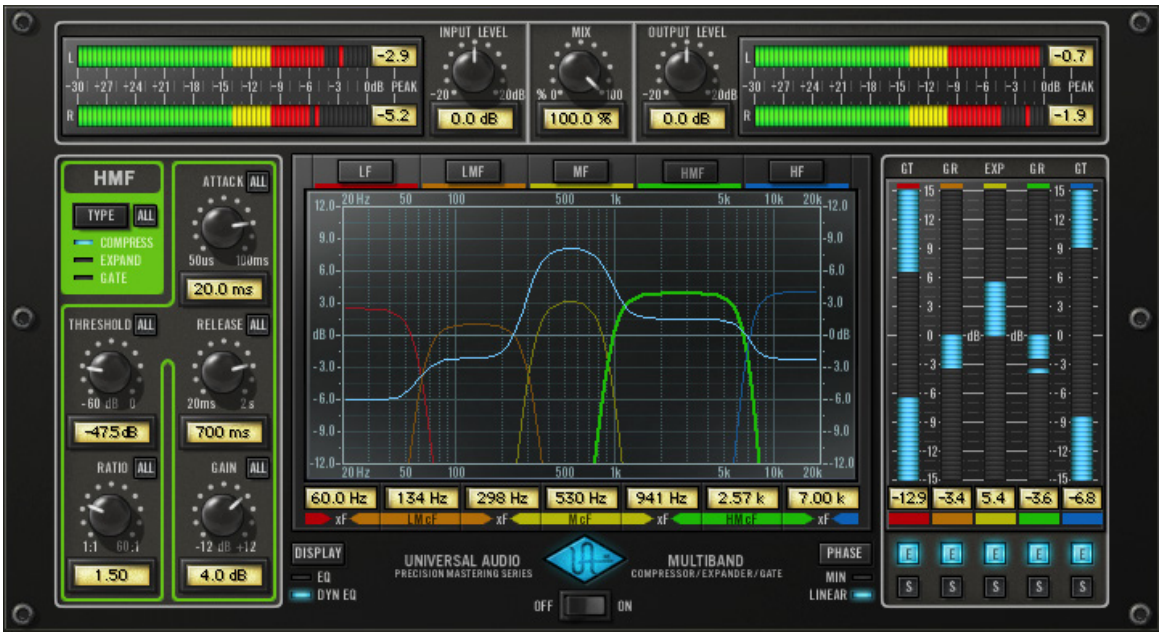
- As a starting point for general loudness enhancement, set Precision Maximizer to one-band mode with Limit engaged, with Mix at 100% and Shape at 50%. Then set Input so signals peak at around 0 dB on the Input Meters. These settings offer good results under most conditions, producing more presence with a warmer sound and enhanced detail (especially with lower frequencies), while retaining the apparent dynamic range of the original signal.
- The most natural warmth and tube-style distortion can be obtained with Shape at 50% in one-band mode, with Limit off, and signal peaks just touching 0 dB at the input. Shape at 50% delivers the lowest amount of higher order harmonics and most closely emulates a tube characteristic.
- More overdrive may be obtained by disengaging the Limit function. Up to +6 dB of additional headroom is available before clipping occurs when Limit is off. This can cause clipping at the output, so reduce the Input and/or Output control to compensate if necessary.
- Input clipping can dramatically change the distortion characteristic, and may yield significantly different results in one-band versus three-band mode.
- Generally speaking, the input should be set as high as possible before undesirable sound quality is obtained.
- For optimum results (especially when Limit is off) ensure the source signal is not clipped before it arrives at the Precision Maximizer input.
- Output clipping can be completely avoided by enabling Limit.
- One-band mode is generally recommended for program material.
- Set Mix at 100% in order to hear the full affect of the Maximizer process. Reduce Mix when blending in the original signal is desired.
- Changing the order of plug-ins in the signal path can have a dramatic affect on Precision Maximizer results.
- Sonic experimentation is highly encouraged!

Precision Multiband

Original UA Design Featuring Five Spectral Bands of Premium Compression, Expanding, or Gating

Precision Multiband is a specialized mastering tool that provides five spectral bands of dynamic range control. Compression, expansion or gate can be chosen separately for each of the five bands. The unparalleled flexibility and easy to follow graphical design of Precision Multiband make it the ideal tool for the novice as well as the seasoned mastering engineer.

Precision Multiband can be used for anything from complex dynamic control to simple de-essing. Two filter bank modes offer precise linear-phase or minimum-phase gain control; use the linear-phase option for perfectly phase-coherent results, or minimum-phase for a more “analog” sound. Both filter bank modes achieve the magnitude response of a Linkwitz-Riley filter and provide perfect magnitude reconstruction.



Precision Multiband interface

Precision Multiband Interface

The Precision Multiband interface is designed to make this complex processor easier to use.

Five separate frequency bands are available for processing. Each band is identified by a unique color, and all controls specific to the band have the same color. This helps to visually associate parameters to the band that they affect. The band names and their colors are:

- Low Frequency (LF): Red
- Low-Mid Frequency (LMF): Orange
- Mid Frequency (MF): Yellow
- High-Mid Frequency (HMF): Green
- High Frequency (HF): Blue

The interface is divided into four primary areas of control:

- The Band Controls section contains the dynamic response parameters for each of the five bands. One set of band controls is displayed at a time. See.
- The EQ Display contains the band frequency parameters and shows a graphic representation of the band frequency response. The overall equalization response is also displayed (if enabled).
- The Dynamics Meters display the amount of gain reduction or expansion occurring on each band. The band enable and solo controls are here also.
- The Global Controls affect aspects of the plug-in not associated with individual bands. These include input/output controls and meters, power, and other controls.

Band Controls

The Band Controls contain the parameters that are used to specify all settings for each band except the Frequency Controls.

The Band Controls for each of the five bands are identical.

Only one set of Band Controls is displayed at a time. The control set for any particular band is displayed by selecting the band (see Band Select).

Band Select

Selecting a band causes the controls for that band to be displayed in the Band Controls area. Bands can be selected by using the Band Select buttons, or by clicking in the EQ display.

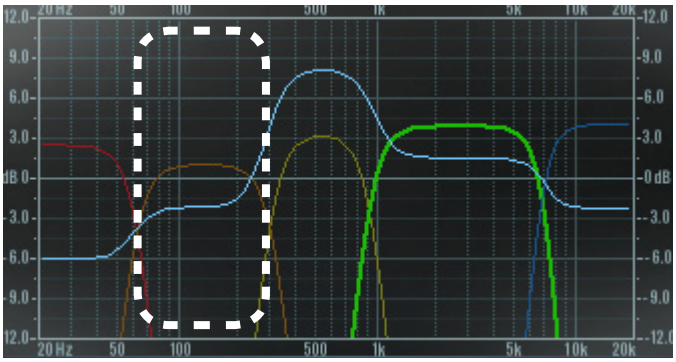
Band Select: Buttons

The Band Select buttons at the top of the EQ Display specify which band parameters are displayed in the band controls section. Click the button to display the parameters for the band.

Band Select buttons

Band Select: EQ Display

A band can also be selected by clicking within the area of the band in the EQ Display. For example, clicking within the white dashed area shown below will select the LMF band.



LMF Band Select area

Band Parameters

Because the Band Controls for each of the five bands are identical, they are only described once.

All Button

The ALL button provides a facility to link controls and copy parameter values to all bands when adjusting the current band. Each of the Band Controls has an ALL button. The behavior of the ALL button is the same for all the Band Controls in all the bands (with the exception of the Type Switch).

The ALL button can perform three functions: Relative Link, Absolute Link, and Copy Value. Note that the ALL button cannot be automated.

Relative Link

In Relative mode, changes to a band control will change the same control in the other bands by a relative amount (i.e. the same amount), until any single band reaches its minimum or maximum value.

Single-click the ALL button to enter Relative mode; the button background changes to blue.

When adjusting a control in Relative mode, it may appear that the full range of the active control is unavailable; this occurs when a different band (not the active band) has reached the end of its range.

In Relative mode the Gain value can also be adjusted by dragging the Gain "handle" in the EQ Display.

> ***Note:*** *In Relative Link mode, the parameter values in other bands don't change unless a control is actually adjusted (values are not forced to other bands when enabling the mode).*

> ***Note:*** *Relative mode is not available for the Type parameter because the available Type values are discrete. Click and shift-click both activate Absolute mode for Type.*

Absolute Link

In Absolute mode, changes to a band control will force the same control in the other bands to snap to the same value as the current band.

Shift+click the ALL button to enter Absolute mode; the button background changes to red. In Absolute mode, the Gain value can also be adjusted by dragging the Gain "handle" in the EQ Display.

> ***Note:*** *In Absolute Link mode, the parameter values in other bands don't change unless a control is actually adjusted (values are not forced to other bands when enabling the mode).*

Copy

Ctrl+click the ALL button when it is NOT in Relative or Absolute modes (not blue or red) to copy the current value of the active band control to the same control value in the other bands.

> ***Caution:*** *The ctrl+click Copy function overwrites existing values in all other bands. Undo is not available.*

Type Switch

The Type button defines the dynamic nature of the band, allowing each band to function as a compressor, expander, or noise gate, independent of the Type value in the other bands.

Click the Type switch to scroll through the three available values.

The Type text (compress, expand, gate) behaves as a vertical "slider" and can be used for changing the Type as well. Alternately, the Type can be changed using the Dynamics Meters label text.

> ***Note:*** *When changing the band Type, the Ratio value for the band changes to 1:1. This prevents dramatic jumps in the output level that could result from extreme values of other band parameters.*

Compress

When a band is set to Compress, the dynamic range of the band will be reduced (dependent upon the band threshold and input level). This is the typical value in multiband compression.

Expand

When a band is set to Expand, the dynamic range of the band will be increased (dependent upon the band threshold and input level).

Gate

When a band is set to Gate, the band behaves as a gate. A gate stops the signal from passing when the signal level drops below the specified threshold value.

Gates are generally used to reduce noise levels by eliminating the noise floor when the main signal is not present, but they are also useful for special effects.

Threshold

This parameter determines the threshold level for compression/expansion/gating. Any signals that exceed this level are processed. Signals below the level are unaffected. A Threshold of 0 dB yields no processing. The available range is -60 dB to 0 dB.

As the Threshold control is decreased and more processing occurs, output level is typically reduced (compression) or increased (expansion). Adjust the Gain control to modify the output of the band to compensate if desired.

Ratio

Ratio determines the amount of gain reduction (or expansion) for the band. For example: When a band is set to Compress, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB.

The available range depends on the value of the Type parameter, as follows:

- Ratio range in Compress mode is 1:1 to 60:1
- Ratio range in Expand mode is 1:1 to 1:4
- Ratio range in Gate mode is 1:1 to 8:1

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches the Threshold level before processing is applied. The faster the Attack, the more rapidly processing is applied to signals above the threshold.

The available range is 50 microseconds to 100 milliseconds.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for processing to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if you set too large of a Release time, processing for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to lengthy sections of audio with lower signals. The available range is 20 milliseconds to 2 seconds.

Gain

The Gain control adjusts the output level of the band. Generally speaking, adjust the Gain control after the desired amount of processing is achieved with the Threshold control. The Gain control does not affect the amount of processing. The available range is ±12 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *The Gain for each band can also be modified with the Curve Control Points in the EQ Display.*

Band Frequencies

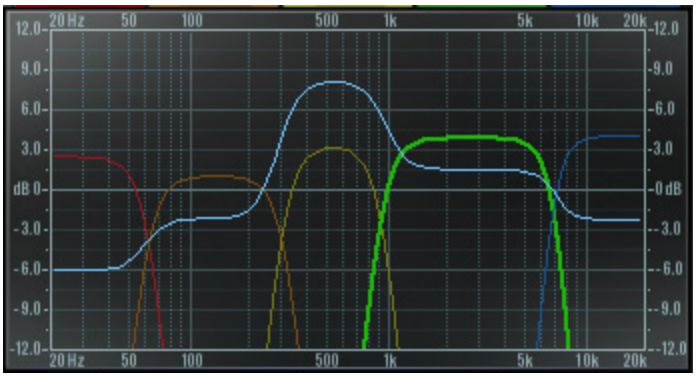
For details about the band frequencies, see Frequency Controls.

Band Enable & Solo

For details about the band enable and solo controls, see Dynamics Meters.

EQ Display

In the EQ Display, the entire audio spectrum from 20 Hz to 20 kHz is displayed along the horizontal axis. Gain and attenuation of the five band frequencies (up to ±12 dB) are displayed along the vertical axis.



Precision Multiband EQ Display

Band Curves

The Band Curves show the relative frequency and gain settings of the bands. The sides of the colored curves are a representation of each band's frequency settings, and the top of each curve represents the band's gain setting.

> ***Note:*** *The currently selected band is displayed with a thicker bold line. Disabled bands are displayed with a thinner line.*

EQ Response

The EQ Display can show the processed EQ response dynamically as a light blue line across all bands by enabling the Dynamic EQ option.

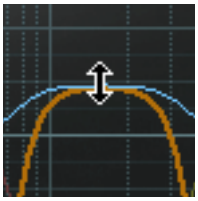
Curve Control Points

Band gain, center frequencies (cF), crossover frequencies (xF), and bandwidth can be modified by manipulating the colored band curves in the EQ Display with the cursor.

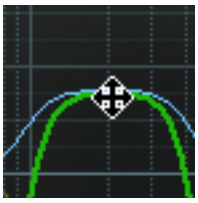
When the cursor is moved over the pre-defined "hot spots" in the EQ Display, the cursor changes shape to indicate that adjustments can be made. Each of these control points and their corresponding available adjustments are detailed below.

Adjusting Gain

The gain of a band can be adjusted by click-dragging the top of its colored line. In this case the cursor changes to an up/down arrow when hovered over the hot spot to indicate the direction available for dragging.

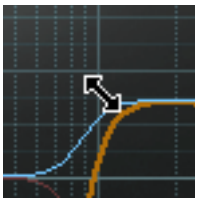


Adjusting Gain and cF



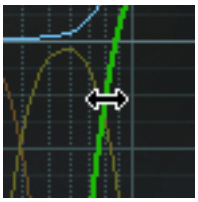
If the cursor is moved slightly lower than the above example, the gain and center frequency can be adjusted simultaneously, without adjusting the bandwidth. In this case the cursor changes to an up/down/left/right arrow when hovered over the hot spot to indicate the direction available for dragging.

Adjusting Gain and Bandwidth



If the cursor is moved to the upper-left region of the three center bands (LMF, MF, HMF), the gain and bandwidth can be adjusted simultaneously, without changing the center frequency. In this case the cursor changes to a diagonal arrow when hovered over the hot spot to indicate the direction available for dragging.

Adjusting xF



If the cursor is moved to where two bands crossover, the crossover frequencies can be adjusted, without changing the gain or center frequency. In this case the cursor changes to a left/right arrow when hovered over the hot spot to indicate the direction available for dragging.

> ***Note:*** *Frequencies can also be adjusted by using the Frequency Values parameters.*

Frequency Controls

The crossover frequency (xF) between the bands and the center frequency (cF) of the Mid bands is shown at the bottom of the EQ Display.

The frequencies for each band can be modified by entering the values directly and by manipulating the colored band curves.

Frequency Values

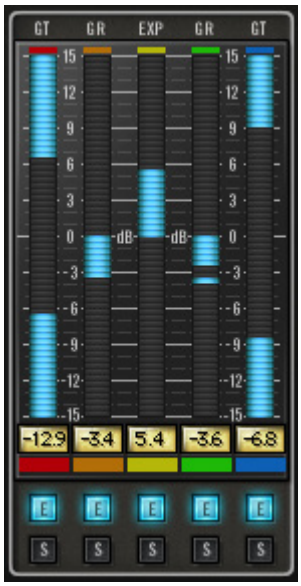
All band frequency values are always displayed. Values can be input directly using text entry.

If a value is entered that is outside of the minimum and maximum allowable value, the entry field will not accept the change and the value for the entry field will remain unchanged.

For the center frequencies, if a value is entered that is still within the acceptable min/max range but the center frequency can not reach the input value because it would require a change to the width, then the nearest allowable value is set. If a lower or greater center frequency value is desired (i.e., the original center frequency value attempt), the width of the band must be reduced first, then the center frequency adjusted again. It's easiest to see the cF limits at the given width by dragging the center frequency with the mouse.

> ***Tip:*** *To modify the frequency (and gain) values using the EQ Display, see Curve Control Points).*

Dynamics Meters



Realtime display of Precision Multiband dynamics processing is shown in the Dynamics Meters. This area also contains the band enable and band solo controls.

There is one vertical dynamics meter for each band. They are color coded to match the bands, and represent (from left to right) the LF, LMF, MF, HMF, and HF bands respectively. Dynamics processing for each band is indicated by light blue "LED-style" metering.

Zero dB is at the center of the meter, and the range is ±15 dB. Downward/negative metering indicates compression is occurring on the band. Upward/positive metering indicates expansion is occurring.

In Gate mode, there is simultaneous inward metering from the top and bottom to the center, which provides a visual "gate" that opens and closes along with the gate processing.

Dynamics Meters signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

Meter Labels

The labels above the Dynamics Meters reflect the mode that each band is in: GR (Gain Reduction) for compression, EXP for expansion, and GT for Gate.

Band Enable

Each band has an Enable button. The Enable button for the band is just below its dynamics meter.

The band is active when its Enable button is light blue. Click the button to toggle the active state of the band. Disabling bands does not reduce UAD CPU usage.

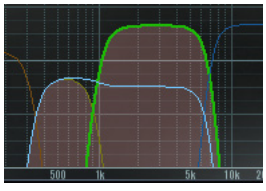
Band Solo

Each band has a Solo button. The Solo button for the band is just below its Enable button.

When one or more bands are in Solo mode, only the soloed bands can be heard and the other bands are muted.

The band is soloed when its Solo button is red. Click the button to toggle the solo state of the band. Soloing bands does not reduce UAD CPU usage.

Solo Display



When a band is in Solo mode, its curve in the EQ Display is highlighted.

> ***Tip:*** *In addition to the Solo buttons, you can also control+click a band in the EQ Display to put any band (or bands) into Solo mode.*

Global Controls

Input Level Meter

The stereo peak/hold Input Meter displays the signal level at the input of the plug-in. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

Input Level Knob

The Input Level knob controls the signal level that is input to the plug-in. Increasing the input may result in more processing, depending on the values of the band parameters. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB.

Mix

The Mix control determines the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (no dynamics processing) to 100% (wet, processed signal only). The default value is 100%.

Note that at 0% the signal is still being processed by the band splitter in the plug-in. In linear phase mode the splitter is inaudible, but in minimum phase mode you may hear a slight coloration of the signal at 0%.

Output Level Meter

The stereo peak/hold Output Meter displays the signal level at the output of the plug-in. Signal peaks are held for 3 seconds before resetting.

Output Level Knob

The Output Level knob controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB.

EQ Display Switch

The EQ Display mode can be static or dynamic. The EQ Display switch determines the active mode. Click the switch to toggle the mode.

EQ

In this mode, the EQ Display is static. Only the colored frequency bands are displayed.

Dynamic EQ

In Dynamic EQ mode, a light blue line in the EQ Display indicates the actual frequency response of the processor in realtime.

Phase Mode Switch

The filter bank mode of Precision Multiband can be specified with the Phase Mode switch. Click the switch to toggle the mode. The default mode is Linear.

Both filter bank modes achieve the magnitude response of a Linkwitz-Riley filter and provide perfect magnitude reconstruction.

Linear

Use linear phase mode when perfectly phase-coherent results are desired.

Minimum

Minimum phase mode provides a more “analog” (i.e., colored) sound and uses slightly less UAD DSP.

While the DSP savings are rather negligible, there is a functional advantage to Min phase mode. When Precision Multiband is used as a track compressor, Min phase mode provides the advantage of rapid response time of the filters for smooth automation and filter sweeps.

Power Switch

The Power Switch determines whether the plug-in is active. Click the toggle button or the UA logo to change the state.

When the Power switch is in the Off position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

When the plug-in is bypassed with this switch (but not by the host bypass), the I/O meters and the Input Level knob remain active.

Precision Reflection Engine

Small Room Ambience Simulator

Precision Reflection Engine is an ambience processor for simulating small acoustic spaces, tight reverb effects, and mix positioning cues. The plug-in simulates a wide range of shapes and sizes to subtly or drastically alter the source material's reflection patterns. Also included are other shapes that do not represent acoustic spaces, enabling non-realistic ambience and other special effects.

Precision Reflection Engine Features:

- 19 available shapes for a wide range of ambience characteristics
- Predelay times can be beat-matched with tempo synchronization
- Low DSP requirements for high instance counts in complex sessions

Precision Mix Rack Collection

Precision Reflection Engine is part of the Precision Mix Rack Collection, which provides modern, high-quality production tools for tracking and mixing. The Precision Mix Rack Collection includes the following UAD plug-ins:

- Precision Channel Strip
  Five-band EQ plus dynamics processing
- Precision Delay Mod
  High fidelity stereo delay processor with modulation
- Precision Delay Mod Long
  Same as Precision Delay Mod with longer delay times
- Precision Reflection Engine
  Small room ambience simulator

Precision Reflection Engine interface

Precision Reflection Engine Controls

The Precision Reflection Engine's simple controls make it easy to setup a wide range of room simulations and/or non-realistic ambience.

Predelay

Predelay sets the time between the original dry signal and onset of the processed reflections. The available range is 0 to 300 milliseconds.

> ***Note:*** *When Sync is enabled, predelay times are expressed as a fractional bar value.*

Size

Size defines the size of the reverberant space and determines the spacing of the reflections. The available range is from 1 to 99 meters.

Predelay/Size Interaction

When Predelay is set to its maximum value and the Size control is then moved to its maximum value, the Predelay value is decreased, and vice versa. This occurs because the maximum Predelay time has been reached; the available delay time is limited and is divided among the Predelay and Size values. Therefore, if the value of the Predelay or Size value is increased towards maximum when the other control is already high, its complementary setting may be reduced.

Recirculation

Recirculation controls the amount of processed reflections that are recirculated back to the processor input (i.e., feedback). Higher values increase the number of reverberations/ delays and intensity of the processed signal. In typical use, smaller values provide more realistic small space reflections. Larger values may be used creatively for special effects.

Recirculation allows both positive and negative values. With positive values, the polarity of the recirculated signal is in phase with the original source signal. With negative values, the polarity of the recirculated signal is inverted.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" label to quickly disable recirculation.*

Shape

Shape defines the shape of the reverberant space, and the resulting reflective patterns. To change the Shape, either click the selection arrows on each side of the Shape display, or click the Shape display and choose one of the 19 available shapes from the drop menu.

Available Shapes

Cube	Reverse Fan	Circular Plate
Box	A-Frame	Fractal
Corridor	Spring	Gate 1
Cylinder	Dual Spring	Gate 2
Dome	Square Plate	Reverse Gate
Horseshoe	Rectangular Plate	
Fan	Triangular Plate	

Sync

When Sync is enabled, Predelay times are synchronized to the host's tempo. Sync is active when the button is lit. Sync is disabled by default.

When Sync is off, Predelay times are expressed in milliseconds. When Sync is on, Predelay times are expressed as a fractional beat/bar value.

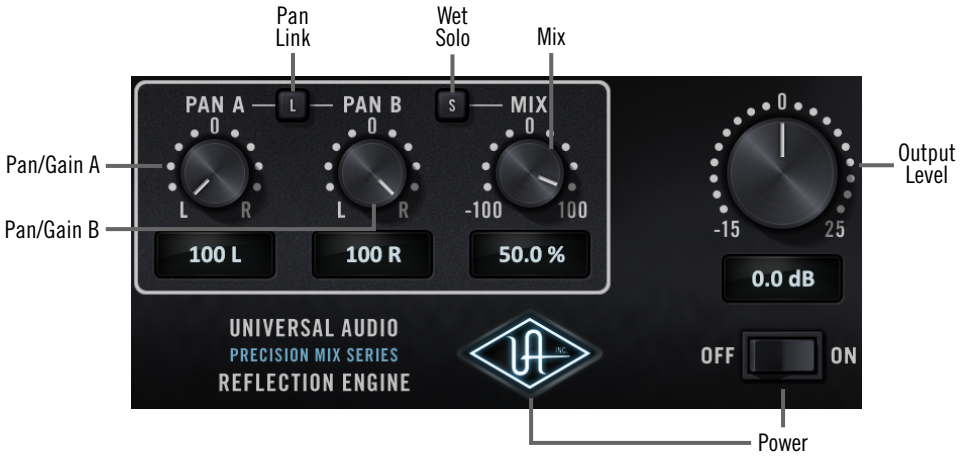
For complete details about this feature, see the "Tempo Synchronization" chapter in the UAD System Manual.

Low Pass

This control is a 6 dB per octave low pass (high cut) damping filter for reducing the amount of high frequency content in the processed signal. Rotate the control counter-clockwise for a darker ambience. Higher values yield a brighter ambience.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "OFF" label to quickly disable the filter. Click again to return to the previous value.*

Output Controls



Pan A, B

When the plug-in is used in a stereo-out configuration, these knobs are labeled PAN and determine the placement of the processed signal's output in the stereo panoramic field.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to quickly center the signal in the stereo field.*

Pan Link

When Pan Link is engaged (when the "L" button is lit), the Pan A and Pan B knobs are ganged, facilitating the ability to quickly narrow or spread the placement of the processed signals in the stereo panoramic field.

Note: *When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration, this button is disabled.*

Gain A, B

When the plug-in is used in a mono-out configuration, these knobs are labeled GAIN and determine the output level of the individual delay line.

Note: *The Gain A, B controls cannot be linked.*

Mix

Mix controls the balance between the original and the processed signal. The range is from 0% (dry, unprocessed) to 100% (wet, processed signal only).

Tip: *Click the "0" label to quickly set the value to 0.*

Mix allows both positive and negative values. With positive values, the polarity of the processed signal is in phase with the original source signal. With negative values, the polarity of the processed signal is inverted.

Mix control behavior is based on a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when dialing in lower values.

Note: *When Wet Solo is enabled, the Mix value is ignored.*

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo button puts the plug-in into "100% Wet" mode. When Wet Solo is enabled (when the "S" button is lit), it is the equivalent of setting the Mix control to 100% wet. The Mix value is ignored when Wet Solo is enabled.

Wet Solo is typically used when the plug-in is implemented in the "classic" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When the plug-in is used directly within a signal chain (such as in a channel insert), this control is typically deactivated.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per plug-in instance) control.*

Level

This knob adjusts the output level of the plug-in. The available range is -25 dB to +15 dB.

Tip: *Click "0" to quickly set the value to 0 dB.*

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, all parameter and meter values are no longer visible, and the UA logo is dimmed.

Tip: *Power can also be toggled by clicking the UA diamond logo.*

Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. Unlike the host application's plug-in disable switch, which can cause audio artifacts, the Power switch offers glitch-free bypass.

RS-1 Migration

As of UAD v8.2, Precision Reflection Engine replaces the original RS-1 plug-in. When a session containing RS-1 is opened in UAD v8.2 and later, RS-1 plug-in instances and settings are automatically migrated to the newer Precision Reflection Engine.

For additional information about how RS-1 migration is handled, see Migrating Prior Sessions in the CS-1 chapter.

Pultec Passive EQ Collection

Astonishingly accurate recreations of the “must-have” classic EQs

Building on a decade of the world’s most intensive modeling research, UA has recreated the famed Pultec EQ experience as plug-ins — ones that are nearly indistinguishable from the original analog hardware.

Now You Can:

- Use Pultec’s three most popular studio EQs on individual tracks or buses
- Provide the same Pultec analog “magic” for your tracks, making them sound better just by passing through
- Push the Pultec’s fully modeled transformer and tube-based amplifier sections
- Make difficult-to-isolate instruments and vocals breathtakingly clear without affecting neighboring frequencies
- Dial up extreme levels of EQ boost while staying natural and musical
- Give that signature airy, smooth-as-silk vintage tone to your master channel

The Pultec Story

When Ollie Summerland and Gene Shenk hand-crafted the first Pulse Techniques passive program equalizer in 1951, they had no idea they were transforming an industry. But like a Stradivarius, their little garage-built, made-to-order designs have been copied by nearly every EQ-maker for decades, and their early EQP-1A’s still bring thousands on the used market — if you’re lucky enough to find one.

The Pultec Passive EQ Plug-In Collection for UAD-2 and Apollo hardware includes the ultimate plug-in emulations of Pulse Techniques’ original passive EQs. With painstakingly modeled amplifier sections now onboard, the Pultec EQ Collection “breathes” like the original hardware.

Legendary Pultec Depth and Clarity

Going far beyond UA’s original standard-defining Pultec plug-ins, the EQP-1A faithfully models the overbuilt transformers and complex tube amplifiers of the original hardware. Simply running a full mix or single instrument through it imbues the track with the legendary Pultec analog magic. And, with these new plug-ins, you can actually hear the Pultec’s amplifier overload effects — just as you would with the hardware — unleashing a bounty of sublime results.

The Signature Effect on Low End

The Pultec EQP-1A's signature effect, unintended by its designers, is its ability to seemingly boost and cut the same frequency simultaneously. In reality, the filters actually alter adjacent frequencies, but the naturally interactive resonant dip has an amazing boosting and tightening effect — especially on bass guitar and kick drums.

Shaping Your Mids: The MEQ-5

The MEQ-5 Mid-Range Equalizer is the richly colorful tube-amplified companion to the EQP-1A. With two bands of midrange boost and one band of midrange dip, the MEQ-5 gets the very best out of the "power region" where guitars and vocals can make or break a mix. The unique band overlap and filter interaction unleash the vibrancy of these instruments in the track — without fighting your overall mix.

Tame The Sides: The HLF-3C

The never-before-available HLF-3C completes the Pultec Passive EQ Collection. This new plug-in adds 12 dB per octave low and high cut filters, for broad retro-tonal sculpting or bygone-era special effects. You can easily subtract the unnecessary frequencies in any instrument and sub-group so they stay wonderfully musical in the mix.

Artist Presets

In developing the Pultec EQ Collection, UA commissioned some of the biggest names in the business to develop custom presets. Check out John Paterno's (Steve Gadd, The Black Crowes, Bonnie Raitt) "Clear, Big-Body Acoustic" and his "U-47" and "U-67" settings. Also demo Jacknife Lee's (The Cars, U2, Taylor Swift) "Drum Buss Earth and Air" and "Acoustic Guitar Tamer."

> ***Note:*** *Presets created with the original Legacy plug-ins are incompatible with the equivalent newer model plug-ins.*

Pultec EQP-1A interface

Pultec MEQ-5 interface

Pultec HLF-3C interface

Pultec-Pro Legacy interface, which includes both EQP-1A and MEQ-5

Pultec Plug-In Family

The complete Pultec family is comprised of five individual plug-ins, as seen on the previous page. Each variation has its own unique sonic characteristics.

Pultec Passive EQ Collection

The Pultec Passive EQ Collection provides access to three historical and highly coveted revisions in the Pultec product line.

The plug-ins in the Pultec Passive EQ Collection benefit from the additional processing power afforded by the UAD-2, plus more than 10 years of UA's evolving sophistication designing plug-ins. While the original EQP-1A Legacy and Pultec-Pro Legacy plug-ins remain an excellent rendition of the hardware, the plug-ins in the newer Pultec Passive EQ Collection add the transformer and complex tube amplifier nonlinearities for even more authenticity. The sophisticated modeling technology used in the newer plug-in collection captures all of these tone-enhancing characteristics.

Pultec EQP-1A

Used on a myriad of recordings from the 1950's to today, the three-band, tube-amplified EQP-1A Program Equalizer has long been a studio staple of recording and mix engineers for its ability to bring out individual frequency ranges without significantly altering neighboring frequencies. This unit is equally famous for its ability to dial in seemingly dangerous amounts of boost and famously smooth-as-silk vintage tone. The EQP-1A is also known as the quintessential "magic" studio piece that makes audio simply sound better just by passing through it.

Pultec MEQ-5

The Pultec MEQ-5 Mid-Range Equalizer is the richly colorful tube-amplified companion piece to the EQP-1A. With two bands of midrange boost and one band of midrange dip, the MEQ-5 is designed to enhance and control the "power region" where sound energy is often concentrated, covering the finer tone requirements in the Pultec Collection with an abundance of band overlap and filter interaction.

Pultec HLF-3C

The HLF-3C completes the Pultec Passive EQ Collection. This plug-in has 12 dB per octave low and high cut filters, providing broad retro-tonal sculpting or bygone-era special effects, without the inconvenience of insertion loss found with the unamplified passive hardware.

Pultec Legacy

The Pultec EQP-1A Legacy and Pultec-Pro Legacy plug-ins are the original versions of our Pultec emulations that run on both UAD-1 and UAD-2 devices. They still have a great sound and are very usable, especially when there are not enough DSP resources to use the second-generation versions in the newer Pultec Passive EQ Collection.

To accommodate the limited DSP resources of the original UAD-1, the transformer and I/O distortion characteristics were not modeled in these plug-ins. This makes these legacy versions especially useful in situations where less distortion, and less DSP usage, is desirable.

Operational Overview

The Pultec EQP-1A/MEQ-5 combination is still standard fare in recording studios and was once widely used in mastering sessions. Whether used independently or together, mono or stereo, the Pultec Collection provides a complete vintage EQ palette for individual sources such as bass or kick drums, subgroups such rhythm, horn or string sections, or on the master bus. The EQP-1A's 16 KCS high frequency setting is famous for adding "air" to master sources.

Although unintended by its designers, the Pultec EQP-1A is coveted for its unique ability to boost and cut the same low frequency simultaneously, creating a tightening effect as a naturally interactive resonant dip near the selected frequency. This has the sonic effect of simultaneously tightening and boosting bass frequencies. Select the bass frequency then adjust the balance of Boost and Cut to tune the effect.

EQP-1A Insertion Boost

The original EQP-1A hardware unit has an inherent level boost of approximately 1.13 dB when it is in the signal path. This inherent boost is present in the EQP-1A plug-in models as well.

Frequency Conventions

The original Pultec hardware used frequency unit names that were conventional before the frequency unit of "Hertz" was widely adopted. The UAD Pultec plug-ins adopt the original frequency unit name conventions.

CPS is an acronym for Cycles Per Second, which is now more commonly referred to as Hertz and abbreviated as Hz. KCS is an acronym for KiloCycles per Second, which is now more commonly referred to as KiloHertz and abbreviated as kHz.

Pultec EQP-1A Controls

Control Grouping

The EQP-1A can control three frequency bands simultaneously, using three groups of interacting parameters.

The first group adjusts the low frequencies and has three controls: boost, attenuation, and frequency select. The second group adjusts the high frequencies and has three controls: boost, bandwidth, and frequency select. The third group also adjusts the highs and has two controls: attenuation amount and attenuation frequency select.

The placement and grouping of the sections and their related controls are shown below.

Control grouping within the Pultec EQP-1A

EQ Enable

This is the EQ enable control. Like the original hardware, the signal is still colored even when this switch is in the out (down) position, because the signal is still passing through the I/O circuitry. If a true bypass is desired, use the Bypass/Gain knob.

Bypass/Gain

The function of this control differs between the newer EQP-1A and the Legacy version, as described below.

Pultec EQP-1A

This dual purpose knob is an output gain control, and the plug-in bypass control. The available output gain range is ±12 dB.

Rotate the control fully counter-clockwise to disable plug-in processing and reduce UAD DSP load (DSP load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OFF text label or the red power lamp to toggle between bypass and the previous value. Click the "0" text label to set the gain to 0 dB.*

Pultec EQP-1A Legacy

This is the plug-in bypass control. The knob can be used to compare the processed settings to that of the original signal, or to disable the plug-in to reduce UAD DSP load (DSP load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Note: *Output gain is unavailable on the Pultec EQP-1A Legacy plug-in.*

Low Frequency Controls

Low Frequency

This switch determines the frequency of the low shelf portion of the equalizer. Four frequencies are available: 20, 30, 60, and 100 CPS.

Tip: *To cycle through the available values, click the CPS text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. This function is unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

LF Boost

This knob determines the amount of low shelf gain to be applied to the frequency set by the CPS switch.

LF Attenuation

This knob (ATTEN) determines the amount of low shelf cut to be applied to the frequency set by the CPS switch.

Background

In the documentation supplied with hardware version of the EQP-1A, it is recommended that both Boost and Attenuation not be applied simultaneously because in theory, they would cancel each other out. In actual use however, the Boost control has slightly higher gain than the Attenuation has cut, and the frequencies they affect are slightly different too. The EQ curve that results when boost and attenuation are simultaneously applied to the low shelf is an additional feature.

High Boost Controls

High Frequency

This switch determines the frequency of the high boost portion of the equalizer. Seven frequencies are available: 3, 4, 5, 8, 10, 12, and 16 KCS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the KCS text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. These shortcuts are unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

HF Bandwidth (Q)

This knob sets the proportion of frequencies surrounding the center frequency (determined by the KCS switch) to be affected by the high boost (this is a bandwidth control). Lower values yield a narrower band and effect fewer frequencies.

HF Boost

This knob controls sets the amount of gain for the high frequency portion of the equalizer.

High Attenuation Controls

HF Attenuation Frequency

This switch (ATTEN SEL) determines the frequency of the high frequency attenuator. Three frequencies are available: 5, 10, and 20 KCS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the ATTEN SEL text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. These shortcuts are unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

HF Attenuation

This knob (ATTEN) determines the amount of high shelf cut to be applied to the frequency set by the Attenuation Selector switch.

Pultec MEQ-5 Controls

The MEQ-5 can control three frequency bands simultaneously, using three groups of interacting parameters.

The first group adjusts the low-mid frequencies and has two controls: frequency select and boost. The second group adjusts the mid frequencies and has two controls: frequency select and attenuation. The third group adjusts high-mids and has two controls: frequency select and boost. The placement and grouping of the sections and their related controls are shown below.

Control grouping within the Pultec MEQ-5

EQ Enable

This toggle switch is the EQ enable control. Like the original hardware, the signal is still colored even when this switch is in the out (down) position, because the signal is still passing through the I/O circuitry. If a true bypass is desired, use the Bypass/Gain knob (MEQ-5) or the Enable switch (Pultec-Pro Legacy).

Low Peak Controls

LM Frequency

This switch determines the frequency of the low-midrange portion of the equalizer. Five frequencies are available: 200, 300, 500, 700, and 1000 CPS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the PEAK text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. These shortcuts are unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

LM Boost

This knob determines the amount of low-midrange gain to be applied to the frequency set by the low-midrange frequency selector.

Dip Controls

Mid Frequency

This switch determines the frequency of the midrange portion of the equalizer. Eleven frequencies are available: 200 CPS, 300 CPS, 500 CPS, 700 CPS, 1 KCS, 1.5 KCS, 2 KCS, 3 KCS, 4 KCS, 5 KCS, and 7 KCS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the DIP text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. These shortcuts are unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

Mid Dip

This knob determines the amount of midrange cut (attenuation) to be applied to the frequency set by the midrange frequency selector.

High Peak Controls

HM Frequency

This switch determines the frequency of the high-midrange portion of the equalizer. Five frequencies are available: 1.5, 2, 3, 4, and 5 KCS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the PEAK text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse. These shortcuts are unavailable with the Legacy version of the plug-in.*

HM Boost

This knob determines the amount of high-midrange gain to be applied to the frequency set by the high-mid frequency selector.

Bypass/Gain

This is dual purpose knob is an output gain control, and a plug-in bypass control. The available output gain range is ±12 dB.

Rotate the control fully counter-clockwise to bypass plug-in processing and reduce UAD DSP load (DSP load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OFF text label or the red power lamp to toggle between bypass and the previous value. Click the "0" text label to set the gain to 0 dB.*

Pultec HLF-3C Controls

Unity Gain

The Pultec HLF-3C hardware unit is a true passive design; there are no input/output amplifiers and it does not require any external power. As a result, there is an inherent loss of signal level when using the HLF-3C hardware.

The Pultec HLF-3C plug-in compensates for this inherent signal loss for simplified use in the modern era; it has unity gain upon insertion (there is no insertion loss until one or both of the cut filters is engaged).

The HLF-3C interface is very simple and includes only three controls.

Enable

This toggle switch is the plug-in bypass control. When in the down position (bypassed), plug-in processing is disabled altogether. The plug-in is engaged with the switch is in the up position.

This switch can be used to compare the processed settings to that of the original signal, or to bypass plug-in processing to reduce UAD DSP load (DSP load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Note:*** *The behavior of this toggle switch differs from the other UAD Pultec plug-ins. Because the HLF-3C hardware is not internally amplified, there is no I/O circuitry modeling to maintain when the EQ portion of the circuit is bypassed (the entire hardware unit is the EQ portion).*

Low Cut

This rotary switch specifies the cutoff frequency of the low cut filter. Eleven frequencies are available: 50, 80, 100, 150, 250, 500, 750, 1000, 1500, and 2000 CPS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the CPS text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse.*

High Cut

This rotary switch specifies the cutoff frequency of the high cut filter. Eleven frequencies are available: 1.5, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, and 15 KCS.

> ***Tip:*** *To cycle through the available values, click the KCS text label, or shift+click the text label to cycle through available values in reverse.*

History

In 1951, Pulse Techniques introduced the first passive Program Equalizer, the EQP-1. The passive EQ filter designs were originally licensed from Western Electric. Founders Ollie Summerland and Gene Shenk made up the Teaneck, New Jersey operation of Pultec. These two men comprised the engineering, marketing, sales and production staff for the entire history of the company, and made every item to order, all by hand. With the EQP-1A, Pultec improved the original design with tube amplification to overcome the typical insertion loss of passive equalizers. The EQP family of EQs would see many iterations, but the fundamental design would be Pultec's flagship product until the company's closure in the early 80s.

The Pultec Passive EQ Collection original hardware

Pure Plate Reverb

UA's renowned plate reverb modeling in an easy-to-use plug-in.

The Pure Plate Reverb plug-in provides UA's revolutionary plate reverb emulation in a simple, affordable package — with all of the essential features. By harnessing the musical, deep, organic sound of this classic effect, Pure Plate Reverb gives you warmth and texture to your sources that only plate reverb can provide.

Now You Can:

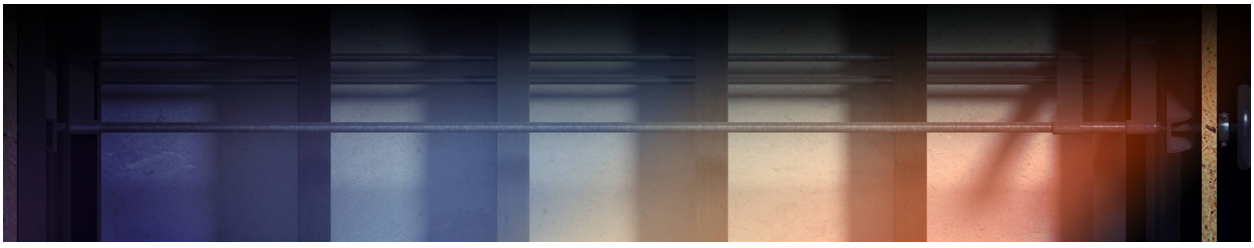
- Easily add natural depth and shimmer to vocals and instruments
- Sculpt with classic plate reverb controls like mechanical damping and input filters
- Quickly tweak the perfect reverb tone with Bass and Treble controls
- Mix with artist presets from Patrick Carney (The Black Keys), Richard Chycki (Rush, Dream Theater) Chuck Zwicky (Prince, The Time) and more

Groundbreaking Reverb Emulation Technology

The Pure Plate Reverb plug-in was engineered by the modeling experts at Universal Audio to be a no-compromise emulation of this classic effect. By capturing all of the sonic and mechanical nuances of the steel plate, transducers, and dampers, the Pure Plate Reverb plug-in gives vocals, guitars, strings, and synths a lush, satisfying space that gently flatters any source.

Easy to Use

Whether you're tracking in realtime using an Apollo interface, or mixing in your DAW, Pure Plate Reverb's intuitive controls deliver musical results for beginners and pros alike. The ultra-effective Baxandall-type Bass and Treble controls sculpt the timbre of the reverb, while the Low Cut Hz input filters and Pre Delay further season the reverb's character. Finally, the Balance control lets you place your "space" perfectly in the stereo spectrum. No matter the source, Pure Plate Reverb gives you the rich analog dimension and depth of an old-school plate reverb system.



Features:

- Instantly musical and familiar sound of mechanical plate reverb used on records from the ’50s to today
- A one-stop reverb that sounds right on any mix, any source, any genre
- Simple control set, easy to dial in
- Low frequency input filtering, Pre Delay, Decay, two-band shelving EQ, Balance, and Dry/Wet mix
- Includes Artist Presets from Patrick Carney (The Black Keys), Richard Chycki (Rush, Dream Theater) Chuck Zwicky (Prince, The Time) and more

Pure Plate Reverb interface

Operational Overview

This section provides a general overview of Pure Plate Reverb operational concepts. For specific details about individual controls, see Pure Plate Reverb Controls later in this chapter.

Classic Plate Reverb Sound with No Frills

Pure Plate Reverb delivers a shimmering, authentic plate reverb sound with a minimum of fuss. It's easy to take control of the damper mechanism to set reverb duration, and shape the results with the provided tone controls.

Predelay allows for adding distance between your dry signal and the arrival of the wet signal.. The two-position Low Cut Filter banishes rumble and helps govern the role of bass frequencies in the reverb output.

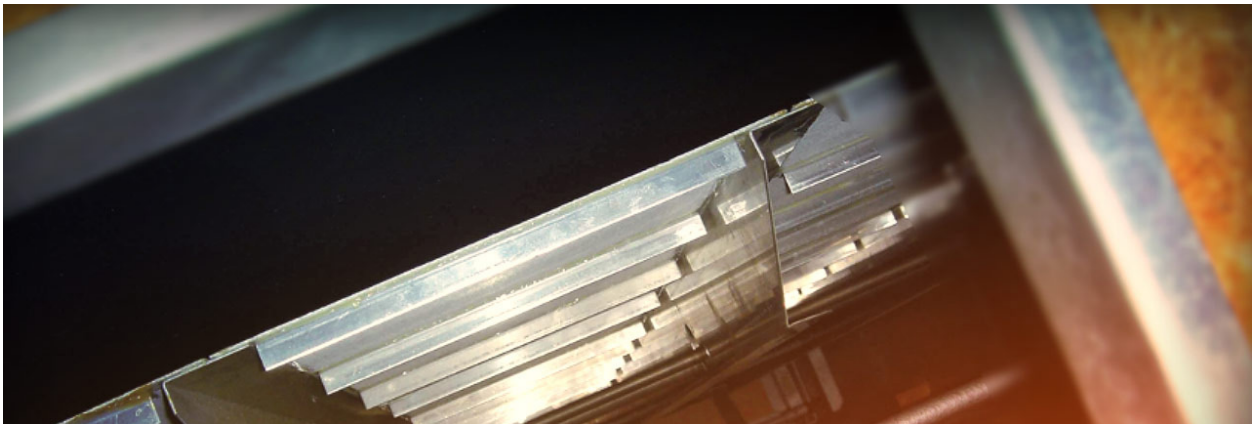
On the output, a wet/dry Mix control lets you blend your source and reverb to just the right amount, and the Wet Solo switch lets you disable the dry signal instantly, for easy use on effects returns. The Balance control lets you set the relative volumes of the left and right reverb signals for effect positioning.

Artist Presets

Pure Plate includes presets provided by prominent artists. 32 artist presets are included in the internal factory bank that can be accessed via the DAW application's preset menu. Additional presets are also included that can be accessed via the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar or Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

Benno de Goeij	John Paterno
Chris Coady	Patrick Carney
Chuck Zwicky	Peter Mokran
Ian Boxill	Richard Chycki

Artists that have provided presets for Pure Plate Reverb



Pure Plate Reverb Controls

The Pure Plate Reverb interface is an amalgam of controls normally found at the plate amplifier itself and the remote damper controls, plus a few DAW-friendly controls added for convenience.

Low Cut Filter

The Low Cut Filter is a dedicated pre-plate equalizer that is used to reduce low frequency content in the reverb. On hardware plate systems, this setting is rarely modified because it is found at the plate amplifier unit itself and is not easily accessed from the control room.

When the LOW CUT Hz control is set to OFF, no filtering occurs. When set to 90 or 180, a 12 dB per octave high pass filter is applied to the reverb signal, with its corner frequency set to the associated value.

Predelay

This continuously variable slider sets the amount of time between the dry signal and the onset of the reverb. As Predelay is increased, the perceived size of the reverb "room" increases. The available range is 0 to 250 milliseconds.

Reverb Time (Decay)

The Reverb Time meter displays the current reverb duration, in seconds. Reverb Time adjusts the amount of physical damping applied to the acoustic plate, thus changing the reverb time. The available range is from 0.5 to 5.5 seconds, in intervals of 0.1 second.

Any of these techniques can be used to adjust Reverb Time:

- Click the "–" or "+" damper buttons on either side of the Reverb Time meter
- Click or drag anywhere on the Reverb Time meter's indication needle
- Drag horizontally anywhere on the plate damper display animation (at the right of the control panel)

Tone Controls

Bass and treble tone control filtering can be cut or boosted for flexible tonal shaping.

Note: EQ is applied only to the reverb (wet) signal. It does not affect the dry signal.

Bass

This parameter sets the amount of low boost or attenuation. The available range is ±12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return Bass to its center (unity) position.*

Treble

This parameter sets the amount of high boost or attenuation. The available range is ±12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return Treble to its center (unity) position.*

Balance

This control balances the level between the left and right channels of the reverb return. Rotating the knob clockwise attenuates the left channel, and vice versa.

Note: *Click the "C" text label to return Balance to its center position.*

Mix

The Mix control determines the balance between the original and processed signals. The range is from Dry (0%, unprocessed) to Wet (100%, processed signal only).

This control uses a logarithmic scale to provide increased resolution when selecting lower values. When the knob is in the 12 o'clock position, the mix value is 15%.

Note: *If Wet Solo is active, adjusting this knob has no effect.*

Wet Solo

The Wet Solo toggle switch sets Pure Plate Reverb to only output the effected signal. When Wet Solo is on, it is the equivalent of setting the Mix knob value to 100% wet.

Wet Solo defaults to On, which is optimal when using Pure Plate Reverb in the "classic" reverb configuration (placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends). When Pure Plate Reverb is used on a channel insert, this control can be deactivated to blend dry and wet signals to taste.

Power

This toggle switch enables or disables the plug-in. Power can be used to compare the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in which reduces (but not eliminates) the UAD DSP load (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Tip: *Click the Output Meter to toggle the power state.*

Output Meter

The vintage-style VU Meter represents the plug-in output level. It is active when the Power switch is on, and slowly returns to minimum when Power is switched off. The Output Meter is illuminated when the plug-in is enabled, and dark when disabled.

Reverberation
f=500cps
4
3
2
1sec

Raw Distortion

A Classic Grinding Distortion

Equal parts warm overdrive and raunchy grind, the Pro Co Rat distortion pedal has been a vital cog in countless guitar rigs since the late `70s. From Jeff Beck to John Scofield, Thom Yorke to Graham Coxon, players of all stripes revere the Rat's tonal range, smoothness, and heaping amounts of gain.

Modeled from a vintage early `80s Pro Co Rat, the Raw Distortion plug-in for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces is a faithful emulation of this legendary distortion box, delivering all of the grit, dynamics, and raunch of the original hardware.

Now You Can:

- Track through a faithful emulation of the incomparable Pro Co Rat with Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD
- Dial-in subtle grind or thick, saturated tones with the same pedal used by Jeff Beck, Johnny Greenwood, and Joe Walsh
- Add interesting overdriven textures to guitars, synths, drums, and vocals at mix-down with any UAD-2 hardware
- Get the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points for touch-sensitive tones, thanks to Unison™ technology for Apollo interfaces

Trapping Raw for a Faithful Emulation

The Raw Distortion plug-in for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces captures the original hardware's unique, single op-amp circuit as well as its famous "backwards" passive tone filter. This powerful tone control is at the heart of the Rat's versatility, as it adds tube-like warmth to single-coils while also giving humbucker-equipped guitars an ultra-musical "slice" to stand out in a mix.

Subtle Bite or Grinding Gain

Just like the original Rat, the Raw Distortion for UAD-2 and Apollo excels at giving your tones a touch of "hair" — perfect for texture on chords — or all-out saturation and distortion. This versatility affords you bountiful sonic options with any guitar you plug in.

Unison Technology for Authentic Tone, Touch, and Feel

The interaction of your instrument and the first pedal in your signal chain is an essential ingredient to capturing a stompbox's unique character and tone. Thanks to Universal Audio's Unison technology, your guitar gets the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of a vintage Pro Co Rat when you plug in to an Apollo Twin, DUO, or QUAD. This gives you the true tone, feel, and response of the original hardware.

Use the Raw on Any Source

The Raw Distortion's plug-in's singular voice can also be turned loose on bass, drums, vocals, or synths, giving you a unique tone sculpting tool. Give a subtle edge to a vocal or string patch, or bury a drum bus in a sea of molten distortion for tracks that defy description.

Raw Distortion interface

Using Raw

Standard DAW Inserts

In much the same way as some premier recording and mix engineers use stomp boxes in a mix, Raw Distortion can be used for creative purposes on any source signal by placing it in any plug-in insert within a DAW. For typical guitar tones, follow the pedal with a guitar amp emulation (as one would with a hardware guitar pedal and amp).

Because the plug-in accurately models the original hardware's high-impedance operating levels, precautions may need to be taken to avoid undesirable input clipping.

> ***Note:*** *Since Hi-Z devices typically operate at much lower signal levels than line-level devices, signal levels being routed into the pedal may need to be reduced to avoid undesirable input distortion.*

Unison™ Technology with Apollo

Raw features Unison technology for integration with the high-impedance input hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's Hi-Z inputs inherit all of the unique circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of the original guitar pedal.

Hi-Z Signal Routing

For the most authentic stompbox tones, plug any high-impedance instrument (guitar, bass, etc.) into Apollo's Hi-Z instrument input and place the pedal plug-in into the unique Unison INPUT insert on the same channel within Apollo's Console application. If desired, follow the Unison pedal plug-in with another pedal or guitar amp emulation Console's standard insert slots.

This Hi-Z workflow enables near-zero latency monitoring or recording with the same input characteristics and dynamic response as the original pedal.

> ***Note:*** *This plug-in can be Unison-enabled with Apollo's Mic or Line inputs. However, because the original hardware has a high-impedance instrument input only, Apollo's Hi-Z input and Unison insert will provide the most accurate sound and experience of the hardware pedal that is modeled.*

> ***Important:*** *Unison is active only when the pedal plug-in is placed in the unique INPUT insert available on Hi-Z inputs within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Tactile Control

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the Distortion, Volume, and Output controls available within the Unison pedal plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The control being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the control levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Raw Controls

Distortion

Distortion varies the amount of signal overdrive. Rotate the control clockwise to increase distortion and sustain.

Filter

Filter adjusts the high-frequency content of the signal. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the filter amount, which reduces treble content.

Volume

Volume adjusts the pedal's modeled output level. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the volume.

Power

The stomp switch toggles between plug-in enable and disable. Click the switch to toggle the Power state. Like the original hardware, this is a true-bypass control. When disabled, the signal is not colored by the circuitry.

Tip: *Power can also be toggled by clicking the UA diamond logo.*

Output

Output controls the clean (unmodeled) gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to return the control to zero dB.*

Raw Distortion is not affiliated with, sponsored nor endorsed by any companies currently using the Pro Co Rat name. The Raw Distortion name is used solely to identify the classic effect emulated by Universal Audio's product.

RealVerb Pro

RealVerb Pro is a flexible, natural sounding reverb that is based on our own unique set of algorithms. Allowing you to design the room just as you hear it, the RealVerb Pro goes beyond the barriers of simply big/small or dark/bright, giving you our trademark, distortion-free, smoothing diffusion control and ultra-long reverb tail.

RealVerb Pro uses complex spatial and spectral reverberation technology to accurately model an acoustic space. What that gets you is a great sounding reverb with the ability to customize a virtual room and pan within the stereo spectrum.

RealVerb Pro interface

Room Shape and Material

RealVerb Pro provides two graphic menus each with preset Room Shapes and Materials. You blend the shapes and material composition and adjust the room size according to the demands of your mix. Controls are provided to adjust the thickness of the materials — even inverse thickness for creative effects. Through some very clever engineering, the blending of room shapes, size and materials may be performed in real-time without distortion, pops, clicks or zipper noise. Once you've created your custom room presets, you can even morph between two presets in real-time, with no distortion.

Resonance, Timing and Diffusion

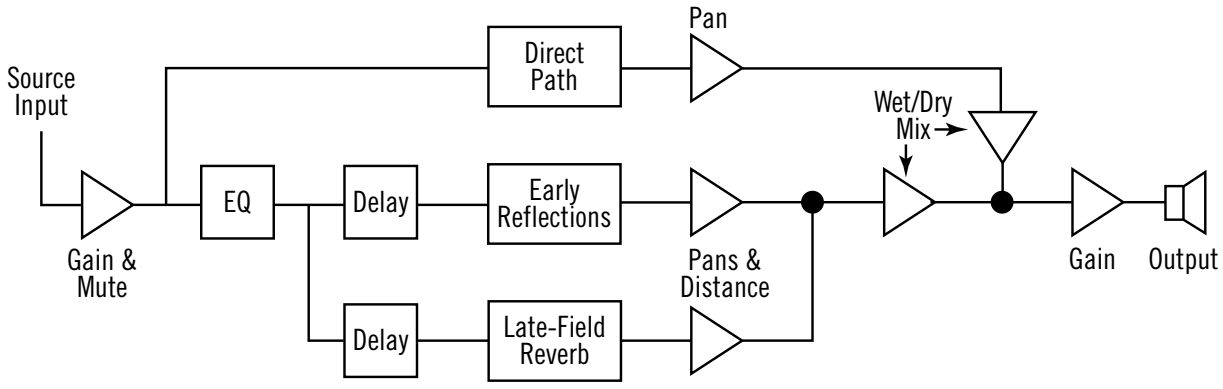
RealVerb Pro also includes intuitive graphic control over equalization, timing and diffusion patterns. To maximize the impact of your recording, we put independent control over the direct path, early reflections and late-field reverberation in your hands.

Stereo Soundfield Panning

Capitalizing on the psychoacoustic technology that went into the design of RealVerb 5.1, we have incorporated some of those principals into RealVerb Pro. Our proprietary Stereo Soundfield Panning allows you to spread and control the signal between stereo speakers creating an impression of center and width. The ability to envelop your listener in a stereo recording is an entirely new approach to reverb design.

Signal Flow

The diagram below illustrates the signal flow for RealVerb Pro. The input signal is equalized and applied to the early reflection generator and the late-field reverberation unit. The resulting direct path, early reflection, and late-field reverberation are then independently positioned in the soundfield.



RealVerb Pro signal flow

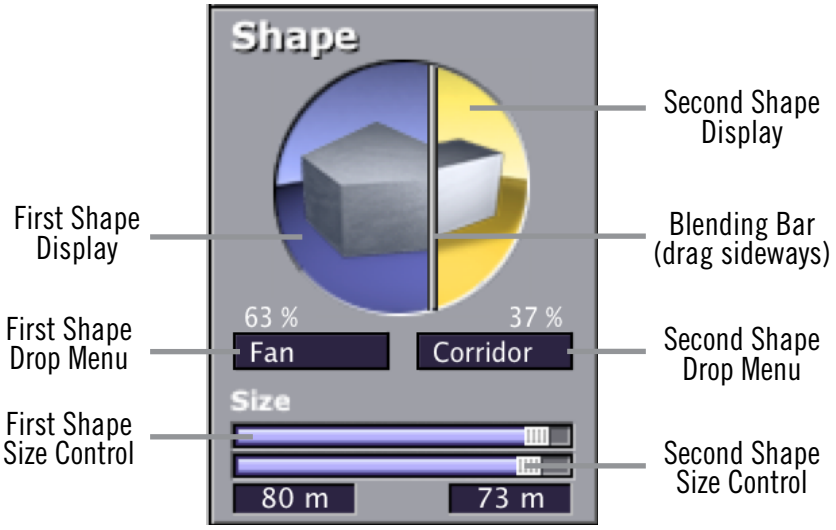
Reflected energy equalization is controlled with the Resonance panel. The pattern of early reflections (their relative timing and amplitudes) is determined by the room shapes and sizes in the Shape panel; early reflection predelay and overall energy is specified at the top of the Timing panel. The Material panel is used to select relative late-field decay rates as a function of frequency. The overall late field decay rate is chosen along with the room diffusion, late-field predelay, and late-field level at the bottom of the Timing panel. Finally, the Positioning panel contains controls for the placement of the source, early reflections, and late-field reverberation.

Spectral Characteristics

The Shape and Material panels specify the room shape, room size, room material and thickness. These room properties affect the spectral characteristics of the room's reflections.

Shape and Size

The pattern of early reflections in a reverb is determined by the room shape and size. RealVerb Pro lets you specify two room shapes and sizes that can be blended to create a hybrid of early reflection patterns. There are 15 room shapes available, including several plates, springs, and classic rooms; room sizes can be adjusted from 1-99 meters. The two rooms can be blended from 0-100%. All parameters can be adjusted dynamically in real time without causing distortion or other artifacts in the audio.



RealVerb Pro Shape panel

To configure the room shape and size:

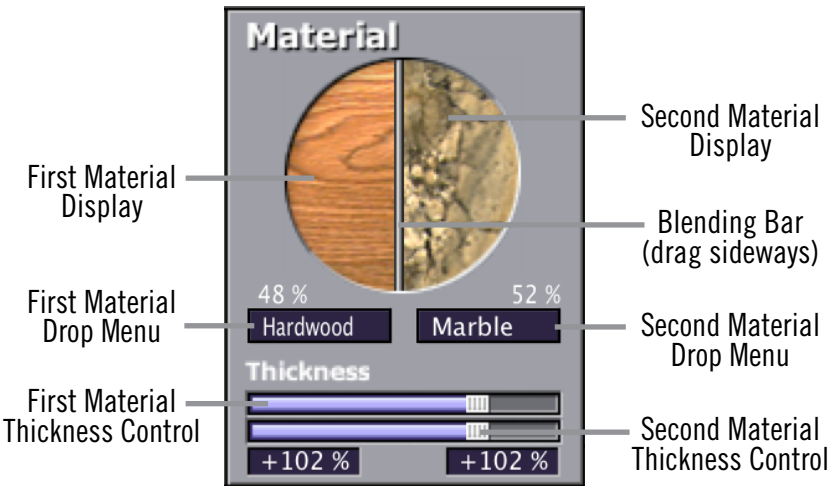
1. Select a room shape from the first (left) drop menu. The selected shape is displayed in the left side of the Shape circle. Adjust the room size with the top horizontal slider.
2. Select a room shape from the second (right) drop menu. The selected shape appears in the right side of the Shape circle. Adjust the room size with the bottom horizontal slider.
3. Blend the early reflection patterns of the two rooms by dragging the Blending bar. The relative percentages of the two rooms appear above their drop menus. Drag to the right to emphasize the first room shape; drag to the left to emphasize the second room shape. To use only one room shape, drag the Blending bar so the shape is set to 100%.

The resulting early reflection pattern is displayed at the top of the Timing panel, where each reflection is represented by a yellow vertical line with a height indicating its arrival energy, and a location indicating its arrival time.

Material and Thickness

The material composition of an acoustical space affects how different frequency components decay over time. Materials are characterized by their absorption rates as a function of frequency — the more the material absorbs a certain frequency, the faster that frequency decays. RealVerb Pro lets you specify two room materials with independent thicknesses, which can be blended to create a hybrid of absorption and reflection properties. For example, to simulate a large glass house, a blend of glass and air could be used.

There are 24 real-world materials provided, including such diverse materials as brick, marble, hardwood, water surface, air, and audience. Also included are 12 artificial materials with predefined decay rates. The thickness of the materials can be adjusted to exaggerate or invert their absorption and reflection properties. For a description of the different room materials, see About the Materials.



RealVerb Pro Material panel

Note: *While materials are used to control decay rates as a function of frequency, the overall decay rate of the late-field reverberation is controlled in the Timing panel.*

To configure the room material and thickness:

1. Select a room material from the first (left) drop menu. The selected material is displayed in the left side of the Material circle.
2. Adjust the thickness for the first material with the top horizontal slider:
   - A default thickness of +100% yields normal, real-world decays for the material.
   - Thicknesses beyond the default (up to +200%) exaggerate how the frequencies are absorbed and reflected.
   - Negative thicknesses invert the response of the material. If the material normally absorbs high frequencies (causing them to decay quickly) and reflects low frequencies (causing them to decay slowly), a negative thickness will instead absorb low frequencies (causing them to decay quickly) and reflect high frequencies (causing them to decay slowly).
   - A thickness of 0% yields decay rates that are not affected by the material.
3. Select a material from the second (right) drop menu. The selected material is displayed in the right side of the Material circle. Adjust the material thickness with the bottom horizontal slider.
4. Blend the absorption properties of the two materials by dragging the Blending bar. The relative amount of each material, expressed as a percentage, appears above their respective drop menu. Drag the Blending bar to the right to emphasize the first material, and drag it to the left to emphasize the second material. To use only one room material, drag the Blending bar so the material is set to 100%.

About the Materials

Some materials absorb high frequencies and reflect low frequencies, while other materials absorb low frequencies and reflect high frequencies. This characteristic is determined by the material surface and density.

Fiberglass, for example, absorbs high frequencies. When high frequencies strike fiberglass they bounce around inside the fibers and lose much of their energy.

At a thickness of 100%, fiberglass rolls off the high frequencies, a little bit each millisecond. After a while the high frequencies dissipate and the low frequencies linger. If we were to take fiberglass and increase its thickness to +200%, the high frequencies would roll off even faster. At +200%, this high frequency decay happens at twice its normal rate, producing a very heavy reverberant tail. At -200%, a very “sizzly” late field is created.

Some materials, such as plywood, naturally absorb low frequencies while reflecting high frequencies. Since plywood is usually very flat with little surface texture to capture high frequencies, high frequencies tend to be reflected. At +100%, the reverberation produced is very sizzly and increasingly bright. At -100%, it is very heavy.

Keeping this in mind, if you look at the graphics in the material control panel, you can get a sense of how chosen materials, material blend, and thickness will affect the decay rate as a function of frequency. Hard materials that have lots of small cavities (Brick, Gravel, Plaster on Brick) and soft materials (Carpet, Grass, Soil) tend to absorb high frequencies. Flat, somewhat flexible materials (Heavy Plate Glass, Hardwood, Seats) tend to reflect high frequencies. Marble is the one material that tends to uniformly reflect all frequencies.

You may have noticed the artificial materials the top of the Materials menu. These are materials designed to have predictable behavior and can be very handy for achieving a desired reverberation preset when you know what decay rates you desire. All these materials preferentially absorb high frequencies; they give the selected decay time at low frequencies, and a much shorter decay time at high frequencies. The frequency in each graphic is the transition frequency, the frequency at which the decay rate is halfway between the low-frequency and high-frequency values. At 100% thickness, the ratio of low-frequency to high-frequency decay times is 10:1. This means that the high frequencies will decay 10 times faster than the low frequencies. At 200% thickness, this is multiplied by two (high frequencies decay at 20x the rate of the low frequencies). At negative 100%, the sense of low frequency and high frequency is swapped --low frequencies decay 10 times faster than the high frequencies.

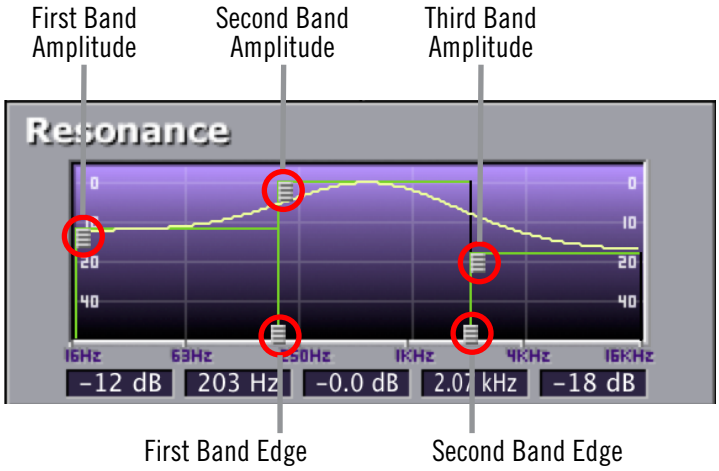
Many hardware and software reverbs tend to compensate for the high frequency absorption that air provides. RealVerb Pro instead provides “Air” as a material. If you do not choose to use Air as one of the materials, you can effectively compensate for the high frequency absorption properties of air with the Resonance filters. Set the right-hand Transition Frequency slider to 4.794 kHz, and bring the level down about -10 dB to -15 dB for large to huge rooms, and down about -4 dB to -9 dB for small to medium rooms.

The following table classifies the materials under two headings: those that tend to reflect high frequencies, and those that tend to absorb them. They are listed in order of their transition frequencies, from lowest to highest.

Materials with high-frequency absorption	Materials with high-frequency reflection
Audience	Heavy Plate Glass
Cellulose	Plywood
Drapery	Hardwood
Plaster on Concrete Block	Glass Window
Soil	Cork
Gravel	Seats
Paint on Concrete Block	Marble
Carpet	Concrete Block
Fiberglass	Linoleum
Grass	
Plaster on Brick	
Water Surface	
Sand	
Brick	
Air	

Resonance (Equalization)

The Resonance panel has a three-band parametric equalizer that can control the overall frequency response of the reverb, affecting its perceived brilliance and warmth. By adjusting its Amplitude and Band-edge controls, the equalizer can be configured as shelf or parametric EQs, as well as hybrids between the two.



RealVerb Pro Resonance panel

To configure the reverb's Resonance as a parametric EQ:

1. Drag the Band Edge controls horizontally for the second and third bands to the desired frequencies. The first band is preset to 16 Hz. The frequencies for all three bands are indicated in the text fields at the bottom of the Resonance panel.
2. Adjust the amplitude of the bands (from -60 dB to 0 dB) by dragging their Amplitude controls either up or down. The amplitude values for all three bands are indicated in the text fields at the bottom of the Resonance panel. The shape of the EQ curve is displayed in the Resonance graph.

To configure the reverb's Resonance as a high-shelf EQ:

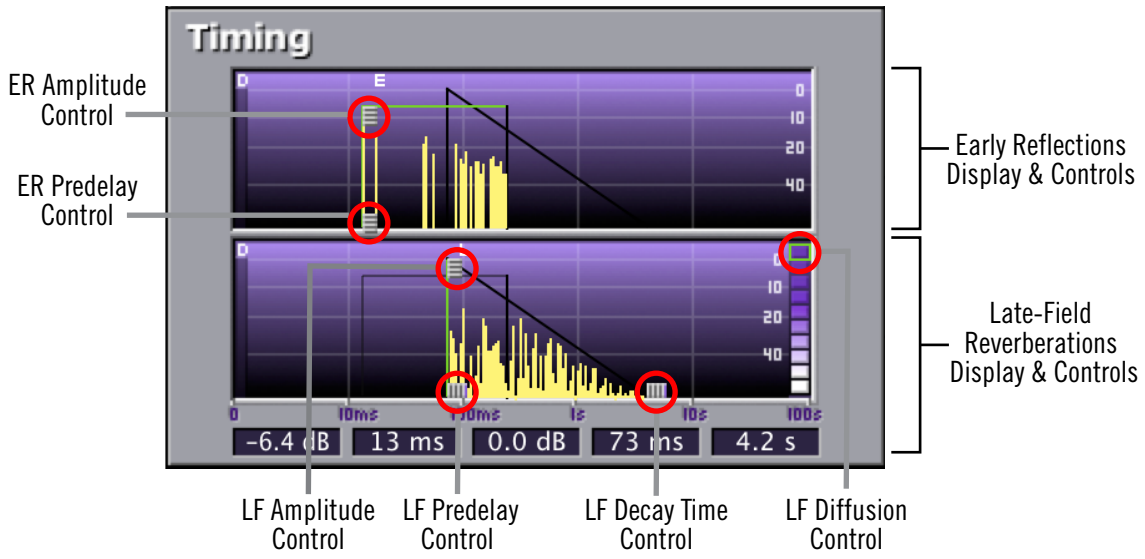
1. Drag the Amplitude control for the second EQ band all the way down.
2. Drag the Amplitude controls for the first and third bands all the way up, to equal values.
3. Adjust the Band-edge controls for the second and third bands so they are adjacent to each other. To raise the frequency for the high-shelf, drag to the right with the Band-edge control for the second band. To lower the frequency for the high-shelf, drag to the left with the Band-edge control for the third band.
4. To attenuate the frequencies above the shelf frequency, drag the Amplitude controls for the first and second bands up or down. For a true shelf EQ, make sure these amplitudes are set to equal values.

To configure the reverb's Resonance as a low-shelf EQ:

1. Drag the Amplitude control for the second EQ band all the way up.
2. Drag the Amplitude controls for the first and third bands all the way down, to equal values.
3. Adjust the Band-edge controls for the second and third bands so they are adjacent to each other. To raise the frequency for the low-shelf, drag to the right with the Band-edge control for the second band. To lower the frequency for the low-shelf, drag to the left with the Band-edge control for the third band.
4. To attenuate the frequencies below the shelf frequency, drag the Amplitude controls for the first and second bands up or down. For a true shelf EQ, make sure these amplitudes are set to equal values.

Timing

The Timing panel offers control over the timing and relative energies of the early reflections (ER) and late-field (LF) reverberations. These elements affect the reverb's perceived clarity and intimacy. The early reflections are displayed at the top of the Timing panel, with controls for Amplitude and Pre-delay. The late-field reverberations are displayed at the bottom, with controls for Amplitude, Pre-delay, and Decay Time. To illustrate the relation between both reverb components, the shape of the other is represented as an outline in both sections of the Timing panel.



RealVerb Pro Timing panel

To adjust the timing of the early reflections:

1. Drag the Amplitude control for the early reflections up or down (from -80 dB to 0 dB) to affect the energy of the reflections. The Amplitude value is indicated in the text field at the bottom of the Timing panel.
2. Drag the Predelay control for the early reflections left or right (from 1-300 milliseconds) to affect the delay between the dry signal and the onset of early reflections. The Pre-delay time is indicated in the text field at the bottom of the Timing panel.

Note: *The length in time of the early reflections cannot be adjusted from the Timing panel, and instead is determined by the reverb's shape and size.*

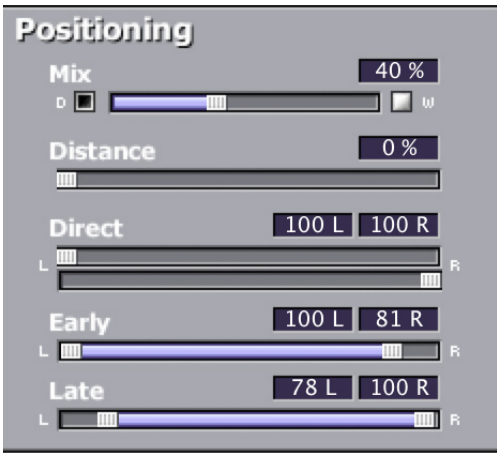
To adjust the timing of the late-field reverberations:

1. Drag the Amplitude control for the late-field reverberations up or down (from -80 dB to 0 dB) to affect the energy of the reverberations. The Amplitude value is indicated in the text field at the bottom of the Timing panel.
2. Drag the Predelay control for the late-field reverberations left or right (from 1-300 milliseconds) to affect the delay between the dry signal and the onset of late-field reverberations. The Predelay time is indicated in the text field at the bottom of the Timing panel.
3. Drag the Decay Time control for the late-field reverberations left or right (from 0.10-96.00 seconds) to affect the length of the reverb tail. The Decay Time is indicated in the text field at the bottom of the Timing panel.
4. To affect how quickly the late-field reverberations become more dense, adjust the Diffusion control at the right of Late Reflection display in the Timing panel. The higher the Diffusion value (near the top of the display), the more rapidly a dense reverb tail evolves.

Positioning

One of the unique features of RealVerb Pro is the ability to separately position the direct path, early reflections, and late-field reverberation. The Position panel provides panning controls for each of these reverb components. In addition, a proprietary Distance control adjusts perceived source distance. These controls allow realistic synthesis of acoustic spaces--for instance listening at the entrance of an alley way, where all response components arrive from the same direction, or listening in the same alley next to the source, where the early reflections and reverberation surround the listener.

Note: *The Direct, Early, and Late controls are unavailable in mono-in/mono-out configurations.*



RealVerb Pro Positioning panel

To pan the direct (dry) signal:

- Drag the Direct slider left or right. A value of <100 pans the signal hard left; a value of 100> pans the signal hard right. A value of <0> places the signal in the center of the stereo field.

Set the positioning for the early reflection or late-field reverberation with either of the following methods:

- Drag the left and right slider handles to adjust the stereo width. The length of the blue slider is adjusted. For a full stereo signal, drag the left handle all the way to left, and right handle all the way to the right.
- Drag the blue center of the slider left or right to set the positioning of the signal. If you drag all the way to the left or right, the stereo width is adjusted. For a mono signal panned hard left or right, drag the slider all the way to the left or right.

Distance

RealVerb Pro allows you to control the distance of the perceived source with the Distance control in the Positioning panel (see See RealVerb Pro Positioning panel). In reverberant environments, sounds originating close to the listener have a different mix of direct and reflected energy than those originating further from the listener.

To adjust the distance of the source:

- Drag the Distance slider to the desired percentage value. Larger percentages yield a source that is further away from the listener. A value of 0% places the source as close as possible to the listener.

Wet/Dry Mix

The wet and dry mix of the reverb is controlled from the Mix slider in the Positioning panel. The two buttons above this slider labeled “D” and “W” represent Dry and Wet; clicking either will create a 100% dry or 100% wet mix.

Levels

The Levels panel adjusts the Input Gain and Output Gain for RealVerb Pro. These levels are adjusted by dragging the sliders to the desired values. You can mute the input signal by clicking the Mute button.

Morphing

All RealVerb Pro controls vary continuously using proprietary technology to smoothly transition between selected values. This capability enables RealVerb Pro to morph among presets by transitioning between their parameter sets. This approach is in contrast to the traditional method of morphing by crossfading between the output of two static reverberators. The method employed by RealVerb Pro produces more faithful, physically meaningful intermediate states.

Click the Morphing Mode button to enable Morphing mode. When RealVerb Pro is in morphing mode, the other RealVerb Pro spectral controls are grayed out and cannot be edited. In morphing mode, two presets are selected using the pull-down menus. Once the desired presets are selected in the pull-down menus, the morphing slider is used to morph from one preset to the other.

When in Morphing mode, non user-adjustable controls will change their appearance and will no longer be accessible. When inserted on a Send effect, the “W” button automatically turns on (to keep the mix at 100% wet).

On an insert effect, the Mix will change back and forth between the two mix values of each preset.

RealVerb Pro in Morphing mode

RealVerb Pro Preset Management

Factory Presets

In the preset menu there are thirty factory presets that can be changed by the user. Any modification to a preset will be saved even if you change presets. If you want to return all the presets to their default settings, select "Reset all to Defaults" at the bottom of the presets menu.

Edits to any and all presets in the list are maintained separately within each instance of a plug-in within a session. Factory presets are listed in the table below.

Acoustic Guitar	Hairy Snare
Apartment Living	High Ceiling Room
Big Ambience	Jass Club
Big Bright Hall	Large Bathroom
Big Cement Room	Large Dark Hall
Big Empty Stadium	Long Tube
Big Snare	Medium Drum Room
Big Warm Hall	Nice Vocal 1
Cathedral	Nice Vocal 2
Church	Slap Back
Dark Ambience	Small Bright Room
Drums in a Vat	Small Dark Room
Eternity	Sparkling Hall
Far Away Source	Tight Spaces
Ghost Voice	Wooden Hall

Using Host Application Presets Management

Most host DAW applications include their own method of managing plug-in presets.

For example, the currently selected preset is saved in Cubase/Nuendo when "Save Effect" is used. Morphing parameters and the solo/mute buttons (wet, dry, input) are not saved.

All presets and programs are saved in Cubase/Nuendo when "Save Bank" is used. They are also saved in the session file for each instance of the plug-in.

Editing the name in Cubase/Nuendo modifies the current preset's name. The new name will appear in all preset select lists, and will be saved with the session, bank or effect.

Roland CE-1 Chorus Ensemble

Unmistakably Captivating Stomp Box Stereo Chorus and Vibrato Effects

Even for the mix engineer, stomp boxes can provide "secret weapon effects" not found any other way. In 1976, BOSS (a subsidiary of Roland) originated the chorus effect pedal, and nobody has come close to matching the CE-1's captivating chorus sound since. Its unmistakable warm analog stereo chorus and vibrato have been heard on countless tracks--particularly on guitars, bass and electric keys. Universal Audio has been commissioned by Roland to accurately model the CE-1, and the results are nothing short of spectacular.

- Unmistakably warm stereo chorus and vibrato effects
- Roland/BOSS licensed and stunningly accurate model of original CE-1 chorus effect
- True pitch shifting vibrato

The CE-1 provides a choice of either chorus or true pitch shifting vibrato. The vibrato/chorus "stomp switch" allows for chorus or vibrato effects, while the normal/effect stomp switch bypasses the effect. One knob is dedicated to the chorus intensity, while two knobs allow manipulation of the vibrato depth and rate. When used with stereo tracks, the CE-1 may be used in "classic mode" (L=direct, R=delay) which behaves exactly as the original pedal or "dual mode" which acts as two CE-1's patched using their mono outputs (direct+delay). In this mode, the LFOs are 90 degrees out of phase (quadrature) for maximum L-R spread.

> ***Note:*** *The UAD Roland CE-1 plug-in is no longer available for purchase. It has been replaced by the UAD Brigade Chorus plug-in.*

Roland CE-1 interface

Roland CE-1 Controls

The Roland CE-1 has two operating modes, chorus and vibrato. Only one mode can be active at a time. The operating mode is set using the Vibrato/Chorus switch.

Clip LED

The red Clip LED (above the Normal/Effect switch) illuminates when signal peaks in the plug-in occur.

Normal/Effect Switch

This is an effect bypass switch. Click to enable/disable the chorus or vibrato effect. The effect that will be heard is determined by the Vibrato/Chorus switch.

The active state is black text. The inactive state has gray text. The default state is effect.

This is not a plug-in bypass switch. The hardware CE-1 has a slight effect on the sound even when the effect is "bypassed" in normal mode. We have modeled the plug-in faithfully and like the hardware unit, when the effect is bypassed with this switch, audio is still processed to sound like the CE-1 in "normal" mode. To disable audio processing, use the CE-1 Power Switch.

Rate LED

The yellow Rate LED (above the Vibrato/Chorus switch) blinks according to the current low-frequency oscillator (LFO) rate. When CE-1 is in Vibrato mode, the LFO rate is determined by the vibrato rate knob. When in Chorus mode, this LED is effected by the Intensity knob.

> ***Note:*** *In Chorus mode, the fastest LFO rate is slower than the slowest LFO rate in Vibrato mode.*

Vibrato/Chorus Switch

This switch determines the operating mode of the plug-in. Click to switch between chorus and vibrato modes.

The active mode is black text. The inactive mode has gray text. The default mode is chorus.

Stereo Mode Switch

The Stereo Mode switch determines the operating mode of CE-1 when the plug-in is used in a stereo or mono-to-stereo configuration, such as a stereo audio track insert or stereo effects bus.

The hardware CE-1 has only a monophonic input. Its output can be mono (wet and dry signal mixed at one output jack) or stereo (dry signal in one output jack, wet signal in other output jack). We've adapted the model for the modern era, enabling a true stereo input.

Note: *This switch has no effect in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.*

The Stereo Mode switch effects the output as follows:

Dual Mode

In Dual mode the CE-1 behaves as a dual-mono device, functioning as two independent CE-1's, each running in mono mode on one side of the stereo signal.

The left output contains a mix of the dry left input signal and the processed left channel signal, while the right output contains a mix of the dry right input signal and the processed right channel signal. Additionally, the LFO's of the dual CE-1 channels are 90 degrees out of phase (quadrature) for maximum effect.

Classic Mode

In Classic mode, the CE-1 behavior is similar to that of a mono-in/stereo-out configuration. The left and right channel inputs are mixed to mono, and the dry signal (mixed left and right channels) appear at the left output, and the wet effect signal appears at the right output.

Output Level Knob

This knob determines the signal level at the output of the plug-in. The range is 0 - 100%.

Note: *This is not a wet/dry mix control.*

Chorus Intensity Knob

When CE-1 is in chorus mode, the amount of chorusing effect is determined by this knob.

Note: *When in vibrato mode, chorus intensity has no effect.*

Vibrato Controls

These two knobs control rate and depth of the vibrato effect when CE-1 is in vibrato mode.

Note: *When in chorus mode, the vibrato controls have no effect.*

Depth Knob

The depth knob controls the intensity of the vibrato effect.

Rate Knob

The rate knob controls the rate of the vibrato LFO. The rate is indicated by the the Rate LED indicator.

Power Switch

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Click the rocker switch to change the Power state.

Roland Dimension D

Famous late-1970's Bucket Brigade Chorus & Sound Enhancement

The Roland Dimension D is a one-of-a-kind studio gem that adheres to the principle of doing one thing, and doing it extremely well. Its one and only function: some of the best sounding stereo chorus ever made. However, the Dimension D is more than a chorus; it is really a unique sound enhancer for adding spatial and stereo widening effects.

This classic 1979 Roland device has been heard on countless records, including luminaries such as Peter Gabriel, Talking Heads and INXS. Universal Audio went to great lengths to preserve this Bucket Brigade chorus with all its unique design elements and sonic characteristics. With only four push-button "Dimension" settings, the Dimension D is the ultimate in functional simplicity.

- Famous Bucket Brigade chorus heard on countless records
- Accurate model of unique Dimension D chorus effect
- Designed for subtle chorus and spatial effects

Note: *The UAD Roland Dimension D plug-in is no longer available for purchase. It has been replaced by the UAD Studio D Chorus plug-in.*

Roland Dimension D interface

Roland Dimension D Controls

The Roland Dimension D is very simple device to operate; it has only three controls: Power, Mono, and Mode. Each control is detailed below.

Dimension Mode

The Dimension Mode determines the effect intensity. Four different modes are available. Mode 1 is the most subtle effect, and Mode 4 is maximum intensity.

Multiple Buttons

True to the original hardware, multiple Dimension Mode buttons can be engaged simultaneously for subtle sonic variations of the four main modes. To engage multiple Dimension Mode buttons, press the Shift key on the computer keyboard while clicking the Mode buttons.

Input Mode Switch

The original Roland Dimension D has an input switch on the back that puts the unit into mono-in/stereo-out mode. We have included this function and moved the switch "to the front" for your processing convenience.

When in Mono mode, the input to Dimension D is monophonic even when used in a stereo-input configuration (stereo inputs are summed to mono). This can be useful for sonic variation, such as when the plug-in is used in an auxiliary/effect send configuration.

The default position (in) is stereo mode. Click the pushbutton switch (out) to enable Mono mode.

Power Switch

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load (load is not reduced if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). Click the pushbutton switch to change the Power state.

Power LED

The Power LED is illuminated when the plug-in is active.

Output Level

This LED-style meter represents the level of the signal at the output of the plug-in when processing is active.

Roland RE-201 Space Echo

Warm, Highly Adjustable, Multi-Head Tape Delay Captured From the Best of the Space Echo Line

Created by Roland in 1973, the Space Echo has been adding wonderful tape character and chaos to performances and recordings since its inception. Pink Floyd and David Bowie, countless reggae and dub albums, to more recent bands like Portishead and Radiohead, all offer examples of the warm, highly adjustable tape delays that the Space Echo affords. UA spent over a year developing our RE-201 Space Echo — considered the best of the Space Echo line — to capture the physical behavior of this complex device, "warts and all." The resulting RE-201 Space Echo plug-in is truly a unique instrument unto itself.

- Meticulous model of original Roland RE-201 Space Echo
- Tape oscillation effects and spring reverb emulation
- Entrusted by Roland for accurate analog modeling

UA's RE-201 Space Echo faithfully retains all the controls and features of the original, such as the Mode Selector for various head combinations, Repeat Rate for fine timing control, and Intensity which sets repeat count and allows the unit to achieve self-oscillation. The all-important Echo/Normal "Dub" switch is retained for muting, as well as the simple tone controls. Last but certainly not least, the atmospheric shimmer of the Space Echo's spring reverb is faithfully captured, putting this fantastic plug-in on par with the original unit as a tool of infinite creativity.

Our emulation also adds substantial digital-only features like host Tempo Sync, Output Volume, Echo and Reverb Pan. Finally, a Tape Select is present allowing the user to select between three distinct grades of tape loop quality, new, used and old—plus the clever "Splice" switch allowing the user to trigger the chaos-inducing tape splice at will.

> ***Note:*** *The UAD Roland RE-201 plug-in is no longer available for purchase. It has been replaced by the UAD Galaxy Tape Echo plug-in.*

Roland RE-201 interface

Roland RE-201 Controls

The RE-201 interface is true to the original hardware, with a few customizations to bring it into the digital era.

The original mic and instrument volume controls have been replaced with echo/reverb pan controls and an input control. We've also added a Tape Age switch to emulate new and older tape, a Wet Solo control for use as a bus/send effect, and an output volume control for utility. The clever Splice switch allows the user to trigger the tape splice at will. Tempo synchronization controls round out the modernization of this classic analog processor. The fabulous sound of the original is untouched!

Peak Level

The Peak lamp indicates when transient signal peaks and clipping are detected just after the input volume control. It begins illuminating at approximately -2 dB to -1.5 dB, then gets brighter as the level increases.

VU Meter

The VU meter indicates the average signal that is about to be written to the tape. Used in conjunction with the Peak lamp, an indication of signal level can be deduced.

The VU is essentially an input meter, therefore it doesn't react when the Echo/Normal switch is switched from Echo to Normal.

> ***Note:*** *The Peak lamp and VU meter measure signal just after the input volume control. However, like the original hardware, echo intensity (feedback) is applied just before the level detection circuit. For this reason, the Intensity control will effect the level readings.*

Echo Pan

Echo Pan determines the placement of the echo signal in the stereo panorama when the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations. When the RE-201 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is disabled.

Reverb Pan

Reverb Pan determines the placement of the reverb signal in the stereo panorama when the plug-in is used in mono-in/stereo-out and stereo-in/stereo-out configurations. When the RE-201 is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, this control is disabled.

Input Volume

This control determines the signal level that is input to the plug-in. Unity gain is at the 12 o'clock position.

Like the original hardware, clipping distortion at the input to the plug-in effects the tone of the echo and reverb. Clipping is often used as part of the desired effect. At unity gain clipping can be easily induced. However if a cleaner sound is desired, reduce the input volume below unity and increase the plug-in output volume to compensate.

Mode Selector

The RE-201 is a combination of a tape echo and a spring reverb effect. Echo, reverb, or both can be selected with the Mode Selector to determine which effect(s) are active.

> ***Note:*** *The RE-201 uses less UAD DSP in reverb-only or echo-only modes versus when both modes are used simultaneously.*

The original Space Echo has three tape playback heads. By changing the combination and positions of the heads, a total of 12 different echo variations can be obtained (4 echo only, 7 echo+reverb, and 1 reverb only). These modes are faithfully reproduced with the Roland RE-201 plug-in.

The effect of each Mode knob position is detailed in the table below.

Mode Selector Positions

		REPEAT (echo only)				REVERB + ECHO							REVERB
Mode Position >		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	Reverb
Tape Heads Active	1	•				•			•		•	•	
	2		•		•		•		•	•		•	
	3			•	•			•		•	•	•	
Reverb Active						•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Bass

This knob controls the low frequency response in the tape echo portion of the signal. It does not effect the dry signal or the reverb signal. This is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock (straight up) position.

Treble

This knob controls the high frequency response in the tape echo portion of the signal. It does not effect the dry signal or the reverb signal. This is a cut/boost control; it has no effect when in the 12 o'clock (straight up) position.

Reverb Volume

This control determines the volume of the spring reverb effect. Rotate the control clockwise for more reverb. Reducing the control to its minimum value will disable the reverb.

On the original hardware the reverb output is quite low, and with some sources, unusable due to a high noise floor. Our model of the spring reverb has no noise, and has an increased available output level to improve usability.

> ***Note:*** *Reverb Volume has no effect when the Mode Selector is in positions 1 through 4.*

Output Volume

This control determines the output volume of the plug-in. It modifies the dry and effect signals.

The range of this control is ±20 dB from unity gain. Therefore, some signal may still be heard when this control is set to its minimum value.

Repeat Rate

This knob controls the time interval of the echo effect. Rotating the control clockwise will decrease the delay time, and counter-clockwise rotation will increase the delay time.

The available delay times are as follows:

- Head 1: 69 ms - 177 ms
- Head 2: 131 ms - 337 ms
- Head 3: 189 ms - 489 ms

The head times available with this control are dependent upon the Mode Selector knob. As with the original hardware, this control varies the tape playback speed in realtime by manipulating the tape capstan motor and therefore has a musically useful “ramp-up” and “ramp-down” effect.

When Tempo Sync is enabled, this control is quantized to allow only rhythmic notes available at the leading head.

Intensity

This knob controls the repeat level (feedback) of the echo signal. Rotating the control clockwise increases the number of echoes. Higher values will cause self-oscillation; the exact position is program and Mode dependent.

The self-oscillation of the RE-201 is one of the magic features that really makes it more than a mixing tool; it's also an instrument to be played. The effect may be used subtly, sending the unit into gentle oscillation on held notes, or can be put into "over the top" oscillation with extreme intensity settings. Different Modes will reveal different qualities of oscillation. Single head Modes tend to have simpler oscillation qualities, while multiple head modes will have a more complex sound when oscillating.

The RE-201's oscillation qualities are heavily program and control dependent. Different sources of audio, gain, tone, repeat rate, and tape settings will all effect "oscillation performance." The RE-201 can also achieve oscillation with no signal, making the RE-201 a truly unique instrument.

Echo Volume

This control determines the volume of the echo effect. Rotate the control clockwise for louder echo. Reducing the control to its minimum value will disable the echo.

> ***Note:*** *Echo Volume has no effect when the Mode Selector is in the REVERB ONLY position.*

Power Switch

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. This is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal, or to bypass the plug-in to reduce the UAD DSP load. Toggle the switch to change the Power state.

Toggling the power switch will also clear the tape echo. This can be useful if the RE-201 is self-oscillating and restarting the feedback loop is desired.

Echo/Normal

This switch disables the signal sent into the echo portion of the processor when set to NORMAL. The switch will have no effect if Mode Selector is set to REVERB ONLY. This control is sometimes affectionately referred to as the "dub" switch.

Sync

This switch puts the plug-in into tempo sync mode, for synchronizing the echos to the tempo of the host DAW application. See the "Tempo Sync" chapter in the UAD System Manual for related information.

Delay Time Display

These LCD-style readouts display the current delay time(s) of the RE-201. The three displays correspond to the three virtual "heads" in the plug-in, and always maintain their proportional relationship to each other.

The delay time values are displayed in milliseconds unless tempo sync is active, in which case beat values are displayed. When a particular head is inactive (see Mode Selector Positions), dashes are displayed.

When in tempo sync mode, note values that are out of range will flash. Imprecise note values due to head relationships are displayed with superscript + or - symbol before the note.

Tape Age

In the original hardware, the tape loop is contained in a user-replaceable cartridge. As the tape wears out, it is subject to fidelity loss plus increased wow and flutter. The Tape Age switch allows the plug-in to mimic the behavior of new, used, and old tape cartridges.

Newer tape may be ideal for a pristine vocal track, while older tape could be described as having more "character" and might be more appropriate for sources where greater chaos may be musical.

Splice

Normally, the splice on the tape loop comes around at regular intervals. This interval varies, and is determined by the selected Repeat Rate. Depending on what Tape Quality is selected, the splice can be subtle or obvious, and can work as a catalyst for chaos especially when the RE-201 is in a state of self-oscillation.

This switch resets the location of the tape "splice" when the switch is actuated. It is a momentary switch that pops back into the off position immediately after it is activated, allowing the user to trigger the splice point at will.

Note that the splice effect isn't immediate. It drops the splice at the write head, and it needs time to go over the read heads (at which point there will be a dropout), and then the tape capstan (where it will create some wow and flutter).

Wet Solo

When this switch is OFF, the dry/unprocessed signal is mixed with the wet/processed signal. When set to ON, only the processed signal is heard.

Wet Solo is useful when the plug-in is placed on an effect group/bus that is configured for use with channel sends. When the plug-in is used on a channel insert, this control should generally be OFF.

Note: *Wet Solo is a global (per RE-201 plug-in instance) control.*

The original Roland RE-201 hardware unit

Roland® and RE-201 Space Echo® are registered trademarks of Roland Corporation, Japan and are used under license. Portions of this RE-201 manual section is ©copyright Roland Corporation, Japan and are used under license with kind permission from Roland.

SPL Transient Designer

The First Hardware Device Used For Level-Independent Shaping of Envelopes

The SPL Transient Designer is considered a “modern classic” and a recording-studio essential that is regularly employed as a “secret weapon” mix tool by some of the world’s finest engineers. Ed Cherney, Joe Chicarelli, Ross Hogarth and Michael Brauer all use this amazing device in their work. Universal Audio has partnered with Germany’s Sound Performance Lab (SPL) to bring you the Transient Designer, with its unique and compelling Differential Envelope Technology for shaping the dynamic response of a sound, allowing transients to be accelerated or slowed down and sustain prolonged or shortened. Two simple audio controls allow effortless reshaping of the attack and sustain characteristics.

The Transient Designer has a multitude of studio applications and can be used to solve many types of audio track problems. You can shorten or lengthen the attack and sustain of percussive signals such as kick drum, snare or toms, easily take the bleed from open mics, or expand the room sound of overheads. The Transient Designer’s magic can be applied to virtually any other signal as well: Amplify or reduce the picking sound of an acoustic guitar, hold the sound of strings longer, reduce the reverb time of a choir. Attack can be amplified or attenuated by up to 15 dB while Sustain can be amplified or attenuated by up to 24 dB. Lastly, Output allows quick gain matching with the unprocessed signal.

SPL Transient Designer interface

SPL Transient Designer Controls

Containing only two primary controls, the UAD SPL Transient Designer is extremely simple to operate. The technology behind the processor isn't as important as how it sounds. However, for those who desire a deeper understanding of the process, a deeper explanation of the underlying Technology is presented at the end of this chapter.

Attack

Attack enables amplification or attenuation of the attack of a signal by up to ±15 dB.

The Attack control circuitry uses two envelope generators. One follows the shape of the original curve and adapts perfectly to the dynamic gradient. The second envelope generator produces an envelope with a slower attack. From the difference of both envelopes the VCA control voltage is derived. Positive Attack values emphasize attack events; negative values smooth out the attack envelopes of sound events.

For more information, see .

Sustain

Sustain enables amplification or attenuation of the sustain of a signal by up to ±24 dB.

The Sustain control circuitry also uses two envelope generators. One follows the shape of the original curve and adapts perfectly to the dynamic gradient. The second envelope generator produces an envelope with a longer sustain. From the difference of both envelopes the VCA control voltage is derived. The gradient of the control voltage matches the time flow of the original signal. Positive Sustain values lengthen the sustain; negative values shorten the sustain.

For more information, see The SUSTAIN Control Circuitry.

Gain

Gain controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The available range is from -20 dB to +6 dB. The default value is 0 dB.

Signal

This 4-stage LED indicates the presence of audio signals at the input of the plug-in. When the input signal is below -25 dB, the indicator is off. At -25 dB to -19 dB, the indicator glows slightly. At -18 dB to -10 dB, it lights with medium intensity. At -9 dB to 0 dB, it shines brightly.

Overload

The Overload LED illuminates when the signal level at the output of the plug-in reaches 0 dBFS. The indicator matches the behavior of the original hardware unit. However, in the software plug-in version, the output can be "overloaded" without causing distortion.

Link

Link indicates when stereo operation is active. It illuminates when used in a stereo-in/stereo-out or mono-in/stereo out configuration. It does not illuminate when used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration.

Note: *Link is an indicator only; it does not control any plug-in parameter.*

On/Power

The On and Power switches determine whether the plug-in is active. Click the On or Power switches to change the state. On and Power illuminate when the plug-in is active.

When the plug-in is inactive, processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Note: *The On and Power switches perform the exact same function.*

Acknowledgement

In addition to creating an amazing piece of hardware, Sound Performance Lab also wrote an extensive user manual for the Transient Designer. Because Universal Audio has full license to make use of the Transient Designer technology, SPL has graciously authorized us to use their documentation as well.

The remainder of this chapter is excerpted from the SPL Transient Designer (RackPack) User Manual, and is used with kind permission from SPL. All copyrights are retained by SPL.

Applications

The SPL Transient Designer is ideally suited for use in professional recording, in project or home studios and sound reinforcement applications.

For the first time you can manipulate and control the attack and sustain characteristics of a signal regardless of level in the most intuitive and simple way. Usually equalizers are used to separate instruments in a mix - the tonal aspect of the signal is considered, but not the temporal aspect.

The Transient Designer opens this further dimension in signal processing. By manipulating the attack and sustain curves of a sound event, the mix can be made to sound more transparent. Instruments can be mixed at lower levels while still maintaining their positions in the mix — but occupying less space.

During a remix or in general after micing you can arrange new positions of instruments. Reduce ATTACK and increase SUSTAIN to move signals back into the mix that are too present. Additionally the FX parts of too dry signals are strengthened.

Applied to single instruments or loops the Transient Designer allows you to create entirely new sounds and/or effects.

The following examples are given as suggestions and examples. The described procedures with specific instruments can of course be transferred to others that are not mentioned here.

Drums & Percussions

Processing drum and percussion sounds is probably the Transient Designer's most typical range of application; both from samples to live drum sets

- Emphasize the attack of a kick drum or a loop to increase the power and presence in the mix.
- Shorten the sustain period of a snare or a reverb tail in a very musical way to obtain more transparency in the mix.
- When recording a live drum set, shorten the toms or overheads without physically damping them. Usual efforts to damp and mike are reduced remarkably. Since muffling of any drum also changes the dynamic response, the Transient Designer opens up a whole new soundscape.
- Micing live drums is considerably faster and easier because you can correct the apparent "distance" of the microphone by simply varying the ATTACK and SUSTAIN values.
- The Transient Designer is a perfect alternative to noise gates in live drum micing. Adaptively reacting to the duration of the original signal, the sustain is shortened more musically than with fixed release times and a drumset is freed from any crosstalk quickly and effectively.

- Create unusual dynamic effects including new and interesting pan effects. For example, patch a mono loop through two channels of the Transient Designer and pan fully left and right in the mix. Process the left channel with increased ATTACK and reduced SUSTAIN while you adjust the right channel the opposite way and you get very special stereo loop sounds. You have to try this to appreciate what it sounds like, but expect to hear a lot of unusual stereo movement.
- Enjoy an amazingly simple integration of drum sounds into a mix. If the acoustic level of a snare is expanded to approximately +4 dB by increasing the attack value, the effective increase of peak levels in the overall mix is merely about 0.5 dB to 1 dB.

Drums: Ambience

If your drums happen to sound as if the room mics have been placed in a shoe closet, the Transient Designer can immediately turn that sound into the ambience of an empty warehouse. Just send the stereo room mics through the Transient Designer and crank the ATTACK control to emphasize the first wave.

Now slowly increase SUSTAIN values to bring up an "all-buttons-in-1176-sound" room tone — but without pumping cymbals. For a solid and driving rhythm track just fine-tune the SUSTAIN control to make sure that the room mic envelope ends more or less exactly on the desired upbeat or downbeat.

Guitars

Use the Transient Designer on guitars to soften the sound by lowering the ATTACK. Increase ATTACK for in-the-face sounds, which is very useful and works particularly well for picking guitars. Or blow life and juice into quietly played guitar parts.

Distorted guitars usually are very compressed, thus not very dynamic. Simply increase the ATTACK to get a clearer sound with more precision and better intonation despite any distortion.

Heavy distortion also leads to very long sustain. The sound tends to become mushy; simply reduce SUSTAIN to change that. If you, how- ever, want to create soaring guitar solos that would make even David Gilmour blush, just crank up the SUSTAIN control to the max and there you go.

With miced acoustic guitars you can emphasize the room sound by turning up SUSTAIN. If you want the guitars to sound more intimate and with less ambience, simply reduce SUSTAIN.

Bass: Staccato vs. Legato

Speaking of bass: Imagine a too sluggishly played bass track... you may not have to re-record it: Reduce the SUSTAIN until you can hear clear gaps between the downbeats — the legato will turn into a nice staccato, driving the rhythm-section forward.

The Re-Invention Of Reverb

Always and everywhere the same reverb presets - boring, aren`t they? Try sending the output of your reverb through the Transient Designer. Now crank the ATTACK control to the max and reduce SUSTAIN to a bare minimum. The intensity of the reverb is now much higher in the beginning while the reverb time is reduced.

The opposite can be just as intriguing: manipulate a reverb pattern so that it takes on a pyramidal slope. Turn the ATTACK all the way to the left and SUSTAIN all the way to the right. Now the beginning of the reverb is strongly reduced whereas the sustain blossoms and seems almost endless (obviously that will only happen if the decay of the reverb in the actual reverb device has been set to a sufficient value — a signal must always be present as long as the sustain time lasts.

You can also create a reverb effect that moves from one channel to the other. Reverb presets with a long decay or a long pre-delay and especially those that have flamboyant reflections set to appear after the beginning of the diffuse reverberation tail are predestined for that. Insert the left and the right channels of the reverb return through two separate Transient Designer instances. Turn the ATTACK fully right on one instance and reduce SUSTAIN slightly (about -1.5 dB). On the other instance turn the ATTACK fully left and the SUSTAIN to the 3-o`clock position (about +12 dB).

These settings preserve the original complexity of the reflections in the reverb but the maximum intensity of the effect will move from the left to the right in the mix while the reverb will maintain it`s presence in both channels. You can make this effect even more dramatic by setting all controls to their most extreme positions, but you run the danger of ending up with a lopsided effect that appears out of balance.

Backings

A common problem especially with tracks that are recorded and mixed in different studios: Backings lack of ambience, and finding a reverb that "matches" takes time... so simply emphasize the original ambience by turning up the Transient Designer's SUSTAIN control.

And the opposite problem, too much ambience, is similarly simply solved with the opposite processing — just reduce SUSTAIN.

Keyboards & Sampler

Sounds in keyboards and samples are usually highly compressed and maintain only little of natural dynamics. Increase the ATTACK values to re-gain a more natural response characteristic. The sounds occupy less space in the mix and appear more identifiable even at lower volumes.

Post Production

When dealing with overdubs in movies you can easily add more punch and definition to effect sounds from any sample library.

The same applies to outdoor recordings that suffer from poor microphone positioning — simply optimize them afterwards.

Mastering

Like with any good thing, you also have to know where not to use it. For example, using a Transient Designer in mastering is not recommended, as it is rarely a good idea to treat a whole mix at once. Instead, treat individual elements within the mix.

Technology

Of course you don`t have to know how the Transient Designer works in order to use it. However, since it offers a completely novel signal processing, nothing shall be concealed from the more curious users.

Differential Envelope Technology (DET)

SPL's DET is capable of level-independent envelope processing and thus makes any threshold settings unnecessary. Two envelopes are generated and then compared. From the difference of both envelopes the VCA control voltage is derived. The DET ensures that both low and loud signals (pianissimo to fortissimo) are treated the same way.

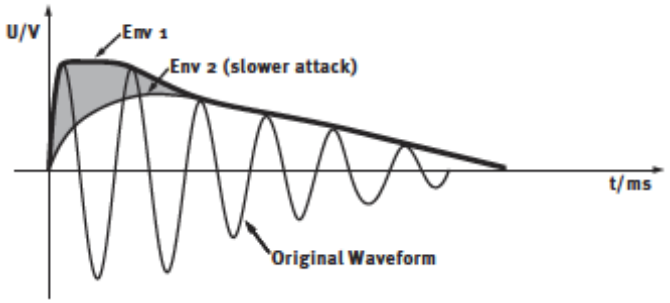
Both ATTACK and SUSTAIN control circuitries operate simultaneously and don`t affect each other.

The ATTACK Control Circuitry

The ATTACK control circuitry uses two envelope generators. The first one generates a voltage (Env 1) that follows the original waveform. The second envelope generator creates the envelope Env 2 with a slower attack envelope.

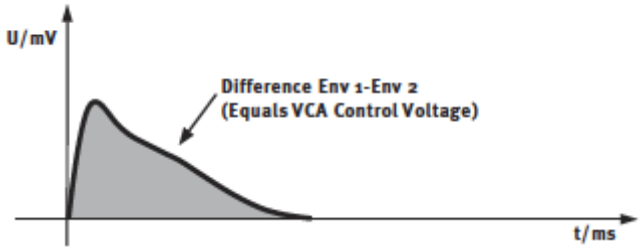
The diagram below illustrates the original curve and the two created envelopes that control the ATTACK processing. Envelope generator Env 1 follows the original waveform. Env 2 is generated with reduced attack.

Diagram 1: Generated Envelopes (Attack)



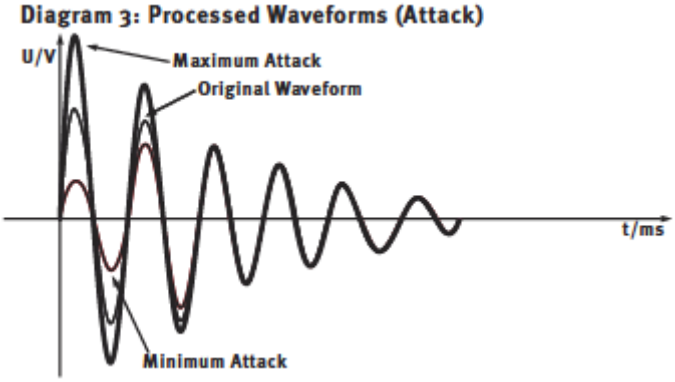
The diagram below shows the difference between Env 1 and Env 2 that defines the control voltage of the VCA. The shaded area marks the difference between Env 1 and Env 2 that controls the control voltage of the VCA. The amplitude of the attack is increased if positive ATTACK values are set. Negative ATTACK values reduce the level of the attack transient.

Diagram 2: Calculated Control Voltage (Attack)



The diagram below displays the processed waveforms with maximum and minimal ATTACK to compare against the original waveform in diagram 1.

Diagram 3: Processed Waveforms (Attack)

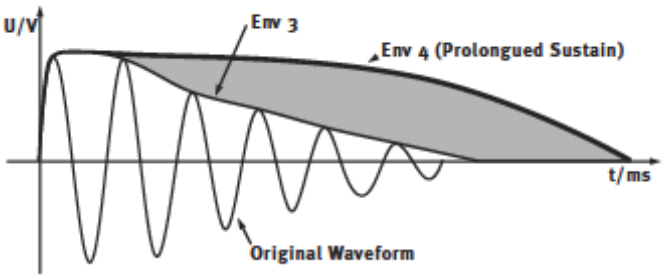


The SUSTAIN Control Circuitry

The SUSTAIN control circuitry also plays host to two envelope generators. The envelope tracker Env 3 again follows the original waveform. The envelope generator Env 4 maintains the level of the sustain on the peak-level over a longer period of time. The control voltage of the VCA is again derived from the difference between the two voltages. Sustain amplitude is increased for positive SUSTAIN settings and reduced for negative settings.

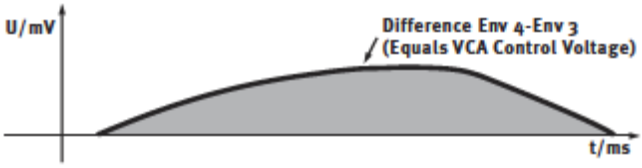
The diagram below illustrates the original waveform and the envelope creation to control the SUSTAIN processing. Envelope generator Env 1 follows the original waveform, Env 2 is generated with prolonged sustain.

Diagram 4: Generated Envelopes (Sustain)



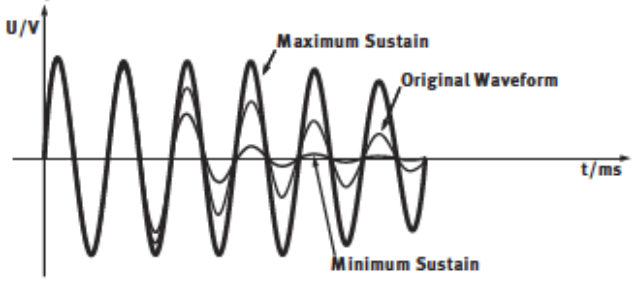
The diagram below shows the difference between Env 4 and Env 3 that defines the control voltage of the VCA.

Diagram 5: Calculated Control Voltage (Sustain)



The diagram below displays the processed waveforms with maximum and minimal sustain to compare against the original waveform in diagram 4.

Diagram 6: Processed Waveforms (Sustain)



SPL Sound Performance Lab® and Transient Designer® are registered trademarks of SPL Electronics, GmbH Germany and are used under license. Portions of this SPL Transient Designer manual section is ©copyright SPL Electronics GmbH Germany and are used under license with kind permission from SPL.

SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection

The famed SSL 4000 channel strip, exhaustively re-modeled with Unison technology

Introduced in 1979, the SSL 4000 E console brought a modern sound to the world, powering more Platinum-selling records than any other. Its bold, punchy character and incredible dynamics have made the SSL 4000 E a true industry standard and a bastion of modern recording.

In close partnership with Solid State Logic®, Universal Audio proudly unveils the all-new SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces — an exacting end-to-end circuit emulation that goes far beyond UA's original standard-defining SSL 4000 E Channel Strip plug-in.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix through a stunning update of SSL's vintage analog channel
- Get the full character of SSL's Jensen transformer-based preamps with Unison technology
- Sculpt your sources with both Type E "black" and "brown" knob EQ and filters
- Harness the famous SSL VCA Compressor and Gate for incredible dynamics control
- Explore creative sounds by swapping Dynamics routing, and placing EQ/Filters in the Dynamics sidechain
- Mix with artist presets from Just Blaze (Beyoncé, Kendrick Lamar), Ryan Hewitt (Red Hot Chili Peppers, The Avett Brothers), Ian Boxill (Prince, Tupac), and more

Turn Your DAW into a Classic SSL Console

In crafting the new SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection, UA's team of engineers dug deep into the SSL 4000 E hardware, faithfully modeling the original preamp's Jensen input transformers and dbx "gold-can" VCA output section. By capturing the preamp's signature nonlinear amp behaviors you get all of the SSL hallmarks — expansive, punchy, deep, assertive character for all of your sources.

Get Famed British EQ in Spades

The SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection plug-in features both the Type E 242 “black knob” and 001 “brown knob” four-band EQ and filters. The “brown” EQ is easy to dial in and musical, while the “black” is more surgical and clean. Both offer iconic SSL band interactions and amp modeling, adding punch to drums, presence to vocals, and heft to bass.

Unison Technology for Apollo

Harnessing UA’s groundbreaking Unison technology, the new SSL 4000 E Channel Strip plug-in gives you the hardware’s mic/line preamp impedance, gain stage “sweet spots,” and exact circuit behaviors. Just insert the plug-in into the Apollo’s Unison preamp slot to track in real time through a perfect SSL modeled preamp.

Expansion, Compression & More

From subtle dynamics control to in-your-face smack, the E Series’ compressor gives guitars presence, makes vocals “pop,” and can adding clarity, punch, and depth to your drum bus. PRE-DYN controls let you place the EQ or filters before the dynamics section for tons of different timbres, while the DYN-SC buttons provide frequency-dependent compression using the EQ filters, cut filters, or both.

Add Depth and Openness with any UAD hardware

Of course, the SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection isn’t just for Apollo owners. UAD-2 owners can use the SSL E Channel Strip on any source, without going outside the box. With the SSL E Channel Strip’s complete console channel emulation, plus the included DSP-lite SSL E Channel Strip Legacy plug-in, you can craft your projects with Platinum-selling sound.

SSL E Channel Strip (left) and SSL E Channel Strip Legacy (right) interfaces

SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Family

The SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection consists of two UAD plug-ins: SSL E Channel Strip, and SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.

SSL E Channel Strip

Developed in close collaboration with SSL engineers, UA's second-generation SSL E Channel Strip represents the most authentic emulation of the sought-after SSL 4000 E console channel strip. Features in the newer SSL E Channel Strip that are not in the original SSL E Channel Strip Legacy include:

- A painstaking model of the SSL E preamp and its full-of-character Jensen input transformer (the transformer can be defeated as needed)
- Accurate emulation of the dbx output VCA circuit, including clipping
- Revamped emulations of the classic E series "Black" and "Brown" EQ circuits and flexible dynamics processors
- UA Apollo Unison integration for authentic analog input impedance and gain staging behavior, and near-zero latency when tracking through the plug-in
- Expanded signal routing options
- Overload indicators for Input and EQ sections

SSL E Channel Strip Legacy

UA's original SSL E Series Channel Strip Legacy plug-in was a tour-de-force of analog circuit emulation, offering the best representation of the SSL sound available at the time.

While SSL E Channel Strip Legacy does not include preamp emulation and other enhancements of the newer SSL E Channel Strip, its lower DSP usage and lean feature set continue to make it a useful tool, especially when DSP demands are high.

4K Channel Strip

The 4K Channel Strip plug-in was superseded by SSL E Channel Strip Legacy, which offers feature and sonic improvements with official endorsement from SSL. 4K Channel Strip is still included with UAD software for compatibility with older sessions.

Because 4K Channel Strip has the same controls as SSL E Channel Strip Legacy (exception: EQ Type is unavailable with 4K Channel Strip), 4K Channel Strip does not have its own dedicated chapter, and its controls are documented in this chapter instead.

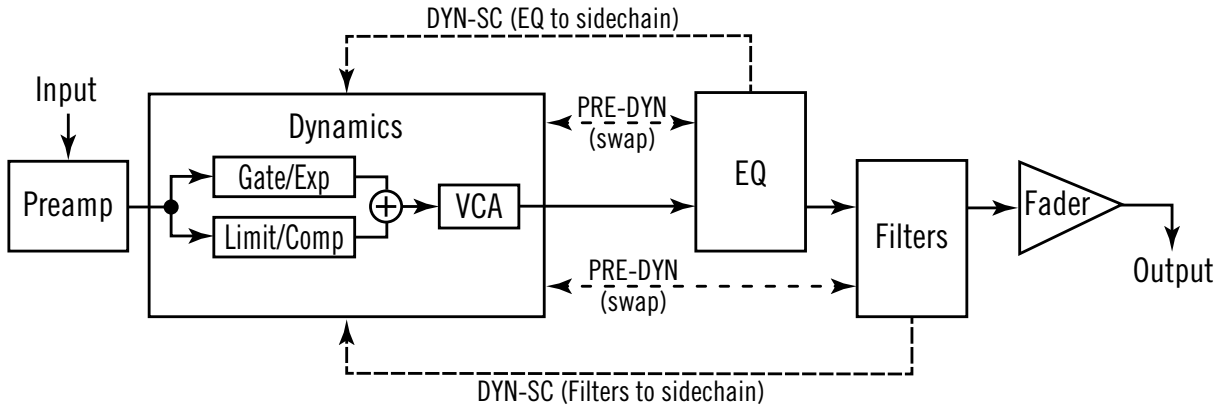
> ***Note:*** *4K Channel Strip is not included in the SSL 4000 E Channel Strip Collection.*

Operational Overview

This section provides a general overview of SSL E Channel Strip operational concepts. For specific details about individual controls, see SSL E Channel Strip Controls later in this chapter.

Signal Flow

A simplified version of the signal flow within the plug-in is shown in the diagram below. By default, signal enters at the preamp module, flows to the dynamics module, then to the EQ, the filters, and the output circuitry. Both the EQ and Filters modules have the ability to be routed before the dynamics module as needed, by engaging the PRE-DYN option available in each (EQ only in SSL E Channel Strip Legacy). Engaging the DYN-SC option in the EQ or Filters module causes that module to act solely on the dynamics sidechain signal, and removes that module from the audio signal path.



Signal flow within SSL E Channel Strip

Preamp

The preamp module offers a true reproduction of the famed SSL 001 preamp circuit. This section contains the controls associated with console inputs, such as gain, input selection, pad, and polarity, as well as a switchable input transformer for added tonal versatility.

Note: *The Preamp module is not available in SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.*

Dynamics

The classic SSL E channel dynamics processing configuration has remained largely consistent from the first SSL consoles to today, with a combination of dedicated VCA compressor and expander/gate circuits. The SSL E Channel Strip is modeled from the 82E10 Rev 12.

The compressor's simple control set allows for a wide variety of dynamics response, from transparent to aggressive. A continuous ratio allows for the full range of knee settings, from gentle to fully limited. The fixed two-position attack and continuously adjustable release are the perfect choice for quick channel-level dynamics control; simple, yet powerful.

> ***Tip:*** *At heavy compression settings with quick release times, the SSL design has a similar room-expanding quality as the UREI 1176 on signals such as drum overheads and room mics.*

The expander attenuates signals that fall below the expander threshold, adding a greater dynamic range to signals. When the expander is switched to one of its gate modes (G1 or G2), the attenuation action is far more aggressive, lacking the smooth transition between attenuated and unaffected states offered in expander mode.

EQ

There are two distinct EQ circuit topologies available in the SSL E Channel Strip, known as "Brown" and "Black." The original E series equaliser section was the Brown circuit. This was standard on all early production E Series consoles. The two parametric mid-band sections feature a classic logarithmically symmetric design that ensures that the ±3 dB up/down points retain the same musical interval from the centre frequency regardless of frequency and amplitude settings. The two shelving sections are traditional 6 dB/octave designs with an option for a fixed Q parametric response (Bell). The "02" EQ, to give it its correct name (the last two digits of the card's part number), was used on countless recordings and mixes in the early eighties.

In 1983 a new "242" EQ circuit was developed in conjunction with the legendary George Martin for the first SSL console to be installed in AIR studios. The Black EQ, as it became known, featured enhanced cut and boost ranges (±18 dB instead of ±15 dB) together with a different control law and a steeper 18 dB/octave high pass filter for tighter control of low frequencies. It is this design which is retained today as the "E-Series" EQ option of the X-Rack, Duality and AWS consoles.

The PRE DYN option routes EQ before the dynamics section, and the DYN SC option applies EQ to the control key sidechain of the dynamics processor.

Filters

The high-pass and low-pass filters offer quick and easy control over the extremes of the frequency range. The filters can be used to tame booming sub-bass frequencies, darken over-bright signals, or carve out space for more critical signals to shine.

The DYN SC option switches the filters out of the main signal path and applies them to the sidechain, allowing for frequency-dependent dynamics control. The PRE DYN option (not available on SSL E Channel Strip Legacy or the original hardware) routes the filter before the dynamics section.

The filters have a steeper 18 dB per octave slope when the Black EQ type is selected.

Output / Global

The final module in the chain, Output (in SSL E Channel Strip) or Global (in SSL E Channel Strip Legacy) features level meters, gain settings, and other controls related to final signal output.

In SSL E Channel Strip, the console fader VCA behavior and sound are fully modeled; pushing the fader will affect the sonic characteristics, just as with original hardware console. The modeled fader is not available with SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.

Pan Law

SSL consoles adopt a different pan law than what the host application may be set to by default. Most DAW's allow configuring the panning spread preference to match various consoles. In the event you want to capture SSL-style stereo response when using multiple instantiations of the SSL E Channel Strip, set the pan law preference in the host to a value of -4.5 dB.

Knob Values

Some knob settings, when compared to the graphical user interface silkscreen numbers, may not match the actual parameter values. This behavior is true to the original hardware. Additionally, there may be subtle range differences between Black and Brown EQ modes. When the plug-in is viewed in parameter list mode within a DAW, the actual parameter values are displayed.

Unison™ Integration

The SSL E Channel Strip features Unison technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the SSL 4000 E hardware preamps.

Note: *Unison is active only when SSL E Channel Strip is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of SSL E Channel Strip plug-in settings using Apollo's digitally-controlled panel hardware and/or the plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity) are mirrored and bi-directional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the SSL 4000 E hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Apollo mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Apollo's preamps to physically match the emulated hardware's input impedance, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original target hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

Note: *Unison technology is not available with SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.*

Artist Presets

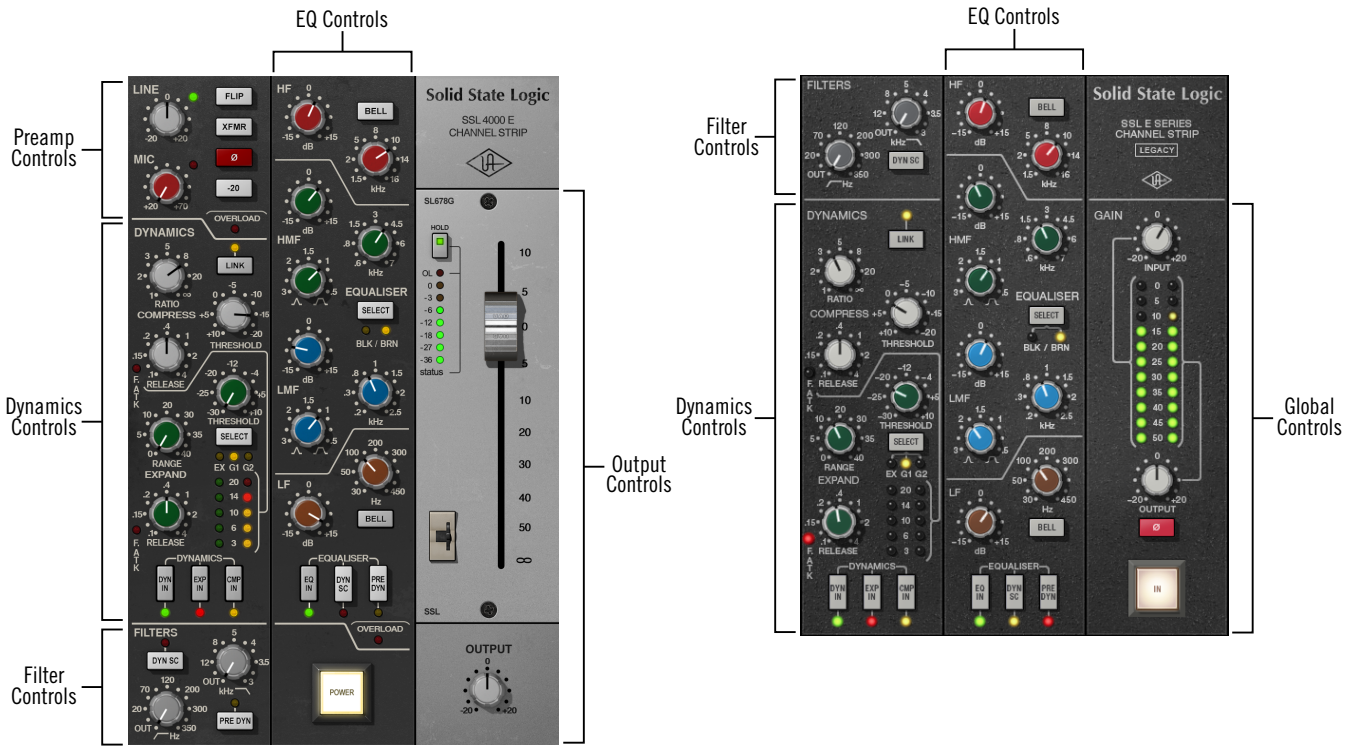
The SSL E Channel Strip includes artist presets from prominent SSL users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank; they can be accessed via the host application's preset menu. They are also installed to disk so they can be so they can be accessed via the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual) or via Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

SSL E Channel Strip Controls

Most SSL E Channel Strip and SSL E Channel Strip Legacy controls are identical. Any control differences between the two plug-ins are noted.

Control Groups

Associated controls are grouped by processor function, as illustrated below. Parameter descriptions in this section are similarly grouped.

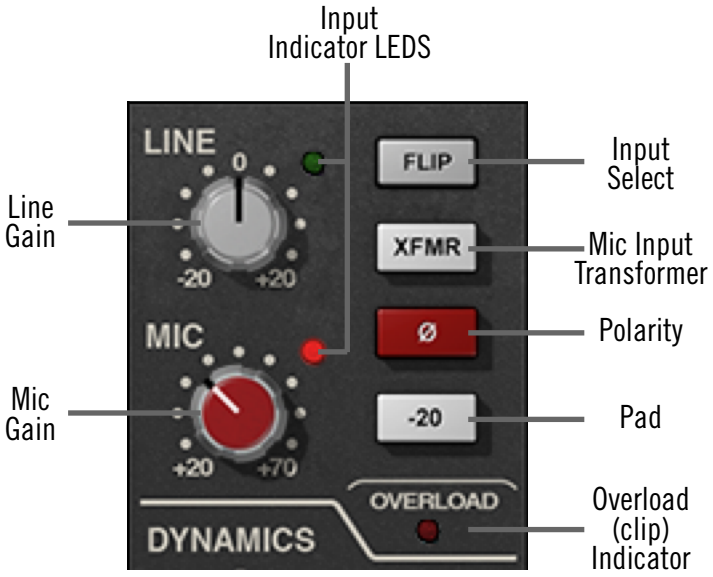


Control groups within SSL E Channel Strip (left) and SSL E Channel Strip Legacy (right)

Preamp

The SSL E Channel Strip contains complete modeling of the original console's preamplifier module. Refer to the illustration below for control descriptions in this section.

Note: *Preamp functions are not available with SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.*



Preamp module controls

Line Gain

Line Gain has a range of ±20.5 dB. To increase line input gain, rotate the knob clockwise.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return Line Gain to its center (unity) position.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

When Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust the Line Gain parameter. In this state, an orange dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

Mic Gain

The Mic Gain knob has a range of –20.1 dB to +70 dB. To increase mic input gain, rotate the knob clockwise.

Apollo Unison Interaction

When Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust the Mic Gain parameter. In this state, an orange dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

FLIP (Input Select)

Flip determines which knob, either Line or Mic, is used for input gain adjustments. When Line is selected, the green LED indicator next to the Line Gain knob illuminates. When Mic is selected, the red LED indicator next to the Mic Gain knob illuminates.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is slightly lower in LINE mode versus MIC mode (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

Apollo Unison Interactions

When the plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert for a preamp channel within Apollo's Console application, the following behaviors apply:

- FLIP switches between the MIC and LINE hardware inputs of the associated Apollo preamp channel, and Apollo's hardware input switch can also be used to perform the same function.
- When Apollo's Hi-Z input is connected, MIC mode is automatically selected and the FLIP switch is disabled.

Transformer (XFMR)

The XFMR button enables the Jensen transformer emulation for the mic preamp. Depending on the signal, this can bring additional richness and warmth. Disable XFMR when more clarity is desired.

> ***Note:*** *This control has no effect in Line input mode, which does not contain the transformer in its signal path.*

Polarity (Ø)

The Polarity (Ø) button inverts the polarity of the signal. The signal is inverted when the button is pressed. Leave the button out for normal polarity.

Apollo Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of polarity is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with Apollo's hardware polarity button.

Pad (–20)

The Pad (–20) button attenuates the input signal by 20 dB. Pad is engaged when the button is darker.

> ***Note:*** *Pad is not available for line input, or when used with Apollo's Hi-Z input in Unison mode. In these cases, the control cannot be switched.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of the pad is mirrored. Pad can be switched with the –20 button in the plug-in interface, with Console's PAD button, or with Apollo's hardware PAD button.

Preamp Overload LED

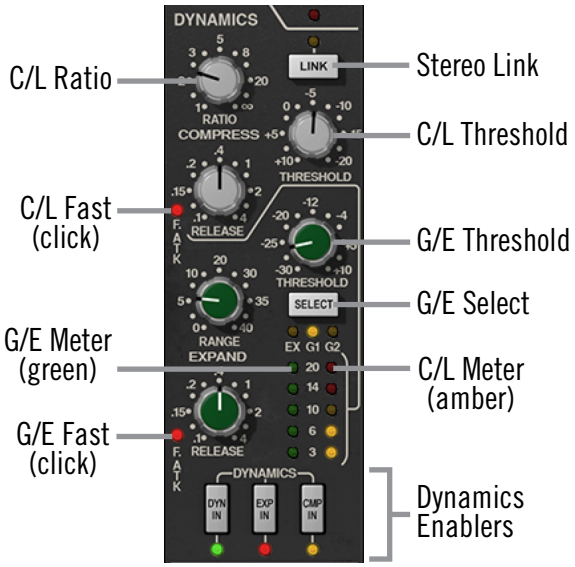
The Overload LED indicates when signal clipping is occurring at the modeled preamp input stage. The indicator remains illuminated for one second after a clip is detected.

> ***Note:*** *Overload does not indicate A/D converter clipping when the plug-in is used in a Unison insert within Apollo's Console application.*

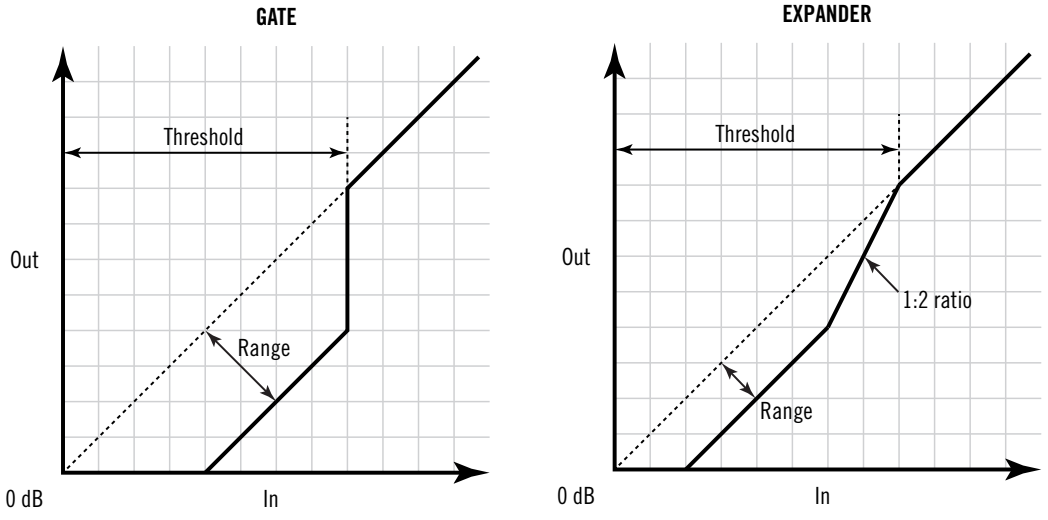
Dynamics

Independent soft-knee compressor/limiter and expansion/gate modules are available in the dynamics section. Each module has its own set of color-coded controls. The main compressor/limiter controls have gray knobs, and the main expansion/gate controls have green knobs. The diagram below illustrates a behavioral comparison of gate and expander modes.

> ***Note:*** *Dynamics are not processed unless enabled by the Dynamics In (DYN IN) selector.*



Dynamics module controls



Gate (left) and Expander (right) behaviors

Compressor/Limiter

Link

When SSL E Channel Strip is used in a stereo-in/stereo-out configuration, two separate dynamics processors are active (one for each stereo channel). When Link is engaged, the two compressors are constrained so that they both compress by the same amount at any instant.

Link prevents transients which appear only on one channel from shifting the stereo image of the output. Any big transient on either channel will cause both channels to compress.

Link is active when the button LED is illuminated. When the plug-in is used in a mono-input configuration, Link has no effect.

Compress Ratio

Ratio sets the amount of gain reduction to be processed by the compressor. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being attenuated to 10 dB.

The SSL E Channel Strip compressor offers a continuously variable ratio between 1:1 (no compression) and infinity:1 (limiting).

> ***Note:*** *Signals must exceed the Threshold value before they are attenuated by the Ratio amount.*

Compress Threshold

Threshold sets the signal level at which the onset of compression occurs. Incoming signals that exceed this level are compressed. Signals below the level are unaffected.

The available range is +10 dB to –20 dB. Rotate the control clockwise for more compression.

This compressor has an automatic make-up gain function. As Threshold is lowered and compression increases (as knob is rotated clockwise), output gain from the module is increased automatically to compensate.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the Compress Threshold knob to its center position.*

Compress Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for gain reduction to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. Longer release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if the Release time is too long, the gain reduction imposed by loud sections of audio may initially reduce the level of subsequent sections of audio with lower signals.

Release time is continuously variable between 0.1 seconds and 4 seconds.

Compress Fast Attack (F.ATK)

Attack sets the duration between the input signal reaching the threshold and the start of dynamic processing by the compressor. Compression attack time is program dependent and automatically varies between 3 ms – 30 ms when this switch is not engaged (AUTO mode in parameter list view within a DAW). When engaged, the attack time is fixed at 3 milliseconds for 20 dB of gain reduction.

Fast Attack is active when the F.ATK LED is illuminated. To toggle Fast Attack, click the LED or its label text.

Gate/Expander

The gate/expander module operates in either gate or expansion mode, as determined by the Dynamics Select button. Two attack speeds and a continuously variable release time are available in both modes.

Gate/Expand Select

The Select button cycles through the three modes available in the gate/expander module: Expand, Gate 1, and Gate 2.

Expand (EX) – In Expand mode, the module applies downwards expansion at a fixed 1:2 ratio, with the amount of gain reduction determined by the Expand Range control.

Gate 1 (G1) – In Gate 1 mode, signals below the Expand Threshold are attenuated by the Expand Range amount. Gate 1 is authentic to the gate mode on earlier hardware consoles.

Gate 2 (G2) – Gate 2 mode operates the same way as Gate 1, but has a different response characteristic that is derived from later versions of the SSL hardware.

> ***Tip (SSL E Channel Strip only):*** *Shift-click the Dynamics Select button to cycle through the available choices in reverse order.*

Expand Threshold

Threshold sets the input level at which expansion or gating occurs. Any signals below this level are processed. Signals above the threshold are unaffected. Threshold is continuously variable from –30 dB to +10 dB.

In typical use, it's best to set the threshold value to just above the noise floor of the desired signal (so the noise doesn't pass when the desired signal is not present), but below the desired signal level (so the signal passes when present).

Expand Range

Range (depth) controls the difference in gain between the gated/expanded and non-gated/expanded signal. Higher values increase the attenuation of signals below the threshold. When set to zero, no gating or expansion occurs. Range is continuously variable from 0 dB to –40 dB.

Expand Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for gate/expander processing to engage once the input signal drops below the Threshold value. The available range is 0.1ms to 4 seconds.

Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, which is especially useful for material with frequent peaks.

> ***Tip:*** *Fast release times are typically only suitable for certain types of percussion and other instruments with very fast decays. Using fast settings on other sources may produce undesirable results.*

Expand Fast Attack (F.ATK)

Attack sets the duration between the input signal reaching the threshold and the end of dynamic processing by the expander/gate. Expansion/gate attack time is fixed at 1.5 milliseconds per 40 dB when this switch is not engaged (AUTO mode in parameter list view within a DAW). When engaged, the attack time is fixed at 100 microseconds per 40 dB of gain reduction.

Fast Attack is active when the F.ATK LED is illuminated. To toggle Fast Attack, click the LED or its label text.

Dynamics Enable

These three buttons determine the operating status of the dynamics processors.

Dynamics In (DYN IN) **–** This button enables both the compressor/limiter and the expander/gate modules; neither module will function when DYN IN is disabled. Each dynamics module is enabled when the LED below the buttons are illuminated. DYN IN is useful for quickly comparing the original signal dynamics to the dynamically processed signal when both modules are active. DYN IN must be engaged to enable compressor/limiter and/or expander/gate processing.

Expander In (EXP IN) **–** This button enables the expander/gate module. The module is enabled when the EXP IN LED is illuminated. This button has no effect when DYN IN is disabled.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when the expander is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

Compressor In (CMP IN) **–** This button enables the compressor/limiter module. The module is enabled when the CMP IN LED is illuminated. This button has no effect when DYN IN is disabled.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when the compressor is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

Dynamics Meters

The Expansion Meter uses green LED's (left column) to display the amount of downward expansion occurring in the expander/gate module. Higher values indicate more gain reduction.

The Compression Meter uses amber and red LED's (right column) to display the amount of gain attenuation occurring in the compressor/limiter module. Higher values indicate more dynamics compression.

Filters

In addition to the four-band EQ, the SSL E Channel Strip offers individual high and low pass filters. When a Filter control is at minimum value (fully counter-clockwise), that filter is disabled.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when both filters are disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

The control ranges and sonics of these filters can be changed between Black and Brown modes with the EQ Select switch. In SSL E Channel Strip, the color of the filter knobs change to indicate the selected mode, with the knobs being a lighter gray in Black mode and a darker gray in Brown mode.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "OUT" text label to return either Filter knob to its default disabled position. This feature is not available with SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.*

High Pass

The left knob determines the cutoff frequency for the high pass filter. Rotate clockwise to reduce low frequencies. The filter is disabled when set to OUT.

In Black mode, the slope of the high pass filter is 18 dB per octave. In Brown mode, the slope of the high pass filter is 6 dB per octave.

Low Pass

The right knob determines the cutoff frequency for the low pass filter. Rotate clockwise to reduce high frequencies. The filter is disabled when set to OUT.

The slope of the low pass filter is 12 dB per octave in both Brown and Black modes.

Filters to Sidechain (DYN SC)

This button enables the Filters to sidechain function. When Filters to sidechain is active, signal output from the Filters module is removed from the audio path and is instead routed to control ("key") the dynamics module sidechain.

Note: *PRE DYN is unavailable when DYN SC is engaged.*

Sidechaining is typically used for de-essing and similar frequency-conscious techniques. To listen to the sidechain key, simply disengage DYN SC to hear the filtered signal. The sidechain dynamics/EQ implementations are true stereo when used in a stereo-in/stereo-out configuration.

Note: *The Filters module must be active (not at minimum values) in conjunction with the Filters DYN SC button for the Filters sidechain to function.*

Tip: *An additional EQ to Sidechain (DYN SC) is available in the EQ section.*

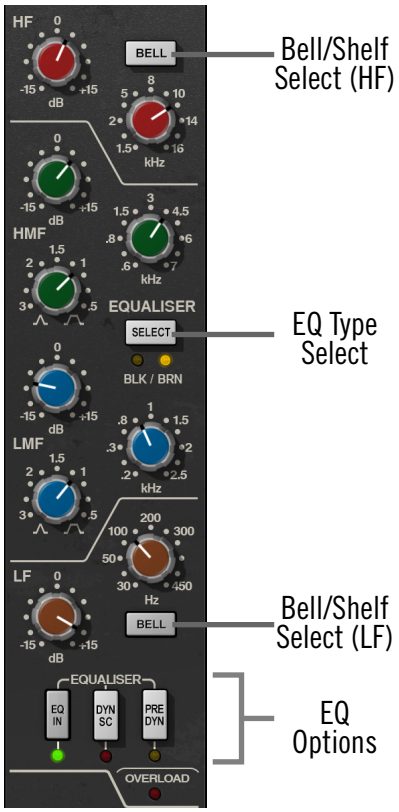
Filters Pre/Post Dynamics (PRE DYN)

When Filters PRE DYN is OFF (the default setting), the filters module is located after the dynamics module (and after the EQ module, if EQ PRE DYN is OFF). When Filters PRE DYN is ON, the filter/dynamics module placements are swapped, so audio output from the filters module is routed into the dynamics module instead.

Filters PRE DYN is active when the LED below the button in the Filters module is illuminated.

Note: *PRE DYN is unavailable when DYN SC is engaged.*

EQ



The SSL E Channel Strip EQ module is divided into four frequency bands: High Frequency (HF, red knobs), High Midrange Frequency (HMF, green knobs), Low Midrange Frequency (LMF, blue knobs), and Low Frequency (LF, brown or black knobs, depending on EQ Type setting).

The high and low bands can be switched from shelving mode into bell (peak/dip) mode. The two midrange bands are fully parametric. The EQ module can be disabled altogether or routed for dynamics sidechain keying.

EQ Type Select

Two different types of SSL EQ are available. The EQ Type SELECT button chooses between the two types, either Black or Brown.

The knob color of the LF band controls changes to reflect the current setting. Note that all EQ knobs don't change color when switching EQ Type, but all bands are affected.

The sound of the Black and Brown EQs are different. Black is a bit more surgical, while Brown is more gentle at extreme settings.

Note: *In addition to EQ, sonics of the Filters module are affected by EQ Type.*

High Frequency (HF) Band

HF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency value for the band is boosted or attenuated.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the HF Gain knob to its center position.*

HF Frequency

This control determines the band frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting.

HF Bell

The Bell button switches the HF band from shelf mode to peak/dip mode. In normal (shelf) mode, only frequencies above the frequency value are boosted or attenuated. In Bell (peak/dip) mode, frequencies above and below the frequency value are boosted or attenuated.

High-Mid Frequency (HMF) Band

HMF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency value for the band is boosted or attenuated.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the HMF Gain knob to its center position.*

HMF Frequency

This control determines the HMF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting.

HMF Q

The Q (bandwidth) control defines the proportion of frequencies surrounding the band center frequency to be affected by the band gain control. The filter slopes get steeper (narrower bandwidth) as the control is rotated counter-clockwise.

Low-Mid Frequency (LMF) Band

LMF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency value for the band is boosted or attenuated.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the LMF Gain knob to its center position.*

LMF Frequency

This control determines the LMF band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting.

LMF Q

The Q (bandwidth) control defines the proportion of frequencies surrounding the band center frequency to be affected by the band gain control. The filter slopes get steeper (narrower bandwidth) as the control is rotated counter-clockwise.

Low Frequency (LF) Band

LF Gain

This control determines the amount by which the frequency value for the LF band is boosted or attenuated.

Tip: *Click the "0" text label to return the control knob to its center position.*

LF Frequency

This control determines the band center frequency to be boosted or attenuated by the band Gain setting.

LF Bell

The Bell button switches the LF band from shelf mode to peak/dip mode. In normal (shelf) mode, only frequencies below the frequency value are boosted or attenuated. In Bell (peak/dip) mode, frequencies below and above the frequency value are boosted or attenuated.

EQ Options

These three buttons determine the status of the EQ module.

EQ In

The EQ IN button enables the EQ module. The module is enabled when the LED below the button is illuminated.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when EQ is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

EQ to Sidechain (DYN SC)

This control enables the EQ sidechain function. When the EQ sidechain is active, signal output from the EQ module is removed from the audio path and is instead routed to control ("key") the dynamics module. The EQ sidechain is enabled when the LED below the button is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *PRE DYN is unavailable when DYN SC is engaged.*

Sidechaining is typically used for de-essing and similar frequency-conscious techniques. To listen to the sidechain key, simply disengage DYN SC to hear the equalised signal. The sidechain dynamics/EQ implementations are true stereo when used in a stereo in/ stereo out configuration.

> ***Note:*** *The EQ module must be active in conjunction with the EQ DYN SC button for the EQ sidechain to function. Note there is another dynamics sidechain available in the Filters section called Filters to Sidechain (DYN SC).*

EQ Pre/Post Dynamics (PRE DYN)

When EQ PRE DYN is OFF, audio from the dynamics module is routed into the EQ module. When PRE DYN is ON (the default setting), these modules are swapped, so audio output from the EQ module is routed into the dynamics module instead. EQ PRE DYN is active when the LED below the button in the EQ module is illuminated.

> ***Note:*** *PRE DYN is unavailable when DYN SC is engaged.*

EQ Overload LED

This LED illuminates when clipping occurs in the EQ amplifier. Adjust EQ and input gain parameters to avoid clipping (if desired).

> ***Note:*** *This indicator is not available with SSL E Channel Strip Legacy.*

Output (SSL E Channel Strip)

Output Meter

This vertical LED-style meter provides a visual indication of signal levels at the output of the plug-in, after the Level fader. The meter is not calibrated but it responds accurately with 1 kHz tones.

> ***Note:*** *When used in a stereo configuration, the meter column represents the sum of the left and right channels (it is not a stereo meter).*

Hold

The Hold button enables Peak Hold mode for the output meter, which maintains the illumination of the red Peak LED for 3 seconds after a signal peak. Hold also applies to the preamp and EQ section overload LEDs. Hold aids in observation of peak/overload conditions.

Level Fader

This fader sets overall signal level, in a range from ∞ (silent) to +10.0 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the fader to its unity position.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

When Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust the Level Fader parameter. In this state, an amber dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

> ***Note:*** *The VCA Group selector to the left of the level fader has been added for visual realism. The selector does not perform any function.*

Output

Output adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in without affecting the sonic character of the signal. The available range is ±20 dB.

This control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maximize color of the overall signal. For example, preamp gain and the fader can be cranked for more distortion, while lowering Output to normalize levels.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control knob to its center position.*

Apollo Unison Interaction

When Apollo is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, Apollo's hardware PREAMP knob can be used to adjust the Output parameter. In this state, a green dot is overlaid on the parameter indicating it is available for hardware control. For details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual.

Power

The Power button determines whether the plug-in is active and is useful for comparing the processed sound to the original signal. Click the button to disable the processor.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when Power is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

Global (SSL E Channel Strip Legacy)

Input

Input controls the signal level at the input to the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB. Increasing the input may result in more compression, depending on the values of the Threshold and Ratio parameters.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control knob to its center position.*

I/O Meters

These vertical LED-style meters provide a visual indication of signal levels at the input and output of the plug-in. The meters are not calibrated.

The input meter is the left LED column and the output meter is the right LED column.

> ***Note:*** *When used in a stereo configuration, each meter column represents the sum of the left and right channels (it is not a stereo meter).*

Output

Output controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is ±20 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" text label to return the control knob to its center position.*

Polarity (Ø)

The Polarity (Ø) button inverts the polarity of the signal. The signal is inverted when the button is pressed. Leave the button out for normal polarity.

IN (Power)

The IN button determines whether the plug-in is active and is useful for comparing the processed sound to that of the original signal. Click the button to disable the processor.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP load is reduced when IN is disabled (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is disabled in the UAD Meter & Control Panel).*

SSL E Channel Strip Collection FAQ

What lengths did UA go to create the SSL E Channel Strip plug-in?

The project started with UA's researchers looking into which target processors best represent the era-defining sound of SSL large format consoles. In collaboration with SSL, historical users were asked for their input and insight. SSL provided their confidential target schematics for Universal Audio to begin circuit analysis. Some areas of the legacy UAD SSL E Channel Strip was used as a starting point, but most of the plug-in was designed from the ground up.

In the meantime, SSL began auditioning sub-modules to create two "golden unit" channels: one "brown-era" and one "black-era." These two channel strips were then fully serviced and brought back to factory specification. SSL shipped the modules (and the test jig center section) to UA for sonic and behavioral study by the listening team. Requirements were drawn up by team leaders and presented to UA's algorithm design team.

The Jensen transformer-coupled mic and line amp, Brown and Black EQ amp emulation and filter refits, compression knee, time constant and amp distortion refits, and output VCA emulation all required attention as systems unto themselves, essentially making the project the equivalent time and effort of four individual plug-ins.

As the product development progressed, the plug-in was internally scrutinized sonically and by signal analysis against the target hardware modules over a 16-week period before the plug-in made its way for SSL's own evaluation and critical authentication.

What does the "XFMR" preamp button do?

The XFMR preamp button allows for a transformer option when using the mic preamp. Transformer coloration and saturation, or a cleaner no-transformer response, can be selected.

What are the differences between the two EQ types?

The SSL E had two favorite EQ variations. The earlier "brown" EQ is known as tone-friendly and musical, while the "black" EQ is exacting and surgical. The preamp in the brown SSL is loved for its musical Jensen transformer-coupled input, and this is the modeled preamp for the plug-in. In addition to EQ, the filters are also different between the two options.

Why does the SSL E Channel Strip have so much distortion when I set the input setting in the mic range in my DAW or in Apollo's Console?

As with the original hardware, the SSL E Channel Strip plug-in easily facilitates sending line level signals through the mic input, which allows for creative use of distortion to color signals. The –20 dB pad can be used to reduce signal levels if desired.

How do Unison mic preamp plug-ins work with Apollo's built-in preamps?

Apollo's mic preamplifiers are digitally controlled and offer high-resolution, ultra-transparent translation from microphone to converter. While fantastic sounding on their own, these preamps are also designed as an ideal starting point to add processing color through Unison-enabled UAD mic preamp plug-ins.

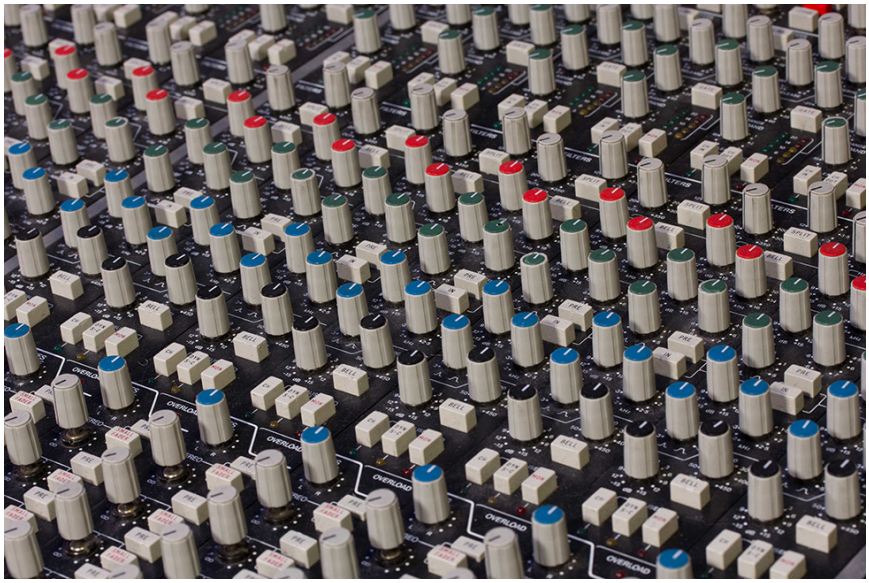
Specifically, Unison mic preamp plug-ins control the analog impedance and gain structure of the Apollo's physical mic preamps — so hardware and software works in tandem to very convincingly emulate classic tube and solid state preamp designs.

How do I use the SSL E Channel Strip's preamp while recording with Apollo?

To enable near-zero latency recording with Mic, Line, Hi-Z, or digital inputs through the SSL E, simply place the plug-in into the Unison insert in Apollo's Console application. In addition to physical gain and input impedance control of the Apollo's hardware preamps, Unison allows tactile hardware control of modeled preamp parameters via Apollo's Gain Stage Mode. See the Unison chapter in the Apollo Software Manual for more information.

I own UAD-2 hardware and/or Apollo 16. Can I still use the SSL E Channel Strip preamp?

Yes. All Unison plug-ins can also be used as standard UAD plug-ins inside your DAW of choice, or as realtime inserts within Apollo's Console application. Unison plug-ins are great for adding color and tone with any UAD-2 hardware, but the Unison preamp interactivity is only possible on Apollo interfaces that have physical mic preamps.



Solid State Logic

SOUND || VISION

All visual and aural references to the SSL 4000 E series and all use of SSL trademarks are being made with written permission from Solid State Logic. Special thanks to Jim Motley and Chris Jenkins.

SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor Collection

The ultimate “glue” for your mix bus, re-modeled with stunning accuracy.

Integral to the hit-making SSL sound, the G Bus Compressor is legend for making mixes bigger, more powerful, and punchy, all the while enhancing cohesion and clarity.

In close partnership with Solid State Logic®, Universal Audio proudly unveils the SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces — an expert end-to-end circuit emulation that goes further than UA’s original standard-defining SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor plug-in.

Now You Can:

- Mix with a jaw-dropping update of the iconic SSL G Bus Compressor
- Give power, cohesion, and drive to mixes, buses, or any source
- Harness new features like Side Chain Filtering, Mix, and Headroom controls
- Mix with artist presets from Just Blaze (Beyoncé, Kendrick Lamar), Peter Mokran (The Flaming Lips, Mary J. Blige), Ian Boxill (Prince, Tupac), and more

The Only End-to-End SSL Bus Compressor Emulation

Embarking on a ground-up re-design of the original SSL G Bus Compressor plug-in, UA’s team of engineers meticulously remodeled every nuance of the in-console and FX G384 rackmount specimens, including their unique CV (control voltage) summing. By capturing all of its circuit behaviors, the new SSL G Bus Compressor plug-in gives you all of the famed SSL hallmarks — punchy, transparent glue, and an ultra-accurate stereo image.

Original Recipe

From subtle and transparent dynamic control to more aggressive textures with peak limiting, the SSL G Bus Compressor plug-in’s simple, intuitive control set lets you quickly dial in what you need. The fixed Attack and Release controls are SSL-voiced for bus functionality, including the program-dependent Auto Release function. Conjure “barely a wiggle” 2-bus glue, or “bury the needle” full dynamic crush with the continuous Threshold control.

Custom Enhancements

New workflow features make the SSL G Bus Compressor Collection even more vital for the modern producer/engineer. The internal Side Chain Filter allows you precise tailoring of low frequency response to reduce low-end "pumping," while the Mix control provides inline dry/wet processing — perfect for quick parallel compression on a drum or vocal bus. The Headroom control lets you adjust the overall operating level of the plug-in.

Fade to Black

Just like the console units, the new SSL G Bus Compressor features the original Auto Fade feature, providing the signature SSL fade taper, up to 60 seconds.

Features

Painstakingly modeled by Universal Audio's plug-in design team, licensed and authenticated by Solid State Logic

- Beloved 4000 G era compressor design, measured from the all-discrete hardware
- Specially tailored dynamic characteristics ideal for compressing full mix or subgroups
- Provides the entire circuit path and control set of the stereo dual-VCA compressor
- Signature 4000 G features include fixed range Attack and Release including program-dependent "Auto" release, and Auto Fade
- Plug-in exclusive features include SC Filter, Dry/Wet parallel processing and Headroom for user-customizable operating level
- Includes Artist Presets from Just Blaze (Beyoncé, Kendrick Lamar), Peter Mokran (The Flaming Lips, Mary J. Blige), Ian Boxill (Prince, Tupac), and more

Artist Presets

The SSL G Bus Compressor includes artist presets from prominent SSL users. 32 artist presets are included in the internal factory bank that can be accessed via the DAW application's preset menu. Additional presets are also included that can be accessed via the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar or Apollo's Console 2 preset manager.

Benno de Goeij	Ian Boxill	Patrick Carney
Chris Coady	John Paterno	Peter Mokran
Chuck Zwicky	Just Blaze	Richard Chycki

Artists that have provided presets for SSL G Bus Compressor

SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor (left) and SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor Legacy (right) interfaces

SSL G Series Bus Compressor Family

The SSL G Series Bus Compressor Collection consists of two UAD plug-ins: SSL G Bus Compressor, and SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy.

4000 G Bus Compressor

Developed in close collaboration with SSL engineers and prominent SSL users, UA's second-generation SSL G Bus Compressor represents the most authentic emulation of the industry standard SSL 4000 G console bus compressor (and its outboard counterparts).

- Features in the newer SSL G Bus Compressor that are not in the original SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy include:
- Fully revamped algorithmic circuit model, for even greater sonic parity with the original analog hardware
- Modeled after the best available examples, with unprecedented access to SSL schematics and design insights
- Continuously variable sidechain HPF (high-pass filter) for increased control of bass-heavy mixes or subgroups
- Wet/dry mix control for parallel processing
- Headroom control for setting custom operating reference levels, offering greater flexibility

SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy

UA's original SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy plug-in was an instant hit among SSL-loving engineers, offering the very best emulation of the SSL bus compression sound available at the time.

While SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy does not include the newly revamped circuit model and the other enhancements of the newer SSL G Bus Compressor, its lower DSP usage and simple feature set continue to make it a useful tool, especially when DSP demands are high.

4K Bus Compressor

The 4K Bus Compressor plug-in was superseded by SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy, which offers feature and sonic improvements with official endorsement from SSL. 4K Bus Compressor is still included with UAD software for compatibility with older sessions.

Because 4K Bus Compressor has the same controls as SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy (exception: Auto-fade is unavailable with 4K Bus Compressor), 4K Bus Compressor does not have its own dedicated chapter, and its controls are documented in this chapter instead.

> ***Note:*** *4K Bus Compressor is not included in the SSL 4000 G Bus Compressor Collection.*

Operational Overview

This section provides a general overview of SSL G Bus Compressor operational concepts. For specific individual control details, see the Controls section later in this chapter.

The Master Bus Compressor

The SSL G Bus Compressor is designed with the 2-bus in mind. The control set always adjusts both the left and right channels simultaneously. The ratios, attack, and release settings are also specially tailored for bus use, and give just the right variety of options to make it useful for a wide variety of source material. Attack and release times allow the compression behavior to be `tuned' to the tempo and feel of the song (to some degree), and the Auto setting provides a program-dependent, multi-stage release for the greatest degree of transparency.

The 2:1 ratio can be used for the most transparent sound, 10:1 for tougher, more audible sound, or 4:1 for more moderate compression. Typically, this processor is meant to be used with minimal gain reduction. In most cases, setting the threshold for 1-2 dB average gain reduction is most common, with occasional transients that go beyond the average. In quieter passages, little or no meter movement will occur. Make-up gain can be used to get a good gain match between active and bypassed.

The SSL G is also useful on groups such as drum buses. In this case, a more aggressive approach may be appropriate, with a greater range of gain reduction. A ratio of 10:1 will give a harder sound often desired for drum groups. Fast attacks and releases will give the most audible sound of the compressor working.

Mixing To the Compressor

Traditionally, the SSL G is most commonly used from the beginning of the mix process, and the engineer is "mixing to" the sound and behavior of the compressor. The ideal way to audition this plug-in is on a new mix, dropped into an insert on your stereo master channel. In this case, you will be spending a lot of time keeping an eye on gain reduction metering and you may make tweaks to the setup as the mix progresses. Of course it can also be dropped into existing mixes at any time, but keep in mind it may take a bit more effort to dial in, especially if your ear is already used to the sound without its compression properties.

Variable-Knee Compression

The "knee" point of the compressor, set with the THRESHOLD control, purposely changes depending on the setting of the RATIO control. Decreasing the RATIO setting lowers the effective threshold, hence maintaining the perceived "loudness" of the compressed signal.

Dominant Sidechain Architecture

The SSL G Bus Compressor features a classic "dominant" sidechain configuration. The left and right signals are independently rectified and compared in real time, and the dominant (louder) channel controls the amount of gain reduction for the overall stereo signal.

SSL G Bus Compressor Controls

Most SSL G Bus Compressor and SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy controls are identical. Any control differences between the two plug-ins are noted.

Threshold

Threshold defines the signal level at which the onset of compression occurs. Incoming signals that exceed this level are compressed. Signals below the level are unaffected. The control range is ±15 dB.

As the Threshold control is decreased and more compression occurs, output level is typically reduced. The Make Up control can be used to modify the output to compensate if desired.

Note that the Ratio control interacts with the compression threshold to maintain the perceived loudness of the signal. As Ratio is decreased, the effective threshold is lowered.

> ***Tip:*** *In SSL Bus Compressor, click the "0" text label to return Threshold to its center position.*

Make Up

Make Up (post-compression make up gain) controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The range is 0 dB to +15 dB.

Generally speaking, the Make Up control is adjusted after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Threshold and Ratio controls. Make Up does not affect the amount of compression.

> ***Tip:*** *In SSL Bus Compressor, click the "0" text label to return Make Up to its unity position.*

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time that must elapse once the input signal reaches the Threshold level before compression is applied. The faster the Attack, the more rapidly compression is applied to signals above the threshold. Available Attack times are discrete values of 0.1 milliseconds, 0.3 ms, 1 ms, 3 ms, 10 ms, and 30 ms.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for compression to cease once the input signal drops below the threshold level. Slower release times can smooth the transition that occurs when the signal dips below the threshold, especially useful for material with frequent peaks. However, if the Release time is set too long, compression for sections of audio with loud signals may extend to lengthy sections of audio with lower signals.

Available Release times are discrete values of 100 ms, 300 ms, 600 ms, 1.2 s, and Auto. The Auto release characteristic for SSL G Bus Compressor has a unique quality that is optimized for program material.

Ratio

Ratio defines the amount of gain reduction to be processed by the compressor. For example, a value of 2 (expressed as a 2:1 ratio) reduces the signal above the threshold by half, with an input signal of 20 dB being reduced to 10 dB. The available Ratio values are 2:1, 4:1, and 10:1.

> ***Note:*** *The Ratio control interacts with the compression threshold so the perceived loudness of the signal is maintained. As Ratio is decreased, the effective threshold is lowered.*

Power (IN)

The Power button determines whether the plug-in is active. Click the Power button to toggle the processor state. Power is useful for comparing the processed sound to that of the original signal.

Gain Reduction Meter

The VU-style Gain Reduction meter displays the amount of gain reduction occurring in the compressor. Higher values indicate more gain reduction.

Increase the signal level into the plug-in and/or lower the Threshold control to increase gain reduction. The Headroom control also affects the amount of gain reduction.

Sidechain Filter

Amongst some circles of SSL aficionados, the saying went, "If your bottom-end makes the G Bus Compressor pump, you've got too much bottom." That said, not every mix or subgroup is created equal, so we added a continuously variable 12 dB per octave high-pass filter to the sidechain of the SSL G Bus Compressor. The sidechain filter allows removal of low-frequency content from the control sidechain, reducing excessive gain reduction and/or "pumping" on bass-heavy audio signals without reducing bass content of the audio signal itself.

> ***Note:*** *The Sidechain Filter only acts on the sidechain signal. While it can produce an audible change in dynamics behavior, it does not act directly on the signal that is output from the plug-in.*

At the lowest setting of the SC Filter control, the filter is defeated, and does not affect compressor behavior. As the SC Filter knob is turned clockwise, the filter is engaged and its frequency sweeps between 20-500 Hz, allowing for a wide range of relationships between bass level and gain reduction.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OFF text label to turn off the sidechain filter. Click OFF again to return the filter to its previous setting.*

> ***Note:*** *Sidechain Filter is not available on SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy or 4K Bus Compressor.*

Headroom

The Headroom control, which is a UAD-only feature not found in the original hardware, enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the SSL G Bus Compressor. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor. By fine-tuning Headroom, the non-linear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels. By increasing the Headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise), signals at the input can be pushed higher before they compress.

Headroom simply changes the internal operating level so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much. Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw "dot" is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is increased as the dB value decreases.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "HR-dB" text label to return the control to the default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion color) more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less gain reduction and less color is desired.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

Keep in mind there are no hard and fast headroom rules. Feel free to experiment with the various positions of the Headroom control regardless of the audio source. If it sounds good, use it!

> ***Note:*** *Headroom is not available on SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy or 4K Bus Compressor.*

Mix

The output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the Mix control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

When set to 0, only the unprocessed source signal is output. When set to 100 (the default value), only the processed signal is output. When set to the center position (50%), an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output (parallel compression). The balance is continuously variable throughout the control range.

Tip: Click the 50 text label to quickly set the control to the 50% position. Click the 0 text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the 100 text label to set the control to the maximum position.

> ***Note:*** *Mix is not available on SSL G Bus Compressor Legacy or 4K Bus Compressor.*

Auto Fade

As found on the console and favorite SSL outboard units, the Auto Fade function is useful when the end of a song needs a gradual decrease in volume. The speed of the fade can be tuned from 1 to 60 seconds, and incorporates SSL's signature fade curves.

The SSL G Bus Compressor and Legacy plug-ins provide an Auto Fade function that, upon activation, automatically reduces the plug-in output to minimum within a specified time period. This function enables extremely smooth-sounding fade-outs (and fade-ins). As a plus, it can be automated as well.

The Auto Fade function processes the signal at the output of the compressor. The fade signal level that is output has an exponential curve.

Note: *Auto-Fade is not available in 4K Bus Compressor.*

Rate

The Rate control determines the amount of time that passes between the Auto Fade button being activated and the plug-in output level being reduced to minimum (or being raised to 0 dB in the case of a fade-in). The available range is from 1 second to 60 seconds.

Fade times immediately reflect the current Rate value. Therefore a fade-out that has already been initiated can be accelerated by changing Rate during the fade-out. Conversely, a fade-in can be accelerated by changing Rate during the fade-in.

Auto Fade Button

Activating the Auto Fade button initiates a fade-out. The fade-out time is determined by the Rate parameter. The Auto Fade button flashes when a fade-out is in progress, and is continuously lit when the fade-out is complete (when the Rate time has elapsed).

Deactivating Fade (clicking the solid-lit button) initiates a fade-in. During a fade-in, the signal level is increased from the current level of attenuation to 0 dB of attenuation. The Auto Fade button flashes when a fade-in is in progress, and is no longer illuminated when the fade-in is complete (when the Rate time has elapsed).

Toggling the Auto Fade button causes an already active fade to reverse direction, without a jump in output level. The Rate is constant even if an active fade is interrupted. For example, if the Rate value is 30 seconds and a fade-out is initiated, then Auto Fade is clicked again after 20 seconds, it will take 20 seconds to fade back in.

Tip: *Shift+click the Fade button to instantly return the level back to 0 dB (this feature cannot be automated).*

Solid State Logic

SOUND | | VISION

All visual and aural references to the SSL 4000 E series, SSL G Bus Compressor, and all use of SSL trademarks are being made with written permission from Solid State Logic.
Special thanks to Jim Motley and Chris Jenkins.

Studer A800 Multichannel Tape Recorder

The Rich Analog Sound of the World's Most Popular Multichannel Tape Machine and Four Tape Formulas in a Single Plug-In.

For more than 30 years, artists and engineers alike have been drawn to the warm sound, solid "punchy" low-end, and overall presence of the Studer® A800 Multichannel Tape Recorder. The sheer number of albums recorded on this legendary 2" analog tape machine — including classics from Metallica, Stevie Wonder, Tom Petty and Jeff Buckley — serve as shining examples of the musicality of analog tape.

Authenticated by Studer, and modeled by UA's world-renowned team of DSP engineers and AES magnetic recording expert Jay McKnight over a 12-month period, the Studer A800 Multi-Channel Tape Recorder plug-in for UAD-2 is the first and only product of its kind. This plug-in faithfully models the entire multitrack tape circuit path and electronics of an A800 machine — plus the distinct sounds of multiple tape formulas. Put simply, it's the world's most accurate representation of professional analog tape recording, now available on Mac and PC.

As the first microprocessor-controlled tape machine, the Studer A800 marked a new generation of professional multitrack recorders when it was introduced in 1978. Years ahead of its time, the A800 remains a sonic benchmark, and can still be found in studios all over the planet. However, with their massive steel frame and meter bridge, twin half-horsepower motors and cast alloy deck plates, original A800 units tip the scales at a backbreaking 900 pounds (408 kg) — not to mention the space required to house such a device. The UAD-2 plug-in version poses none of the hardware hassles of manual calibration and maintenance, nor the potential for tape degradation — while retaining all the beautiful sonic qualities that make tape such a beloved recording medium. Just drop the A800 in your first insert on every track desired, and enjoy the benefits of having recorded to tape.

All visual and aural references to Studer products and all use of Studer trademarks are being made with written permission from Harman International Industries, Inc. Any references to third party tape formulations are used solely for identification and do not imply any endorsement by, or affiliation with, any tape manufacturer.

Operational Overview

The Studer A800 for UAD-2 provides all of the original unit's desirable analog sweetness; like magnetic tape, users can dial in a clean sound, or just the right amount of harmonic saturation using the Input and Output controls. The reel deck IPS control steps through the three tape speed choices available on the original hardware (7.5, 15, or 30 IPS), each with distinct frequency shift, head bump and distortion characteristics. The Tape Type control lets users choose from four of the most popular magnetic tape formulas of the last three decades, each with their own subtle sonic variation and tape compression characteristics. The Cal control allows the user to choose between +3 dB, +6 dB, +7.5 dB, or +9 dB calibration levels, which can be used at their recommended settings, or tweaked for additional tonal options. Input, Sync and Repro paths, plus Thru (bypass) are available for authenticity, providing all available circuit options of the A800. A huge time saver, the Studer A800 plug-in features an innovative Gang Controls setting, allowing for instant global adjustment of any parameters for all Studer A800 instances in your session.

Secondary controls are hidden behind the reel deck, and can be exposed by clicking on the Studer badge or Open label of the plug-in GUI. The Equaliser control allows the user to select between the American (NAB) and European (CCIR) standardized EQs, providing regional pre-emphasis/de-emphasis filtering at 7.5 and 15 IPS, each with its own sonic qualities — plus the AES EQ at 30 IPS. The HF Bias calibration parameter allows the user to tune the HF oscillation voltage feed to the magnetic record head, striking a balance between record sensitivity and distortion. This can also be used creatively as an effect — from warm, overbiased sounds, to voltage-starved distortion and chatter. HF Record is a calibration filter that allows for HF makeup when the ideal Bias leaves a high frequency deficiency; both HF Bias and HF record are fed into the tape nonlinearity. Sync and Repro HF and LF calibration EQs allow for adjusting for a flat playback response, or can also be used creatively. All Secondary Controls can be automatically calibrated to the manufacturer's recommended settings via the A800's Auto Cal feature, or may be disabled. Finally, separate controls for Hiss and Hum are available — each tuned to default settings to match the hardware behavior — with a global noise bypass option.

Multitrack Tape Machine

The primary purpose of Studer A800 is to obtain multichannel tape sonics within the DAW environment. To obtain the classic multitrack tape sound, the plug-in should be placed as the first insert on individual tracks, before other processing is applied. Creative "non-standard" results can be obtained by placing the Studer A800 in subsequent inserts after other processors or on buses in a send/return configuration. Mixdown to two tracks can be emulated by placing the plug-in on the stereo output bus.

Primary & Secondary Controls

The primary controls (those that are typically most used) are on the main panel at the bottom portion of the interface. Additional (typically less used) controls are available on the secondary panel. The secondary panel is accessed by clicking the Studer A800 label or the OPEN text label above it.

Studer A800 interface showing exposed secondary controls

Ganged Operation

The UAD Studer A800 implements a control ganging feature that allows easy simultaneous parameter modification for all instances of the plug-in. The feature enables the DAW to emulate the multitrack tape deck scenario more accurately, where a single change to some multitrack machine parameters (such as tape speed, formula, and calibration settings) would affect all tape channels. See Gang Controls for details.

Mono/Stereo Operation

The UAD Studer A800 is designed with a single-channel interface, to emulate the individual channels of a multitrack tape recorder. However, when the plug-in is used on a stereo track, the “mono” controls affect both channels of the stereo signal identically.

Primary Controls

Path Select

The Path Select buttons specify which of the four possible signal paths is active in the A800. The active mode is indicated by an illuminated button.

Thru

Thru is a bypass control. When enabled, emulation processing is disabled and DSP usage is reduced. Thru is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. Thru is identical to the OFF position in the IPS (Tape Speed) control.

> ***Note:*** *DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), activating Thru will not reduce DSP usage.*

Input

Input mode emulates the sound of the A800 through the machine electronics only, without tape sonics. This is the scenario when the machine is in live monitoring mode but the tape transport is not running.

Sync

Sync mode models the sound of direct recording and playback via the sync/record head, plus all corresponding machine electronics.

Repro

Repro mode models the sound of recording through the record head and playback through the reproduction head, plus all corresponding electronics.

Tape Type

Tape Type selects the active tape stock formulation. Four of the most popular 2" magnetic tape formulas are modeled in the A800 plug-in: 250, 456, 900, and GP9. Each type has its own subtle sonic variation, distortion onset, and "tape compression" characteristics.

Generally speaking, the lower the Cal Level for each formula, the higher the signal level required to reach saturation and distortion.

Cal Level

Cal Level automatically sets tape calibration/fluxivity. The Cal Level setting takes care of the setup one would need to make under equivalent hardware operation, and sets the reference tape/flux level without disturbing the (unity) gain of the plug-in.

The record, repro, and sync gain trims found on the A800 channel cards are not present on the plug-in. Instead (when Auto Cal is enabled), these controls are amalgamated into this single Cal Level gain control.

As tape formulas advanced, their output level increased, thus lowering relative noise floor. +3, +6 and +9 dB output formulas were available in the 2" format. Under normal use, the machine would be calibrated to the tape's output level. However, users would sometimes under-calibrate to leave more headroom for a broader sweet or to prevent electronics from clipping. Therefore, the user can go traditional and calibrate to the recommended levels, or select a non-corresponding calibration setting with Cal Level.

As an example, if 456 is the selected Tape Type and when Cal Level is set at +6 (6 dB higher than the NAB tape standard), the reference fluxivity level is 355 nW/m (nanoweber per meter) and is 10 dB below the point where THD reaches 3% (referred to as the maximum operating level). Therefore, with a 1 kHz test tone at -12 dBFS sent to the plug-in, with Tape Type set to 456, Cal Level set to +6, and Auto Cal enabled, output levels of the plug-in will match the input level and fluxivity on the tape will be 355 nW/m.

The manufacturer's recommended calibration settings for each Tape Type are as follows:

- 250: +3 Calibration (251 nWb/m)
- 456: +6 Calibration (355 nWb/m)
- 900: +9 Calibration (502 nWb/m)
- GP9: +9 Calibration (502 nWb/m)

Note: *The noise floor is affected by Cal Level when Noise Enable is active.*

Tip: *The UAD Studer A800 default bank offers a variety of preset Tape Type, Tape Speed, CAL level, and EQ configurations that are commonly used for the recording of specific genres.*

IPS (Tape Speed)

The IPS (Inches Per Second) control determines the speed of the tape transport and the associated "head bump."

(Head bump is bass frequency build-up that occurs with magnetic tape; the dominant frequencies shift according to transport speed.)

15 IPS is considered the favorite for rock and acoustic music due to its low frequency "head bump" (low frequency rise) and warmer sound, while 30 IPS is the norm for classical and jazz due to its lower noise floor, greater fidelity and flatter response. 7.5 IPS is also available for an even more colored experience, with even greater frequency shift.

Tip: *Click on the "IPS" text label to stop/start the spinning reels animation.*

The OFF position is a bypass control. When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, the VU Meter and control LEDs are dimmed, and DSP usage is reduced. OFF is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal. OFF is identical to the Thru position in the Path Select control.

> ***Note:*** *DSP usage is reduced only when DSP LoadLock is disabled. If DSP LoadLock is enabled (the default setting), activating OFF will not reduce DSP usage.*

Input

Input acts as an outside gain control (like an external console fader), and adjusts the signal level going into the tape circuitry. The available range is -12 dB to +24 dB.

Just like real magnetic tape, lower Input levels will have a cleaner sound, while higher levels result in more harmonic saturation and coloration.

Higher Input levels will also increase the output level from the plug-in. The Output control can be lowered to compensate.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" control label text to return to the Input value to 0.*

Output

Output acts as an outside gain control (like an external console fader) and adjusts the gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the "0" control label text to return to the Output value to 0.*

VU Meter

The VU Meter provides a visual representation of the signal levels after the virtual tape. The Input control affects how "hot" the signal is.

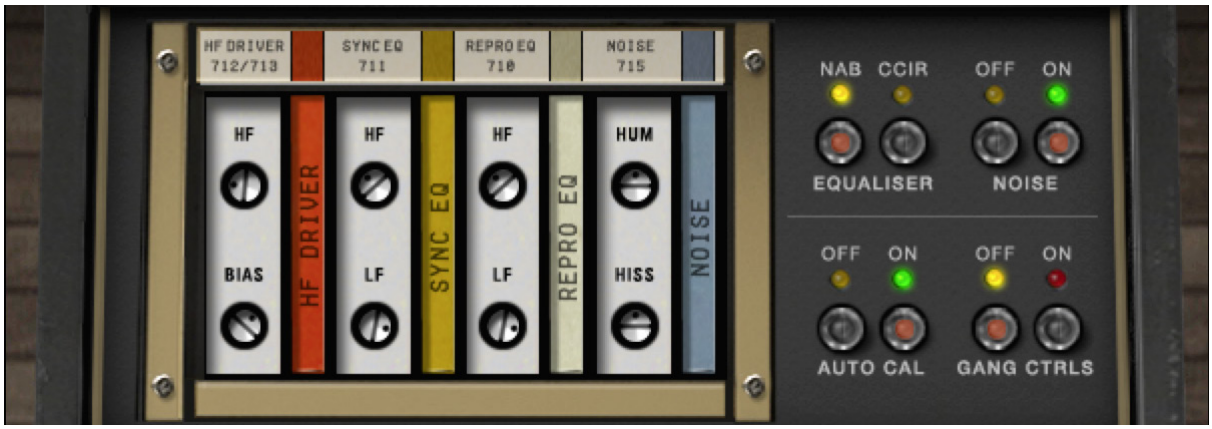
Higher VU levels typically indicate more harmonic saturation, coloration, and/or distortion. However, this will depend on the other control values.

The plug-in operates at an internal level of -12 dBFS. Therefore a digital signal with a level of -12 dB below full scale digital (0 dBFS) at the plug-in input will equate to 0 dB on the plug-in meters.

Secondary Controls

The Secondary Controls are exposed by clicking the “Studer A800” label or the OPEN text above it.

> ***Tip:*** *The last-used state of the Secondary Controls panel (open or closed) is retained when a new Studer A800 plug-in is instantiated.*



Equaliser (Emphasis EQ)

The Equaliser buttons determine the active Emphasis EQ values and the frequency of the hum noise. Click the equaliser buttons to alternate between the two different types.

NAB or CCIR curves can be selected when the Tape Speed is 7.5 or 15 IPS. When the Tape Speed is 30 IPS, neither value is available (the LEDs are dimmed) because the EQ is fixed with the AES emphasis curve.

When the value is set to NAB, the Hum Noise frequency is 60 Hz (the United States standard). When set to CCIR, the Hum Noise frequency is 50 Hz (the standard in Europe and other regions). See Noise Enable and Hum Noise for additional information.

> ***Note:*** *When IPS (Tape Speed) is set to 30 IPS, the yellow LEDs are not illuminated, indicating that the Emphasis EQ is set to AES. However, in 30 IPS mode, the Equaliser switch can still be changed to set the frequency of Hum Noise.*

Tape Speed and Emphasis EQ were originally practical controls for record duration vs. noise and local standards. It is important to note that historically, the origin of the tape machine (US or European) dictated the built-in EQ emphasis, but later machines like the A800 had both circuits available.

While the hardware A800 has discrete controls for tape speed and emphasis EQ, the user has to recalibrate the machine for various speeds and re-jumper the whole machine for 30/15 or 15/7.5 IPS usage. The A800 plug-in has three speeds and related EQ pre-emphasis/de-emphasis filtering, presented as two easy to use controls for simple auditioning of the sonic variations.

CCIR (also known as IEC) is the EQ pre-emphasis made famous on British records and is considered the technically superior EQ; many say this EQ was part of the "British sound" during tape's heyday. NAB (also referred to as IEC2) was the American standard with its own sound. AES is truly standardized for 30 IPS and is the sole EQ found on the Studer A800 for 30 IPS.

Noise Enable

The Noise Enable buttons are a global enable/disable control for the individual hum and hiss components of the A800 model. The amount of hum and hiss noises are continuously variable and are set with the Hum Noise and Hiss Noise controls. Click the Noise buttons to alternate between OFF and ON.

While noise is historically considered a negative, and was the attribute that pushed the technical envelope for better machines and formulas, noise is still an ever-present component of the sound of using tape and tape machines.

Auto Cal

The Studer A800 has individual parameters for Bias, HF Record EQ, and Sync/Repro EQ. On the hardware tape machine, these calibration controls are usually adjusted whenever Tape Type, Tape Speed, or Emphasis EQ is changed.

When Auto Cal (Automatic Calibration) is ON in the plug-in, these calibration controls are automatically adjusted to the calibrated values whenever the Tape Type, Tape Speed, and Emphasis EQ are modified. After Auto Calibration occurs, the automatically adjusted parameters can then be modified to any value if desired.

When Auto Cal is OFF, the calibration parameters do not change values when Tape Type, Tape Speed, and Emphasis EQ are modified.

Note: *Auto Cal is enabled by default.*

Tip: *When making manual calibration settings, consider disabling Auto Cal so the manually calibrated settings are not accidentally lost if another control is modified.*

Gang Controls

Gang Controls enables global control adjustments of all parameters for all Studer A800 instantiations. This functionality may be accessed from within any active Studer A800 plug-in.

Click the Gang Controls buttons to alternate between the two states. A red flashing LED is present whenever Gang Controls is enabled as a reminder to use this feature with caution.

> ***Important:*** *When Gang Controls is ON and a Studer A800 parameter is modified, the current value of that parameter on all other Studer A800 instantiations will be overwritten and cannot be recovered.*

Gang Controls Notes

- Gang Controls is a read-only, non-automatable parameter and its current value is not saved with the session.
- Gang Controls is a static control without the ability to make relative offsets. Disable Gang Controls if offsets between the same control within different instantiations is desired.
- If Gang Controls is enabled when Auto Cal is enabled, any adjustments made to Tape Type, Tape Speed or Emphasis EQ causes the Calibration Controls to be automatically adjusted for all instantiations. However, if the Tape Type, Tape Speed or Emphasis EQ values do not already match between instantiations before Gang Controls is active, the resulting calibrated values may not match either.
- When Gang Controls is enabled, there are no audible or visual changes to the other Studer A800 instantiations until a control is actually changed.
- When Gang Controls is enabled and a Studer A800 settings preset is loaded via the UAD Toolbar, the loaded parameter settings are pushed to all Studer A800 instances.

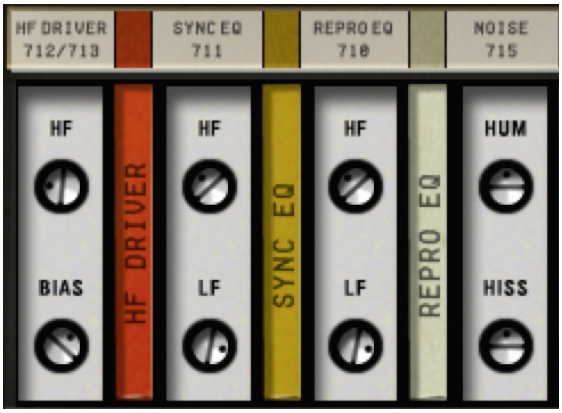
Calibration Controls

The calibration controls are automatically adjusted when Auto Cal is active, or they can be manually modified as desired.

The "flat" calibrated position for these controls is determined by Tape Type and Tape Speed; therefore the available ± range for these controls is dependent on the current calibration.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking the text label for any of the HF Record EQ, Bias, and Sync/Repro EQ controls will return that parameter to the calibrated value.*

> ***Note:*** *When making manual calibration settings, consider disabling Auto Cal so the manually calibrated settings are not accidentally lost if another control is modified.*



The calibration controls

HF Record EQ

HF (High Frequency) Record EQ is provided to make up for common residual HF loss due to Bias optimization and system filtering. It is used to tune HF content into the incoming signal prior to the tape non-linearity. The control provides a continuous "boost filter" gain and affects saturation characteristics.

> ***Note:*** *This filter is prior to the tape record circuit, while the other EQs (Sync, Repro) are for tape playback only.*

HF Driver Bias

Bias is defined as an oscillator beyond the audible range applied to the audio at the record head, allowing for adjustment of the record behavior. Ideal bias voltage settings provide maximum record sensitivity and low distortion. Intentionally overbiasing is a common technique especially for "tape compression" of drums, giving a warmer, gently saturated sound. Underbiasing can also be used to add distortion and other nonlinear responses, similar to gate chatter or cold solder joints; extremely low voltages may even cause audio to drop out entirely. Bias voltage, HF Record EQ, and fixed Emphasis EQ (CCIR, NAB, AES) work together to provide a linear response to the recorded signal.

Sync/Repro EQ

Sync and Repro Playback EQ Controls are available for tape playback calibration. They affect the signal coming out of the tape circuitry.

With the hardware machine, these controls enable compensation for any tape frequency loss or head wear. Under hardware use, the Sync and Repro playback heads are calibrated to normal operating standards and are nearly identical when set correctly. However, they may be tuned incorrectly to achieve a desired sound. Sync EQ and Repro EQ are used as filters to shape the frequency response of the system in maintaining a flat response, but they may be used on their own for high or low frequency adjustment.

Sync HF EQ

Adjusts the high frequency content when Path Select is set to Sync. When Path Select is not set to Sync, the control has no effect.

Sync LF EQ

Adjusts the low frequency content when Path Select is set to Sync. When Path Select is not set to Sync, the control has no effect.

Repro HF EQ

Adjusts the high frequency content when Path Select is set to Repro. When Path Select is not set to Repro, the control has no effect.

Repro LF EQ

Adjusts the low frequency content when See Path Select (See Path Select) is set to Repro. When Path Select is not set to Repro, the control has no effect.

Noise

The Noise controls allow the user to control the Hum and Hiss elements found on the original hardware. Separate controls for Hum and Hiss are available and each can be adjusted for creative purposes.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the control label text to return to the Hum or Hiss value to 0.*

Hiss affects the signal at the tape head; Hum is added after the tape circuitry. Hum and Hiss values default to comparative levels found on the original hardware. The available range for both controls is ±25 dB.

> ***Note:*** *The global Noise Enable control must be ON for the Hum and Hiss parameters to have any effect.*

Hum Noise

The Hum Noise frequency is dependent on the setting of the Equaliser (Emphasis EQ) control. The frequency is 60 Hz when set to NAB (US) and 50 Hz when set to CCIR (European).

> ***Note:*** *When IPS (Tape Speed) is set to 30 IPS, the yellow Equaliser LEDs are not illuminated, indicating that the Emphasis EQ is set to AES. However, in 30 IPS mode, the Equaliser switch can still be changed to set the frequency of Hum Noise.*

Hiss Noise

Just like the hardware, the amount of hiss is dependent on settings of the various controls. Overall Hiss Noise is set with this control, but may change based on the Path Select, Tape Speed, Tape Type, Emphasis EQ, Cal Level, Bias, Playback EQs, and Output Level controls.

Because hiss noise is an element of tape playback, Hiss is disabled when Path Select is to INPUT.

> ***Note:*** *Hiss timbre and level can change with Tape Type.*

Studio D Chorus

Beautiful subtle modulation and movement for every track

Introduced in 1979, the Roland Dimension D* chorus is famous for injecting spatialization, and sweet, subtle modulation. Used as a "secret sauce" by everyone from Brian Eno to Stevie Ray Vaughan, this legendary rack piece is an ideal example of functional simplicity.

The Studio D Chorus plug-in for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces is an exacting emulation of this sought-after rack unit, deftly capturing its musical bucket-brigade circuit, the key to its complex range of sounds and textures.

Now You Can:

- Add subtle spatial effects to instruments and buses
- Easily open up background vocals, strings, and more
- Use the "all buttons" mode for an extra shade of space and depth
- Enhance tracks and add pop and interest without obviously effecting signals

Enter the Bucket Brigade

Whereas most analog bucket-brigade chorus circuits work with 512 or even fewer delay stages, the Studio D Chorus plug-in captures the original hardware's whopping 1024 stages per channel. This design offers complex modulation that fattens the stereo image in very "non-chorus" fashion.

Four Buttons and the Truth

With four push-buttons as its only controls, the Studio D Chorus plug-in perfectly captures the iconic hardware's understated elegance. Each button gives you four different levels of effect intensity. Engage all four buttons at once, and you get one more tantalizing modulation choice. Like with the hardware, the buttons can used be in any combination for a large sonic palette.

Strength in Subtlety

Like the iconic hardware, the Studio D Chorus plug-in does not create a dramatically new sound — it *enhances* it. You can make simple guitar/vocal arrangements wider, deeper, and more interesting, or quickly gel groups of strings and vocals — without compression, EQ, or reverb. For floating guitar textures and synth pads, the Studio D Chorus plug-in simply can't be beat. Ultimately, the Studio D Chorus plug-in's utterly unique character on nearly any source make it an essential tool for every engineer's toolkit.

*Note: The Studio D Chorus product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland. The Roland name, as well as the Dimension D model name is used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Studio D Chorus interface

Studio D Chorus Controls

The Studio D Chorus is a very simple device to operate as it has only three parameters: Power, Mono, and Mode. Each control is detailed below.

Dimension Mode

Dimension Mode determines the effect intensity. Four different modes are available. Mode 1 provides the most subtle effect, and Mode 4 has maximum intensity.

Multiple Buttons

True to the original hardware, multiple Dimension Mode buttons can be engaged simultaneously for subtle sonic variations of the four main modes. To engage multiple Dimension Mode buttons, press the Shift key on the computer keyboard while clicking the Mode buttons.

Input

The original hardware has an input switch on the rear panel that configures the unit for mono-in/stereo-out operation. This function is modeled in the plug-in and the switch is moved into the interface for convenience.

When Input is set to MONO, the input to Dimension D is monophonic even when used in a stereo-input configuration (stereo inputs are summed to mono). Stereo-in/mono-out can be useful for sonic variation, such as when the plug-in is used in an auxiliary effect send/return configuration.

The default position (in/darker) is STEREO. Click the switch (out) to enable Mono mode.

Power

The is the plug-in's overall bypass control for quickly comparing the processed and unprocessed signal. In the ON (in) position, signal processing is active. In the OFF position (out), the unprocessed signal is heard. Click the button to change the POWER state.

> ***Tip:*** *UAD-2 DSP usage is reduced when the POWER is off if DSP LoadLock is disabled in the Configuration panel within the UAD Meter & Control Panel application.*

Power LED

The Power LED is illuminated when the plug-in is active.

Output Meter

This LED-style meter represents the level of the signal at the output of the plug-in when processing is active.

Note: The Studio D Chorus product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Roland. The Roland name, as well as the Dimension D model name is used solely to identify the classic effects emulated by Universal Audio's product.

Teletronix® LA-2A Leveler Collection

The ultimate collection of the most revered optical compressor ever

With its gentle, program dependent optical compression, and meticulously designed tube amplifier, the LA-2A is the go-to compressor for professional mixers around the world. In 2001, Universal Audio set the standard in analog emulation with the original UAD LA-2A plug-in.

Today, UA's engineers have redesigned the LA-2A plug-in with more obsessive detail. The LA-2A Classic Leveler Plug-In Collection for UAD-2 hardware and Apollo interfaces features immaculate models of three highly sought-after LA-2A units, giving you the most authentic emulations ever of this iconic compressor.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with three historic versions of revered Teletronix LA-2A Leveling Amplifiers, each with its own distinctive sonic attributes
- Record through a Teletronix LA-2A/LA-2 in real time with Apollo interfaces
- Dial-in ideal optical compression textures for vocals, bass, drums, and more
- Harness presets from LA-2A users Ross Hogarth, Darrell Thorp, and Vance Powell

The Teletronix® Story

Teletronix founder Jim Lawrence first used photocells for controlling audio gain in the early 1960s. His ingenious optical compression design was a technological breakthrough, far surpassing the stability and transparency of earlier circuits. Universal Audio founder M.T. "Bill" Putnam later purchased this patented technology, continuing to manufacture the LA-2A for years to come.

Three Historical Units

The Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection puts three of the most coveted incarnations of the iconic Teletronix processor at your fingertips. Like the hardware, the LA-2A Silver, LA-2A Gray, and LA-2 models offer distinct variations in time constants, compression knee, headroom, distortion, program and frequency dependence, and more.

Teletronix LA-2A Silver interface

Teletronix LA-2A Gray interface

Teletronix LA-2 interface

Teletronix LA-2A Legacy interface

LA-2A Plug-In Family

The complete LA-2A family is comprised of four individual plug-ins, as seen on the previous page. Each variation has its own unique sonic characteristics.

Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection

The newer state-of-the-art algorithms in the Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection (introduced in UAD v6.5) take full advantage of the extra power available on UAD-2 devices and the design sophistication and expertise gained since the introduction of the legacy LA-2A plug-in in 2001.

Teletronix LA-2A Silver

With a brushed aluminum panel and original T4B gain reduction module, this cherished late-1960s "Silver" version of the LA-2A, manufactured by Bill Putnam, is perhaps the most flexible of the three plug-ins in the collection. Its fast time constant makes it suitable for the widest variety of program material, including transient-rich sources like drums and percussion.

Teletronix LA-2A Gray

Jim Lawrence's original mid-1960s "Gray" version the LA-2A maintains a more average time constant, providing a range of "medium-speed" compression.

Teletronix LA-2

The exceptionally rare, early 1960s LA-2 unit preceded the LA-2A by several years. It provides the slowest response and a unique "mellowed" sound due to 50 years of luminescent panel aging inside the T4 module. Use the LA-2 with legato tempos and vocal sources for a transparency and sublime mood unlike any other compressor.

Teletronix LA-2A Legacy

The Teletronix LA-2A Legacy plug-in was, along with the UA 1176LN Legacy, the first plug-in available for the UAD platform. This first-generation plug-in runs on UAD-1 and UAD-2 devices. It still has a great sound and is very usable, especially when there are not enough DSP resources to use the second-generation models in the newer Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection.

To accommodate the limited DSP resources of the UAD-1, the transformer and I/O distortion characteristics were not modeled in this plug-in. This makes the Teletronix LA-2A Legacy especially useful in situations where less distortion, and less DSP usage, is desirable.

Operational Overview

Applications

In the 60s and 70s, the LA-2A and 1176 became inextricably linked as the must-have dynamic tools of the day. If the 1176 is to the Stratocaster in terms of immediacy and flexibility, then the LA-2A is to the Gibson Les Paul in terms of warmth and one-of-a-kind, magical sonic distinction. An important characteristic of the T4 photocell response is that it is both program and frequency dependent. The T4 cell has a multi-stage release, and can take a few minutes to fully recover from the incoming signal.

The primary use is as individual inserts for sources that require nominal transparent gain reduction, such as vocals, bass, strings or horns. These tools can also be used to isolate the "color" of the output amplifier by turning off the Peak Reduction control, even to extreme distortion settings. An interesting sidechain distortion can be achieved at the most extreme Peak Reduction settings, which primarily affects low frequencies.

Parameters

No compressor is as easy to operate or instantly satisfying to use as the Teletronix Levelers. Peak Reduction applies the compression threshold to the incoming signal up to -40 dB, while Gain amplifies the signal for level matching post Peak Reduction. Set the metering view on any of the units with either +4 or +10 dB Output Gain, or Gain Reduction. Both LA-2A Gray and Silver expose the hardware's rear Limit/Compress switch, as well as the unit's "R37 FM Broadcast Emphasis" filter as front panel parameters. Although not present on the unit originally, the LA-2 was "hot-rodded" to include Emphasis, which is exposed on the front panel. Lastly, Power bypasses all DSP processing, providing a handy level matching tool not found on the original hardware.

Artist Presets

The Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection includes artist presets from prominent LA-2A users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see the "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" chapter in the UAD System Manual).

> ***Note:*** *Presets created with the original LA-2A Legacy plug-in are incompatible with the newer Leveler Collection plug-ins.*

Reference Level

Plug-ins in the Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection operate at an internal reference level of -12 dBFS. This enables more range in the primary controls (Peak Reduction and Gain) before the I/O distortion characteristics become apparent (signals at the input of these plug-ins can be pushed higher before they distort). For related information about internal reference levels, see "Operating Levels" in the UAD System Manual.

LA-2A Controls

Each model in the LA-2A plug-in collection has the same control set. The parameter descriptions below apply to all models unless otherwise noted.

Peak Reduction

This control sets the amount of signal compression by adjusting the trigger threshold. Increasing the value lowers the threshold, and therefore increases the amount of compression. The available range is 0 dB (fully counter-clockwise) to -40 dB (fully clockwise).

> ***Note:*** *The front panel knob values, which range from 0-100, are arbitrary and do not reflect any particular dB value.*

Rotate this control clockwise until the desired amount of compression is achieved. To monitor the amount of Peak Reduction, set the VU Meter knob to Gain Reduction. Peak Reduction should be adjusted independently of the Gain control.

When Peak Reduction is set to its minimum value, no compression (or limiting) occurs but the signal is still colored by the circuitry and the output level can be adjusted with the Gain control.

Gain

The Gain knob increases the output level by up to 40 dB to compensate for the reduced level that results from compression. Adjust the Gain control after the desired amount of compression is achieved with the Peak Reduction control. The Gain control does not affect the amount of compression.

> ***Note:*** *The front panel knob values, which range from 0-100, are arbitrary and do not reflect any particular dB value.*

Meter Knob

This rotary knob sets the mode of the VU Meter. When set to Gain Reduction, the VU Meter indicates the Gain Reduction level in dB. When set to +10 or +4, the VU Meter indicates the output level in dB (when set to +4, a meter reading of 0 corresponds to an output level of +4 dB).

VU Meter

This is a standard VU meter that displays either the amount of gain reduction, or output level, depending upon the setting of the Meter Function switch.

On/Power Switch

Determines whether the plug-in is active. When the Power switch is in the Off position, the plug-in is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Compress/Limit

This switch sets the compression ratio of the leveler. When set to Compress, the compression ratio is approximately 3:1 and when set to Limit, the ratio is approximately infinity:1. However, the compression ratios are nonlinear and frequency dependent, so these figures are not absolute.

Note: *Like the original hardware, this control is unavailable on the Teletronix LA-2 plug-in. The plug-in is "hardwired" in Limit mode.*

Emphasis

The (R37) Emphasis "set screw" knob controls a shelf filter circuit in the compressor's sidechain input, thereby enabling frequency-dependent compression.

When the control is fully clockwise (the default position), the sidechain signal is unfiltered and all frequencies in the source signal that exceed the compression threshold will trigger gain reduction equally (within the non-linear constraints of the electro-optical characteristics).

Rotating the Emphasis control counter-clockwise increases filtering of the sidechain signal. The Emphasis filter gradually reduces the lower frequency content of the sidechain signal, resulting in compression that is less sensitive to those frequencies, and more sensitive to high frequency content. Therefore, as the sidechain filtering is increased, higher frequencies are compressed more.

Note: *Emphasis is unavailable on the Teletronix LA-2A Legacy.*

Side-Chain Pre-Emphasis (R37) Background

The LA-2A hardware was designed for use in broadcast applications. The audio signal in FM broadcasting undergoes pre-emphasis and results in a 17 dB boost at 15 kHz. Due to this increase in signal level, transmitters are subject to over-modulation. The LA-2A hardware provides a control (R37) which controls the amount of high-frequency compression.

This potentiometer is factory set for a "flat" side-chain response (clockwise). Increasing the resistance of this potentiometer by turning it counter-clockwise will result in compression which is increasingly more sensitive to the higher frequencies.

Historical Background

In the 1950s while at Parsons Electronics, Electrical Engineer Jim Lawrence was quietly asked to join the Titan Missile Program based at Cal Tech's Jet Propulsion Lab and was assigned to develop optical sensors for the program. Fortunately for everyone, the technology developed from Lawrence's work lead back to a more peaceful deployment of the optical sensor, as the detector in his future Leveling Amplifier. The interactions of the luminescent panel with the photo resistors in his T4 design are predominantly what gives the Teletronix Levelers their signature sound.

Lawrence later broke out on his own to start Teletronix, setting up shop in his hometown of Pasadena, California in 1958. Among the Teletronix line of products were transmitter tubes, multiplex generators, to full-scale radio transmitters. Jim's first pass at his Leveling Amplifier was realized as the Teletronix LA-1; Around 100 units were made. Lawrence then updated the design to the LA-2 with improved specs and circuit layout, then moved quickly to the industry standard LA-2A. In 1965, just three years after the incarnation of the LA-2A, Jim Lawrence sold the company to Babcock Electronics. Enter Bill Putnam. Putnam picked up Babcock's broadcast division including Teletronix, and rolled it into his parent company, Studio Electronics in 1967. From there, Universal Audio resumed manufacturing of the LA-2A, and Putnam began using the optical detector for new designs.

Whether serendipity or by intent, Jim Lawrence's Teletronix Levelers and his T4 design had the right musical response that allowed the LA-2A the sonic and technological longevity it still retains. Universal Audio spent a long time getting the T4 right for their hardware LA-2A reissue and the plug-in. But what was special about it wasn't fully understood until UA began the research to model the LA-2A for the UAD-1. Modern photocells are designed to be as fast as possible, but they don't have the right multi-stage response they need to sound like a Teletronix design. Our DSP research helped us understand how the original T4 worked at the quantum physics level. This not only allowed us to develop an accurate DSP model of the gain reduction behavior, it also helped us make our hardware T4 more consistent. This involved studying the original photocell formula, working with both modern device physicists and the people who developed the original photocells, locating the special equipment originally used to manufacture these back in the '60s, and re-qualifying the manufacturer. Whether hardware or DSP, it is this special qualified manufacturing process and "recipe" UA re-established that gives the LA-2A its unique, musical sonic quality to this day.

The Teletronix LA-2A Leveler Collection original hardware units

Thermionic Culture Vulture

The original boutique, all-valve, studio distortion tool

A singular, enigmatic piece of all-valve boutique hardware, the Thermionic Culture Vulture is a distortion hedonist's malleable plaything. For more than 15 years, this British-made, studio-grade, high-gain valve unit has provided a palette of vivid distortion colors — from sublime thickening textures to demonic growls of perverted mayhem — on countless genre-spanning recordings.

Now — thanks to an intense multi-year engineering effort from Universal Audio — you can track and mix with the *only* authentic circuit emulation of this one-of-a-kind valve distortion tool with the Thermionic Culture Vulture plug-in.

Now You Can:

- Get a full palette of high-gain, studio-grade, dual-stage valve distortion
- Dial-in rich harmonic content with three diverse valve topologies — including UA's first ever pentode tube emulation
- Record through the Culture Vulture in real time with Apollo Twin, Apollo DUO, Apollo QUAD, or Apollo 16
- Subtly color or utterly destroy existing tracks, buses, or a full mix with the Culture Vulture using any UAD-2 hardware
- Get the same sound and controls as the legendary analog hardware with added features like parallel Dry/Wet processing
- Mix with artist presets from Tony Maserati, Eric "ET" Thorngren, Rik Simpson, Chris Coady, and more

Dominate your Sources with Three Valve Topologies

The Culture Vulture plug-in faithfully emulates all of the original hardware's sonic proclivities and diabolical details, including its three distinct all-valve circuit topologies.

Use Triode mode for gentle warming on any source, from a mix bus to a DI bass or synth signal tracking real time through an Apollo interface. Or add more odd-order harmonic edginess to a vocal or rhythm guitar with Pentode 1.

Not enough pain? Tap into the nearly-impossible-to model Pentode 2 mode — a unique, mad-genius circuit that inspires creativity and invites experimentation with its opulent range of demented distortions.

Authentic, All-Valve Circuit

The Vulture Culture captures the natural, "in-between-the transients" dynamic bias response inherent in the Culture Vulture's valve-driven circuit — as well as its powerful stereo control set.

Use the Drive knobs and Overdrive switches to control the amount of input signal hitting the 6AS6 valves — with up to 20 dB of gain on tap! The Bias controls adjust the incoming voltage, providing dramatic differences in response, from clean to distorted, voltage-starved chatter, and gating effects. Use the Filter controls (9 kHz and 6 kHz) to fine-tune your distortion flavors even further.

Expanded Feature Set for Valve-Soaked Mixes

The Culture Vulture plug-in offers two key features not found on the original hardware. Use the Mix control for parallel processing on any bus, adding gentle valve presence, punch, and grit to drums, vocals, or an entire mix. And with the Link function, you're afforded a perfectly matched stereo image to save time and preserve balances.

While the Thermionic Culture Vulture is not a compressor per se, it can act as sonic "glue" on a bus or an entire mix, deftly teasing out tantalizing sizzle and detail with authentic valve *heat*.

Thermionic Culture Vulture interface

Operational Overview

Two Channel Processor

Thermionic Culture Vulture is a two-channel device capable of running in stereo or dual-mono modes. When used on a stereo signal, the active mode is determined by the Control Link switch. When the plug-in is used in a mono-in/mono-out configuration, the controls for either channels can be used to adjust settings.

Controls Layout

Like the original hardware, the arrangement of the controls for Channels 1 and 2 have a mirror image of each other (the Channel 2 controls have reversed ordering compared to the Channel 1 controls).

> ***Note:*** *Parameter ordering is not mirrored in Controls mode (available in some DAWs) or automation views.*

Unorthodox Controls

Some plug-in controls (Bias, Filter, Bypass, Power) are "backwards" when compared to traditional hardware designs. These anomalies are true to the original hardware design.

Expanded Feature Set

The Culture Vulture plug-in offers two key features not found on the original hardware: Mix and Control Link.

The Mix control can be used for parallel processing on any bus, adding gentle valve presence, punch, and grit to drums, vocals, or an entire mix. With the Control Link function, perfectly matched stereo imaging is possible to save time and preserve balances.

Artist Presets

The Thermionic Culture Vulture plug-in includes artist presets from prominent users. The artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The artist presets are also placed by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar. Also included are additional artist presets that are not available in the internal factory bank. These additional presets can also be accessed using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar.

Thermionic Culture Vulture Controls

Controls for Channel 1 and Channel 2 are identical and therefore are only described once. The Link, Mix, and Power controls apply to both channels.

Drive

Drive adjusts the amount of input gain (amplified by the EF86 input stage valve), that is sent to the 6AS6 distortion valve. Rotating this control clockwise increases the amount of distortion.

The available Drive range is from 1 to 11. The values are arbitrary and do not represent absolute levels.

Bias

Bias varies the amount of current passed through the cathode in the 6AS6 distortion valve. The amount of Bias current is displayed by the Meters.

Bias has a significant impact on the distortion characteristics. True to the original hardware, the behavior of this control is reversed.

Clockwise (forward) rotation decreases bias current and generally produces a cleaner and thinner sound. At lower bias currents, the cathode is "starved" and the signal collapses more easily. At the lowest settings, only signal peaks are passed through the valve, resulting in a gating effect.

Counter-clockwise (backward) rotation increases bias current and generally produces a thicker, rounder tone with more harmonic distortion. At higher bias currents, the cathode is "over-fed" and outputs rich, fat distortion.

Medium settings are generally best for gently warming sounds without obvious distortion. The cleanest setting is at approximately 0.25 to 0.3 milliamperes.

The default Bias knob value is 6 for 0.45 milliamperes of bias current. The knob values of 1 to 11 are arbitrary and do not represent absolute levels.

Distortion Type

The 6AS6 distortion valve can operate in three different operating modes by changing the internal wiring of the tube circuit. Distortion Type switches this mode so different characteristics can be obtained.

This switch interacts extensively with the Drive, Bias, and Overdrive controls. The available distortion types, and their characteristics, are described below.

T (Triode)

Triode mode generates more 2nd-order (even) harmonics and is generally the cleanest, smoothest, and "sweetest" mode. Triode mode is great for adding tube warmth to signals without obvious distortion.

P1 (Pentode 1)

Pentode 1 mode generates more 3rd-order (odd) harmonics and has a harder, edgier, and louder sound than Triode mode.

P2 (Pentode 2)

Pentode 2 mode has an unusual wiring for a pentode circuit and a particularly aggressive sound, especially with high Bias current and/or when Overdrive is engaged.

This setting can produce some of the most unusual and over-the-top effects such as frequency doubling, gating, and stuttering. It is normal for this mode to be quieter than Triode or Pentode 1 modes.

Interesting phase behaviors can also be induced in this mode. Depending on the source signal, polarity may invert at extreme settings.

Overdrive

Overdrive applies 20 dB of additional gain to the 6AS6 distortion valve input for increased distortion.

> ***Note:*** *Exercise caution when engaging Overdrive, as output levels can increase significantly (depending on other control settings).*

Overdrive is engaged when the switch is in the down position. The default value is off (up position). Like the Filter, Bypass, and Power switches, the behavior of this control is reversed from typical hardware designs.

The behavior of this switch has a variation from the original hardware. When Overdrive is off (up position), 9 dB of clean gain is added to the input signal. The extra gain is included in the plug-in to compensate for the extreme level changes that occur in the original hardware when Overdrive is engaged (making it easier to quickly compare signals with Overdrive off and on), and also to provide for a more usable range of clean settings.

Filter

Filter applies a 12 dB per octave low pass filter at the output of the 6AS6 distortion valve circuit for a smoother sound.

Like the Overdrive, Bypass, and Power switches, the behavior of this control is reversed from typical hardware designs. Filter is engaged when the switch is in the two down positions. The default value is off (up position).

> ***Note:*** *There is a slight rolloff of upper frequencies even when Filter is set to Off. However, this rolloff does not occur when Distortion Type is set to P2.*

Output Level

Output Level controls the amount of signal going into the output valve (type 5963), which has its own coloration.

Knob values of 8-9 produce the cleanest output. Settings above 9 will overdrive the output valve for increased distortion.

The available range is from 1 to 11 and the default value is maximum. The values are arbitrary and do not represent absolute levels.

Bypass

Bypass disables plug-in processing. If a full bypass is desired to conserve UAD DSP, use the Power switch.

Distortion processing is enabled when the switch is in the *down* position. Like the Filter, Bypass, and Power switches, the behavior of this control is reversed from typical hardware designs.

Control Link

This switch causes the controls for Channels 1 and 2 to be stereo linked. When engaged (right position), adjusting a control on one channel will cause the equivalent control on the other channel to move to the same value.

When the plug-in is used in a stereo (or mono-in/stereo-out) configuration, Control Link is engaged by default. Disable the control (left position) for independent dual-mono processing on stereo signals.

When used in a mono configuration, the switch is fixed in the linked position.

> ***Important:*** *When Control Link is engaged, all Channel 1 values are copied to Channel 2, and any control offsets between channels are lost.*

Mix

The output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the Mix control. Mix facilitates parallel processing techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

When set to 0% (minimum), only the unprocessed (dry) source signal is output. When set to 100% (the default value), only the processed (wet) signal is output. When set to 50%, an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable and phase accurate throughout the control range.

Power

This switch determines whether the plug-in is active. When the Power switch is in the Off (up) position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

Like the Filter, Overdrive, and Bypass switches, the behavior of this control is reversed from typical hardware designs.

Power Lamp

The lamp above the Power switch is illuminated when the plug-in is active.

Tip: *Click the Power Lamp to toggle the enable/disable state of the plug-in.*

Meters

The meters display the bias current, in milliamperes, flowing through the 6AS6 distortion valve. Bias current can be adjusted with the Bias control.

Note that the bias current can be affected by the source material, especially at very high distortion settings. Additionally, depending on input signal levels, the Meters may fluctuate when Bias is not being adjusted).

The original hardware unit

"Warning: Do not take this unit seriously. The Culture Vulture is a fun effects unit and has been designed for maximum pleasure!"

- Thermionic Culture Ltd.

Trident A-Range EQ

The legendary British console EQ that crafted the "Golden Age" of rock records

Licensed and endorsed by Trident Audio Developments, the Trident® A-Range Classic Console EQ plug-in for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces expertly emulates the iconic EQ used on David Bowie's The Rise and Fall of Ziggy Stardust, Lou Reed's Transformer, and Queen's Sheer Heart Attack, among hundreds of others.

Now You Can:

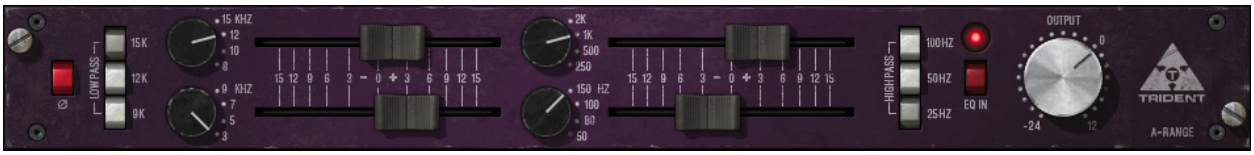
- Track and mix with the legendary 4-band active EQ modeled from one of only 13 original Trident A-Range desks
- Artfully sculpt instruments with unique band interactions and musical cut-filter combinations
- Add snarling midrange and airy high end to electric guitars
- Easily inject life and color to kick drums, bass, and vocals without adding harshness

Capturing the Rare A-Range

Working in partnership with Trident Audio Developments, Universal Audio scrupulously analyzed and faithfully reproduced the EQ section from the same Trident A-Range console used to record Rush's Hemispheres and the Police's Outlandos d'Amour.

An EQ with Distinct, Musical Character

The A-Range's unique voice is born from its inductor-based EQ design. Featuring clever band interactions and distinct cut filter combinations, the Trident A-Range plug-in lets you easily shape guitars, vocals, piano, individual drums, or your drum bus with the same legendary curves used on over 300 Gold and Platinum records.



Trident A-Range EQ interface

Operational Overview

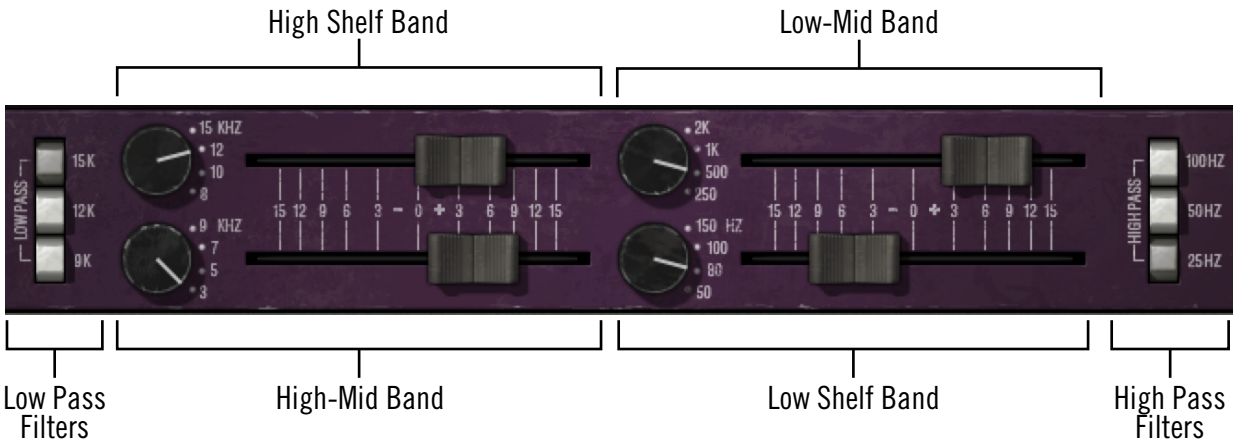
The unique inductor-based EQ section of the board is what the Trident A-Range sound is all about. A series of three high pass filters and three low pass filters are arranged at the ends of the EQ section. These are unique in that the switches can be pushed in simultaneously, offering distinct cut filter combinations with unusual filter curves.

The rest of the EQ section contains four bands: low shelf, low-mid bell, high-mid bell, and high shelf. Each band has four selectable fixed frequencies and ±15 dB of gain. These were the good old days before sweepable frequencies and bandwidth controls, but the results are wonderfully warm and musical. The controls complement is rounded out with phase, output level, and bypass.

There is band interaction between the high and low shelving filters, and also between the low-mid and high-mid bell filters. The midband interactions can be significant if the center frequencies are near each other.

Band Layout

Each of the four main EQ bands have similar controls. The band frequency is controlled by its knob, and the band gain is controlled by its slider.



Trident A-Range band control layout

Trident A-Range EQ Controls

Phase

The Phase (Ø) button inverts the polarity of the signal. The signal is inverted when the button is engaged (darker). Leave the button inactive (lighter) for normal phase. Phase is independent of the EQ IN setting.

Low Pass Filters

Three low pass filters are available, and they can be used simultaneously in any combination. The available cutoff frequencies are 15 kHz, 12 kHz, and 9 kHz with a slope of 12 dB per octave. Each filter is active when its button is engaged (darker).

Each low pass filter "adds" to the others. For example, engaging the 15K filter will rolloff frequencies above 15 kHz, but engaging 9K as well will also attenuate frequencies above 15 kHz, even more than if 15K was used by itself.

High Shelf Band

The high shelf offers Trident-A's famous high frequency shelving EQ.

High Shelving Frequency

The edge frequency of the high shelf filter is specified by this knob. Four shelf edge frequencies are available: 15 kHz, 12 kHz, 10 kHz, and 8 kHz.

High Shelving Gain

The gain for the high shelf filter is specified by the horizontal slider control. The available range is ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the slider is in the center position.

High-Mid Band

The high-mid EQ offers peak/dip "bell" equalization for the high-to-middle frequencies.

High-Mid Frequency

The center frequency of the high-mid filter is specified by this knob. Four center frequencies are available: 9 kHz, 7 kHz, 5 kHz, and 3 kHz.

High-Mid Gain

The gain for the high-mid filter is specified by the horizontal slider control. The available range is approximately ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the slider is in the center position.

Low-Mid Band

The low-mid EQ offers peak/dip “bell” equalization for the middle-to- low frequencies.

Low-Mid Frequency

The center frequency of the low-mid filter is specified by this knob. Four center frequencies are available: 2 kHz, 1 kHz, 500 Hz, and 250 Hz.

Low-Mid Gain

The gain for the low-mid filter is specified by the horizontal slider control. The available range is approximately ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the slider is in the center position.

Low Shelf Band

The low shelf offers low frequency shelving equalization.

Low Shelving Frequency

The edge frequency of the low shelf filter is specified by this knob. Four shelf edge frequencies are available: 150 Hz, 100 Hz, 80 Hz, and 50 Hz.

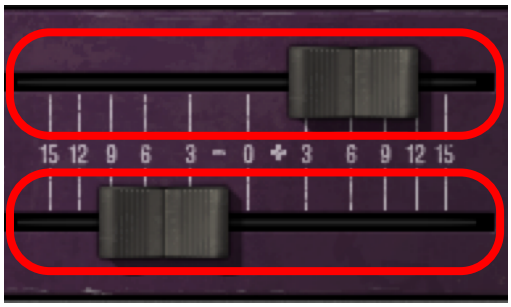
Low Shelving Gain

The gain for the low shelf filter is specified by the horizontal slider control. The available range is ±15 dB. The gain value is zero when the slider is in the center position.

Gain slider shortcuts

The band gain sliders can be instantly moved to any position by clicking anywhere within its range.

> ***Tip:*** *Clicking just above or below the “0” (zero) graphic returns the associated slider to its center (zero gain) position.*



The band gain sliders jump to any position clicked within the red zones

High Pass Filters

Three high pass filters are available, and they can be used simultaneously in any combination. The available cutoff frequencies are 100 Hz, 50 Hz, and 25 Hz with a slope of 18 dB per octave. Each filter is active when its button is engaged (darker).

Each high pass filter "adds" to the others. For example, engaging the 50 Hz filter will rolloff frequencies below 50 Hz, but engaging 100 Hz as well will also attenuate frequencies below 50 Hz, even more than if 50 Hz was used by itself.

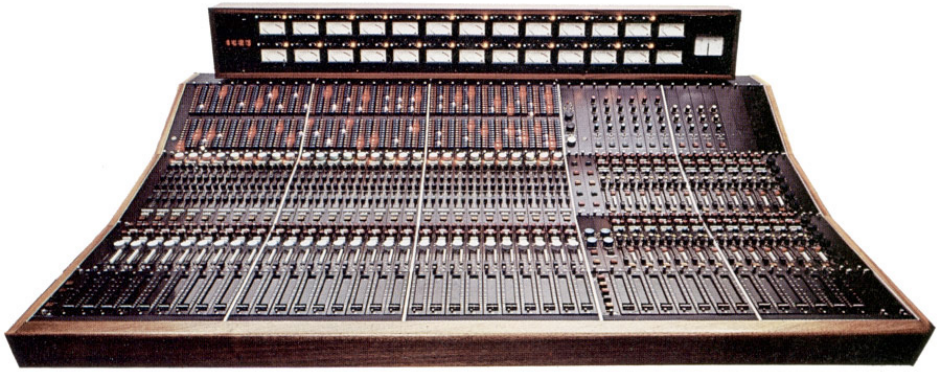
Output Level

The Output knob controls the signal level that is output from the plug-in. The default value is 0 dB. The available range is -24 dB to 12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "Output' or "0" labels to return to the zero gain position.*

EQ In

The EQ In switch determines whether the plug-in is active. When the switch is in the Off (lighter) position, plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled). Note the Phase setting remains in effect even if EQ In is in the off position.



The Trident A-Range Console, featuring the Trident A-Range EQ

All visual and aural references to the TRIDENT A-RANGE EQ are trademarks being made with written permission from PMI AUDIO.

TS Overdrive

The Most Iconic Overdrive Pedal Ever Created

Released in late 1979, the Ibanez® Tube Screamer TS808* overdrive pedal quickly became legend for its dynamic, touch-sensitive distortion, and throaty midrange. A mainstay on the pedalboards of Stevie Ray Vaughan, Eric Johnson, Brad Paisley, and more, the Tube Screamer holds a hallowed place in guitar lore. The TS Overdrive for UAD-2 and Apollo nails every detail of this vintage grind machine, allowing guitarists of all styles a vast array of sounds at tracking or mixdown.

Now You Can:

- Track through a stunning emulation of the legendary overdrive with Apollo
- Add interesting distortion textures to guitars, synths, drums, and vocals at mix-down with any UAD-2 hardware
- Get the same tone, touch, and feel of the original stompbox thanks to Unison technology for Apollo interface
- Use the TS Overdrive plug-in in front of an already-overdriven amp model, adding body and sustain to your sound

Dynamic Distortions

The TS Overdrive for UAD-2 and Apollo nails every detail of the vintage grind machine, allowing guitarists of all styles a vast array of sounds at tracking or mixdown. Key to this is capturing the original's unique circuit, which actually mixes the clean input signal with the output signal of the unit's clipping circuit — preserving your playing dynamics and actually improving clarity and responsiveness.

From Subtle Rhythms to Searing Solos

No matter what type of guitar you're using, the TS Overdrive plug-in can transform your tones with its signature character. Use it to add a touch of dirt to ringing chords, enhancing your guitar's string-to-string separation, or crank the Level and Drive controls to unleash the overdrive's legendary creamy, singing midrange. You can also call on the plug-in to deliver chunky rhythm tones à la Keith Richards.

**Note: The TS Overdrive product is not affiliated with, sponsored, nor endorsed by Ibanez. The Ibanez name, as well as the TS808 and Tube Screamer model names, are used solely to identify the classic effect emulated by Universal Audio's product.*

Unison Technology for Authentic Overdrive Tones

The interaction of your instrument and the first pedal in your signal chain is an essential ingredient to capturing a stompbox's unique character and tone. Thanks to Universal Audio's Unison technology, your guitar gets the same circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of the vintage overdrive stompbox when you plug into the Hi-Z input of an Apollo.* This gives you the true tone, feel, and response of the original hardware.

An Essential Tone Stage for Tracking and Mixing

Creative producers and engineers have employed the vintage overdrive in myriad ways. Runs it in front of an amp to lean-out the bass response and add teeth, or use the pedal at mixdown to add texture and distortion to already-tracked guitars, synths, drums, and vocals. The TS Overdrive for UAD-2 and Apollo allows you to do the same thing, effortlessly in your DAW.

TS Overdrive interface

**Unison Hi-Z technology is unavailable with Apollo FireWire models.*

Using TS Overdrive

Standard DAW Inserts

In much the same way as some premier recording and mix engineers use stomp boxes in a mix, TS Overdrive can be used for creative purposes on any source signal by placing it in any plug-in insert within a DAW. For typical guitar tones, follow the pedal with a guitar amp emulation, as one would with a hardware guitar pedal and amp.

Because the plug-in accurately models the original hardware's high-impedance operating levels, precautions may need to be taken to avoid undesirable input clipping.

> ***Note:*** *Since Hi-Z devices typically operate at much lower signal levels than line-level devices, signal levels being routed into the pedal may need to be reduced to avoid undesirable input distortion.*

Unison™ Technology with Apollo

The TS Overdrive features Unison technology for integration with the high-impedance input hardware in Apollo. With Unison, the Hi-Z inputs inherit all of the unique circuit interaction, gain range, and clip points of the original guitar pedal.

Hi-Z Signal Routing

For the most authentic stompbox tones, plug any high-impedance instrument (guitar, bass, etc.) into the Hi-Z instrument input and place the pedal plug-in in the unique Unison INPUT insert on the same channel within the Console application. If desired, follow the Unison pedal plug-in with another pedal or guitar amp emulation in Console's standard insert slots.

This Hi-Z workflow enables near-zero latency monitoring or recording with the same input characteristics and dynamic response as the original pedal.

> ***Note:*** *This plug-in can be Unison-enabled with Apollo's Mic or Line inputs. However, because the original hardware has a high-impedance instrument input only, Apollo's Hi-Z input and Unison insert will provide the most accurate sound and experience of the hardware pedal that is modeled.*

> ***Important:*** *Unison is active only when the pedal plug-in is placed in the unique INPUT insert available on Hi-Z inputs within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Tactile Control

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust the Overdrive, Level, and Output controls available within the Unison pedal plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The control being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so the control levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

TS Overdrive Controls

DRIVE

Drive varies the amount of signal distortion. Rotate the control clockwise to increase overdrive and sustain.

LEVEL

Level adjusts the pedal's emulated output level. Rotate the control clockwise to increase the volume.

TONE

Tone adjusts the high-frequency content of the signal. Rotate the control clockwise to decrease the filter amount, which increases treble content.

BYPASS

The stomp switch toggles the overdrive effect. When the effect is active, the red LED above the LEVEL knob is lit.

Like the original hardware, this is a not a "true bypass" switch. When the effect is inactive, the signal is still colored by the circuitry.

Tip: *For true bypass, click the UA diamond logo.*

OUTPUT

Output controls the clean (unmodeled) gain at the output of the plug-in. The available range is -24 dB to +12 dB.

Tip: *Click the "0" label to return the control to zero dB.*

POWER

The UA diamond logo switch toggles between plug-in enabled and disabled with true bypass. Click the switch to toggle the Power state.

When Power is off, the UA diamond logo is dim and the external power supply cable is unplugged.

Tip: *Power can also be toggled by clicking the image of the external power supply cable.*

Power cable is unplugged in true bypass mode

UA 1176 Classic Limiter Collection

The Definitive Collection of the World's Most Famous Compressors

The original Universal Audio 1176 was designed by UA founder M.T. "Bill" Putnam, and represented a major breakthrough in limiter technology. The first true peak limiter to feature all-transistor circuitry and ultra-fast FET gain reduction, the 1176 has lent its character and punch to some of the greatest recordings in history.

Universal Audio released its first 1176 plug-in emulation in 2001. This plug-in single-handedly launched the UAD platform, and inspired a decade of analog emulation software. Today, we've circled back to the 1176, and modeled its entire electronic path from stem to stern — including its transformers and FET and transistor amplifiers, resulting in unrivaled emulations of three distinct 1176 units.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with painstaking emulations of the legendary 1176, the most popular compressor ever made
- Choose from three famous versions: Rev A, Rev E, and AE — each with their own sonic attributes
- Harness the 1176's entire electronic path including transformers and FET and transistor amplifiers for colorful distortion
- Add color to signals with "No Ratio" or Attack "Off" yielding 1176 distortion without compression
- Mix with presets from legendary 1176 users such as Andy Johns, Andrew Scheps, Ed Cherney, and Joe Chiccarelli

A Triple Threat

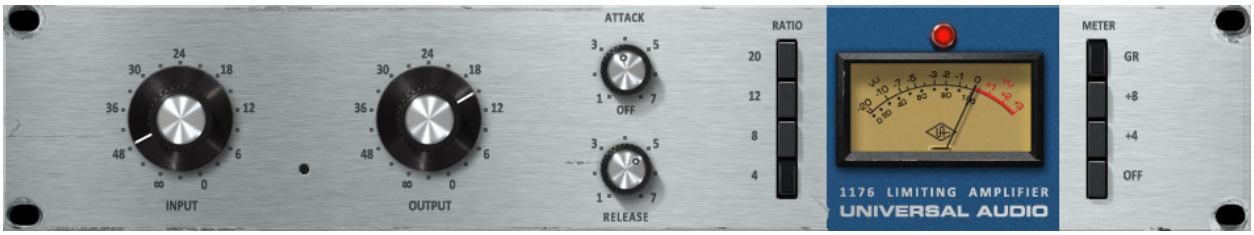
The 1176 Classic Limiter Plug-In Collection provides three distinct 1176 revisions, representing over 40 years of design iterations to the original 1176. The Rev A "Bluestripe" represents the original Putnam FET limiter design, complete with its higher distortion and unique FET gain amplifier characteristics. The Rev E "Blackface" covers the early '70s Brad Plunkett "LN" (Low Noise) era, with variations including a more linear compression response, transistor gain amplification, and a change to the program dependence. The 1176AE provides UA's rare 1176 40th Anniversary Edition, complete with exclusive mods — including its lower 2:1 compression ratio.

Easy Setup

Using an 1176 is a study in simplicity. Input simultaneously sets compression threshold and the level of the signal entering the 1176; Output sets the final signal level. Attack sets the time it takes the 1176 to respond to incoming signal, while Release sets the time it takes the 1176 to return to its initial level. The VU meter displays the amount of gain reduction (GR) or output level (+4/+8).

Ratio Buttons

The four Ratio buttons determine the degree of compression — lower ratios for compression, higher ratios for limiting. Disengaging all Ratio buttons disables compression, while continuing to pass signal through the 1176 circuitry, adding unmistakable color. At the request of users, "Multi-Button" combinations possible with the hardware are now attainable in the plug-in — including the famous "All Button" sound.



UA 1176 Rev A interface

UA 1176LN Rev E interface

UA 1176AE interface

1176 Plug-In Family

The complete 1176 family is comprised of five individual plug-ins, as seen on the previous page. Each variation has its own unique sonic characteristics.

UA 1176 Limiter Collection

The UA 1176 Limiter Collection bundle (introduced in UAD v6.2) provides three distinct 1176 revisions, representing over 40 years of design iterations to the original 1176 — the world's most recognized compressor.

The newer state-of-the-art algorithms in this bundle take full advantage of the extra power available on UAD-2 devices and the design sophistication and expertise gained since the introduction of the legacy 1176LN plug-in ten years prior.

1176 Rev A "Bluestripe"

This model represents the original Putnam FET limiter design, complete with its higher distortion and unique FET gain amplifier characteristics.

Although the input can clip even when gain reduction is not occurring in all the Limiter Collection bundle models, the input clipping is most evident on the Rev A model.

1176 Rev E "Blackface"

This model covers the early 70's / Brad Plunkett "LN" (Low Noise) era of the 1176 circuit lineage, with variations including a more linear compression response, transistor gain amplification, and a change to the program dependency.

1176AE "Anniversary Edition"

This model provides UA's rare 1176 40th Anniversary Edition, complete with exclusive "hot-rod" mods — including its lower 2:1 compression ratio and a fixed "super slow" 10 ms attack mode.

UA 1176LN/SE Legacy

The 1176 legacy bundle includes the UA 1176LN Legacy and UA 1176SE Legacy plug-ins. These first-generation plug-ins run on UAD-1 and UAD-2 devices.

To accommodate the limited DSP resources of the UAD-1, the input transformer and I/O distortion characteristics were not modeled in these plug-ins. This makes the legacy LN/SE versions especially useful in situations where less distortion is desirable.

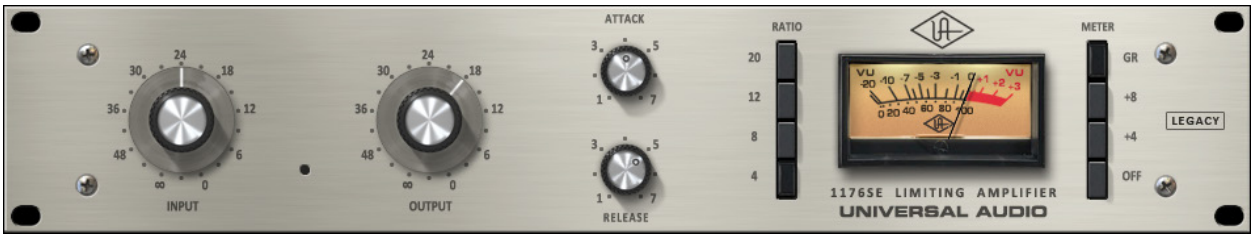
UA 1176LN Legacy

The UA 1176LN Legacy plug-in was, along with the venerable LA-2A, the first plug-in available for the UAD platform. It still has a great sound and is very usable, especially when there are not enough DSP resources to use the second-generation versions in the newer UA 1176 Limiter Collection.

UA 1176LN SE Legacy

The UA 1176SE Legacy "Special Edition" is derived from the UA 1176LN Legacy plug-in. Its algorithm was revised in order to provide sonic characteristics similar to the UA 1176LN Legacy, but with significantly less DSP usage. It provides "1176LN-like sound" when DSP resources are particularly constrained. The UA 1176SE Legacy sound and behavior is practically identical to the UA 1176LN Legacy at nominal settings; at extreme (cranked) settings, the differences are more obvious.

The UA 1176LN Legacy interface



The UA 1176SE Legacy interface

Operational Overview

Applications

Generally speaking, the primary use for the 1176 plug-ins are as individual inserts for sources that require compression, such as an individual snare, vocal, or guitar track, or for multi-instrument sources such as a stereo drum bus.

Because the UA 1176 Limiter Collection also models the input and output amplifiers, these models can also be used as "tone boxes" to add 1176 color without compression/limiting by disengaging the ratio control (all Ratio buttons "up").

Parameters

Using an 1176 is a study in simplicity. Input simultaneously sets compression threshold and the level of the signal entering the 1176; Output sets the final signal level. Attack sets the time it takes the 1176 to respond to incoming signal, while Release sets the time it takes the 1176 to return to its initial level. The VU meter displays the amount of gain reduction (GR) or output level (+4/+8).

The four Ratio buttons determine the degree of compression; lower ratios for compression, higher ratios for limiting. Disengaging all the Ratio buttons (Shift+Click the currently selected ratio) disables compression altogether, but signal continues to pass through the 1176 circuitry. This is commonly used to add the "color" of the 1176LN without any gain reduction. At the request of users, the wide range of "Multi-Button" combinations possible with the hardware is now possible — including the famous "All Button" sound.

Control Response & Interactions

The UA 1176 Limiter Collection plug-ins are meticulous emulations of the original hardware in every regard, including control responses and interactions. Each 1176 has unique characteristics for gain, threshold, compression knee, distortion onset, and sweet spots. Setting the controls to the same positions on the different plug-ins may yield radically different results, especially depending on the source signals.

This accurate control modeling also applies to the Input and Output control tapers and amplifier levels. The same knob positions on one 1176 could produce a dramatically louder (or softer) levels on another. For this reason (to prevent unexpected and potentially damaging output level jumps), presets are not interchangeable between the 1176 variations.

Grit

A simple 1176 trick is turning the attack and release up all the way to their fastest setting. This has the audible effect of adding compression distortion to the audio source, and is especially pronounced in all-buttons mode. What happens here is the attack and release are happening so fast that minute level fluctuations sound like distortion. It can add a very useful, gritty compression effect.

This effect is useful on bass, where you might need compression and distortion at the same time, and the 1176 can provide both in a unique way. This trick also sounds great on screaming lead vocals.

Artist Presets

The UA 1176 Limiter Collection includes artist presets from prominent 1176 users. Some of the artist presets are in the internal factory bank and are accessed via the host application's preset menu. Additional artist presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer. The additional presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see the "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" chapter in the UAD System Manual).

> ***Note:*** *Presets created with the original 1176LN Legacy and 1176SE Legacy plug-ins are incompatible with the newer Classic Limiter Collection plug-ins.*

1176 Controls

Each 1176 plug-in variation has the same control set, so they are only detailed once. The parameter descriptions below apply to all models unless otherwise noted.

Input

Input adjusts the amount of gain reduction as well as the relative threshold. Rotate the knob clockwise to increase the compression amount.

Like the original hardware, the label values are somewhat arbitrary; the knobs are not calibrated to any particular dB values and levels will vary between the various plug-in models. Even when the Input knob is set to " ∞ " signals can still pass into the processor and be compressed.

> ***Note:*** *In the UA 1176 Limiter Collection plug-ins, increasing Input will increase distortion.*

Output

Output determines the final output level of signal leaving the 1176. Once the desired amount of limiting or compression is achieved with the use of the Input control, the Output control can be used to make up any gain lost due to gain reduction.

To monitor the Output level, set the VU Meter to +8 or +4. The Output control does not affect the amount of compression.

> ***Note:*** *In the 1176 Limiter Collection plug-ins, increasing Output will increase distortion.*

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time it takes the 1176 to respond to an incoming signal and begin gain reduction. The 1176 attack time is adjustable from

20 microseconds to 800 microseconds (both extremely fast).

The attack time is fastest when the Attack knob is in its fully clockwise position, and is slowest when it is in its fully counter-clockwise position. When a fast attack time is selected, gain reduction kicks in almost immediately and catches transient signals of very brief duration, reducing their level and thus "softening" the sound.

Slower attack times allow transients (or partial transients) to pass before limiting or compression begins on the rest of the signal. Note that the actual attack time varies slightly based on the selected ratio and the particular plug-in model in use. Lower ratios will maintain the fastest attack times.

The behavior of the Attack knob varies slightly between the models, as detailed below.

UA 1176AE Attack

The 1176AE offers a unique, fixed 10 ms "SLO" Attack mode when this control is moved to the fully counter-clockwise position.

UA 1176 Rev A and UA 1176LN Rev E Attack

When Attack is in the OFF position the I/O amplifiers remain active while the compression circuit is bypassed. This enables these models to add 1176 color without dynamics processing. This function is identical to disengaging all the Ratio buttons.

> ***Note:*** *To avoid unexpected level changes that can result when compression is disengaged, on these models the OFF text label must be clicked to move the Attack knob to the OFF position.*

UA 1176LN/SE Legacy Attack

The OFF position is unavailable in these plug-ins. To bypass plug-in processing in these models, use the Meter OFF button.

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes the 1176 to return to its initial (pre-gain reduction) level. The 1176 release time is adjustable from 50 milliseconds to 1100 milliseconds (1.1 seconds).

Note that the actual release time varies slightly based on the particular plug-in model in use and also partially depends on the program material.

The release time is fastest when the Release knob is in its fully clockwise position, and is slowest when it is in its fully counter-clockwise position. If the release time is fast, "pumping" and "breathing" artifacts can occur, due to the rapid rise of background noise as the gain is restored. If the release time is too slow, however, a loud section of the program may cause gain reduction that persists through a soft section, making the soft section difficult to hear.

About Program-Dependent Release

Program-dependent release is a feature of many compressors. The motivation for having program-dependent release is as follows: After a transient, it is desirable to have a fast release to avoid prolonged dropouts. However, while in a continued state of heavy compression, it is better to have a longer release time to reduce the pumping and harmonic distortion caused by repetitive attack-release cycles.

The 1176 compressor employs a release mechanism that is heavily program-dependent. There are three features to a program-dependent release: A fast release-time, a slow release-time, and a transition-time.

The fast release time is the effective release time after transients; the slow release time is the release time after sustained high-RMS signals. The transition time expresses how long the signal must be "in compression" before the slow release time comes into effect.

The original "Bluestripe" and 1176AE has a different slow release-time and transition-time when compared to the "Blackface" revisions.

Ratio

The four Ratio pushbutton switches (to the left of the VU Meter) determine the compression ratio of the plug-in. Ratios of 20:1, 12:1, 8:1, and 4:1 are available for all 1176 models except the UA 1176AE, which has 20:1, 8:1, 4:1, and 2:1 modes.

The 20:1 ratio is typically used when peak-limiting is desired, while the lower ratios are typically used for general dynamic range compression.

Multiple Ratio Buttons

One of the most unique features of the 1176 hardware is the ability to press multiple Ratio buttons in simultaneously to create unusual compression or limiting behavior and increased compression distortion.

All Button Mode

Engineers typically use "All Button" mode on drums or on ambience or room mics. It can also be used to make a bass or guitar sound "dirty" or for putting vocals "in your face." In All-Button mode (sometimes also known as "British Mode"), distortion increases radically due to a lag time on the attack of initial transients.

In All Button mode the ratio goes to somewhere between 12:1 and 20:1, and the bias points change all over the circuit, thus changing the attack and release times as well. The unique and constantly shifting compression curve that results yields a trademark overdriven tone that can only be found in this family of limiter/compressors.

All Button mode is available in all 1176 models.

Multi Button Modes

The UA 1176 Limiter Collection includes the ability to select a variety of "Multi Button" combinations, offering various interpretations of the "All Button" idiosyncrasies. Various button combinations will yield audibly different compression characteristics.

Selecting All/Multi Button Ratio Modes

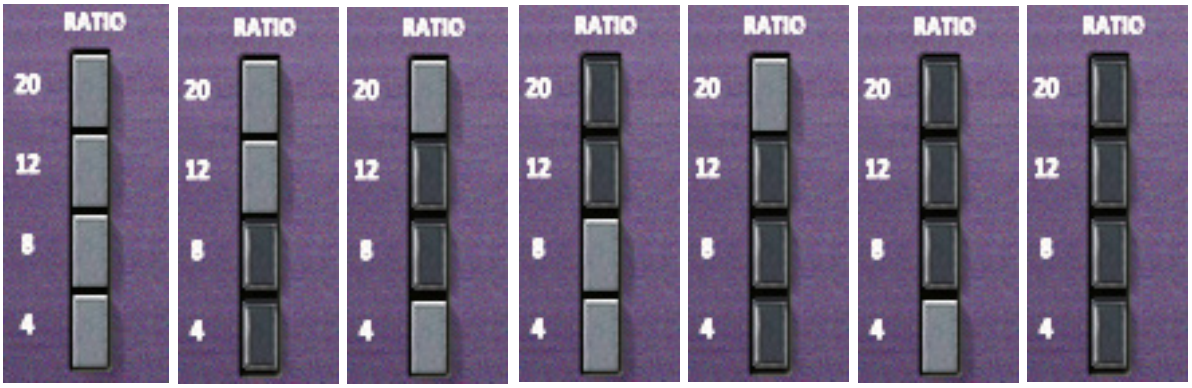
In UA 1176 Limiter Collection

- To select the various combinations of multiple buttons, shift+click the Ratio buttons.
- Combinations are limited to the modes that actually affect the sound in the hardware. See Available Multi Button Modes for the combinations.
- For the combinations with three or more buttons, the shift-clicking the outer buttons will automatically engage the inner buttons (the inner buttons cannot be disengaged; such combinations don't affect the sound in the hardware).
- These models can be used as "tone boxes" without compression/limiting by disengaging the Ratio control altogether (all Ratio buttons "up"). This is accomplished by clicking any Ratio button so only one button is engaged, then shift-clicking the engaged button so none are engaged.

In UA 1176LN/SE Legacy

- To select All Button mode on the UA 1176LN/SE Legacy, shift+click any Ratio button.

Available Multi Button Modes



The Multi-Button modes available in the UA 1176 Limiter Collection. Only All-Button mode (far right) is available in 1176LN and 1176SE

VU Meter

This is a standard VU meter that displays either the amount of gain reduction, or output level, depending upon the setting of the Meter Function switch.

Meter Function

These four pushbutton switches (to the right of the VU Meter) determine the mode of the VU Meter, and whether the plug-in is enabled. When set to GR, the VU Meter indicates the Gain Reduction level in dB. When set to +8 or +4, the VU Meter indicates the output level in dB; when set to +4, a meter reading of 0 corresponds to an output level of +4 dB.

When the Meter Function is set to GR mode and multiple Ratio buttons are engaged, the Meter will appear to behave strangely. This is normal behavior in the 1176 hardware, and is faithfully recreated in the plug-in.

When the OFF switch is engaged, the plug-in is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 LoadLock is enabled).

The UA 1176 Limiter Collection Original Hardware

UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection

The Bill Putnam-designed tube limiter that changed recording.

Introduced in 1960, Universal Audio's 175B and 176 compressors were the first audio compressors purpose-built for studio recording and mixing music. Often cited among the crowning achievements of audio pioneer and UA founder Bill Putnam Sr., the 175B and 176 are prized for their rich tube gain reduction character, fast attack, and sonic flexibility.

With only roughly 1,000 units made, vintage 175B and 176s easily command well over $5,000 on the vintage market today, and they can be found in the racks of some of the world's finest studios. Now, you can track and mix with the only authentic plug-in emulation of the original UA 175B and 176 compressors — exclusively for UAD hardware and UA Audio Interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Track and mix with the only authentic emulations of Bill Putnam Sr.'s most coveted compressor designs
- Add vintage tube gain reduction character and detail to vocals, drums, guitars and more
- Spice up any source with harmonically rich tube amplifier and transformer emulation
- Creatively control or enhance the dynamics of your most important sources with 2:1, 4:1, 8:1 and 12:1 ratio controls
- Harness plug-in-only features like Dry/Wet Mix parallel processing and Headroom for user-customizable operating level
- Mix with artist presets from Jacquire King, Carl Glanville, Joe Chiccarelli, and more

A Pioneering Limiter

With its breakthrough fast attack time and independently variable Attack and Release controls, the UA 175B and 176 went far beyond all previously available broadcast limiters. They were quickly installed in the early 1960's at both United/Western and legendary Sunset Sound studios, where a rack of 176s still reside today. As an all-tube predecessor to the famed 1176, the 175B and 176 compressors have lent warmth and character to thousands of seminal recordings — from the Rolling Stones and Elton John to Led Zeppelin and Van Halen to Aretha Franklin and Miles Davis.

Emulating a Masterpiece

Based on a pair of UA's 1960s golden units, the UA 175B and 176 Tube Compressor Collection plug-ins expertly capture Putnam's tube-based gain reduction designs, as well as the tube amplifier's ultra-musical harmonics and rich, low-frequency transformer saturation. Putnam's feedback compression circuit is key to the 175B/176 mojo, yielding softer compression at lower input levels and harder, nearly brickwall limiting at higher levels.

In Action

Sonically, the 175B and 176 compressors are often compared favorably to the Fairchild compressor, albeit with more versatile controls. As such, they're perfect for vocals, drums, guitars, and more. The UA 175B and 176 Tube Compressor Collection plug-ins give you all the character and juice of the originals — indistinguishable from the target hardware in blind listening tests.

Delicate when you need subtle control, but colorful when slammed, these plug-ins can add depth to room mics or a drum bus, give your guitars definition, park a bass in a mix, and inject vocals with energy. You can even turn off the compression completely and use the 175B/176 plug-ins as a "tone box," lending rich tube amplifier and transformer textures galore.

Key Features

- Painstaking circuit emulation of Bill Putnam Sr.'s rare and iconic 175B and 176 tube compressors
- Models the entire circuit path and control set of the original hardware units
- UA 175B features a fixed 12:1 Ratio, 176 features four selectable Ratios: 2:1, 4:1, 8:1 and 12:1
- Exclusive plug-in features include Sidechain Link, Dry/Wet Mix parallel processing and Headroom for user-customizable operating level
- Includes artist presets from prominent Universal Audio artists

Operational Overview

The UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection is comprised of the two individual UA 175B and UA 176 plug-ins, as shown below. Both plug-ins have their own unique features and sonic characteristics.

UA 175B interface

UA 176 interface

Applications

Generally speaking, the primary use for the UA 175B and UA 176 plug-ins are as individual inserts for sources that require compression or limiting, such as an individual snare, vocal, or guitar track, or for multi-instrument sources such as a stereo drum bus.

Because the UA 175B and 176 Tube Compressor Collection also models the input and output amplifiers, these plug-ins can also be used as “tone boxes” to add color without compression/limiting by setting the ATTACK knob to the OFF position.

Parameters

Using these plug-ins is a study in simplicity. Input simultaneously sets compression threshold and the level of the signal entering the plug-in, while Output sets the final signal level. Attack sets the time it takes the compressor to respond to the incoming signal, while Release sets the time it takes for the signal to return to its initial level. The VU meter displays the amount of gain reduction (GR.) or input/output levels.

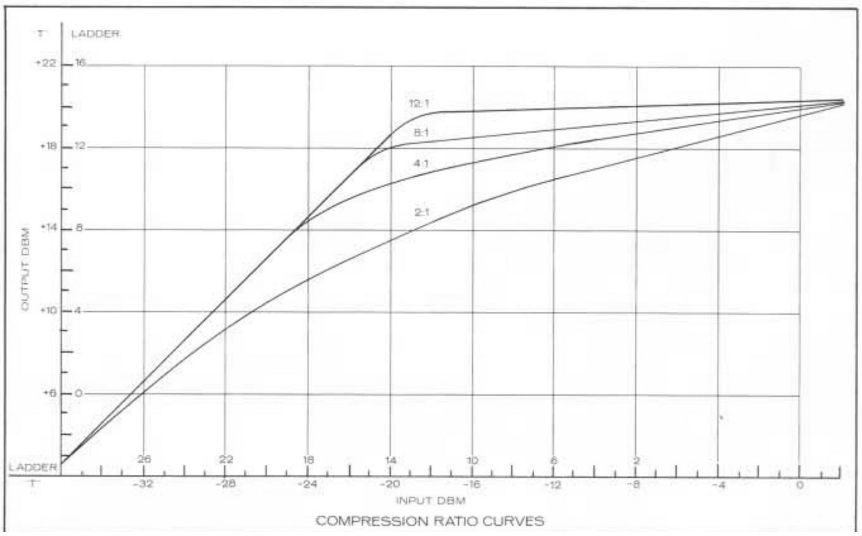
Control Response & Interactions

The UA 175B and 176 Tube Compressor Collection plug-ins are meticulous emulations of the original hardware in every regard, including control responses and interactions. Both models have unique characteristics for gain, threshold, compression knee, distortion onset, and sweet spots. Setting the controls to the same positions on the different plug-ins may yield different results, especially depending on the source signals.

This accurate control modeling also applies to the Input and Output controls and amplifier levels. The same knob positions on one could produce a louder (or softer) level on the other.

Ratios

The earlier UA 175B has a fixed compression ratio of 12:1 (thus behaving more as a limiter), while the newer UA 176 has four available compression ratios. The graph below from the original UA 176 hardware manual illustrates how the response knee is gentler at lower compression ratios. The 175B's sharper knee is the same as the 12:1 curve on the 176 (topmost curve in the graph), so the 175B is commonly used when limiting behavior is desired.



Response curve graphs from the original 176 hardware manual

Grit

A simple trick is turning the attack and release up all the way to their fastest settings. This has the audible effect of adding compression distortion to the audio source. What occurs is the attack and release are happening so fast that minute level fluctuations sound like distortion. It can add a very useful, gritty compression effect.

This effect is useful on bass, where you might need compression and distortion at the same time, and the 175B/176 can provide both in a unique way. This trick also sounds great on screaming lead vocals.

Modernized Controls

Several features have been added to the plug-in models that don't exist on the original hardware.

The Headroom (H.R.) control enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the UA 175B and UA 176. By increasing the Headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise), signals at the input can be pushed higher before they compress. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor. By fine-tuning Headroom, the non-linear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels.

A parallel Mix control lets you blend your unprocessed signal with the compressed signal, opening worlds of textural possibilities on everything from a drum bus to a mix bus. The Sidechain (S.C.) Link switch allows for independent L/R channel gain reduction or provides uniform L/R gain reduction when the plug-ins are used on stereo signals. Finally, on the 175B, the internal Hi/Low gain switch is moved from an internal jumper to the front panel.

Accessing Artist Presets

The UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection includes presets voiced by prominent Universal Audio artists. Some of the artist presets are in the DAW's internal factory bank and are accessed via the plug-in host application's preset menu. Additional artist presets are copied to disk by the UAD installer. The additional artist presets can be accessed via the host DAW application's preset menu, the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar, or Console's preset manager with UA audio interfaces.

Carl Glanville	Darrell Thorp	Jacquire King	Joel Hamilton	Ross Hogarth
Dave Isaac	Devin Powers	Joe Chiccarelli	Peter Mokran	Steve Levine

Artists that have provided presets for the UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection

UA 175B & 176 Tube Compressor Collection Controls

Note: *All controls for UA 175B and UA 176 are identical except as noted.*

Gain (175B only)

The two-position Low / High rotary switch changes the gain level at the input to the plug-in. When set to High, the signal level is increased by approximately 10 dB. On the original hardware, this feature exists as an internal jumper. The plug-in exposes the feature to the front panel.

Tip: *Click the LOW or HIGH text labels to switch to the value.*

Ratio (176 only)

This four-position rotary switch sets the active compression ratio. Ratios of 2:1, 4:1, 8:1, and 12:1 are available. 12:1 is typically used when peak-style limiting is desired, while the lower ratios are typically used for general dynamic range compression.

Tip: *Click any ratio text label to quickly switch to the setting.*

Input

Input adjusts the attenuation of the input gain amplifier, thus controlling amount of gain reduction as well as the relative threshold. Rotate the knob clockwise to increase the compression amount. The knob is calibrated to 2 dB values (within analog component tolerances).

Tip: *Click any silkscreened gain value or "dot" surrounding the knob to jump to that value.*

As with the original hardware, Input is a stepped control (by default), with each step adjusting the level by 2 dB. However, the UAD plug-in allows the knob to be changed to a continuous control with the Vernier switch.

Output

The Output control determines the final output level of signals leaving the plug-in. Output does not affect the amount of compression. To monitor the output level, set the VU Meter to Output.

Tip: *Click any labeled gain value or "dot" surrounding the knob to jump to that value.*

After the desired amount of compression is achieved with the use of the Input control, Output can be used to make up for any gain lost due to gain reduction.

As with the original hardware, Output is a stepped control (by default), with each step adjusting the level by 2 dB. However, the UAD plug-in allows the knob to be changed to a continuous control with the Vernier switch.

Vernier

This two-position rotary switch changes the behavior of the main Input and Output knobs. When the switch is pointing towards the left (the default setting), the Input and Output knobs are stepped controls that operate in increments of 2 dB. When pointing towards the right, the Input and Output knobs are continuous controls.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the VERNIER label to quickly switch between stepped and continuous modes.*

On the original 175B and 176 hardware, the Input and Output knobs are always stepped in 2 dB increments, and the dedicated Input and Output Vernier knobs facilitate fine-level ±2 dB continuous level control between the 2 dB steps. In the plug-ins, this control has been repurposed to allow the same level of fine continuous control throughout the full Input/Output control range.

> ***Note:*** *When automating Input and Output in a DAW, automation lanes for these parameters always appear as continuous values, including when Vernier is set to stepped values. However, the automated values always reflect actual control values.*

Attack

Attack sets the amount of time it takes for the compressor to respond to an incoming signal and begin gain reduction. Approximate attack times are continuously adjustable from 100 microseconds to 1000 microseconds (all values are extremely fast).

> ***Note:*** *The attack time is fastest when the Attack knob is in its fully clockwise position, and slowest when the knob is in its fully counter-clockwise position.*

When a fast attack time is selected, gain reduction kicks in almost immediately and catches transient signals of very brief duration, reducing their level and thus "softening" the sound. Slower attack times allow transients (or partial transients) to pass before limiting or compression begins on the rest of the signal.

> ***Note (UA 176 only):*** *Actual attack time varies slightly based on the selected ratio. Higher ratios will maintain the fastest attack times.*

Attack OFF

When Attack is in the OFF position, the I/O amplifiers remain active, while the compression circuit is bypassed. This feature enables the plug-ins to add color without dynamics processing.

To avoid unexpected level changes that can result when compression is disengaged, the OFF text label must be clicked to move the Attack knob to the OFF position.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the OFF text label to disable the compression circuit. Click OFF again to return Attack to the previous value.*

Release

Release sets the amount of time it takes for the compressor to return to its initial (pre-gain reduction) level. Approximate release times are continuously adjustable from 27 milliseconds to 527 milliseconds. Actual release times may vary slightly depending on the program material.

> ***Note:*** *The release time is fastest when the Release knob is in its fully clockwise position, and slowest when the knob is in its fully counter-clockwise position.*

If the release time is fast, compression distortion as well as "pumping" and "breathing" artifacts can occur, due to the rapid rise of background noise as the gain is restored. However, if the release time is too slow, a loud section of the program may cause gain reduction that persists through a soft section, making the soft section difficult to hear.

> ***Tip:*** *Generally speaking, release times should be lengthened as the low frequency content of the program material increases.*

Sidechain Link (S.C. Link)

When the plug-in used in a stereo-in configuration and the S.C. Link switch is engaged, both channels of the stereo signal are compressed in equal amounts, preventing shifting of the stereo panorama. When S.C. Link is off (down position), the amount of gain reduction is independent in each channel of the stereo signal. The sidechain link is engaged when the switch is in the UP position and the S.C. Link lamp is illuminated.

> ***Tip:*** *Click the S.C. Link lamp to toggle the setting (the lamp is adjacent to the switch).*

> ***Note:*** *When the plug-in is used in a mono-in configuration, the switch is locked in the down position and its indicator lamp remains unlit.*

VU Meter

This is a standard VU meter that displays the input level, the amount of gain reduction, or the output level. The mode being displayed depends upon the setting of the Meter Function switch.

Meter Select

This switch determines which mode is being displayed by the VU meter. Input, Output, or GR (gain reduction) levels can be selected.

> ***Tip:*** *Click a meter function switch label to quickly switch to that mode.*

When Meter Select is set to GR, the VU meter indicates the amount of gain reduction level in dB. When set to Input or Output, the VU meter reflects the relative level at the input or output of the plug-in (Input/Output metering is not calibrated).

> ***Note:*** *When set to Input, the VU meter reflects the incoming signal before attenuation by the Input control.*

Headroom (H.R.)

Headroom enables adjustment of the internal operating reference level for the plug-in so that the plug-in is not "pushed" into gain reduction as much. Headroom enables best practice operating level matching, or it can be used creatively to expand the sonic range of the processor.

Note: *The Headroom control does not exist on the original hardware.*

By fine-tuning headroom, the nonlinear I/O distortion and compression response characteristics can be tailored independently of signal input levels. Increasing headroom (by rotating the control counter-clockwise) allows signals at the input to be pushed higher before they compress.

Headroom can be set (in dB) to 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, or 28. The default value is 16 dB (when the set screw "dot" is in the straight up 12 o'clock position). Note that Headroom is increased as the dB value decreases.

Tip: *Click the H.R. text label to return the control to its default value.*

At higher dB values (clockwise rotation), signals will push the plug-in into gain reduction (and more non-linearity and "good" harmonic distortion color) more easily. Set the control to a lower value (counter-clockwise rotation) when less gain reduction and less color is desired.

Note: *To avoid the temporary gain increases that can result when adjusting Headroom, automating this control is not recommended.*

Balance (BAL.)

This "set screw" control adjusts an amalgam of the independent plate and cathode bias current balance trims found on the original hardware. Rotating the control from its default position changes the amount of additive signal deflection ("thump") that occurs due to signal attacks.

Tip: *Click the BAL. text label to return the control to its default value.*

Optimally calibrated bias currents is achieved when the screw slot is at its default value. On the 175B, the default value is -7.0. On the 176, the default value is -6.0.

Note: *To avoid the DC settling artifacts that can result when adjusting Balance, automating this control is not recommended.*

Mix

A blended output balance between the signal processed by the plug-in and the original dry source signal can be adjusted with the Mix control. Mix facilitates parallel compression techniques without having to create additional routings in the DAW.

> ***Note:*** *The Mix control does not exist on the original hardware.*

When Mix is set to 0%, only the unprocessed (dry) source signal is output. When set to 100% (the default value), only the processed (wet) signal is output. When set to 50%, an equal blend of both the dry and wet signals is output. The balance is continuously variable, and phase accurate, throughout the control range.

Tip: Click the 0% text label to set the control to the minimum position. Click the 100% text label to set the control to the maximum position.

Power

This toggle switch is the plug-in's bypass control. When Power is in the down position, the plug-in processing is disabled and UAD DSP usage is reduced (unless UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is enabled).

> ***Tip:*** *Click the ON text label, or the power lamp (at left of switch), to toggle the Power setting.*

The original Universal Audio hardware units

UA 610 Tube Preamp & EQ Collection

Authentic tube mic preamp modeling – featuring Unison™ technology for Apollo interfaces

When Universal Audio founder Bill Putnam Sr. introduced the 610 Modular Amplifier preamp in the early '60s, it was a milestone in audio recording history. The 610 became famous among record producers for its startling harmonic detail, and rich clipping characteristics, and its ability to overdrive in a warm, ultra-musical fashion.

The original 610-A preamp was integral to countless legendary recordings — from the Beach Boys' Pet Sounds and Johnny Cash's At Folsom Prison. Its modern variant, the 610-B, helped to create new classics by Adele and Cold War Kids. Today, you can add the same tube presence, warmth, and body to vocals, guitars, bass and more with the UA 610 Tube Preamp & EQ Plug-In Collection for UAD-2 and Apollo interfaces.

Now You Can:

- Give your tracks startling three-dimensional tube warmth, presence, and body
- Record "through" the 610-A or 610-B tube preamp models in real time using any Apollo interface that features mic preamps
- Use the 610-A plug-in to get the exclusive sound of the Wally Heider "Green Board," used to record Neil Young, Ray Charles, Elvis Presley and Jimi Hendrix
- Add Unison™ technology to your Apollo, controlling physical mic preamp gain staging and impedance with Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins
- Mix and saturate signals with any UAD-2 hardware for an iconic tube glow

The First Genuine 610 Tube Preamp Emulation

More than three years in the making, the UA 610 Collection represents the first comprehensive modeling of the legendary 610-A tube preamp and its modern variant, the 610-B — including their tube and transformer components and all of the unique distortion characteristics of the originals.

The 610-A is modeled on a channel from the storied Wally Heider "Green Board," used to record Neil Young, Ray Charles, Elvis Presley and Jimi Hendrix, and offers simple 10 kHz high-shelf and 100 Hz low-shelf EQ. The modern 610-B offers selectable input impedance, adjustable high- and low-shelf EQ, and expanded gain range.

Unison Technology for Apollo Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the UA 610 Preamp & EQ Collection blurs the lines between analog and digital, giving you all of the 610's important impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors that have made it the classic tube mic preamp.

The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the 610 plug-ins to the digitally controlled mic preamps in the Apollo Twin, Apollo 8, Apollo 8p, and Apollo FireWire.

Just like their hardware relatives, both the 610-A and 610-B plug-ins allow signal processing at Line and Mic levels, with both 500 Ω and 2.0 k Ω impedance setting options available in the 610-B. Combined with Apollo's physical preamp gain, this provides a tonal range from clean to clipped — with tons of broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

Add Tube Color to any Source

UAD-2 and Apollo 16 owners can use the UA 610 Collection for mixing, adding color and saturation to any source, without going outside the box. Inject your tracks with the legendary warm, natural compression the 610 is famous for, allowing you to place instruments perfectly in the mix while giving them a rich, three-dimensional tube character.

UA 610 Tube Preamp & EQ Collection interfaces

The UA 610 Plug-Ins

The UA 610 Tube Preamp Collection is comprised of two distinct plug-ins: The vintage UA 610-A, and the modern UA 610-B. Each plug-in has its own modeling and each captures its unique segment in the 610's sonic history.

The complete signal path is modeled for both 610 plug-ins, including tube amplifiers and transformer components, along with all the phase shift and distortion characteristics that are inherent in each hardware preamp.

Vintage 610-A

The original 610 Modular Amplifier had two versions; the 610 and the 610-A. Besides minor cosmetic differences (such as updates to the panel layout and the UA logo), the only circuit difference between the two was the addition of a +3 dB setting to the 10 kHz High Shelf EQ.

The UA 610-A plug-in models the vintage 610-A module in the original Wally Heider "Green Board" console.

Modern 610-B

The 610-B is the modern Universal Audio preamp design used in our popular hardware products such as the 2-610, LA-610mkII, and 6176.

The UA 610-B plug-in is modeled from the Universal Audio 2-610 Dual Channel Tube Preamplifier hardware, including all the expanded features optimized for modern use.

In Use

A primary use for either 610 plug-in is for individual vocal or instrument tracks where colorful tube character and broad EQ strokes are desired. The 610 is widely used as a vocal, bass, horn or strings channel by many modern users, but it sounds great on any source signals, as proven by over five decades of record making.

Tonal Range

From clean to clipped, with a broad sweet spot between, extreme tonal flexibility is possible with the 610-A and 610-B. The input and output circuits each have their own tube-driven gain stage, and because each stage imparts its own color, many variations can be obtained by tuning the I/O gain structures. The UA 610 equalizers can also add lots of flavor. Because the EQ has a feedback-style design, it effects the distortion characteristics of the output stage.

Control Differences

The UA 610-A and UA 610-B plug-ins have similar controls and layouts.

For some parameters, the function of these controls is identical for both plug-ins. In the parameter descriptions below, controls and/or descriptions that are common to both plug-ins are detailed at the top of each control name section.

Any differences and/or controls that are unique to each specific plug-in are detailed after the common description.

Presets

The UA 610 plug-ins include presets in the internal factory bank which are accessed via the host application's preset menu. The presets are also copied to disk by the UAD installer so they can be used within Apollo's Console application. The presets can be loaded using the Settings menu in the UAD Toolbar (see "Using UAD Powered Plug-Ins" in the UAD System Manual).

Unison™ Integration

The UA 610 plug-ins feature Unison mic preamp technology integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo audio interfaces. With Unison, Apollo's ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of the 610 hardware preamps, including the mic, line, and Hi-Z inputs.

> ***Note:*** *Unison is active only when the plug-ins are inserted in the unique INPUT insert within Apollo's Console application. For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of 610 preamp plug-in settings using Apollo's digitally-controlled panel hardware and/or the plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, pad, polarity, etc.) are mirrored and bi-directional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the 610 hardware, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Apollo mic preamps feature input impedance switching in analog hardware that can be physically switched by Unison plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Apollo's preamps to physically match the emulated unit's input impedance, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original target hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

Apollo's front panel preamp knob can independently adjust all gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via Apollo, so multiple gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

The original Wally Heider "Green Board" console containing 12 vintage UA 610-A preamplifier modules

Input Level Controls

Input levels for the UA 610 plug-ins are controlled by the overall combination of the input select, pad, and gain controls available within each plug-in.

These parameters, which vary per model, control the first tube gain stage in the plug-ins. Generally speaking, higher input gains will produce more color in the signal.

Input Select

The 610 hardware has both mic and line level inputs. The Input Select control switches between the "virtual input jacks" in the emulated models.

In most mic preamplifiers (including the 610), the difference between the mic and line inputs is simply that the line input is attenuated before entering the preamp circuitry. The gain circuits are not different for the mic and line inputs.

Line

When set to Line, it's as if the DAW signal is plugged into the line level input of the emulated 610 hardware. Less tube gain is applied, and a cleaner sound is obtained.

Mic

When set to Mic (with UA 610-B, the 500 and 2.0K settings), it's as if the DAW signal is plugged into the microphone input of the emulated 610 hardware and approximately 30 dB of additional (unattenuated) tube gain is applied. Since the incoming signal in from the DAW is already at line level, this mode will more readily result in the tube color, saturation, and/or clipping associated with overdriving the input.

> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching to Mic from Line, as signal output levels can increase significantly (as they would with a hardware preamp).*

UA 610-A

Mic and Line inputs are available. The mic input impedance of the 610-A hardware is 600.

UA 610-B

Mic and Line inputs are available, with the additional availability of input impedance selections for the Mic input. The Mic input can be switched to 500 or 2K; the different input impedances have subtle effects on the signal color and response.

Unison Impedance

When UA 610-A or UA 610-B is used in an INPUT insert within the Apollo Console application, the hardware input impedance of the Apollo mic preamp is switched to match the value in the plug-in for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction.

With UA 610-B, matching the microphone to the closest impedance value is generally recommended, but this parameter can be used creatively and will not harm equipment connected to the Apollo mic preamp.

> ***Note:*** *For complete Unison details, see the Apollo Software Manual.*

Input Pad/Gain

In addition to the Input Select switch, both plug-in models have Pad and Gain parameters that control the signal level at the tube input stage.

The Pad controls are used to attenuate incoming signals for less coloration, while the Gain controls increase the signal level for more tube color.

> ***Note:*** *Like the original hardware, values on the control labels may not match actual measured values.*

UA 610-A

Input Gain

The two-position LOW/HI rotary switch exposes the little-known internal gain jumpers that are on the circuit boards inside the vintage modules. Setting the switch to the HI position adds approximately 8 dB of gain at the tube input stage and also changes the distortion characteristics. This is a digital-only control unavailable on the original hardware module.

> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching 610-A Gain from LOW to HI, as signal output levels could jump dramatically.*

Input Pad

Additional attenuation for the Mic input is available via the two-position Pad switch. Setting the switch to the "-20" (up) position attenuates the Mic signal at the tube input stage by -20 dB. In the down position, no attenuation is applied.

> ***Note:*** *The 610-A Input Pad is not available for line input.*

UA 610-B

Input Gain

The 5-position rotary Gain switch changes the level at the tube input stage. The control attenuates the input signal by -10 or -5 dB, or adds +5 or +10 dB of gain. In the center "0" position, neither gain nor attenuation is applied.

Input Pad

Additional attenuation for the Mic input is available via the two-position Pad switch. Setting the switch to the "-15" (up) position attenuates the Mic signal at the tube input stage by -15 dB. In the down position, no attenuation is applied.

> ***Note:*** *The 610-B Input Pad is not available for line input.*

Output Level Controls

Level

Level (aka “the big knob”) is used to control the gain of the tube output stage of the preamp. Higher values add more coloration.

The amount of available gain using this control is approximately 61 dB for both plug-in models.

Output

Output adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in without effecting the sonic character of the signal. The range is from -∞ dB (off) to +12 dB.

This control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maximize color of the overall signal. For example, Gain and Level can be cranked for more distortion, while lowering Output to normalize levels. This is similar to having the line output of a 610 plugged into a console and using the console fader to pad the output of the 610.

Tip: *Click the “0” label text above the control to return Output to 0 dB.*

EQ

The UA 610 preamps feature high and low frequency boost/cut shelving filters with stepped gain controls. The equalizers utilize a feedback-style design which effects the distortion characteristics of the output stage.

UA 610-A

The low frequency (“L.F.”) shelf EQ has a fixed cutoff frequency of 100 Hz.

Lo EQ Gain

This rotary switch determines the amount of boost or cut applied to the low frequency signal. Fixed values of ±6 dB or 0 dB can be selected. When set to 0 dB, the filter is inactive.

UA 610-B

The low frequency (“LO”) shelf EQ has a selectable cutoff frequency which can be cut or boosted by various amounts.

Lo EQ Frequency

This switch determines the cutoff frequency (70, 100, or 200 Hz) of the low shelf EQ. This switch has no effect if the Lo EQ Gain value is zero.

Note: *As with the hardware, low frequency values are not consecutively ordered.*

Lo EQ Gain

This rotary switch determines the amount of boost or cut applied to the low frequency signal. Fixed values of plus or minus 9, 6, 4.5, 3, or 1.5 dB can be selected. When set to 0 dB, the filter is inactive.

High EQ

UA 610-A

The high frequency ("H.F.") shelf EQ has a fixed cutoff frequency of 10 kHz.

Hi EQ Gain

This rotary switch determines the amount of boost or cut applied to the high frequency signal. Fixed values of -6, 0, +3, or +6 dB can be selected. When set to 0 dB, the filter is inactive.

UA 610-B

The high frequency ("HI") shelf EQ has a selectable cutoff frequency which can be cut or boosted by various amounts.

Hi EQ Frequency

This switch determines the cutoff frequency (4.5 kHz, 7 kHz, or 10 kHz) of the high shelf EQ. This switch has no effect if the Hi EQ Gain value is zero.

Note: *Like the hardware, high frequency values are not consecutively ordered.*

Hi EQ Gain

This rotary switch determines the amount of boost or cut applied to the high frequency signal. Fixed values of plus or minus 9, 6, 4.5, 3, or 1.5 dB can be selected. When set to 0 dB, the filter is inactive.

Polarity

This switch inverts the polarity ("phase") of the signal. The signal polarity is inverted when the switch is in the up position. Polarity is normal when the switch is in the down position. Polarity inversion can help reduce phase cancellations when more than one microphone is used to record a single source.

When either plug-in is used in an INPUT insert within Apollo's Console application, software and hardware control of polarity is mirrored. Polarity can be inverted within the plug-in interface or by using Apollo's polarity button.

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled and DSP usage is reduced (if DSP LoadLock is inactive).

Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

610 History

Creating an original 610 desk meant buying the individual modules and building the console from scratch, as no complete consoles were ever sold commercially. However, Bill Putnam himself built a few full-fledged desks for his own studios, complete with fabricated frame, power supply, metering, and bus/effects routing options.

Although very few desks were built from 610 modules, their contribution to the history of recorded music is enormous. Ray Charles, Frank Sinatra and The Beach Boys were a few artists captured with the 610 at United/Western as part of landmark recordings such as "Sounds in Country and Western Music," "Strangers In The Night," and "Pet Sounds," respectively.

One of these 610 desks is the famous Wally Heider "Green Board." This extremely well-built example was originally fabricated by Frank DeMedio for Wally Heider's Remote Recording Service in the early `60s. Wally originally handled many of the live recording dates booked by Putnam. This console recorded and mixed some of the greatest performances of the era, from many live shows with the "Rat Pack," to recording the very last concert under the baton of Igor Stravinsky in Los Angeles.

With the Wally Heider Green Board alone, the list of records using the 610 is staggering. Here are but a few notable acts recorded with the Green Board: Duke Ellington, Elvis Presley, Johnny Cash at Folsom Prison, Fats Domino, Little Richard, Cream, The Beach Boys, The Doors, Janis Joplin with Big Brother & The Holding Company, The Who, The Grateful Dead, The Steve Miller Band, Moby Grape, The Byrds, Jefferson Airplane, Booker T. & the M.G.s, Otis Redding, Eric Burdon and The Animals, Simon and Garfunkel, and The Jimi Hendrix Experience (live at the Monterey Pop Festival, where he first set his guitar on fire!).

In the early `70s, long before this one-of-a-kind desk's historical significance could be anticipated, Neil Young bought the 12-channel board from Wally Heider. Young immediately moved it to his Broken Arrow Ranch. He installed the desk in his barn, which he used as a recording studio, and employed it to record his seminal record "Harvest" and may other classic albums. The Green Board remains at Broken Arrow Ranch, and is still in use today.

The Universal Audio 2-610 Dual Channel Tube Preamplifier

V76 Preamplifier

The definitive emulation of the most prized microphone preamp ever made.

For decades, state-of-the-art broadcast and studio designs originated with the German Institute of Broadcast Technology (Institut für Rundfunktechnik), which were built with incredible military-grade manufacturing. Found under multiple brands, this audio design trove is still renowned by record makers throughout Europe, with an in-the-know following worldwide. Of these, the venerated V76 is still considered the very best sounding standalone microphone preamplifier, and perhaps the best ever made.

Now, Universal Audio's V76 Preamplifier with Unison technology blurs the lines between analog and digital with an exhaustive model of the ingeniously overbuilt, tube and transformer landmark in '50s German design — imparting the same distinct high-fidelity sound to your performances as heard on countless landmark studio recordings.

Now You Can:

- Provide your recordings the mix-ready clarity and vintage "hi-fi" tone of the venerated V76 Preamplifier
- Enhance and impart new confidence to all of your Unison-ready recording performances
- Experience in-the-box recording "through" the V76 preamp in real time with any UA audio interface
- Take advantage of Unison™ technology with your UA audio interface, controlling physical mic preamp gain staging and impedance with Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins
- Get the same unmistakable V76 sound found on countless records from the late-20th century to today

Add Weight and Tone to Any Source

UA audio interface owners equipped with Unison-ready preamps can use the V76 Preamplifier for tracking their most important sources — always an excellent and inspiring pairing for vocals. As with the original hardware, the V76 plug-in changes frequency response and input impedance depending on the gain setting used — Unison technology easily provides the right interaction with every dynamic, ribbon or condenser mic in your collection — just as the equivalent hardware would.

UAD-2 DSP Accelerator and Apollo 16 users can use the V76 for line level mixing, adding colorful hi-fi tone to any source without going outside the box. With the V76 Preamplifier you can sculpt your recordings with the distinctive tube character V76 is famous for, allowing you to create the perfect mix every time.

The Only Authentic Standalone V76 Preamp Emulation

Based on study of the original circuit diagrams and a total of seven examples of V76 modular hardware, the V76 Preamplifier was brought to life over the course of a year's time with obsessive attention paid to the complex input and output stage pentode tube amplifier arrangement and interactions. After a meticulous restoration to thoroughly match the original design specifications, UA's early serial number #302 specimen became the targeted "golden unit" reference for the final fit and finish of the completed circuit emulation. Like all great German feats of engineering, with regular maintenance the V76 hardware will continue to provide its amazing characteristics to future generations – but the V76 Preamplifier for UAD will provide years of worry-free, maintenance-free use.

Historic Design, Historic Use

Birthed from the pre-war amplifiers developed by the German Institute of Broadcast Technology, the V72 was a modular amplifier with a fixed gain of 34 dB, sold as a broadcast preamp. Quickly realized as the perfect pairing with the high-output German condenser mics of the day, the V72 found its way into studios across Europe such as Decca and EMI's custom Abbey Road desks due to its excellent sound. The most prized of all German amp designs, the V76 is essentially two V72 modules cascaded in series providing a broad, harmonically rich range of gain application and a then-wide frequency response of 40 Hz to 15 kHz. Equipped with switchable input attenuation in varied increments, the V76 was a breakthrough, achieving 76 dB of clean gain. The V76 has a deeper feature set and use range than its cousin, and is suitable with low output dynamic and even ribbon mics.

Unison Technology for Preamp-Equipped UA Audio Interfaces

Harnessing UA's groundbreaking Unison technology, the V76 Preamplifier blurs the lines between analog and digital, giving you all of the important impedance, gain staging "sweet spots," and circuit behaviors that have made the V76 one of the most venerated standalone preamps ever made. The secret is Unison's bi-directional control and communication from the plug-in to the digitally controlled mic preamps in the UA audio interface.

As with its hardware counterpart, the preamp adopts the V76's physical input impedance, providing its range of gain values by way of resistive attenuation. Unison technology provides the V76's full gain and tone range from clean to clipped — with broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

V76 Preamplifier interface (English)

V76 Preamplifier interface (Deutsche)

Operational Overview

The V76 Preamplifier plug-in is an easy to use vintage tube preamp. It features high amounts of available gain and simple high/low pass filtering.

Unison Integration

The V76 Preamplifier features Unison™ technology for integration with the mic preamp hardware in Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces. With Unison interfaces, the ultra-transparent mic preamps inherit all of the unique sonics, input characteristics, and features of modeled UAD preamp plug-ins.

> ***Note:*** *Unison is active only when the UAD plug-in is placed in the dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application. For complete details, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

With Unison, the hardware preamp adapts to the modeled preamp's physical input impedance. Combined with UA's transparent analog amplification, this provides the plug-in's full gain and tone range from clean to clipped — with broad, musical sweet spots in-between.

Realistic Tandem Control

Unison facilitates seamless interactive control of plug-in settings using both the digitally-controlled panel hardware on the UA audio interface and the UAD plug-in interface. All equivalent preamp controls (gain, cut filter, polarity, pad) are mirrored and bidirectional. The preamp controls respond to adjustments with precisely the same interplay behavior as the modeled preamp, including gain levels and clipping points.

Hardware Input Impedance

All Unison mic preamps feature variable input impedance in the analog hardware that can be physically changed by Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins for physical, microphone-to-preamp resistive interaction. This impedance switching enables Unison preamps to match the input impedance of the emulated hardware, which can significantly impact the sound of a microphone. Because the electrical loading occurs on input, prior to A/D conversion, the realism is faithful to the original hardware preamp.

Tactile Gain Staging

The hardware preamp knob on the UA audio interface can independently adjust the gain and level parameters available within the Unison plug-in via Gain Stage Mode. The gain stage being adjusted can be remotely switched via the interface hardware, so the gain levels and their associated colorations can be tuned from the hardware knob for precise physical tactile control, all without using the Unison plug-in's software interface.

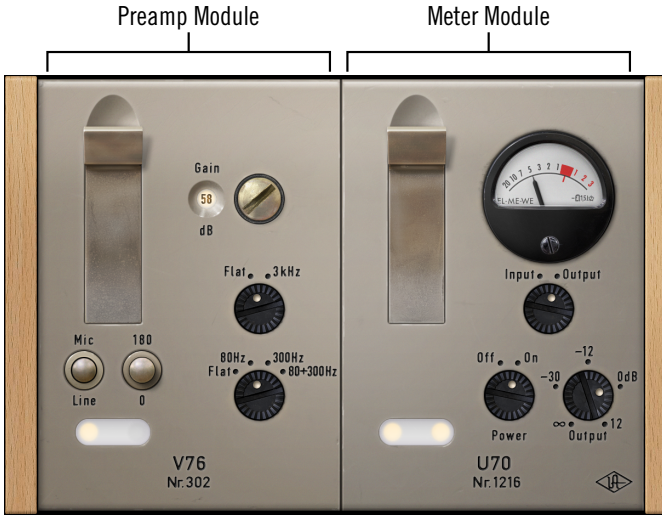
Unison Parameter

UAD plug-in parameters that have Unison integration are indicated by the Unison icon, as shown in the heading above this paragraph.

V76 Preamplifier Controls

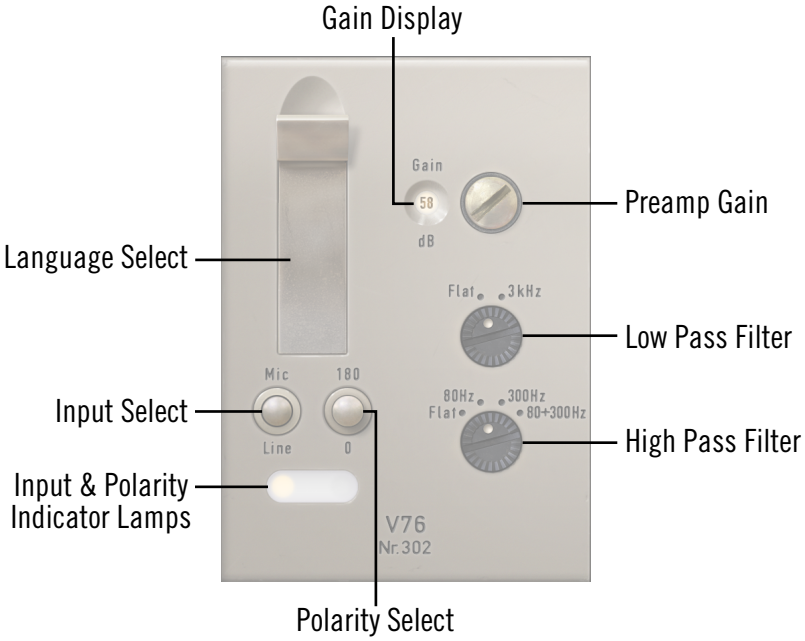
Module Layout

The original hardware V76 was a modular design, with available preamp, dynamics, EQ, and meter modules that could be combined in a chassis. The UAD V76 Preamplifier plug-in includes one preamp module on the left, and a meter module on the right.



UAD V76 Preamplifier modules layout

Preamp Module Controls



Preamp module control locations

Input Select

Input Select toggles the input source between Mic and Line input. To switch the setting, click the button or its text labels.

> ***Important:*** *Use caution when switching to Line from Mic, as signal output levels can increase significantly (as they would with a hardware preamp).*

Mic

The Mic input is active when the Input Select button is in the down (smaller) position and the button's indicator lamp is illuminated. Like the hardware, the V76 Preamplifier plug-in easily facilitates sending line level signals through the "virtual" mic input, which allows creative use of distortion to color signals.

Line

The Line input is active when the Input Select button is in the up (larger) position and the button's indicator lamp is not illuminated. This mode utilizes the same circuitry as the mic input (including transformer emulation), but applies 28 dB of attenuation to compensate for the greater amplitude of line-level signals.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the preamp channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, software and hardware control of Input Select is mirrored. Input Select can then be changed within the plug-in interface, with Console's Mic/Line switches, or with the hardware buttons on the UA audio interface.

> ***Note:*** *When an Apollo/Arrow Hi-Z input is connected, Mic mode is automatically selected and the Line/Mic switch is disabled.*

Polarity (Ø)

Polarity inverts the phase of the input signal by 180º. To toggle the setting, click the button or its text labels. Polarity is inverted when the button is in the down (smaller) position and its indicator lamp is illuminated.

> ***Tip:*** *When more than one microphone is used to record a single source, inverting the polarity on one or more of the mic signals can help reduce phase cancellations.*

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application, software and hardware control of Polarity is mirrored. Polarity can then be inverted within the plug-in interface, with Console's polarity button, or with the hardware polarity button on the UA audio interface.

Input & Polarity Indicator Lamps

The lamps below the Input Select and Polarity buttons indicate the current state of these buttons. When Mic is selected, the Input Select lamp is illuminated. When the polarity is inverted (180 active), its lamp is illuminated.

Input & polarity indicator lamps and their button positions.
At left: Mic input selected and inverted Polarity.
At right: Line input selected and normal Polarity.

Preamp Gain

This 12-position rotary knob sets the amount of preamp gain, in decibels. Higher dB values increase the signal level at the input of the plug-in.

Stepped gain values of 3, 9, 18, 24, 34, 40, 46, 52, 58, 64, 70, and 76 dB are available.

V76 Preamp Gain can be changed with any of these methods:

- Drag the slotted knob to increase or decrease the dB value.
- Click the Gain Display (the illuminated dB value) to increment the dB value, or shift+click the Gain Display to decrement the dB value.
- Click the "Gain" text label above the Gain Display to increment the dB value, or click the "dB" text label below the Gain Display to decrement the dB value.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the preamp channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the Preamp knob on the UA audio interface or the Console application can also be used to adjust preamp gain. In this state, an orange outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is also available for hardware and Console control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Preamp Gain knob outlined in orange when Unison Gain Stage Mode is active

Gain Display

The amount of Preamp Gain, in dB, is shown in the illuminated Gain Display. The Gain Display has several shortcuts for changing the gain value (see Preamp Gain for details).

Low Pass Filter

This rotary switch controls a passive low pass filter with a cutoff frequency of 3 kHz. Drag the knob or click the text labels to change the LP filter value. The default value is off.

High Pass Filter

This four-position rotary switch controls a high-pass filter with available cutoff frequencies of 80 Hz, 300 Hz, and 80+300 Hz. Drag the knob or click the text labels to change the HP filter value. The default value is off.

Unison Interaction

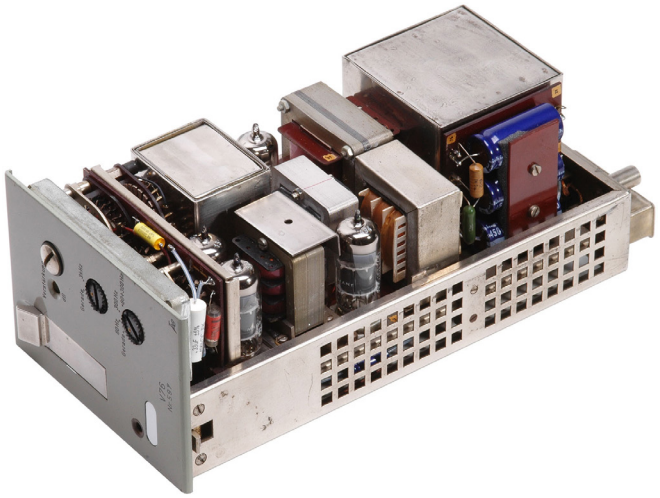
When the plug-in is placed in a dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the preamp channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, software and hardware control of the High Pass Filter is mirrored. The filter can then be enabled or disabled within the plug-in interface, with Console's HPF button, or with the hardware HPF button on the UA audio interface.

> ***Note:*** *In Gain Stage Mode, the Apollo/Arrow hardware filter switch toggles between Flat and the last Hz value that was set within the plug-in.*

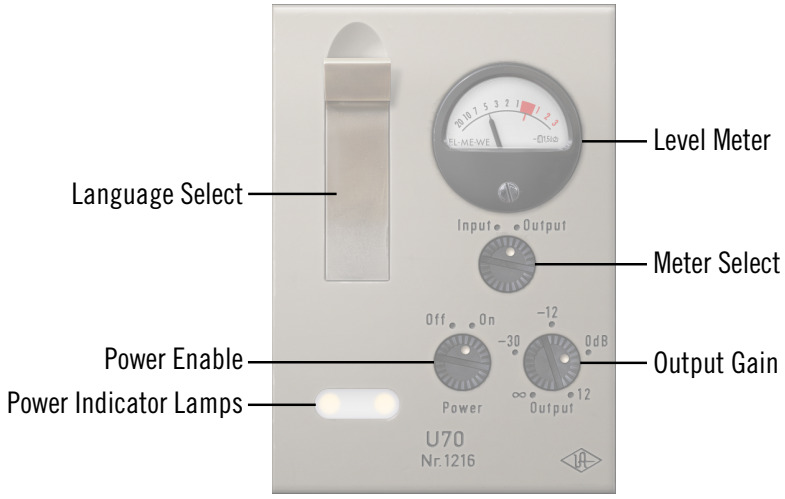
Language Select

By default, words in the plug-in interface are translated to English from the German text on the original hardware. To toggle between English and German text in the interface, click the module's locking lever.

> ***Tip:*** *The interface language can be toggled by clicking the locking lever in the preamp module or the meter module.*



Meter Module Controls



Meter module control locations

Level Meter

The Level Meter provides a relative indication of input and output levels. The Level Meter is not calibrated to specific dB values.

Meter Select

This rotary control determines the source of the signal that is fed into the Level Meter. To change the value, drag the knob or click the text labels.

Input

As with the original hardware, when set to Input, the Level Meter displays the relative signal level after preamp amplification and filtering (it does not display the level at the plug-in's input).

Output

When set to Output, the Level Meter displays the relative signal level at the output of the plug-in, after the Output Gain stage.

Output Gain

Output adjusts the signal level at the output of the plug-in without changing the sonic character of the signal. The available range is -INF (off) to +12 dB.

This clean uncolored gain control, which does not exist on the original hardware, facilitates the ability to maximize coloration of the overall signal. For example, Preamp Gain can be increased for more distortion, while lowering Output Gain to normalize levels.

Unison Interaction

When the plug-in is placed in a dedicated Unison insert within the Apollo/Arrow Console application and the preamp channel is in Unison Gain Stage Mode, the Output knob on the UA audio interface can also be used to adjust this parameter. In this state, a green outline surrounds this parameter, indicating it is also available for hardware control.

> ***Tip:*** *For details on how to enter and exit Gain Stage Mode, see the Unison chapter within the Apollo Software Manual or Arrow Manual.*

Output Gain knob outlined in green when Unison Gain Stage Mode is active

Power

Power is the plug-in bypass control. Power is useful for comparing the processed settings to the original signal.

When set to OFF, emulation processing is disabled, DSP usage is reduced (if UAD-2 DSP LoadLock is inactive), and the power indicator lamps are de-illuminated.

> ***Tip:*** *To toggle Power, either drag the knob, click the power indicator lamps, or click the UA logo.*

The original V76 hardware preamplifier module

All trademarks are recognized as property of their respective owners.

Appendix

Unison Plug-Ins List

Unison™ technology is an audio processing breakthrough that starts right at the source — the input stage — allowing UA audio interface preamps to sound and behave like the world's most sought-after tube and solid-state designs.

By capturing the all-important impedance, gain stage "sweet spots," and component-level circuit behaviors, Unison gives Universal Audio's Apollo and Arrow audio interfaces the tone and feel of legendary mic preamps, guitar/bass amps, and pedals from UA, API, Neve, SSL, Manley, Fender, Marshall, and more.

Specific UAD plug-ins are uniquely coded for Unison integration. Only UAD plug-ins that are Unison-enabled can be loaded in the Apollo/Arrow Console software's dedicated Unison insert slots. All Unison-enabled UAD plug-ins are listed in the table below.

> ***Note:*** *For complete details about Unison technology and how to operate Unison-specific features such as Gain Stage Mode with UA audio interfaces, see the UA Audio Interface Manuals.*

Unison-Enabled UAD Plug-Ins		
Microphone Preamplifiers	**Guitar & Bass Amplifiers**	**Guitar Pedals**
API Vision Channel Strip Avalon VT-737sp Channel Strip Century Tube Channel Strip Helios Type 69* Manley VOXBOX Channel Strip Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ* Neve 88RS Channel Strip* Neve Preamp SSL E Channel Strip* UA 610-A Tube Preamp & EQ UA 610-B Tube Preamp & EQ V76 Preamplifer **Newer version (not Legacy)*	Ampeg B-15N Ampeg SVT-3 Pro Ampeg SVT-VR Ampeg SVT-VR Classic Diezel Herbert Amplifier Eden WT800 Engl E646 VS Engl E765 RT Engl Savage 120 Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe Friedman BE-100 Friedman Buxom Betty Friedman DS-40 Fuchs Overdrive Supreme 50 Fuchs Train II Gallien Krueger 800RB Marshall Bluesbreaker 1962 Marshall JMP 2203 Marshall Plexi Classic Marshall Plexi Super Lead 1959 Marshall Silver Jubilee 2555 Suhr PT100	A/DA Flanger Bermuda Triangle Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 Raw Distortion TS Overdrive **Delay** Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay

UAD plug-ins that can be loaded in Console's dedicated Unison inserts

Additional Latency

Some UAD plug-ins introduce additional latency within the plug-in itself (in addition to hardware I/O buffering latency) to achieve sonic design goals. When these plug-ins are used in a DAW and/or the Apollo/Arrow Console, the additional latency is induced in the signal path. Therefore, they require more compensation to remain perfectly synchronized with other tracks, versus UAD plug-ins that do not have additional latency.

> ***Note:*** *Compensating for the additional latency from these UAD plug-ins is performed automatically by the host software application (DAW and/or Apollo's Console) when the latency delay compensation function is enabled in the host.*

Although the latency added by these UAD plug-ins is negligible (typically between 0 – 100 samples, depending on the plug-in and session sample rate), if this extra latency is not compensated, it can affect phase coherency in a session.

The additional latency values, in samples, of UAD plug-ins with additional latency are listed in this chapter for the benefit of users with plug-in host DAWs that do not perform automatic delay compensation.

For related information:

- **Apollo –** See the "Latency & Delay Compensation" chapter in the UAD System Manual, and the "Latency & Apollo" chapter in the Apollo Software Manual.
- **Arrow –** See the "Latency & Arrow" chapter in the Arrow Manual.

Additional Latency Values

UAD Plug-In	Sample Rate (kHz)					
	44.1	48	88.2	96	176.4	192
AKG BX 20	983	974	2078	2060	4156	4120
Ampex ATR-102	2262	2455	4408	4798	8818	9598
Bermuda Triangle	88		80		20	
Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 TS Overdrive	88		80		0	
Raw Distortion	44		40		0	
API 550A EQ API 2500 API Vision Channel Strip Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip Century Tube Channel Strip Empirical Labs Distressor Empirical Labs FATSO Jr./Sr. Fairchild 660 Fairchild 670 Helios Type 69 Manley Massive Passive Manley Variable Mu Manley VOXBOX Moog Multimode Filter Moog Multimode Filter XL Neve 1073 Neve 33609 Neve 88RS Neve Preamp Oxide Tape Precision Maximizer Pultec EQP-1A Pultec MEQ-5 Studer A800 SSL 4000 E Preamp & Channel Strip SSL G Bus Compressor Thermionic Culture Vulture UA 610-A UA 610-B UA 1176LN Rev A UA 1176LN Rev E UA 1176AE UA 175-B UA 176 V76 Preamplifier	55		55		88	

(Continued)

UAD Plug-In	Sample Rate (kHz)					
	44.1	48	88.2	96	176.4	192
Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe	119		201		284	
Precision Limiter	64	69	129	140	259	281
API 560 EQ Teletronix LA-2 Teletronix LA-2A Teletronix LA-2A Gray Teletronix LA-2A Silver	56		56		89	
Helios Type 69 Harrison 32C Neve 1073 Legacy Neve 1081 Neve 31102 Precision EQ Pultiec EQP-1A Legacy Pultec-Pro Legacy Pultec HLF-3C SSL E Channel Strip Legacy Trident A-Range	31		13		0	
Precision Multiband	15,360	16,896	30,720	33,792	61,440	66,048
Korg SDD-3000 Delay	119		183		344	
Little Labs IBP	32		14		1	
Lexicon 224† (see notes below)	84	79	90	97	107	116
Lexicon 480L† (see notes below)	121	64	177	174	289	284
EMT 250† (see notes below)	75	11	85	24	107	50
MXR Flanger/Doubler	31		0		0	
Ocean Way Studios	192		688		1568	
Capitol Chambers	320		752		1504	

†Notes: EMT 250 and Lexicon 224

The EMT 250 and Lexicon 224 anti-aliasing filters for their A/D and D/A conversion are not linear-phase filters; therefore the emulations do not have a latency that is the same at all frequencies. Thus, they cannot report to the delay compensation engines a delay that is correct for all frequencies. The reported values are good at low frequencies, but become off at high frequencies.

For example, when the EMT 250 plug-in is in Delay program mode and set with zero delay time and predelay values, the plug-in output will not be completely cancelled when mixing with inverted polarity against an unprocessed track; high frequencies will leak through. However, the latency through the dry side of the wet/dry mix, and the latency when the plug-in is bypassed via the EMT 250 Power switch, do not have this issue and will be fully compensated by the DAW.

UAD Plug-Ins and High Definition Audio

Antialias Filtering

Some UAD plug-ins process audio at high sample rates internally, allowing replication of complex nonlinear behaviors such as distortion, saturation, and other classic analog characteristics. These UAD plug-ins incorporate a linear phase antialiasing filter that removes audio artifacts far above the audio spectrum in order to deliver the highest possible sound quality.

> ***Note:*** *The tables on the following pages list which UAD plug-ins use the linear phase antialiasing filter.*

The audible frequency spectrum is generally recognized as 20Hz – 20 kHz, and the UAD antialiasing filter removes all audio above 30 kHz regardless of the session sample rate. This practice eliminates all audio artifacts, but may not be compatible with certain HD audio distributors that check for audio above 30 kHz.

If antialiased UAD plug-ins are used in HD audio productions (generally defined as audio with sample rates of 96 kHz and higher), either avoid using these UAD plug-ins on the master output bus, or use UAD plug-ins without the antialiasing filter on the master output bus instead.

> ***Tip:*** *When using any UAD plug-in that has a MIX control (such as API 2500, Fairchild 670, etc.), setting the MIX control to any value below 100% blends full bandwidth audio with the filtered audio — allowing antialiased UAD plug-ins to be used on the master bus for HD audio distributors.*

For more in-depth information, see this article from Sound On Sound magazine:

- www.soundonsound.com/sound-advice/q-why-do-universal-audio-restrict-processing-bandwith-their-uad-plug-ins

UAD Plug-Ins Linear Phase Antialiasing Filtering Table

WITHOUT Antialiasing Filter	*WITH Antialiasing Filter*
Preamps & Channel Strips	
4K Channel Strip	API Vision Channel Strip
AMS Neve DFC Channel Strip	Avalon VT-737sp Tube Channel Strip
CS-1 Channel Strip	Century Tube Channel Strip
Neve 88RS Channel Strip Legacy	Helios Type 69 Preamp & EQ
Precision Channel Strip	Manley VOXBOX
SSL E Channel Strip Legacy	Neve 1073 Preamp & EQ
	Neve 88RS Channel Strip
	Neve Preamp
	SSL 4000 E Preamp & Channel Strip
	UA 610-A Tube Preamp & EQ
	UA 610-B Tube Preamp & EQ
	V76 Preamplifier
Compressors/Limiters	
4K Buss Compressor	API 2500 Bus Compressor*
Chandler Limited Zener Limiter	Empirical Labs EL8 Distressor*
dbx 160 Compressor / Limiter	Fairchild 660 Tube Limiter*
elysia alpha master Compressor	Fairchild 670 Tube Limiter*
elysia alpha mix Compressor	Manley Variable Mu Limiter Compressor*
elysia mpressor	Neve 33609 Compressor
Fairchild 670 Legacy Tube Limiter	SSL G Bus Compressor*
Neve 33609SE Compressor	Teletronix LA-2 Classic Leveler
Precision Buss Compressor	Teletronix LA-2A Gray Classic Leveler
Precision Limiter	Teletronix LA-2A Silver Classic Leveler
Precision Multiband	UA 175B Tube Compressor/Limiter*
Shadow Hills Mastering Compressor	UA 176 Tube Compressor/Limiter*
Sonnox Oxford Inflator	UA 1176 Rev A Classic Limiter
Sonnox Oxford Limiter	UA 1176AE Classic Limiter
SSL G Legacy Bus Compressor	UA 1176LN Rev E Classic Limiter
Summit Audio TLA-100 Compressor	UA 175B Tube Limiter*
Teletronix LA-2A Legacy Classic Leveler	UA 176 Tube Compresser*
Teletronix LA-3A Classic Audio Leveler	
Tube-Tech CL 1B Compressor	
Tube-Tech CL 1B MkII Compressor	
UA 1176LN Legacy Classic Limiter	**Set MIX control below 100% to blend unfiltered audio*
UA 1176SE Legacy Classic Limiter	
Valley People Dynamite	
Vertigo VSC-2 Compressor	

(Continued)

UAD Plug-Ins Linear Phase Antialiasing Filtering Table	
WITHOUT Antialiasing Filter	***WITH Antialiasing Filter***
Equalizers	
Brainworx bx_digital V2 EQ Brainworx bx_digital V2 mono EQ Brainworx bx_digital V3 EQ Brainworx bx_digital V3 mix EQ Cambridge EQ Dangerous BAX Mastering EQ Dangerous BAX Mix EQ Harrison 32C SE Channel EQ Helios Type 69 EQ Maag EQ4 EQ MDWEQ5-3 Band Parametric EQ MDWEQ5-5 Band Parametric EQ Millenia NSEQ-2 EQ Neve 1073 Legacy Classic Console EQ Neve 1073 SE Legacy Classic Console EQ Neve 1081 Classic Console EQ Neve 1081SE Classic Console EQ Neve 31102 Classic Console EQ Neve 31102SE Classic Console EQ Precision Equalizer Pultec EQP-1A Legacy Passive EQ Pultec HLF-3C Passive EQ Pultec-Pro Legacy Passive EQ Sonnox Oxford EQ Tonelux Tilt EQ Tonelux Tilt Live EQ Trident A-Range Classic Console EQ Tube-Tech ME1B EQ Tube-Tech PE1C EQ	API 550A EQ API 560 EQ Chandler Limited Curve Bender Mastering EQ Harrison 32C Channel EQ Manley Massive Passive EQ Manley Massive Passive MST EQ Neve 1073 Preamp and EQ Pultec EQP-1A Passive EQ Pultec MEQ-5 Passive EQ

(Continued)

UAD Plug-Ins Linear Phase Antialiasing Filtering Table	
WITHOUT Antialiasing Filter	***WITH Antialiasing Filter***
Guitar & Bass	
N/A	Ampeg B15N Bass Amplifier Ampeg SVT 3-Pro Bass Amplifier Ampeg SVT-VR Bass Amplifier Ampeg SVT-VR Classic Bass Amplifier Bermuda Triangle Eden WT800 Bass Amplifier Fender '55 Tweed Deluxe Fuchs Overdrive Supreme 50 Amplifier Fuchs Train II Amplifier Gallien-Krueger 800RB Bass Amp Ibanez Tube Screamer TS808 Marshall Bluesbreaker 1962 Marshall JMP 2203 Marshall Plexi Classic Marshall Plexi Super Lead 1959 Marshall Silver Jubilee 2555 RAW Distortion Softube Amp Room Half-Stack Softube Bass Amp Room Softube Bass Amp Room 8x10 Softube Metal Amp Room Softube Vintage Amp Room Sound Machine Wood Works TS Overdrive

(Continued)

UAD Plug-Ins Linear Phase Antialiasing Filtering Table	
WITHOUT Antialiasing Filter	***WITH Antialiasing Filter***
Delay & Modulation	
ADA Flanger ADA STD-1 Stereo Tapped Delay BOSS CE-1 Classic Chorus Brigade Chorus Cooper Time Cube MkII Delay Dytronics Cyclosonic Panner Dytronics Tri-Stereo Chorus EP-34 Tape Echo Galaxy Tape Echo MXR Flanger/Doubler Precision Delay Mod Precision Delay Mod Long Roland Dimension D Studio Chorus Roland RE-201 Space Echo Studio D Chorus	Korg SDD-3000 Digital Delay* **Set MIX control below 100% to blend unfiltered audio*

(Continued)

UAD Plug-Ins Linear Phase Antialiasing Filtering Table	
WITHOUT Antialiasing Filter	***WITH Antialiasing Filter***
Reverb	
AKG BX 20 Spring Reverb AMS RMX16 Digital Reverb AMS RMX16 Expanded Digital Reverb Capitol Chambers DreamVerb Room Modeler EMT 140 Classic Plate Reverberator EMT 250 Classic Electronic Reverb Lexicon 224 Digital Reverb Ocean Way Studios Precision Reflection Engine Pure Plate Reverb RealVerb Pro Room Modeler	Lexicon 480L Digital Reverb & Effects
Special Processing	
Antares Auto-Tune Realtime Brainworx bx_refinement Brainworx bx_saturator V2 Brainworx bx_subsynth Little Labs IBP Phase Alignment Little Labs Voice of God Bass Resonance Moog Multimode Filter SE Ocean Way Microphone Collection OTO Biscuit 8-Bit Effects Precision De-Esser Precision Enhancer Hz Precision Enhancer kHz Precision K-Stereo Ambience Recovery Sonnox Oxford Envolution SPL Transient Designer SPL TwinTube Processor SPL Vitalizer MK2-T Townsend Labs Sphere Microphone System Vertigo VSM-3 Mix Satellite	Ampex ATR-102 Mastering Tape Recorder Empirical Labs EL7 FATSO Jr. Empirical Labs EL7 FATSO Sr. Eventide H910 Harmonizer* Moog Multimode Filter Moog Multimode Filter XL Oxide Tape Recorder Precision Maximizer Softube Vocoder Studer A800 Multichannel Tape Recorder Thermionic Culture Vulture **Set MIX control below 100% to blend unfiltered audio*

High Resolution Sample Rates

UAD Plug-In Exceptions

Some UAD Direct Developer (3rd-party) plug-ins cannot be loaded at sample rates of 192 kHz. These plug-ins are listed in the table below.

UAD Plug-Ins Unavailable at 192 kHz Sample Rate	
bx_masterdesk	Friedman DS40 Amplifier
bx_masterdesk Classic	Fuchs Overdrive Supreme 50 Amplifier
Chandler GAV19T Amplifier	Fuchs Train II Amplifier
Diezel Herbert Amplifier	Gallien Krueger 800RB Bass Amplifier
Diezel VH4 Amplifier	Sonnox Oxford Dynamic EQ
ENGL E646 VS Amplifier	Sonnox Oxford SuprEsser DS
ENGL E765 RT Amplifier	Suhr PT100 Amplifier
ENGL Savage 120 Amplifier	Suhr SE100 Amplifier
Friedman BE100 Amplifier	

SOLO Core UA Audio Interface Exceptions

Due to the DSP footprint for Realtime UAD Processing with SOLO core (single SHARC) UA audio interfaces, the following UAD plug-in sample rate exceptions apply with Arrow, Apollo Twin SOLO, and Apollo Twin MkII SOLO interface models.

- Capitol Chambers can be loaded at sample rates of 44.1 kHz and 48 kHz. Capitol Chambers has limited compatibility at higher sample rates.
- Thermionic Culture Vulture cannot be loaded on stereo tracks in a DAW at sample rates of 88.2, 96, or 192 kHz if Console's Input Delay Compensation is enabled. If Console's Input Delay Compensation is disabled, the limitation exists at 96 kHz only.

Notices

Disclaimer

The information contained in this manual is subject to change without notice. Universal Audio, Inc. makes no warranties of any kind with regard to this manual, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Universal Audio, Inc. shall not be liable for errors contained herein or direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

End User License Agreement

Your rights to the Software are governed by the accompanying End User License Agreement, a copy of which can be found at: www.uaudio.com/eula

Trademarks

Universal Audio, the Universal Audio "diamond" logo, Apollo, Apollo Twin, Arrow, UAD, UAD Powered Plug-Ins, UAD-2 Live Rack, Powered Plug-Ins, Unison technology, 1176, 1176LN, LA-2A, LA-3A, OX, OX Amp Top Box, Century Tube Channel Strip, DreamVerb, EQP-1A, Helios, Oxide, Teletronix, and "Analog Ears | Digital Minds," are among the trademarks, trade names, and service marks owned by UA, many of which are registered in the United States and in other countries. This is not a comprehensive list of all UA trademarks. All other trademarks depicted herein are property of their respective owners.

Copyright

Copyright ©2019 Universal Audio, Inc. All rights reserved.

This manual and any associated software, artwork, product designs, and design concepts are subject to copyright protection. No part of this document may be reproduced, in any form, without prior written permission of Universal Audio, Inc.

Technical Support

Universal Audio Knowledge Base

The UA Knowledge Base is your complete technical resource for configuring, operating, troubleshooting, and repairing UA products.

You can watch helpful support videos, search the Knowledge Base for answers, get updated technical information that may not be available elsewhere, and more.

UA Knowledge Base

YouTube Support Channel

The Universal Audio Support Channel at youtube.com includes helpful support videos for setting up and using UA products.

UA YouTube Support Channel

Universal Audio Community Forums

The unofficial UA discussion forums are a valuable resource for all Universal Audio product users. This website is independently owned and operated.

www.uadforum.com

Contact Universal Audio Support

To contact UA support staff for technical or repair assistance, please visit:

help.uaudio.com

www.uaudio.com